



## Workshop Manual Transporter 2016 ➤

General body repairs, interior
--------------------------------

Edition 03.2020



## List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

### Repair Group

- 00 - Technical data
- 68 - Interior equipment
- 69 - Passenger protection
- 70 - Trim, insulation
- 72 - Seat frames
- 74 - Seat - padding, covers

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.



## Contents

<b>00 - Technical data</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1 Safety information</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Safety measures when working on vehicles with a start/stop system	2
1.2 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test	3
1.3 Safety measures when working with pyrotechnic components	3
1.4 Storage, transportation and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components)	5
1.5 Additional safety regulations for side airbag	5
1.6 Safety instructions for airbag	6
1.7 Additional safety instructions for curtain airbag	6
1.8 Deactivating the airbag	7
1.9 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbags	7
1.10 Additional safety instructions for repair work on seat occupied recognition for front passenger airbag deactivation - country-specific	8
1.11 Measures for seat occupied recognition for front passenger airbag deactivation following an accident - country-specific	9
1.12 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system after an accident	9
1.13 Checking airbag securing parts after an accident	10
1.14 Accident without airbag triggering	11
1.15 Seat belts	11
1.16 Checking seat belts	11
1.17 Check belt webbing	12
1.18 Checking inertia reel (locking mechanism)	12
1.19 Visually checking belt buckle	13
1.20 Check operation of belt buckle	13
1.21 Checking belt relays, and buckle tongues	13
1.22 Checking securing parts and anchorage points after an accident	14
1.23 Checking seat belt restraint function of seat belt for holding additional child seats (not for driver seat belt) - country-specific	14
1.24 Checking child seat anchors after an accident	14
1.25 Safety instructions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror	15
1.26 Safety precautions when working in vicinity of high-voltage components	15
1.27 Safety precautions when working on a high-voltage system	15
<b>2 Repair notes</b>	<b>17</b>
2.1 General repair instructions	17
2.2 Contact corrosion	17
2.3 Routing and attachment of lines	18
<b>3 Hazard classification of high-voltage system</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>68 - Interior equipment</b>	<b>20</b>
<b>1 Compartments/covers</b>	<b>20</b>
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers	20
1.2 Assembly overview - driver side dash panel cover	23
1.3 Assembly overview - steering column trim	24
1.4 Assembly overview - glove compartment	25
1.5 Assembly overview - storage compartment in headliner	26
1.6 Removing and installing dash panel cover on driver side	28
1.7 Removing and installing dash panel insert trim	29
1.8 Removing and installing upper steering column trim	29
1.9 Removing and installing lower steering column trim	30
1.10 Removing and installing footwell cover	31
1.11 Removing and installing glove compartment opener	31
1.12 Removing and installing glove compartment	32



1.13	Removing and installing dash panel compartment	33
1.14	Removing and installing headliner storage compartment	36
<b>2</b>	<b>Equipment</b>	<b>42</b>
2.1	Assembly overview - partition, panel van	42
2.2	Assembly overview - grab handles on pillar trims	45
2.3	Assembly overview - ashtray/cup holder, rear	46
2.4	Assembly overview - sun blind	47
2.5	Removing and installing bracket for net partition	47
2.6	Removing and installing sun visor	48
2.7	Removing and installing roof grab handle	50
2.8	Removing and installing grab handles on pillar trims	51
2.9	Removing and installing partition, panel van	53
2.10	Removing and installing ashtray/cup holder, rear	55
2.11	Removing and installing sun blind	56
<b>3</b>	<b>Centre console</b>	<b>58</b>
3.1	Assembly overview - centre console	58
3.2	Removing and installing centre console cover	59
3.3	Removing and installing centre console insert	62
3.4	Removing and installing centre console front storage compartment	63
3.5	Removing and installing centre console	63
3.6	Removing and installing cup holder	65
<b>4</b>	<b>Front centre armrest</b>	<b>66</b>
4.1	Removing and installing front centre armrest	66
<b>5</b>	<b>On inside</b>	<b>68</b>
5.1	Assembly overview - interior mirror	68
5.2	Removing and installing interior mirror	70
<b>6</b>	<b>Table modules, Multivan/Business</b>	<b>76</b>
6.1	Assembly overview - table modules, table module in seat rails	76
6.2	Assembly overview - table modules, table module in side panel	79
6.3	Table module in seat rails, removing and installing table module	80
6.4	Table module in seat rails, removing and installing table top	82
6.5	Table module in seat rails, removing and installing cup holder	83
6.6	Table module in seat rails, removing and installing ashtray	84
6.7	Table module in seat rails, removing and installing drawer	85
6.8	Table module in seat rails, removing and installing front trim	86
6.9	Table module in seat rails, removing and installing rear trim	87
6.10	Table module in seat rails, removing and installing side trim with magazine rack	87
6.11	Table module in seat rails, removing and installing rollers and support	89
6.12	Removing and installing table module in sidewall	91
<b>7</b>	<b>Seat rail systems</b>	<b>96</b>
7.1	Assembly overview - seat rail systems	96
7.2	Removing and installing seat rails	99
<b>69</b>	<b>Passenger protection</b>	<b>105</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Seat belts</b>	<b>105</b>
1.1	Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt	105
1.2	Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt	108
1.3	Removing and installing front three-point seat belt	109
1.4	Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt	116
1.5	Removing and installing rear outer belt end fitting	124
1.6	Removing and installing belt height adjuster	127
1.7	Removing and installing front belt buckle	130
1.8	Removing and installing rear belt buckle	135
<b>2</b>	<b>Child seat anchors</b>	<b>142</b>
2.1	Assembly overview - front child seat anchors, Multivan/Business	142





2.2	Assembly overview - rear child seat anchors	143
<b>3</b>	<b>Airbag system</b>	<b>144</b>
3.1	Overview of fitting locations - airbag system	144
<b>4</b>	<b>Airbag control unit</b>	<b>146</b>
4.1	Assembly overview - airbag control unit	146
4.2	Removing and installing airbag control unit J234	146
<b>5</b>	<b>Driver's airbag</b>	<b>149</b>
5.1	Removing and installing airbag unit with igniter	149
5.2	Removing and installing return spring with slip ring (coil connector)	153
<b>6</b>	<b>Front passenger side airbag</b>	<b>154</b>
6.1	Removing and installing front passenger side airbag unit with igniter	154
6.2	Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag	156
<b>7</b>	<b>Side airbags</b>	<b>158</b>
7.1	Removing and installing front side airbag with igniter	158
<b>8</b>	<b>Curtain airbags</b>	<b>164</b>
8.1	Removing and installing curtain airbag with igniter	164
<b>9</b>	<b>Airbag crash sensors</b>	<b>172</b>
9.1	Overview of fitting locations - airbag crash sensors	172
9.2	Removing and installing side airbag crash sensors on driver side G179 / G180	173
9.3	Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensors on driver side G256 / G257	174
<b>70</b>	<b>Trim, insulation</b>	<b>176</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Front door trims</b>	<b>176</b>
1.1	Assembly overview - front door trim	176
1.2	Removing and installing front door trim	176
<b>2</b>	<b>Rear door trims</b>	<b>180</b>
2.1	Assembly overview - rear door trim	180
2.2	Assembly overview - sun blind for door window	186
2.3	Removing and installing rear door trim	186
2.4	Removing and installing sun blind for door window	195
<b>3</b>	<b>Dash panel</b>	<b>196</b>
3.1	Assembly overview - dash panel	196
3.2	Assembly overview - auxiliary console	199
3.3	Removing and installing dash panel end cover	199
3.4	Removing and installing dash panel trim	200
3.5	Removing and installing dash panel insert trim	203
3.6	Removing and installing loudspeaker trim	203
3.7	Removing and installing light switch trim	204
3.8	Removing and installing radio/navigation system mounting frame	205
3.9	Removing and installing mounting frame of operating unit of heater and air conditioning unit	205
3.10	Removing and installing dash panel	206
3.11	Removing and installing loudspeaker mounting	211
3.12	Removing and installing cup holder	212
3.13	Removing and installing dash panel vents	213
3.14	Removing and installing auxiliary console	215
3.15	Installing "No Airbag" sign	217
<b>4</b>	<b>Central tube for dash panel</b>	<b>219</b>
4.1	Assembly overview - central tube for dash panel	219
4.2	Removing and installing central tube for dash panel	220
<b>5</b>	<b>Interior trims</b>	<b>224</b>
5.1	Removing and installing sill panel moulding	224
5.2	Removing and installing A-pillar trim	229
5.3	Removing and installing B-pillar trim	231



5.4	Removing and installing C-pillar trim	237
5.5	Removing and installing D-pillar trim	240
5.6	Removing and installing side trim	242
5.7	Removing and installing floor covering	243
<b>6</b>	<b>Luggage compartment trims</b>	<b>251</b>
6.1	Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim	251
6.2	Assembly overview - upper rear lid trim	253
6.3	Removing and installing lower rear lid trim	253
6.4	Removing and installing upper rear lid trim	257
6.5	Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim	259
6.6	Removing and installing luggage compartment floor	264
6.7	Removing and installing lock carrier trim	266
6.8	Removing and installing fastening rings	270
<b>7</b>	<b>Roof trims</b>	<b>277</b>
7.1	Assembly overview – moulded headliner	277
7.2	Removing and installing roof end strip	279
7.3	Removing and installing moulded headlining	280
<b>72</b>	<b>Seat frames</b>	<b>285</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Overview of seat variants</b>	<b>285</b>
1.1	Overview of fitting locations - seat variants	285
<b>2</b>	<b>Front seats</b>	<b>287</b>
2.1	Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components	287
2.2	Assembly overview - front seat	288
2.3	Assembly overview – front backrest	292
2.4	Assembly overview - head restraint	296
2.5	Assembly overview - seat pan	296
2.6	Removing and installing front seat	300
2.7	Retrofitting double bench seat	314
2.8	Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter	317
2.9	Removing and installing handle for seat height adjustment	318
2.10	Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit	319
2.11	Removing and installing trim, front seat	319
2.12	Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit	331
2.13	Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125 / V126 / V129 / V130	333
2.14	Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit	335
2.15	Removing and handle for installing backrest adjustment	335
2.16	Removing and installing front backrest	336
2.17	Removing and installing head restraint guide	344
2.18	Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit, memory setting, lumbar support	344
2.19	Removing and installing seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory J136	345
<b>3</b>	<b>Rear seats</b>	<b>347</b>
3.1	Assembly overview - bench seat/individual seats	347
3.2	Assembly overview - head restraint, Multivan/Business	360
3.3	Removing and installing bench seat/individual seats	361
3.4	Removing and installing rear seat backrest	369
3.5	Removing and installing centre armrest	380
3.6	Trims of individual seat in 2nd row, Multivan/Business	384
<b>4</b>	<b>Rear seats, Business</b>	<b>394</b>
4.1	Assembly overview - pneumatic lumbar support	394
4.2	Removing and installing bench seat	396
4.3	Removing and installing seat	401
4.4	Removing and installing	403



4.5	Removing and installing head restraint	406
4.6	Removing and installing trim for head restraint adjuster	408
4.7	Removing and installing backrest trim	411
4.8	Removing and installing upper trim of front bench seat	412
4.9	Removing and installing lower trim of front bench seat	414
4.10	Removing and installing upper trim of rear bench seat	415
4.11	Removing and installing lower trim of rear bench seat	416
4.12	Removing and installing seat adjustment control element	418
4.13	Removing and installing control element bracket	424
4.14	Removing and installing seat belt	426
4.15	Removing and installing belt buckle	430
4.16	Removing and installing centre console cover	431
<b>74</b>	<b>Seat - padding, covers</b>	<b>432</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Front seat covers and padding</b>	<b>432</b>
1.1	Assembly overview - seat heating element	432
1.2	Assembly overview - backrest heater element	435
1.3	Removing and installing cover and padding for seat pan	436
1.4	Removing and installing backrest cover and backrest padding	444
1.5	Separating cover and padding on seat pan	450
1.6	Separating cover and padding on backrest	450
1.7	Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8	452
1.8	Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9	455
<b>2</b>	<b>Rear seat covers and padding</b>	<b>460</b>
2.1	Removing and installing covers and padding	460
2.2	Separating cover and padding	477
<b>3</b>	<b>Rear seat covers and padding, Business</b>	<b>513</b>
3.1	Removing and installing seat cover and padding	513
3.2	Removing and installing backrest cover and padding	518





## 00 – Technical data

### 1 Safety information

(VRL014087; Edition 03.2020)



#### WARNING

*If the vehicle has been converted by ABT e-Line, it is possible that the repair instructions provided below are no longer valid.*

- *In this case, please always refer to the repair instructions from ABT e-Line, available in ElsaPro in the tab "Superstructures and modifications".*



- ⇒ "1.1 Safety measures when working on vehicles with a start/stop system", page 2
- ⇒ "1.2 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test", page 3
- ⇒ "1.3 Safety measures when working with pyrotechnic components", page 3
- ⇒ "1.27 Safety precautions when working on a high-voltage system", page 15
- ⇒ "1.26 Safety precautions when working in vicinity of high-voltage components", page 15
- ⇒ "1.4 Storage, transportation and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components)", page 5
- ⇒ "1.5 Additional safety regulations for side airbag", page 5
- ⇒ "1.6 Safety instructions for airbag", page 6
- ⇒ "1.7 Additional safety instructions for curtain airbag", page 6
- ⇒ "1.8 Deactivating the airbag", page 7
- ⇒ "1.9 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbags", page 7
- ⇒ "1.10 Additional safety instructions for repair work on seat occupied recognition for front passenger airbag deactivation - country-specific", page 8
- ⇒ "1.11 Measures for seat occupied recognition for front passenger airbag deactivation following an accident - country-specific", page 9
- ⇒ "1.12 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system after an accident", page 9
- ⇒ "1.13 Checking airbag securing parts after an accident", page 10
- ⇒ "1.14 Accident without airbag triggering", page 11
- ⇒ "1.15 Seat belts", page 11
- ⇒ "1.16 Checking seat belts", page 11
- ⇒ "1.17 Check belt webbing", page 12
- ⇒ "1.18 Checking inertia reel (locking mechanism)", page 12
- ⇒ "1.19 Visually checking belt buckle", page 13
- ⇒ "1.20 Check operation of belt buckle", page 13
- ⇒ "1.21 Checking belt relays, and buckle tongues", page 13
- ⇒ "1.22 Checking securing parts and anchorage points after an accident", page 14
- ⇒ "1.23 Checking seat belt restraint function of seat belt for holding additional child seats (not for driver seat belt) - country-specific", page 14
- ⇒ "1.24 Checking child seat anchors after an accident", page 14
- ⇒ "1.25 Safety instructions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror", page 15

## **1.1 Safety measures when working on vehicles with a start/stop system**



Observe the following when working on vehicles with a start/stop system:



**WARNING**

*Injury hazard as a result of automatic engine start in vehicles with start/stop system*

- ◆ *In vehicles with an activated start/stop system (indicated by a message in the dash panel insert), the engine may start automatically.*
- ◆ *When working on the vehicle, always make sure that the start/stop system is deactivated (switch off the ignition; switch the ignition on again if necessary).*

## 1.2 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test



**WARNING**

*Risk of injury from unsecured testing and measuring instruments*

*When the front passenger airbag is triggered in an accident, insufficiently secured testing and measuring instruments become dangerous projectiles.*

- ◆ *Secure testing and measuring instruments on the rear seat or*
- ◆ *have a second person operate the test and measuring equipment on the rear seat.*

## 1.3 Safety measures when working with pyrotechnic components



**WARNING**

*Pyrotechnic components can trigger unintentionally.*

- ◆ *Risk of injury.*
- ◆ *Discharge any static electricity in body by briefly touching door striker plate.*

The following are pyrotechnic components:

- ◆ Airbag units
- ◆ Belt tensioner
- ◆ Belt force limiters (depending on vehicle equipment level)
- ◆ Battery isolation elements (depending on vehicle equipment level)
- ◆ Trigger for pedestrian protection

### General notes

- ◆ Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.



- ◆ There are no replacement intervals for airbag units.
- ◆ Under no circumstances should checks be carried out with a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components may only be checked in installed state and with vehicle diagnosis, testing and information systems approved by the manufacturer.
- ◆ When working on pyrotechnic components and airbag control unit - J234- , battery earth strap must be disconnected with ignition switched ON. Then, cover the negative terminal.
- ◆ A waiting time of 10 seconds is necessary after disconnecting the battery.
- ◆ Battery must be connected with ignition SWITCHED ON. When doing this, there should be no-one inside the vehicle.
- ◆ If the ignition is not switched on after reconnecting the battery, the ignition may only be switched on (key/button) from the driver's seat with the seat set in the rearmost position.
- ◆ Observe required procedures after connecting battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, for example before separating an electrical connection, the mechanic must electrostatically discharge himself/herself. Electrostatic discharge is achieved by touching earthed metallic parts, such as the door striker plate.
- ◆ Wash hands after coming into contact with triggered pyrotechnic components of restraint system.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must not be opened or repaired; always use new parts (risk of injury).
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components that have been dropped onto a hard surface or show signs of damage must not be installed in a vehicle.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must be installed immediately after they have been removed from their packaging.
- ◆ If work is interrupted, the pyrotechnic component must be stored back in its packaging.
- ◆ Leaving the pyrotechnic component unattended is prohibited.
- ◆ When connecting pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, only the person carrying out the work may be inside the vehicle.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must not come into contact with grease, cleaning solution or similar.
- ◆ The airbag unit must be renewed if any contamination such as oil, grease, paint or solvent penetrates the fabric.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must not be subjected to temperatures above 100°C, even for short periods.

#### **Special instructions for driver and front passenger airbags**

- ◆ Removed driver and front passenger airbag units must be stored with padded side upwards.

It is essential to carry out work in the following sequence when renewing airbag units:

- 1 - Remove old airbag unit and place to one side with padded side upwards.





- 2 - Remove new airbag unit from transport packaging and place to one side with padded side upwards.
- 3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in transport packaging.
- 4 - Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

#### Special instructions for belt tensioners

- ◆ Belt tensioner units must be handled with extreme caution during removal and installation. If handled incorrectly, there is a high risk of injury and damage in relation to the belt tensioner units.
- ◆ Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) must be renewed.
- ◆ Never point open end of belt tensioner at another person.
- ◆ When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical parts (including those of the 3-point seat belt) must be properly attached. If connection of the belt tensioner unit is hindered due to tight conditions, the belt strap must be rolled up completely before connecting. In this case there is no heightened risk of safety as long as the additional safety instructions are heeded. Essentially this is aimed at battery disconnection and electrostatic discharge of the fitter prior to connection of the belt tensioner unit.
- ◆ Depending on the crash intensity, it is possible that the belt tensioner was triggered but the belt force limiter did NOT ignite. These parts are to be treated as unignited components!

### 1.4 Storage, transportation and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components)

- ◆ Storage must comply with the relevant national legislation.
- ◆ Transportation is subject to national and international regulations that govern packaging, marking, labelling and freight documentation in detail.
- ◆ Untriggered pyrotechnic components must be disposed of correctly in the original packaging in accordance with national legislation. Contact your importer if in any doubt.
- ◆ Only completely ignited pyrotechnic components may be disposed of through the commercial waste system.



#### WARNING

- ◆ *This does not apply to belt tensioners which are operated by a Wankel type pump. Those must be disposed of like pyrotechnic components which were not triggered (e.g. airbags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery isolators).*
- ◆ *Reason: On belt tensioners which are operated by a Wankel type pump it is not possible to verify, using workshop means, if all igniters have been triggered.*

### 1.5 Additional safety regulations for side airbag

- ◆ The use of genuine seat covers is recommended.
- ◆ Under no circumstances may seat covers be fitted which have not been specifically approved for use on Volkswagen seats with side airbags.



- ◆ The foam padding in the seat backrest must not be cut away in the vicinity of the side airbag.
- ◆ When installing, make sure the seam for the side airbag is straight.
- ◆ All upholstery clips (metal and plastic clips) must be renewed.
- ◆ The use of genuine upholstery clips is recommended.
- ◆ When installing, all upholstery clips must be fitted in the same positions as the original ones.
- ◆ If the seat cover fabric is damaged (tears, burn marks, etc.) in the vicinity of the side airbag, the cover must always be replaced for safety reasons, as otherwise the side airbag will not inflate properly.
- ◆ Repairs may not be carried out on the backrest cover in the area of the side airbag (because of the special thread and precisely defined seam).
- ◆ Always renew the backrest padding after the side airbags have been triggered.
- ◆ All damaged components must be renewed after an accident. The original airbag unit can still be used if no signs of damage are found.
- ◆ If side airbag units are renewed, the sticker for the airbag number must be removed from the new side airbag unit and stuck over the old sticker on the seat pan.
- ◆ Never poke upholstery needles or any other sharp objects through the seat cover fabric in the vicinity of the airbag, seat occupied sensor, front passenger side - G128- and the seat occupied sensor mat.

## 1.6 Safety instructions for airbag

- ◆ Removed driver and front passenger airbag units must be stored with padded side upwards.

It is essential to carry out work in the following sequence when renewing airbag units:

- 1 - Remove old airbag unit and place to one side with padded side upwards.
- 2 - Remove new airbag unit from transport packaging and place to one side with padded side upwards.
- 3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in transport packaging.
- 4 - Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

## 1.7 Additional safety instructions for curtain airbag

- ◆ Inspect trims for damage prior to installing them.
- ◆ Repair work on trims is not permissible (upper A-pillar trim, B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and D-pillar trim).
- ◆ Ensure proper seating of trims when installing them.
- ◆ When performing repair work behind the curtain airbag, always remove the entire module.
- ◆ To prevent any potential damage during removal and installation, curtain airbags must be handled with extreme caution.
- ◆ Place removed curtain airbag modules in packaging or on a clean, flat surface on a cover.



- ◆ After body repairs in vicinity of curtain airbag, check body for weld spray droplets, deformations and areas of chafing (compare with opposite side if necessary).
- ◆ Until gas generator is screwed in place, always hold it firmly by hand when handling (transportation, removal and installation etc.).
- ◆ Never twist, kink, throw, shake, pull, hang, squeeze, press, pinch or clamp any curtain airbag modules.
- ◆ Folding is acceptable as long as no damage is caused (in particular to the protective sleeve).

## 1.8 Deactivating the airbag



### WARNING

*The prerequisites for deactivating one or more airbag units have been published in the "Technical Service Handbook".*

*Airbags and belt tensioners are important elements of a vehicle's safety concept. These systems should therefore only be switched off in exceptional circumstances.*

*A DISS request must always be created for any deactivation.*

*Any deactivation of the airbag units is subject to compulsory registration.*

*Failure to comply means that the workshop responsible will bear full responsibility for subsequent damage and costs.*

*Ensure when deactivating that the customer is made aware of the vehicle's status. The customer must also be informed that he will be unable to claim against the manufacturer for damages resulting from accidents in which injuries could have been prevented with the airbags. The customer bears sole responsibility for the conversion.*

*Please observe the procedure in the workshop manual in all instances.*

In the "Technical Service Handbook", the "Procedure ID" or the "Technical solution number" for the deactivation of airbag units is: "2022327/2".

Or search for "Deactivating airbag units" or "Deactivating airbag".

### ElsaPro:

- Technical service handbook
- Service information
- Passenger protection, pedestrian protection
- Deactivation of airbag units/child seat, seat installation etc.

## 1.9 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbags

The side airbag crash sensors respond to changes in pressure and must therefore be treated with particular caution. Observe the following:

- ◆ The correct installation position is vitally important: install only in the specified location in the doors.
- ◆ Protect the crash sensor against mechanical shocks and impacts: any crash sensors which have been dropped must no



longer be used. Remove the crash sensor when carrying out bodywork on the door.

- ◆ The crash sensor is matched to the volume of air inside the door: deformation of the door, resulting in a reduction in the air space in the door, impairs the function of the crash sensor.
- ◆ Avoid any major soiling of the crash sensor: do not use compressed air in the vicinity of the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensor against swarf from filing or drilling (example, during retrofitting of door speakers). Do not use cavity sealants or spray oil in the vicinity of the crash sensor.
- ◆ Protect against heat/cold: avoid heat effects, for example during spray painting or other body shop operations. The crash sensors must not be exposed to temperatures below -40°C (for example in non-air-conditioned aircraft holds).
- ◆ The crash sensor must be protected against humidity during storage and installation.

For the crash sensor to function properly, it is vital to ensure that the door forms an effective seal after being fitted. Observe the following:

- ◆ All components (e.g. cover, speakers, door trim) must be correctly fitted.
- ◆ The door trim retaining clips seal the system. If necessary, renew retaining clips.

## **1.10 Additional safety instructions for repair work on seat occupied recognition for front passenger airbag deactivation - country-specific**

- ◆ Basic setting of seat occupied recognition control unit must be performed after each repair to front passenger seat in which the seat and/or the backrest cover was »detached« ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- ◆ The mat of the seat recognition sensor must not be kinked.
- ◆ A leaky mat must be renewed (repair kit).
- ◆ The pressure hose of the mat must not be kinked.
- ◆ The components of the seat occupied recognition (repair kit) must not fall on hard surfaces, come into contact with grease or be damaged by pointed/sharp objects.
- ◆ The mat, the fleece and all other covers must fitted without folds/creases.
- ◆ During installation, care must be taken to install seat padding and seat cover in correct installation position.
- ◆ Renew all upholstery clips or other clips and ensure they are positioned correctly on the seat.
- ◆ The basic setting of the system is only possible between temperatures of 0°C and +40°C for the airbags 8.R and 9.\*. For airbag 10.\* the basic setting of the system is only possible between temperatures of 5°C and 35°C.
- ◆ Ensure that no object is on the seat before and/or during the basic settings.
- ◆ The use of additional items on the seat, such as cushions or similar, impairs the functioning of the seat occupied recognition system and can therefore prevent the airbag system from functioning correctly.



### **1.11 Measures for seat occupied recognition for front passenger airbag deactivation following an accident - country-specific**

- ◆ Whenever an airbag or belt tensioner has been triggered, basic setting of seat occupied recognition control unit must always be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- ◆ If the seat rail and/or seat pan are replaced due to deformation after an accident, the seat occupied recognition system must be replaced by the "seat occupied recognition repair kit". After that, perform "basic settings" of seat occupied recognition control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

### **1.12 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system after an accident**

#### **Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic tester

#### **The airbag control unit must be renewed:**

- ◆ In the event of a front passenger airbag deployment.
- ◆ After side airbag, driver/front passenger airbag or belt tensioner deployments
- ◆ In the event of damage to the housing
- ◆ In the event of deformation to the tunnel within a 200 mm radius of the control unit

#### **Always renew the following:**

- ◆ All triggered airbag units.
- ◆ Battery isolation igniter - N253-

#### **Additionally, in the event of the front passenger airbag being triggered:**

- ◆ Dash panel
- ◆ Supports for front passenger airbag unit which have been bent out of shape (must not be bent back into shape)
- ◆ All sensors for front airbag at front end
- ◆ Remaining sensors for lateral acceleration in event of deformation of attachment points in vicinity of sensors

#### **Additionally, in the event of the driver airbag being triggered:**

- ◆ Return spring with slip ring
- ◆ All sensors for front airbag at front end
- ◆ Remaining sensors for lateral acceleration in event of deformation of attachment points in vicinity of sensors

#### **Additionally, in the event of the side airbag being triggered:**

- ◆ Pressure sensors on the triggered side
- ◆ Lateral acceleration sensors on the side affected
- ◆ Seat cover
- ◆ Padding
- ◆ In case of foldable backrest: padding of lateral seat bolster (if fitted)



- ◆ Remaining sensors for lateral acceleration in event of deformation of attachment points in vicinity of sensors

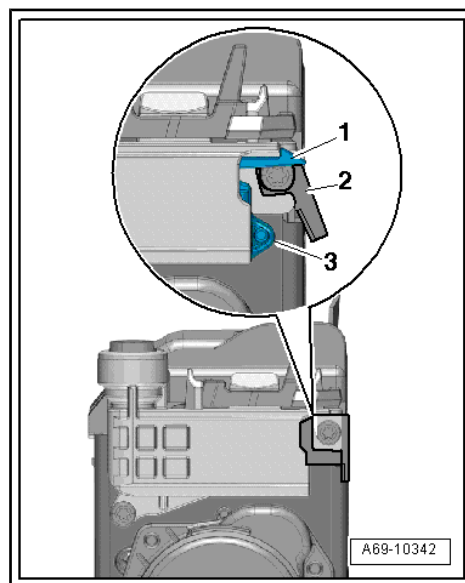
**Additionally:**

- ◆ All belt inertia reels with triggered belt tensioners
- ◆ All belt inertia reels with triggered belt tensioners
- ◆ Belt buckles for all belt inertia reels with triggered belt tensioners
- ◆ Belt adjuster (mechanical and electrical) for all belt inertia reels with triggered belt tensioners
- If you suspect that belt tensioners or belt force limiters have been triggered, connect a vehicle diagnostic tester .
- Under “15 - Airbag” in »Guided Fault Finding« check whether there is a crash entry logged for the airbag control unit.
- At the same time check whether the “Resistance too high” fault is also logged for belt tensioners and/or belt force limiters. Triggered belt tensioners and/or belt force limiters have to meet both conditions. “Prerequisite: The airbag control unit has not yet been renewed”.



**Note**

- ◆ *The “Resistance too high” fault can also be logged in the event of a cable break. Under normal circumstances, no crash entry is then logged.*
- ◆ *Depending on the crash intensity, it is possible that the belt tensioner was triggered but not the belt force limiter. In this case, observe notes on disposal of pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 5](#) .*
- ◆ *In addition, note the section: Checking seat belts ⇒ [page 12](#) .*
- ◆ *Deployed belt force limiters can be identified by the following features:*
- ◆ *The pin -1- and lug -3- have popped out of the belt force limiter housing on the belt inertia reel.*
- ◆ *The strap -2- is no longer vertical but is pointing diagonally outwards.*
- If parts of the belt system are removed because of an accident, the belt system bolts must be renewed.
- In addition, the following must also be replaced if necessary (visual check): all damaged components.



## 1.13 Checking airbag securing parts after an accident

**All damaged securing parts must always be renewed. It is not permissible to bend the components back into shape or »make them fit«.**

The following components must be checked after the relevant airbag has been triggered.

**In the event of the front passenger airbag being triggered:**

- ◆ Central tube for dash panel; it must be possible to install the supports for the front passenger airbag and front passenger airbag unit tension-free. Otherwise the central tube must also be renewed.



- ◆ Check the glove compartment for damage. If damaged, it must be renewed.

#### **In the event of the driver airbag being triggered:**

- ◆ Steering wheel: remove the steering wheel and place on a flat surface together with the steering collar. The full face of the steering collar must be in contact with the flat surface. Otherwise the steering wheel must be renewed.
- ◆ Check steering wheel for smoke residue. If any smoke residues are found, the steering wheel must be renewed.

### **1.14 Accident without airbag triggering**

- ◆ If the airbag warning lamp - K75- does not indicate a fault, there is no requirement to replace pyrotechnic components. The seat belts should be checked separately.

### **1.15 Seat belts**

- ◆ Belt tensioner units must be handled with extreme caution during removal and installation. If handled incorrectly, there is a high risk of injury and damage in relation to the belt tensioner units.
- ◆ Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) always must be renewed.
- ◆ Never point open end of belt tensioner at another person.
- ◆ When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical parts (including those of the 3-point seat belt) must be properly attached. If connection of the belt tensioner unit is hindered due to tight conditions, the belt strap must be rolled up completely before connecting. In this case there is no heightened risk of safety as long as the additional safety instructions are heeded. Essentially this is aimed at battery disconnection and electrostatic discharge of the fitter prior to connection of the belt tensioner unit.
- ◆ Depending on the crash intensity, it is possible that the belt tensioner was triggered but the belt force limiter did NOT ignite. These parts are to be treated as unignited components!

### **1.16 Checking seat belts**



#### **WARNING**

*The seat belt system must be inspected systematically after every accident! If damage is determined at any of the points to be checked, customer must be informed regarding necessity of changing belts.*

#### **Points to check**

- ◆ Check inertia reel (locking mechanism) ⇒ [page 12](#) .
- ◆ Visually check belt buckle ⇒ [page 13](#) .
- ◆ Check operation of belt buckle ⇒ [page 13](#) .
- ◆ Check belt guide fittings and latch plates ⇒ [page 13](#) .
- ◆ Check securing parts and anchorage points ⇒ [page 14](#) .



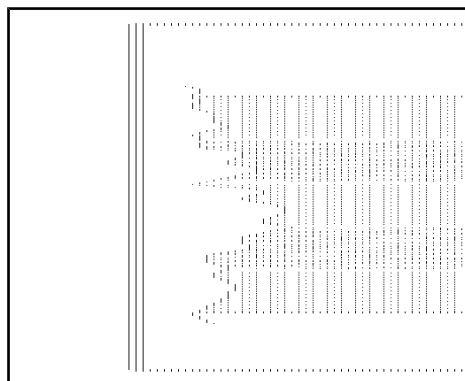
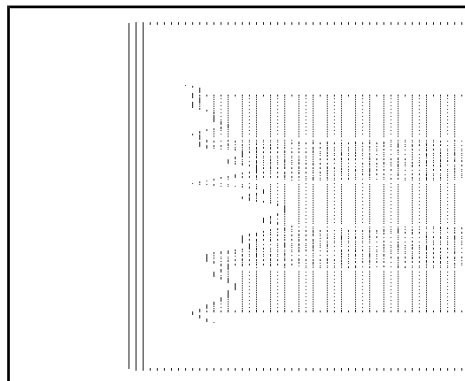
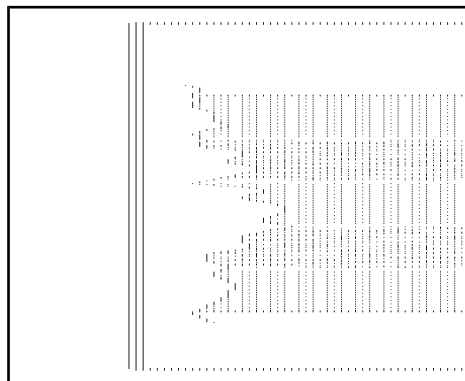
#### Caution

*If the customer refuses to have a damaged seat belt renewed, an appropriate comment should be made in the service notes.*

## 1.17 Check belt webbing

### Procedure

- Pull belt completely out of inertia reel or lap belt adjustment plate.
- Check belt webbing for soiling, and if necessary wash with a mild soapy solution ⇒ Owner's Manual .



- If either of the types of damage illustrated below (1 and 2) are determined on accident vehicle, renew entire seat belt together with belt buckle.
- If damage as illustrated under points 1, 2 or 3 is determined on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to renew damaged belt only.
- 1 - Belt webbing cut, torn or chafed.
- 2 - Torn webbing loops on belt edge.
- 3 - Burns caused by cigarettes or similar.

## 1.18 Checking inertia reel (locking mechanism)

The inertia reel has two locking functions.

- ◆ The first locking function is triggered by the belt being jerked out of the reel (belt extension acceleration).





### Test 1

- Pull belt out of inertia reel with firm jerk.
- Will not lock - renew seat belt complete with buckle.
- If difficulties are experienced when belt is extended or retracted, first check whether position of inertia reel has been altered.
- The second locking function is triggered by a change in vehicle speed (vehicle-dependent locking function).

### Test 2



#### WARNING

*For safety reasons, the road test should be carried out on a traffic-free stretch to ensure that other road users are not endangered.*

- Put on seat belt.
- Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then carry out emergency braking with foot brake.
- If seat belt is not locked by locking mechanism during braking procedure, renew seat belt complete with buckle.

## 1.19 Visually checking belt buckle

- Inspect belt buckle for cracks and chips.
- If damage is determined, renew seat belt complete with belt buckle.

## 1.20 Check operation of belt buckle

### Checking belt buckle

- Push buckle tongue into belt buckle until it engages audibly. Check whether locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling firmly on belt webbing.
- If buckle tongue fails even once to engage properly in belt buckle during at least 5 tests, renew seat belt complete with belt buckle.

### Checking release mechanism

- Release seat belt by pressing button on belt buckle with finger pressure. When belt is slack, latch plate must spring out of belt buckle on its own.
- Carry out test at least 5 times. If buckle tongue fails even once to spring out of buckle, renew seat belt complete with belt buckle.



#### WARNING

*Under no circumstances whatsoever may lubricant be used to eliminate noise or stiffness in belt buckle buttons.*

## 1.21 Checking belt relays, and buckle tongues

Plastic-coated fittings show fine, parallel scoring after stress on belt system (when belt was fastened during accident). (On the



other hand, wear caused by frequent belt use can be recognized by smooth wear, free of lines.)

- Inspect for deformation, fracturing and cracks in plastic.
- If scoring and/or damage is determined, renew seat belt complete with belt latch.

## 1.22 Checking securing parts and anchorage points after an accident

- ◆ Latch plate deformed (stretched)
- ◆ Height adjustment does not function.
- ◆ Anchorage points (seat, pillars, underbody) distorted or thread damaged
- If damage is determined on these parts, renew seat belt complete with belt buckle.
- If parts of the belt system are removed because of an accident, the belt system bolts must be renewed.
- Renew anchorage points.



### Note

*In the case of damage resulting not from an accident but, for example, from wear, only the part which is actually damaged need be renewed.*

## 1.23 Checking seat belt restraint function of seat belt for holding additional child seats (not for driver seat belt) - country-specific

For the functional check, all seat belt components including the side panel trim must be installed.

### Activating the restraint function

- ◆ Pull out seat belt webbing completely to stop.

### Correct function

- ◆ The belt must retract with an audible noise.
- ◆ If the belt retraction is stopped, it should not be possible to pull the belt out again until the function is deactivated.

### Deactivating

- ◆ Allow the belt to retract as far as approx. the last 100 mm.
- ◆ The restraint function must switch off at the latest when 100 mm of the seat belt webbing are still pulled out. The belt then works normally again.

If the seat belt restraint function for holding additional child seats does not work properly, the seat belt must be renewed.

## 1.24 Checking child seat anchors after an accident

### Points to check

- ◆ Child seat anchors must be checked for damage and deformation after an accident.



- ◆ Child seat anchors welded to the body or the seats/backrests or bolted in place may not be repaired or straightened.
- ◆ Child seat anchors bolted to the body or the seats/backrests must be renewed in the event of damage or deformation.
- ◆ The child seat anchor bolts must be renewed if the bracket is damaged.

## 1.25 Safety instructions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror



### WARNING

- ◆ *The mirror glass is made of several layers and contains an electrolyte to achieve the dimming functionality. Beware of liquid electrolyte which runs out of a broken mirror glass.*
- ◆ *The liquid electrolyte can irritate skin, eyes and respiratory organs.*
- ◆ *If liquid electrolyte got into your eyes or onto the skin, wash it immediately with plenty of water. If the irritation continues, seek advice from a doctor immediately.*



### Caution

*If liquid electrolyte which ran out of a broken mirror glass comes in contact with plastic surfaces, the surfaces will be damaged. Wipe off spilled electrolyte immediately using clear water and a sponge.*

## 1.26 Safety precautions when working in vicinity of high-voltage components

### Danger to life due to high voltage

The high-voltage system is under high voltage. Damage to high-voltage components will result in severe or fatal injury from electric shock.

- Perform visual check of high-voltage components and high-voltage cables.
- Never use cutting or forming tools, or any other sharp-edged tools.
- Never use heat sources such as welding, brazing, soldering, hot air or thermal bonding equipment.

## 1.27 Safety precautions when working on a high-voltage system

### Danger to life due to high voltage

The high-voltage system is under high voltage. Severe or fatal injury due to electric shock.

- Persons with life-preserving or other electronic medical devices in or on their body must not perform any work on the high-voltage system. Such medical devices include internal analgesic pumps, implanted defibrillators, pacemakers, insulin pumps and hearing aids.



- The high-voltage system must be de-energised by a suitably qualified technician.

#### **Risk of injury from engine starting unexpectedly**

On electric and hybrid vehicles, the operational readiness of the vehicle is difficult to detect. There is a risk of parts of the body becoming trapped or drawn in.

- Switch off ignition.
- Always store the ignition key outside the vehicle.

#### **Risk of damage to high-voltage cables**

Improper handling of high-voltage cables or high-voltage connectors may result in damage to their insulation.

- Never support yourself on high-voltage cables or high-voltage connectors.
- Never rest tools on high-voltage cables or high-voltage connectors.
- Never kink or sharply bend high-voltage cables.
- Always connect high-voltage connectors according to coding.

#### **Risk of injury from activated stationary air conditioning**

On electric and hybrid vehicles with active stationary air conditioning, the stationary air conditioning could switch on unintentionally. Risk of limbs becoming trapped or drawn in by the radiator fan starting automatically.

- Deactivate the stationary air conditioning.



## 2 Repair notes



### WARNING

*If the vehicle has been converted by ABT e-Line, it is possible that the repair instructions provided below are no longer valid.*

- *In this case, please always refer to the repair instructions from ABT e-Line, available in ElsaPro in the tab "Superstructures and modifications".*

⇒ ["2.1 General repair instructions", page 17](#)

⇒ ["2.2 Contact corrosion", page 17](#)

⇒ ["2.3 Routing and attachment of lines", page 18](#)

### 2.1 General repair instructions

- ◆ Repairing wiring harnesses and connectors ⇒ Electrical system, General information; Rep. gr. 97 ; Wiring harness and connector repair .
- ◆ Releasing and dismantling connector housings ⇒ Electrical system, General information; Rep. gr. 97 ; Wiring harness and connector repair; Releasing and dismantling contact housings .
- ◆ Cleaning contact surfaces ⇒ Electrical system, General information; Rep. gr. 97 ; Repair case - VAS 6410- .
- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems ⇒ Electrical system, General information; Rep. gr. 97 ; Vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems .

### 2.2 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fastening elements (screws, bolts, nuts, washers) are used.

For this reason, only connecting elements with a special surface coating have been fitted.

In addition, rubber, plastic and adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

In case of doubt about the reusability of parts renew them ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA) .

#### Observe the following:

- ◆ It is recommended to use genuine parts which are tested and compatible with aluminium.
- ◆ The use of VW parts is recommended.
- ◆ Damage resulting from contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.



## 2.3 Routing and attachment of lines



### WARNING

#### *Risk of damage to lines*

*Lines may become damaged by moving or hot components.*

- ◆ *Route lines in their original positions.*
- ◆ *Ensure there is sufficient clearance to moving or hot components.*



### Note

- ◆ *If electrical wires are disconnected or removed and installed, it is useful to make corresponding drawings or photos. This guarantees that everything is re-installed in its original position.*
- ◆ *Secure the electrical connectors which are routed through installation openings using a wire or cord so that the electrical connector can be guided through the installation opening during installation. Otherwise, the electrical connector may be out of reach after installing.*
- ◆ *When using release tool - T10236- or removal lever - 80 - 200- the wires can be removed more easily.*
- ◆ *Note wiring harnesses when removing components. Excessive tensile stress may cause damage.*
- ◆ *Before installing, all securing elements and attachments must be checked for signs of wear and renewed as necessary.*
- ◆ *Route all of the various lines and electrical wiring in such a way that they are restored to their original positions and the wiring harnesses are not crushed.*
- ◆ *Fit all cable ties and other fasteners for wiring harness in the same places from which they were detached or cut.*
- ◆ *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*



### 3 Hazard classification of high-voltage system



#### WARNING

*The vehicle's high-voltage system and high-voltage battery are dangerous and can cause burns or other injuries and even lead to a fatal electric shock.*

- *Any work on the high-voltage system, or on systems which could be indirectly affected by it, may only be carried out by properly trained and qualified expert personnel.*
- *If there are any questions or there is any doubt regarding the terms "high-voltage technician" or "high-voltage expert", likewise if there are any questions about the high-voltage system, the responsible importer must be contacted before starting any work.*
- *Any repair work must be performed in accordance with applicable laws and regulations, the recognised engineering practices, any relevant accident prevention regulations (in Germany, including but not limited to the Information of the German Social Accident Insurance (DGUV) 200-005 – Qualification training for work on vehicles with high-voltage systems), as well as this workshop manual.*

#### Procedure for vehicles electrified by ABT e-Line

Please observe the Workshop Manuals available in ElsaPro, tab "Superstructures and modifications".

If there is no access to ElsaPro, the relevant manuals can be requested from ABT e-Line.



## 68 – Interior equipment

### 1 Compartments/covers

⇒ [“1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers”, page 20](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Assembly overview - driver side dash panel cover”, page 23](#)

⇒ [“1.3 Assembly overview - steering column trim”, page 24](#)

⇒ [“1.4 Assembly overview - glove compartment”, page 25](#)

⇒ [“1.5 Assembly overview - storage compartment in headliner”, page 26](#)

⇒ [“1.6 Removing and installing dash panel cover on driver side”, page 28](#)

⇒ [“1.7 Removing and installing dash panel insert trim”, page 29](#)

⇒ [“1.8 Removing and installing upper steering column trim”, page 29](#)

⇒ [“1.9 Removing and installing lower steering column trim”, page 30](#)

⇒ [“1.10 Removing and installing footwell cover”, page 31](#)

⇒ [“1.11 Removing and installing glove compartment opener”, page 31](#)

⇒ [“1.12 Removing and installing glove compartment”, page 32](#)

⇒ [“1.13 Removing and installing dash panel compartment”, page 33](#)

⇒ [“1.14 Removing and installing headliner storage compartment”, page 36](#)

#### 1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers

⇒ [“1.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers, Multivan”, page 20](#)

⇒ [“1.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers, Transporter”, page 22](#)

##### 1.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers, Multivan





## 1 - Dash panel

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 206](#)

## 2 - Gap cover for dash panel insert

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 29](#)

## 3 - Upper steering column trim

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 29](#)

## 4 - Dash panel insert trim

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 203](#)

## 5 - Centre dash panel compartment

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 33](#)

## 6 - Right dash panel compartment

- ☐ Version with lid
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 33](#)

## 7 - Dash panel end cover

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 199](#)

## 8 - Dash panel trim panel

- ☐ Above glove compartment
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 200](#)

## 9 - Glove compartment

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 32](#)

## 10 - Front passenger side footwell cover

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 31](#)

## 11 - Storage compartment in centre console

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 63](#)

## 12 - Cup holder

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 65](#)

## 13 - Centre console insert

- ☐ As bottle holder in this example
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 62](#)

## 14 - Dash panel trim panel

- ☐ On right next to steering wheel
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 200](#)

## 15 - Lower steering column trim

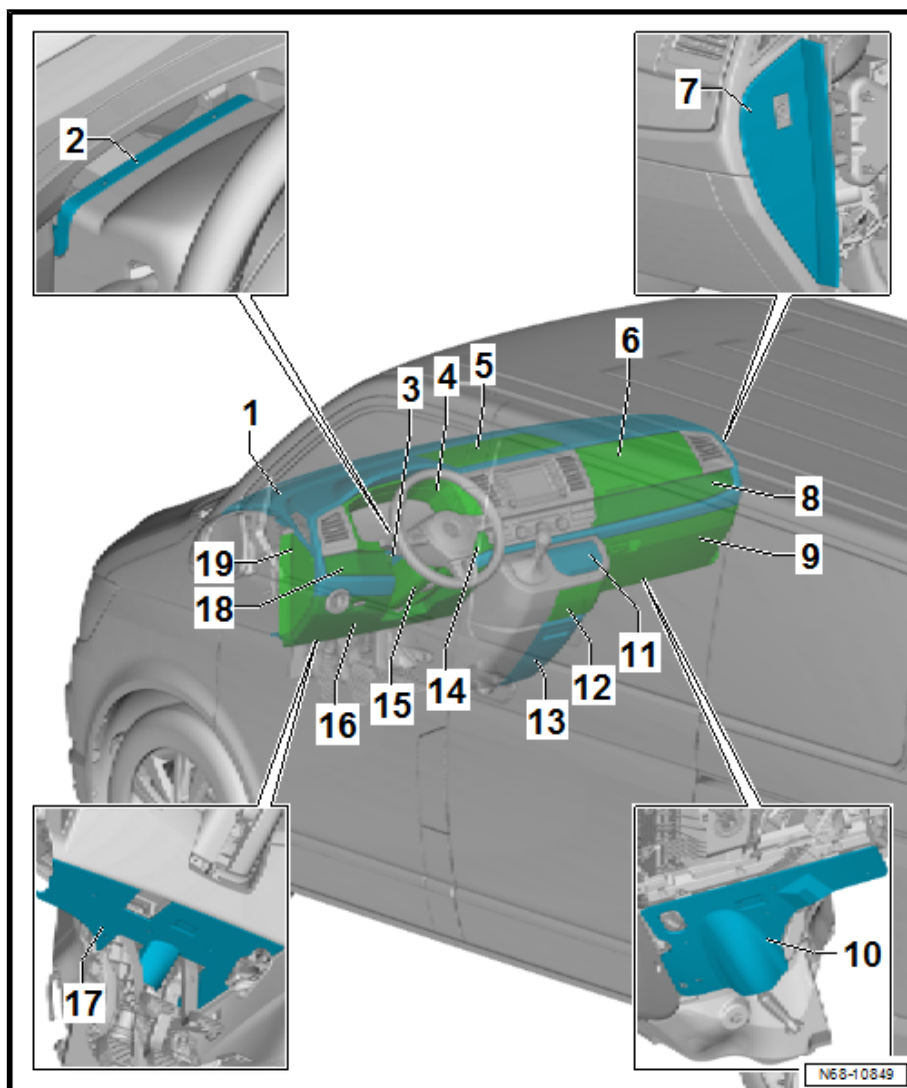
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 30](#)

## 16 - Driver side dash panel cover

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 28](#)

## 17 - Driver side footwell cover

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 31](#)



## 18 - Dash panel trim panel

- ☐ On left next to steering wheel
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 200](#)

## 19 - Dash panel end cover

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 199](#)

## 1.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers, Transporter

### 1 - Dash panel

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 206](#)

### 2 - Gap cover for dash panel insert

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 29](#)

### 3 - Upper steering column trim

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 29](#)

### 4 - Dash panel insert trim

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 203](#)

### 5 - Centre dash panel compartment

### 6 - Mounting for ashtray

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 212](#)

### 7 - Dash panel end cover

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 199](#)

### 8 - Right dash panel compartment

- ☐ Open version
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 33](#)

### 9 - Right dash panel compartment

- ☐ On right above glove compartment
- ☐ Cannot be renewed individually

### 10 - Right dash panel compartment

- ☐ Above glove compartment
- ☐ Cannot be renewed individually

### 11 - Glove compartment

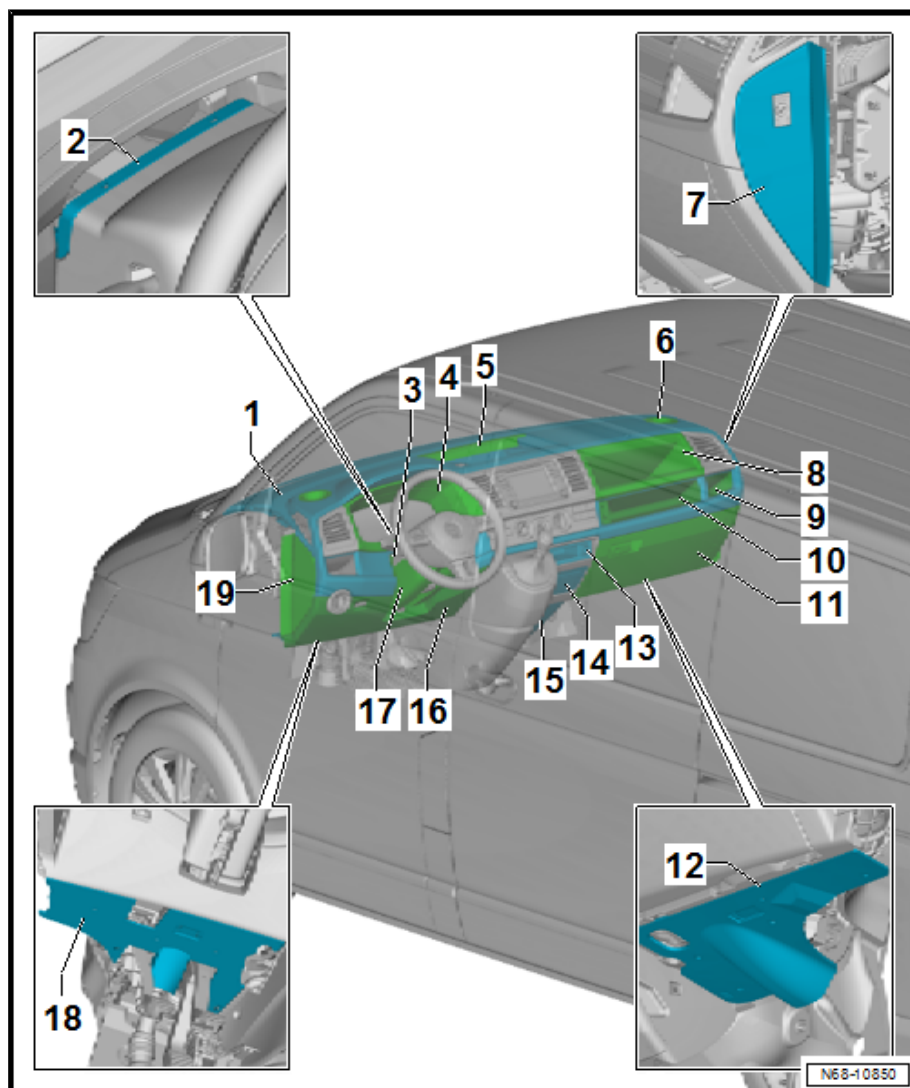
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 32](#)

### 12 - Front passenger side footwell cover

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 31](#)

### 13 - Storage compartment in centre console

- ☐ On right next to gear lever
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 63](#)





## 14 - Storage compartment in centre console

## 15 - Centre console cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 59](#)

## 16 - Driver side dash panel cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 28](#)

## 17 - Lower steering column trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 30](#)

## 18 - Driver side footwell cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 31](#)

## 19 - Dash panel end cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 199](#)

## 1.2 Assembly overview - driver side dash panel cover

### 1 - Dash panel cover

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 28](#)

### 2 - Headlight range control regulator - E102-

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ Electrical system;  
Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls;  
Removing and installing  
headlight range control  
regulator -E102-

### 3 - Bolt

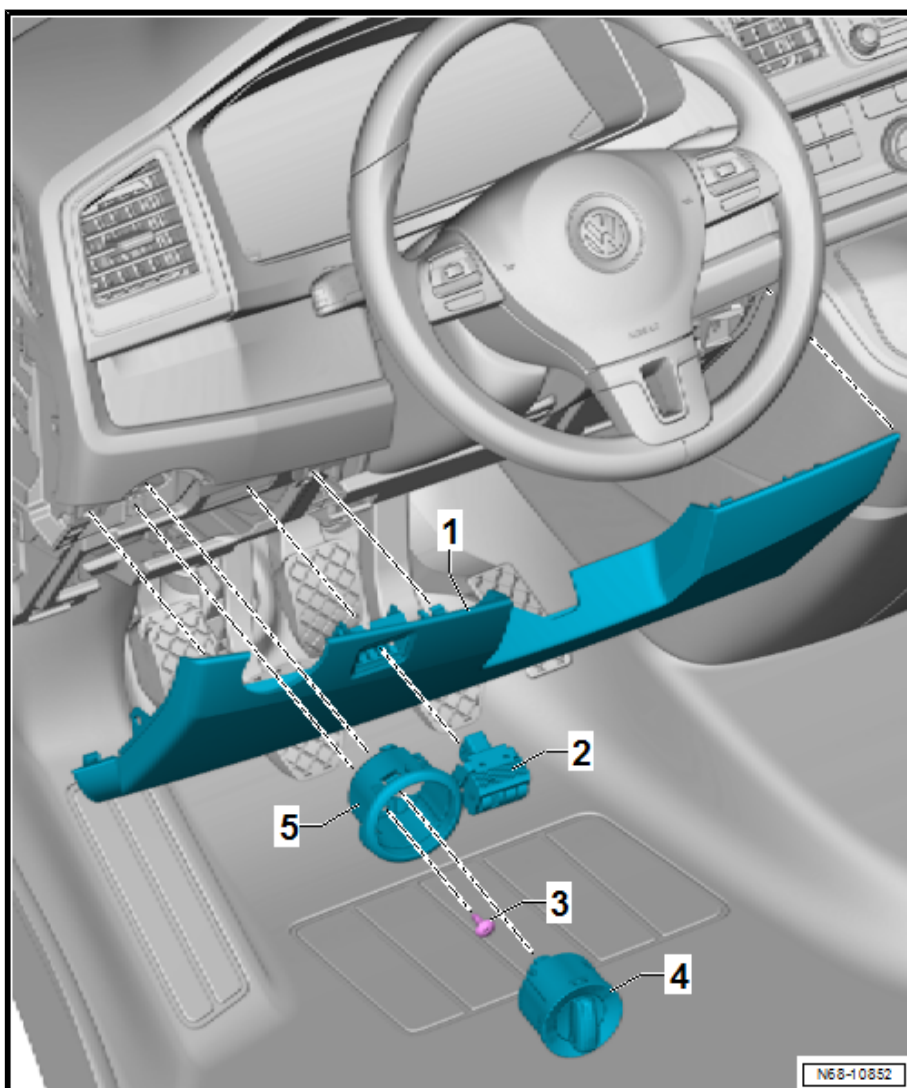
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

### 4 - Rotary light switch - EX1-

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ Electrical system;  
Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls;  
Removing and installing  
rotary light switch EX1

### 5 - Light switch trim

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 204](#)





## 1.3 Assembly overview - steering column trim

### 1 - Gap cover for dash panel insert

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 29](#)

### 2 - Upper steering column trim

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 29](#)

### 3 - Bolts

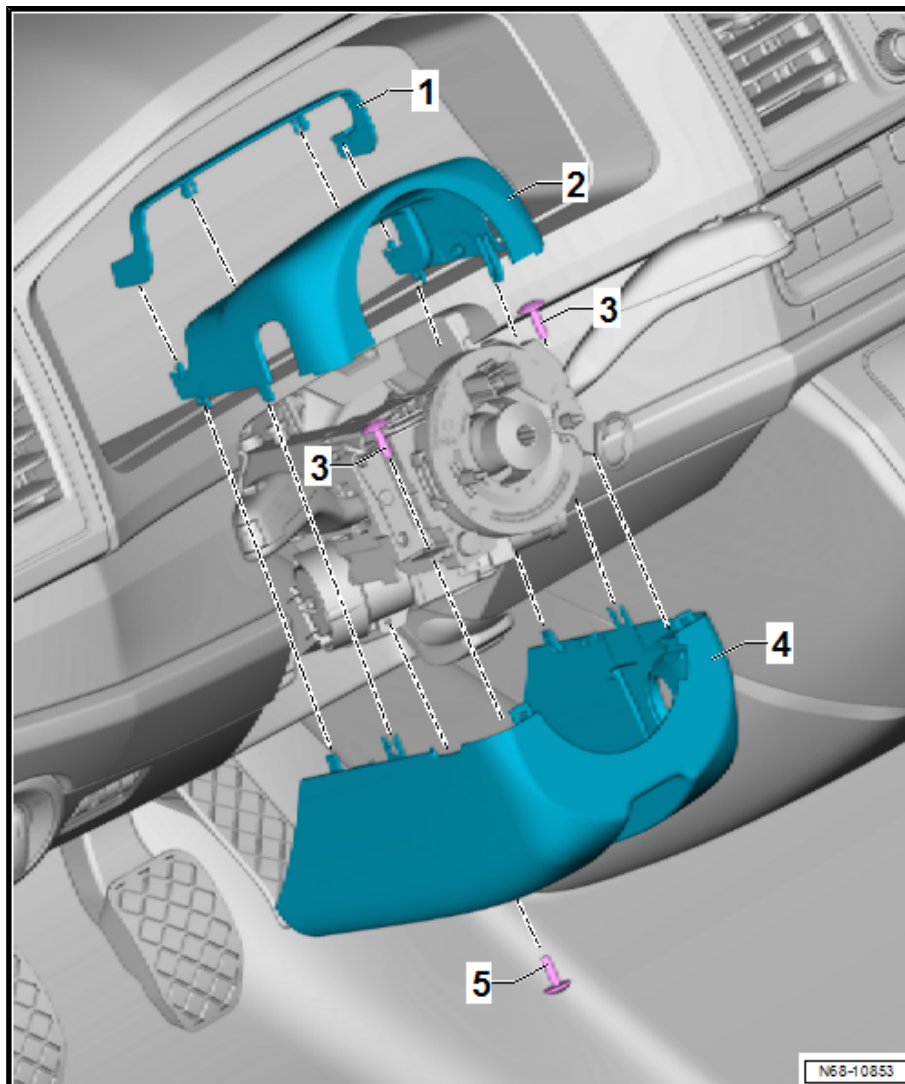
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

### 4 - Lower steering column trim

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 30](#)

### 5 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm





## 1.4 Assembly overview - glove compartment

### 1 - Glove compartment

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 32](#)

### 2 - Restrictor

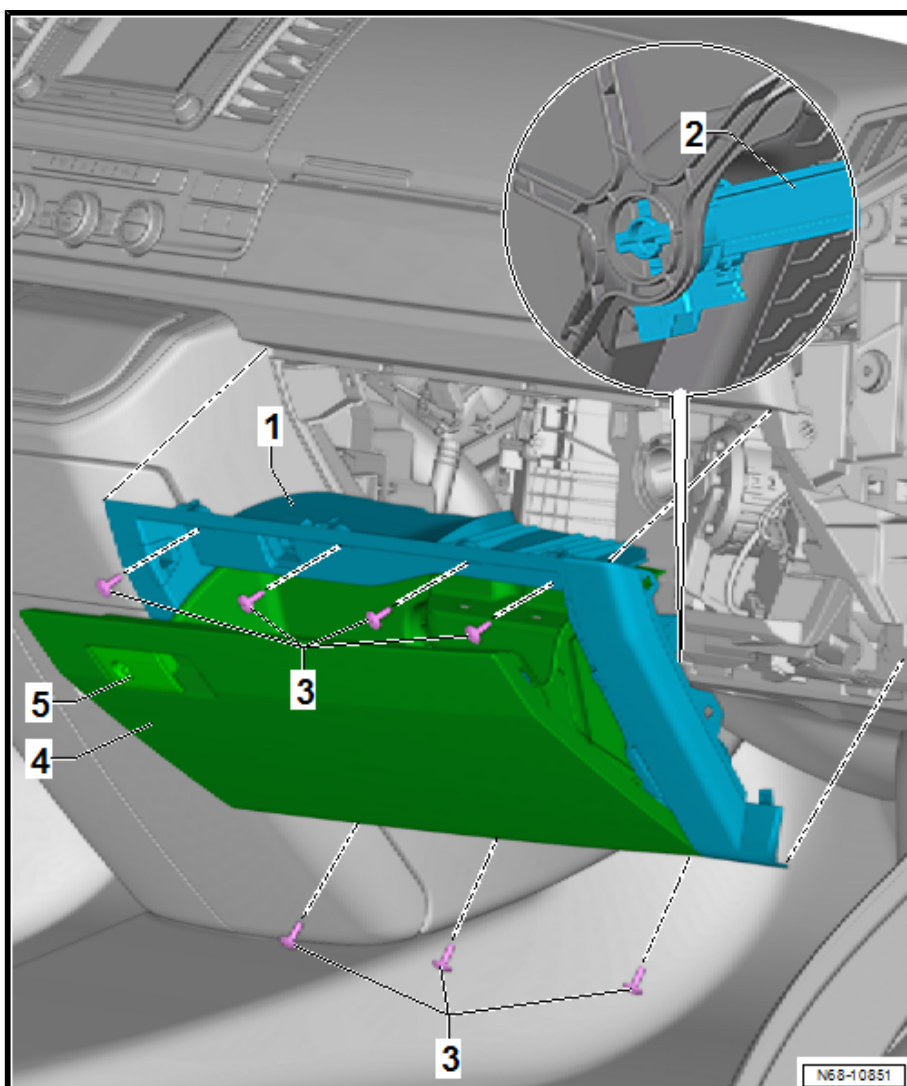
### 3 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 7
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

### 4 - Glove compartment cover

### 5 - Glove compartment opener

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 31](#)





## 1.5 Assembly overview - storage compartment in headliner

⇒ ["1.5.1 Assembly overview - storage compartment in headliner, Multivan with interior monitoring", page 26](#)

⇒ ["1.5.2 Assembly overview - storage compartment in headliner, vehicles with camping equipment", page 27](#)

⇒ ["1.5.3 Assembly overview - storage compartment in headliner, Transporter", page 28](#)

### 1.5.1 Assembly overview - storage compartment in headliner, Multivan with interior monitoring

#### 1 - Frame for storage compartment in headliner

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 36](#)

#### 2 - Switch for sliding/tilting sun-roof

#### 3 - Roof display unit - J702-

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 36](#)

#### 4 - Retaining clips

- ☐ Qty. 4

#### 5 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 2 Nm

#### 6 - Front interior light - WX1-

#### 7 - Retaining clip

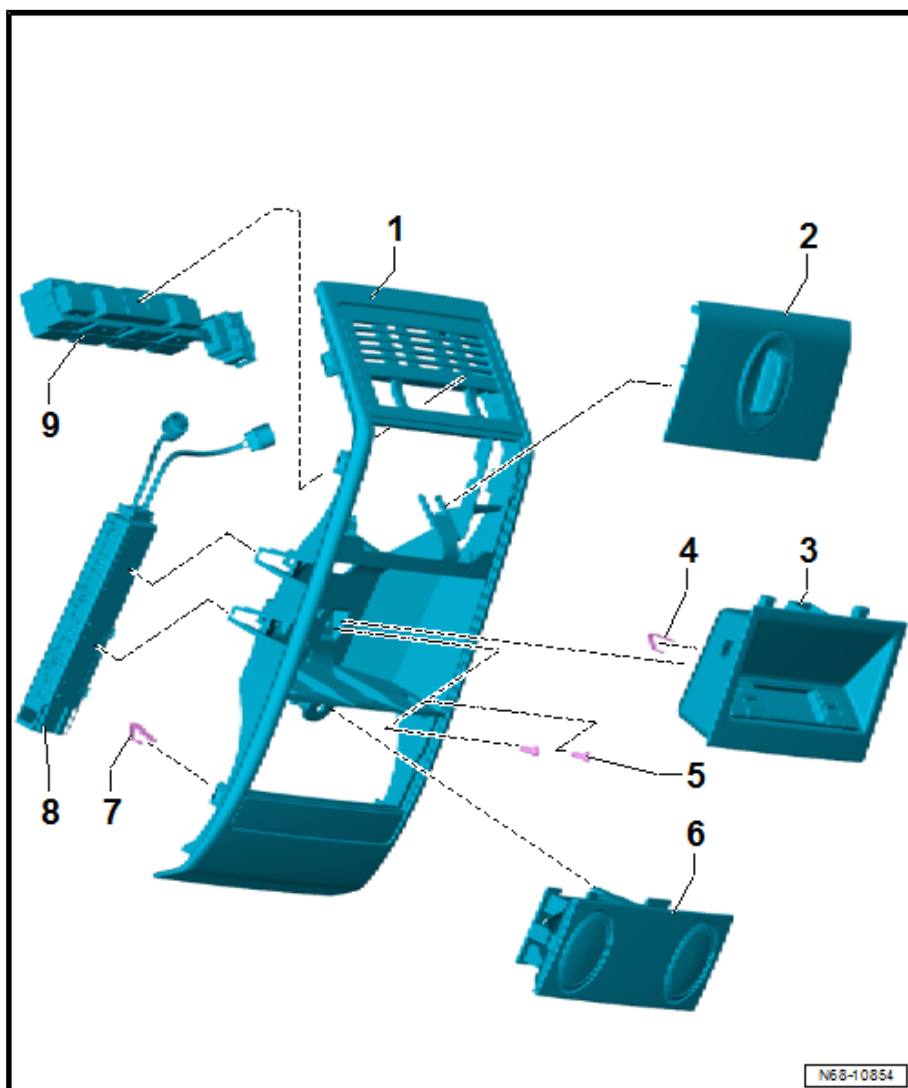
- ☐ Qty. 6

#### 8 - Interior monitor send and receive module 1 - G303- with tow-away protection control unit - J529-

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 36](#)

#### 9 - Switch for front interior light/reading light

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 36](#)



N68-10854



## 1.5.2 Assembly overview - storage compartment in headliner, vehicles with camping equipment

### 1 - Frame for storage compartment in headliner

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 36](#)

### 2 - Install operating and display unit for camping equipment . - E153-

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 36](#)

### 3 - Switch for front interior light/reading light

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 36](#)

### 4 - Mounting frame for switch for front interior light/reading light

### 5 - Storage compartment

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 36](#)

### 6 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 2 Nm

### 7 - Front interior light - WX1-

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 36](#)

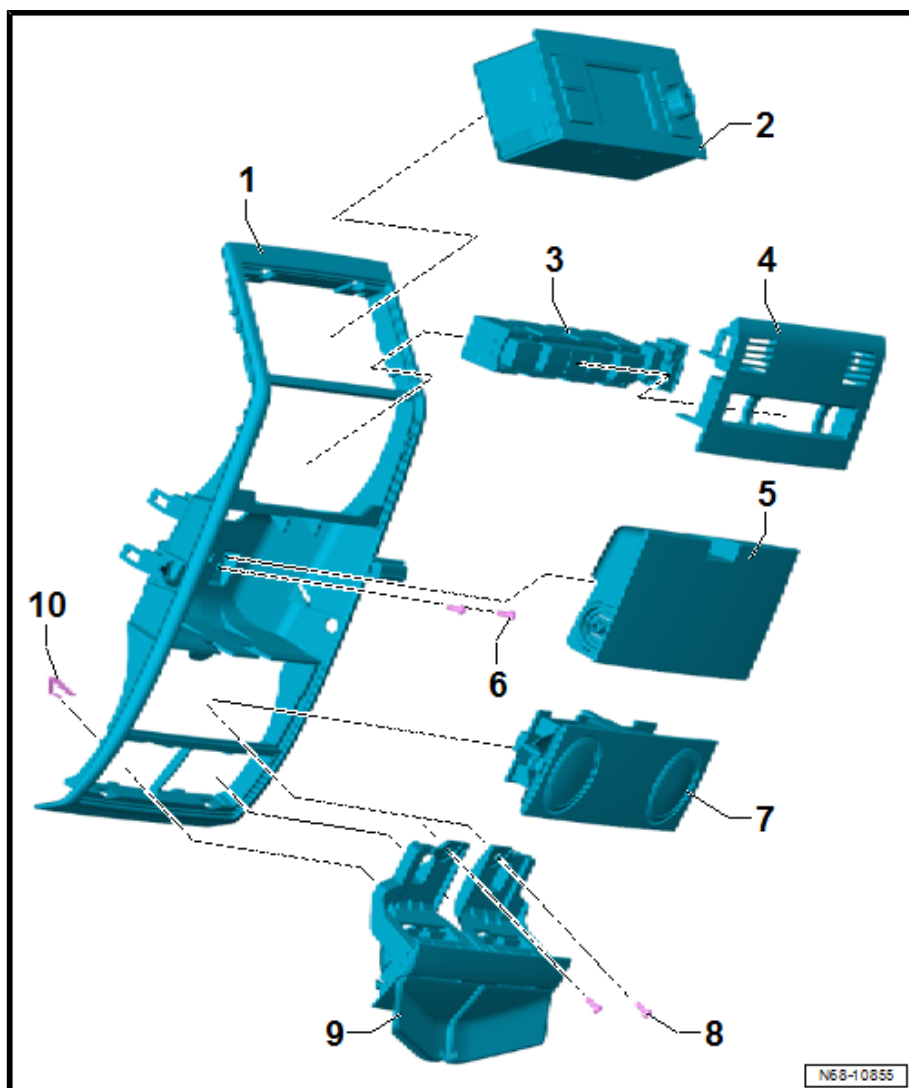
### 8 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

### 9 - Holder for sliding cover

### 10 - Retaining clips

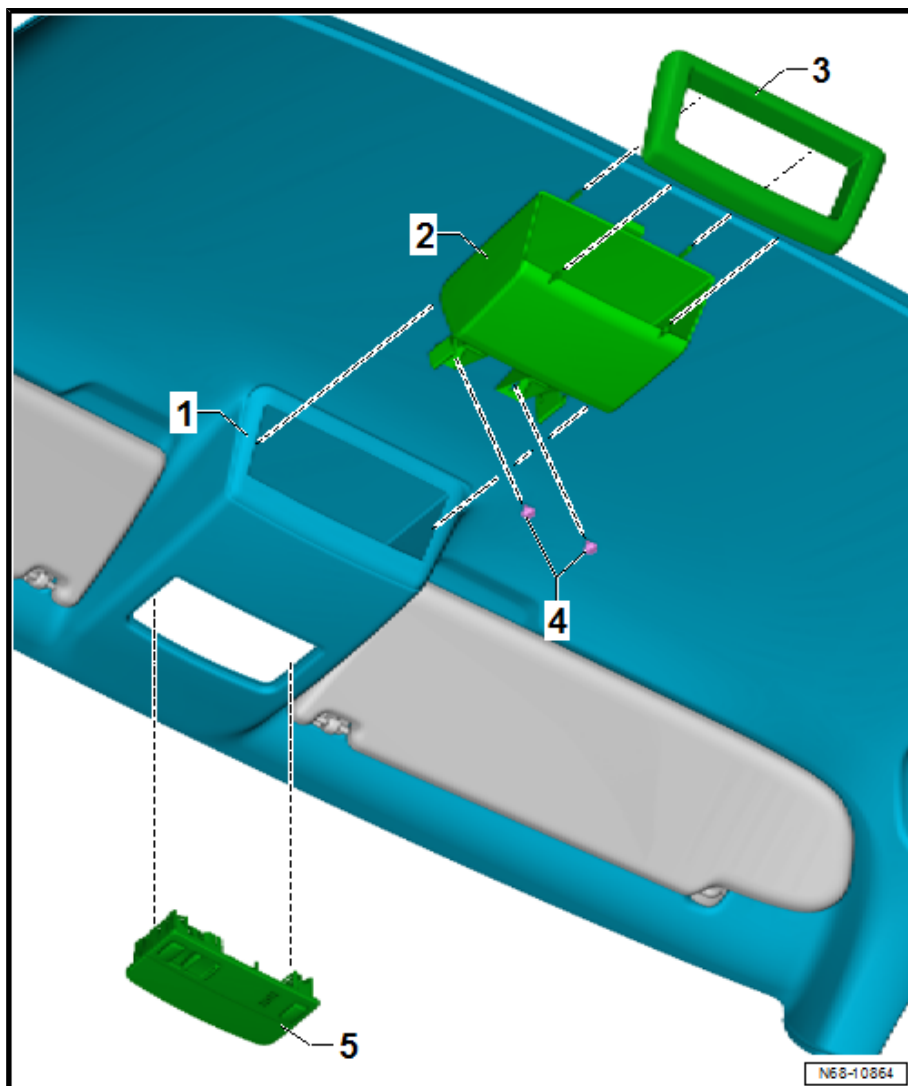
- ☐ Qty. 6





### 1.5.3 Assembly overview - storage compartment in headliner, Transporter

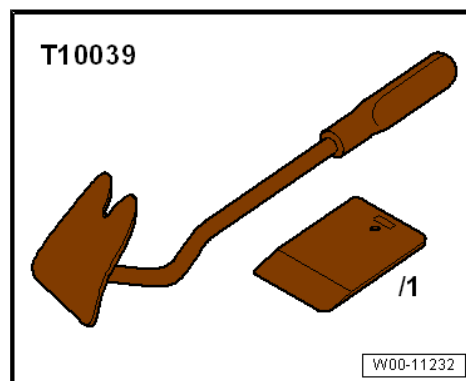
- 1 - Roof console in headliner
  - ❑ Integrated in headliner
- 2 - Storage compartment
  - ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 36](#)
- 3 - Trim panel
- 4 - Bolts
  - ❑ Qty. 2
  - ❑ 2 Nm
- 5 - Front interior light - WX1-
  - ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ Electrical system;  
Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights;  
Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim



### 1.6 Removing and installing dash panel cover on driver side

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-



#### Removing

- Remove dash panel end cover on driver side ⇒ [page 199](#) .



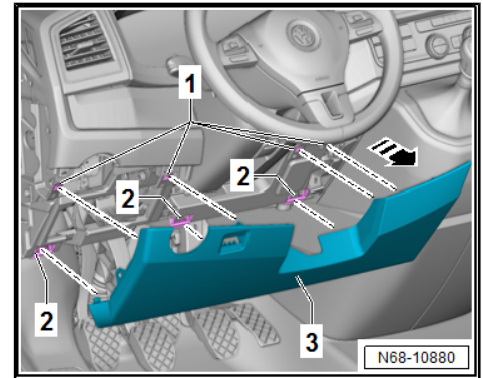


- Remove light switch trim ⇒ [page 204](#) .
- Using wedge - T10039/1- , unclip dash panel trim on driver side -3- from mountings -1-.
- Pull dash panel trim on driver side -3- in -direction of arrow- out of mountings -2-.
- Separate electrical connector from headlight range control regulator.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Before installing, check retaining clips for damage and renew if necessary.



## 1.7 Removing and installing dash panel insert trim

#### Removing

- Set steering wheel to lowest position.
- Adjust steering wheel reach so that the steering wheel projects as far into the passenger compartment as possible.
- Unclip gap cover -1- upwards in -direction of arrow- from steering column trim.



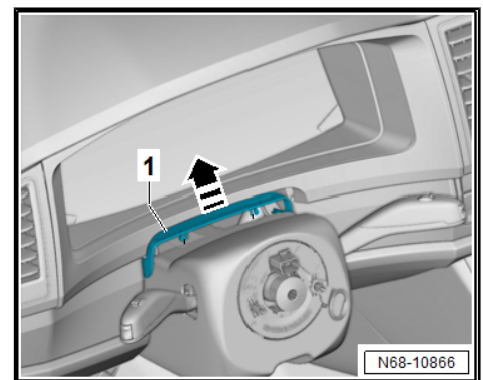
#### Note

*The dash panel insert trim must be removed to allow for removing the gap cover completely, because the gap cover is permanently attached to the dash panel insert trim via the »leather strip«*  
⇒ [page 203](#) .

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

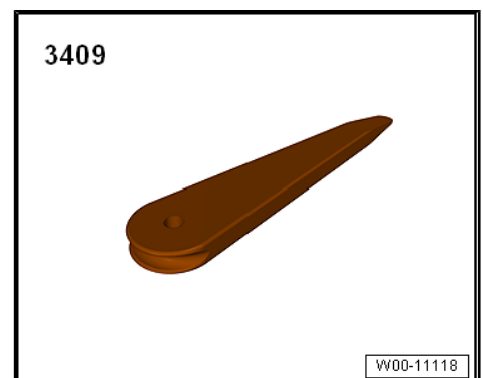
When installing, the gap cover should be heard to engage in place.



## 1.8 Removing and installing upper steering column trim

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-





## Note

For reasons of clarity, the steering wheel is not shown in the illustration.

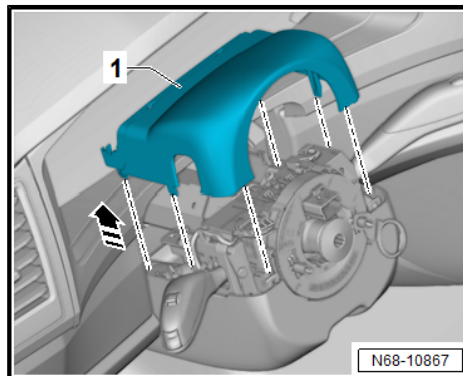
### Removing

- Remove gap cover of dash panel insert ⇒ [page 29](#) .
- Turn steering wheel accordingly until respective clips behind steering wheel are accessible.
- Using removal wedge - 3409- , unclip upper steering column trim -1- in direction of -arrow- from lower steering column trim.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

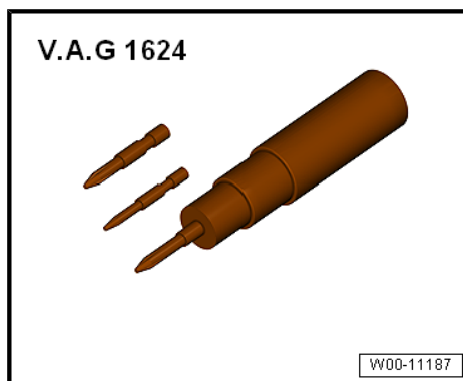
When installing, steering column trim -1- should be heard to engage.



## 1.9 Removing and installing lower steering column trim

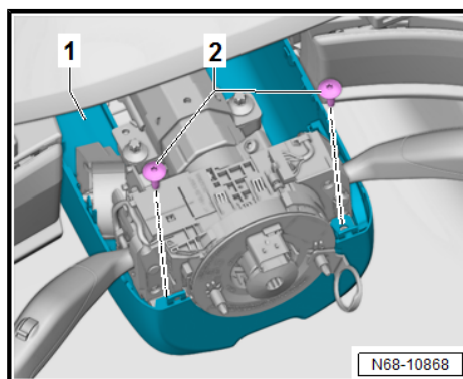
### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



### Removing

- Remove upper steering column trim ⇒ [page 29](#) .
- Remove steering wheel ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel .
- Unscrew bolts -2- from bottom steering column trim -1-.





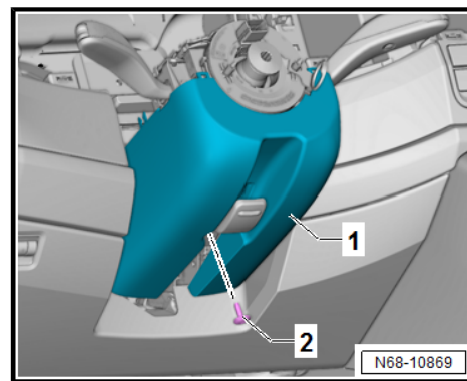
- Unscrew bolt -2- from bottom steering column trim -1-.
- Remove lower steering column trim -1-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“1.3 Assembly overview - steering column trim”, page 24](#)

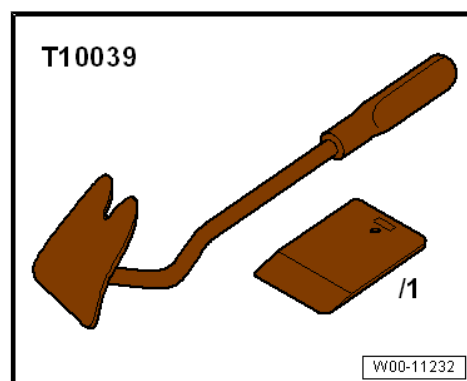


## 1.10 Removing and installing footwell cover

Removal and installation of the footwell cover are described for the footwell cover on driver side. Removal and installation of the footwell cover on the front passenger side is analogous.

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-

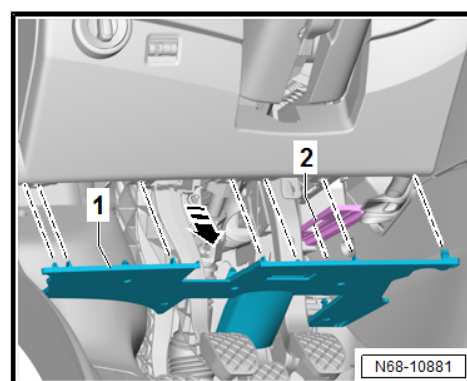


#### Removing

- Unclip footwell cover -1- at transition to dash panel trim.
- Pull footwell cover -1- out of rear mounting -2-.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

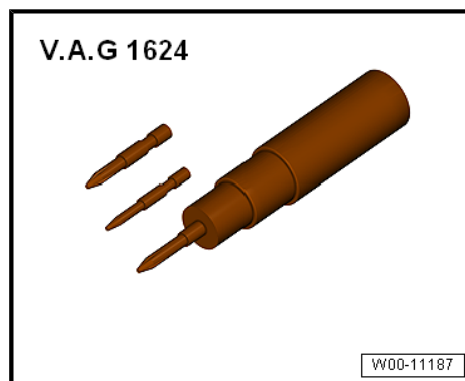


## 1.11 Removing and installing glove compartment opener

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

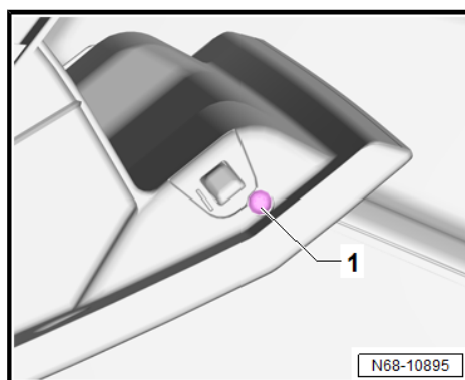


- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



### Removing

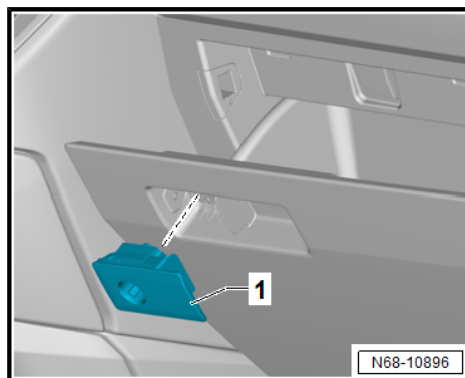
- Open glove compartment cover.
- Unscrew bolt -1-.



- Remove glove compartment opening mechanism -1- in -direction of arrow-.

### Installing

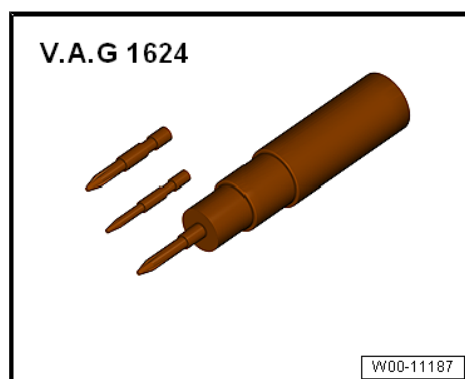
Installation is carried out in reverse order.



## 1.12 Removing and installing glove compartment

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

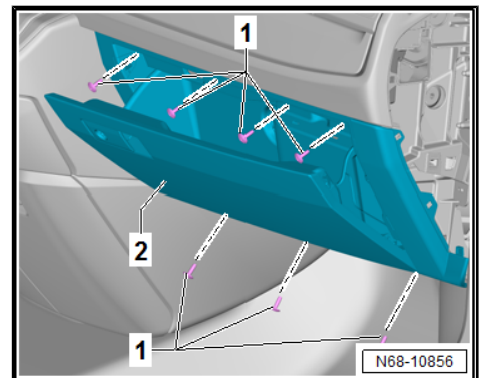
- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-





## Removing

- Remove dash panel end cover on front passenger side  
⇒ [page 199](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -1- from glove compartment -2-.
- Remove glove compartment light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing glove compartment light - W6- .
- Unclip glove compartment at top and on sides from dash panel.
- Pull glove compartment out of lower mountings in dash panel.
- Disconnect connector on glove compartment light switch.
- If fitted, disconnect connectors on connection for external multimedia devices (AUX and USB).



## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“1.4 Assembly overview - glove compartment”, page 25](#)

## 1.13 Removing and installing dash panel compartment

⇒ [“1.13.1 Removing and installing dash panel storage compartment, Multivan, storage compartment with lid, right of dash panel”, page 33](#)

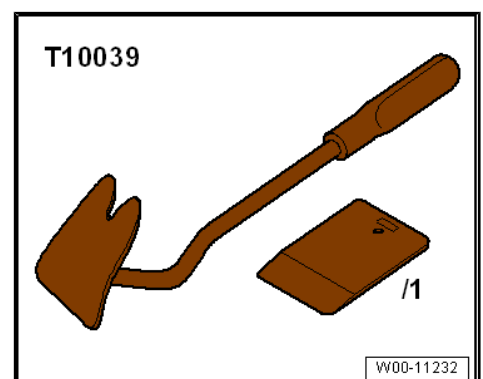
⇒ [“1.13.2 Removing and installing dash panel storage compartment, Multivan, storage compartment with lid, top centre of dash panel”, page 34](#)

⇒ [“1.13.3 Removing and installing dash panel storage compartment, Transporter”, page 35](#)

### 1.13.1 Removing and installing dash panel storage compartment, Multivan, storage compartment with lid, right of dash panel

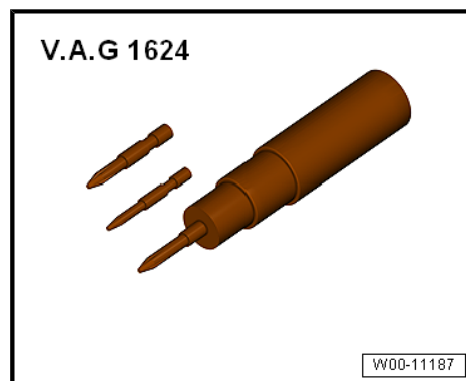
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-



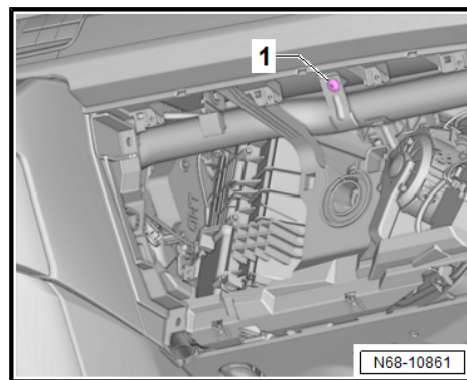


- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



### Removing

- Remove right dash panel vent ➔ [page 213](#) .
- Remove mounting frame for radio/navigation system ➔ [page 205](#) .
- Remove glove compartment ➔ [page 32](#) .
- Unscrew bolt -1-.



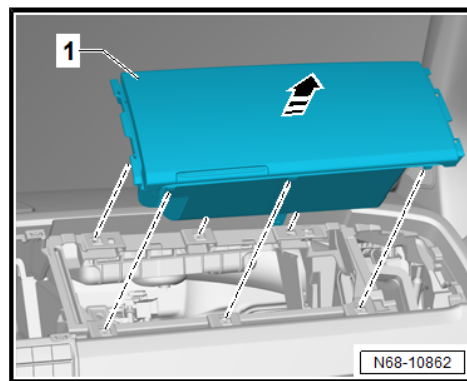
- Unclip storage compartment -1- in -direction of arrow-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolt -1- on storage compartment	1.5 Nm



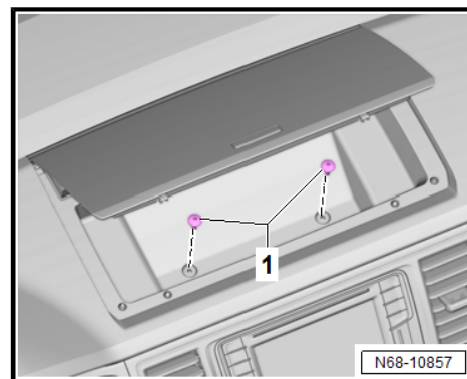
## 1.13.2 Removing and installing dash panel storage compartment, Multivan, storage compartment with lid, top centre of dash panel

### Removing

- Open lid of storage compartment.



- Unscrew bolts -1-.



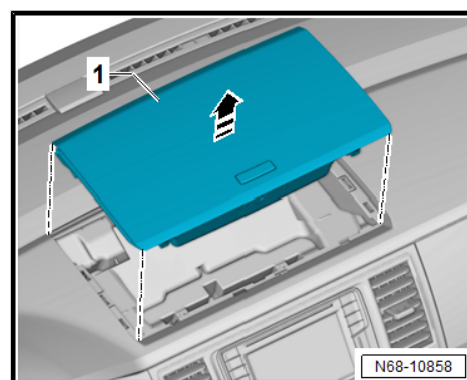
- Unclip storage compartment -1- in -direction of arrow- from dash panel.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

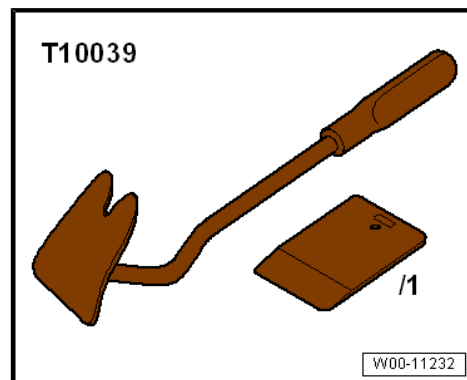
Component	Specified torque
Bolts -1- in storage compartment	1.5 Nm



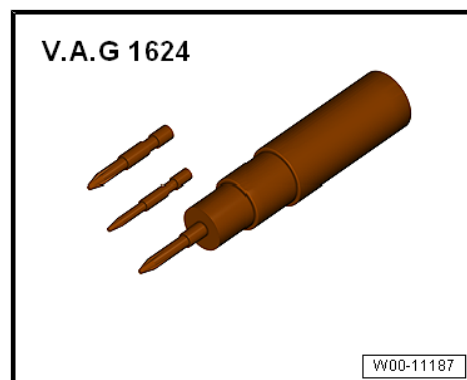
### 1.13.3 Removing and installing dash panel storage compartment, Transporter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-



- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



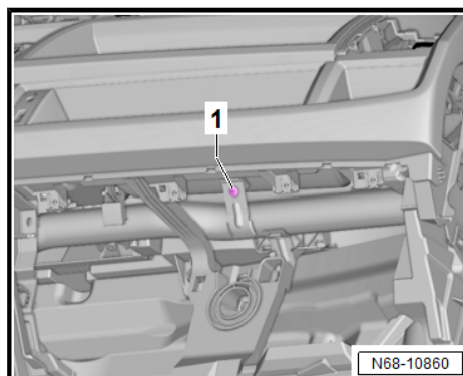
#### Removing

- Remove right dash panel vent ⇒ [page 213](#) .





- Remove mounting frame for radio/navigation system  
⇒ [page 205](#) .
- Remove glove compartment ⇒ [page 32](#) .
- Unscrew bolt -1-.



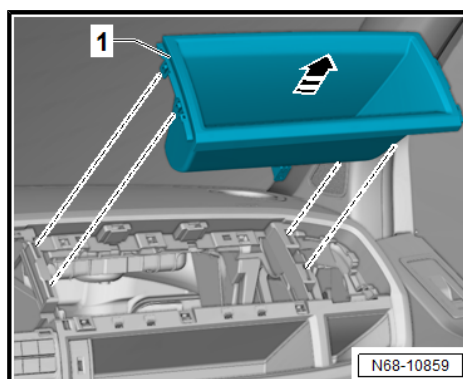
- Unclip storage compartment -1- in -direction of arrow-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolt -1- on storage compartment	1.5 Nm



## 1.14 Removing and installing headliner storage compartment

⇒ ["1.14.1 Removing and installing storage compartment in roof headliner, Multivan with interior monitoring", page 36](#)

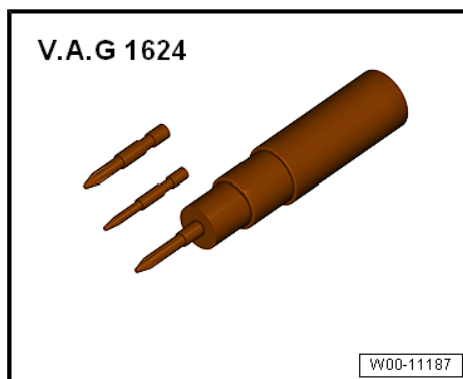
⇒ ["1.14.2 Removing and installing storage compartment in roof headliner, vehicles with camping equipment", page 38](#)

⇒ ["1.14.3 Removing and installing storage compartment in roof headliner, Transporter", page 40](#)

### 1.14.1 Removing and installing storage compartment in roof headliner, Multivan with interior monitoring

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

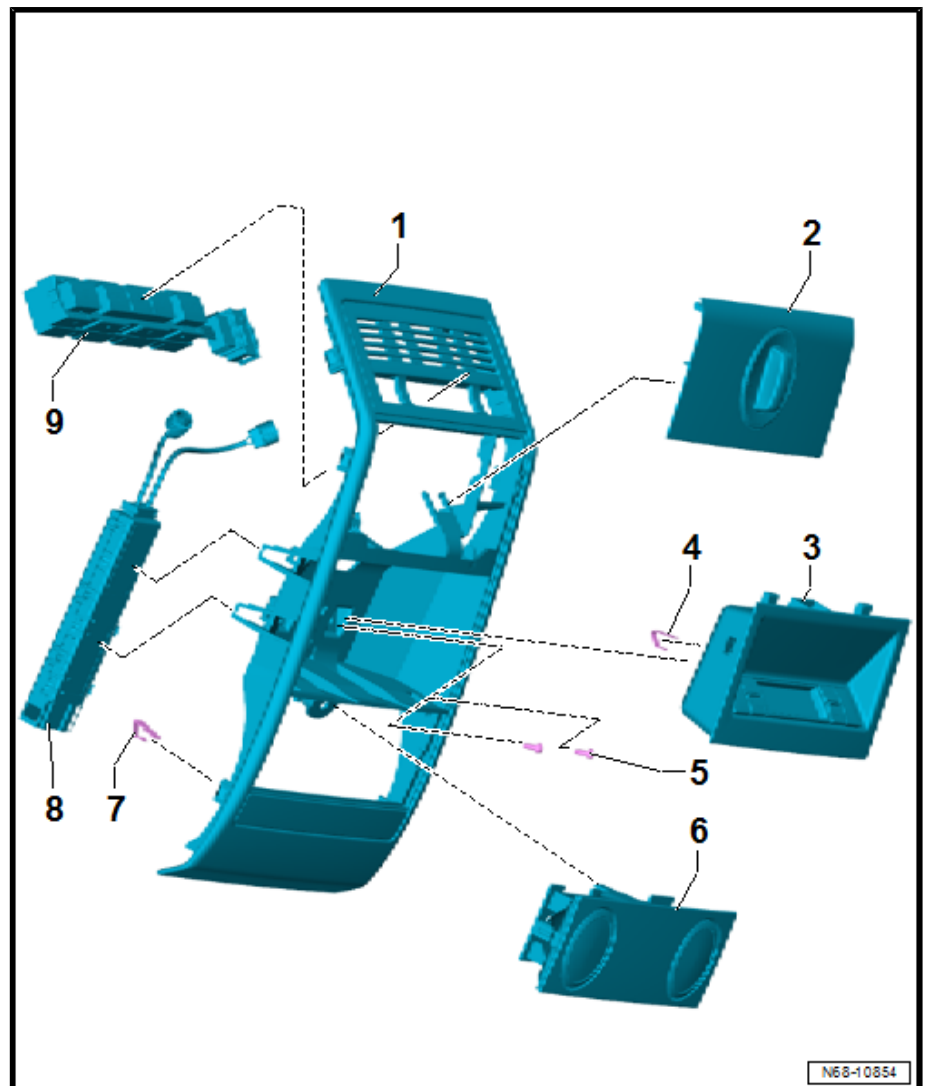
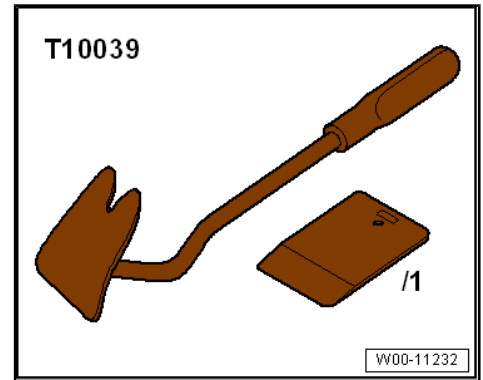
- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-







◆ Release lever - T10039-



Removing



Note

*Depending on equipment, the illustration may differ from the actual scenario.*

- Switch off ignition.



- Depending on equipment, unclip trim or roof display unit - J702- -3-.
- Unscrew bolts -5-.
- Starting at front, pull roof console -1- downwards out of moulded headliner.
- Disconnect any electrical connectors.

Now, the following components can be unclipped from the roof console frame as necessary:

- ◆ Front interior light - WX1- -6-
- ◆ Switch for front interior light/reading light -9-
- ◆ Sliding sunroof adjustment regulator - E139- -2-
- ◆ Interior monitor send and receive module 1 - G303- with tow-away protection control unit - J529- -8-

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check retaining clips -4- and -7- for damage, and renew them as necessary.

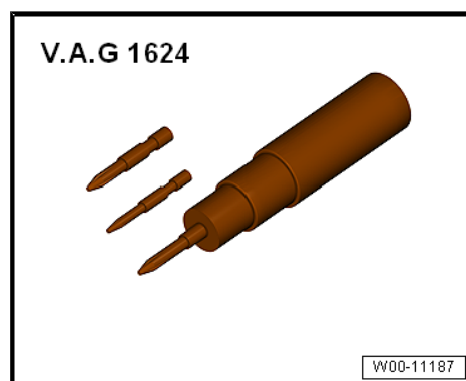
### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ ["1.5 Assembly overview - storage compartment in headliner", page 26](#)

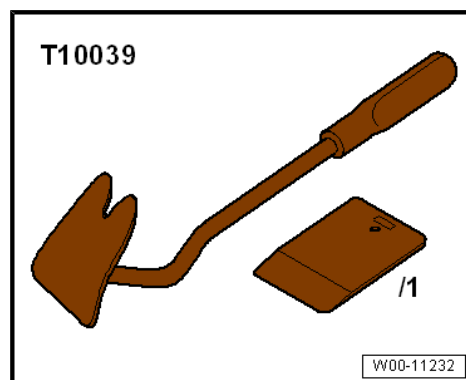
## 1.14.2 Removing and installing storage compartment in roof headliner, vehicles with camping equipment

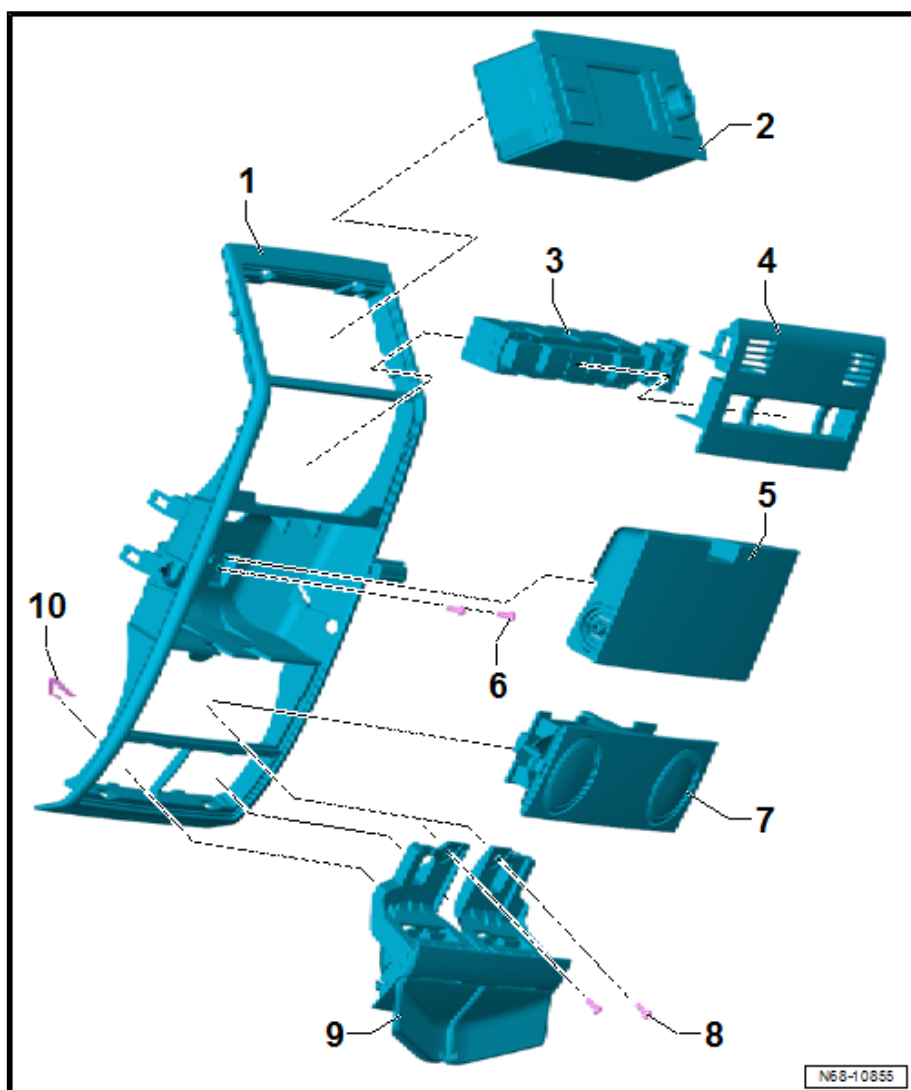
### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



- ◆ Release lever - T10039-





## Removing



### Note

*Depending on equipment, the illustration may differ from the actual scenario.*

- Switch off ignition.
- Unclip storage compartment -5-.
- Remove front interior light - WX1- -7- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .
- Unscrew bolts -6-.
- Unscrew bolts -8-.
- Starting at front, pull roof console -1- downwards out of moulded headliner.
- Disconnect any connectors.

Now, the following components can be unclipped from the frame as necessary:

- ◆ Switch for front interior light/reading light -3-



- ◆ Operating and display unit for camping equipment - E153-2-
- ◆ Cover -4-
- ◆ Holder -9- for sliding cover

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check retaining clips -10- for damage and renew if necessary.

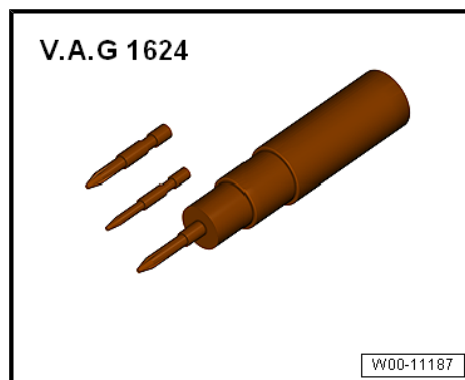
#### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“1.5 Assembly overview - storage compartment in headliner”, page 26](#)

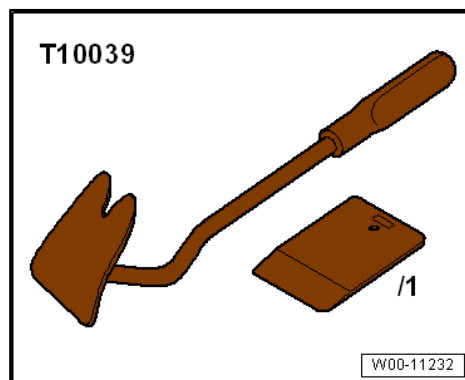
### 1.14.3 Removing and installing storage compartment in roof headliner, Transporter

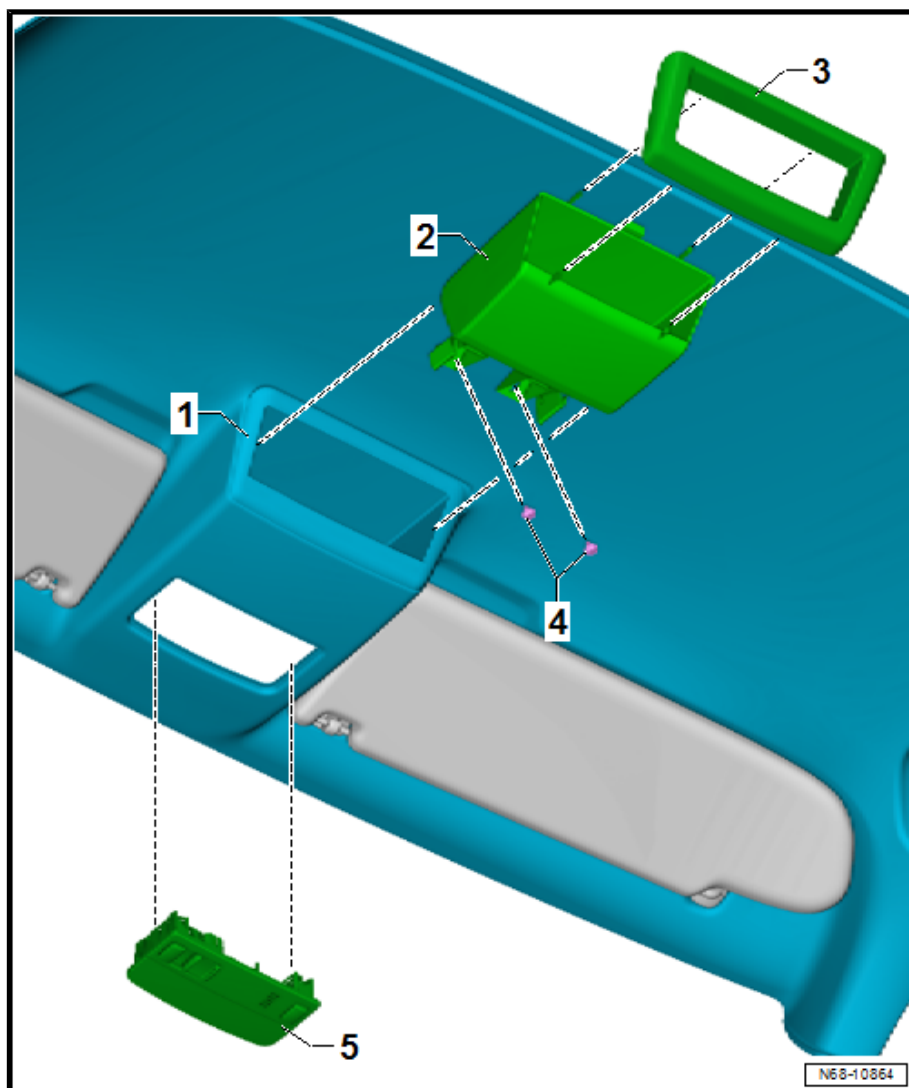
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



- ◆ Release lever - T10039-





### Removing

- Switch off ignition.
- Remove front interior light -5- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .
- Unclip frame -3- from storage compartment -2-.
- Unscrew bolts -4-.
- Pull storage compartment -2- out of roof console -1-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“1.5 Assembly overview - storage compartment in headliner”, page 26](#)



## 2 Equipment

- ⇒ [“2.1 Assembly overview - partition, panel van”, page 42](#)
- ⇒ [“2.2 Assembly overview - grab handles on pillar trims”, page 45](#)
- ⇒ [“2.3 Assembly overview – ashtray/cup holder, rear”, page 46](#)
- ⇒ [“2.4 Assembly overview - sun blind”, page 47](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5 Removing and installing bracket for net partition”, page 47](#)
- ⇒ [“2.6 Removing and installing sun visor”, page 48](#)
- ⇒ [“2.7 Removing and installing roof grab handle”, page 50](#)
- ⇒ [“2.8 Removing and installing grab handles on pillar trims”, page 51](#)
- ⇒ [“2.9 Removing and installing partition, panel van”, page 53](#)
- ⇒ [“2.10 Removing and installing ashtray/cup holder, rear”, page 55](#)
- ⇒ [“2.11 Removing and installing sun blind”, page 56](#)

### 2.1 Assembly overview - partition, panel van

- ⇒ [“2.1.1 Assembly overview - partition, panel van, partition upper part”, page 42](#)
- ⇒ [“2.1.2 Assembly overview - partition, panel van, partition lower part”, page 44](#)

#### 2.1.1 Assembly overview - partition, panel van, partition upper part



**1 - Upper part of partition panel**

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 53](#)

**2 - Hexagon nut**

- ☐ Qty. 18
- ☐ 8 Nm

**3 - Securing bracket**

- ☐ For upper part of partition panel
- ☐ Left and right

**4 - Bolt**

- ☐ Qty. 3
- ☐ 8 Nm

**5 - Blind rivet nut**

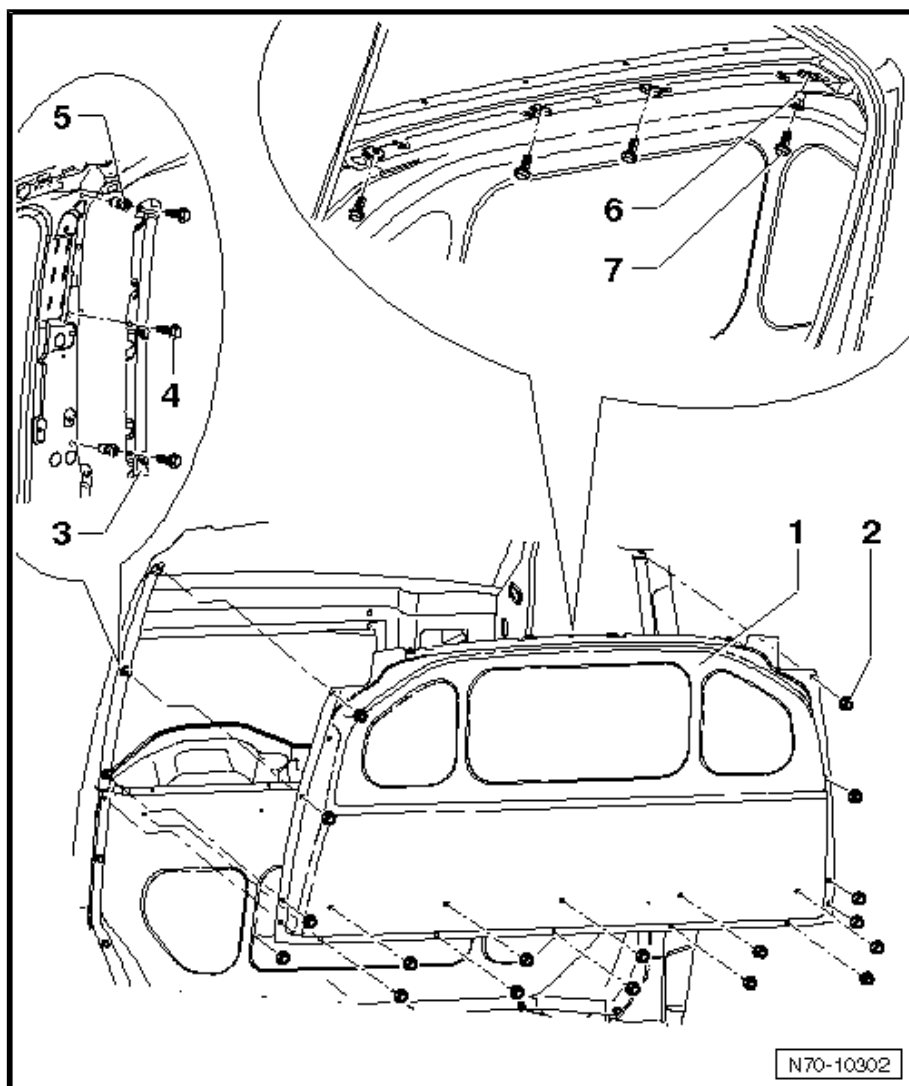
- ☐ Qty. 3

**6 - Blind rivet nut**

- ☐ Qty. 4

**7 - Bolt**

- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 8 Nm





## 2.1.2 Assembly overview - partition, panel van, partition lower part

### 1 - Cross panel with beading

- ☐ Only installed with semi high partition
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 53](#)

### 2 - Hexagon nut

- ☐ Qty. 12
- ☐ 8 Nm

### 3 - Lower part of partition panel

- ☐ Bolted to upper part of partition
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 53](#)

### 4 - Hexagon nut

- ☐ Qty. 10
- ☐ 8 Nm

### 5 - Cross panel with beading

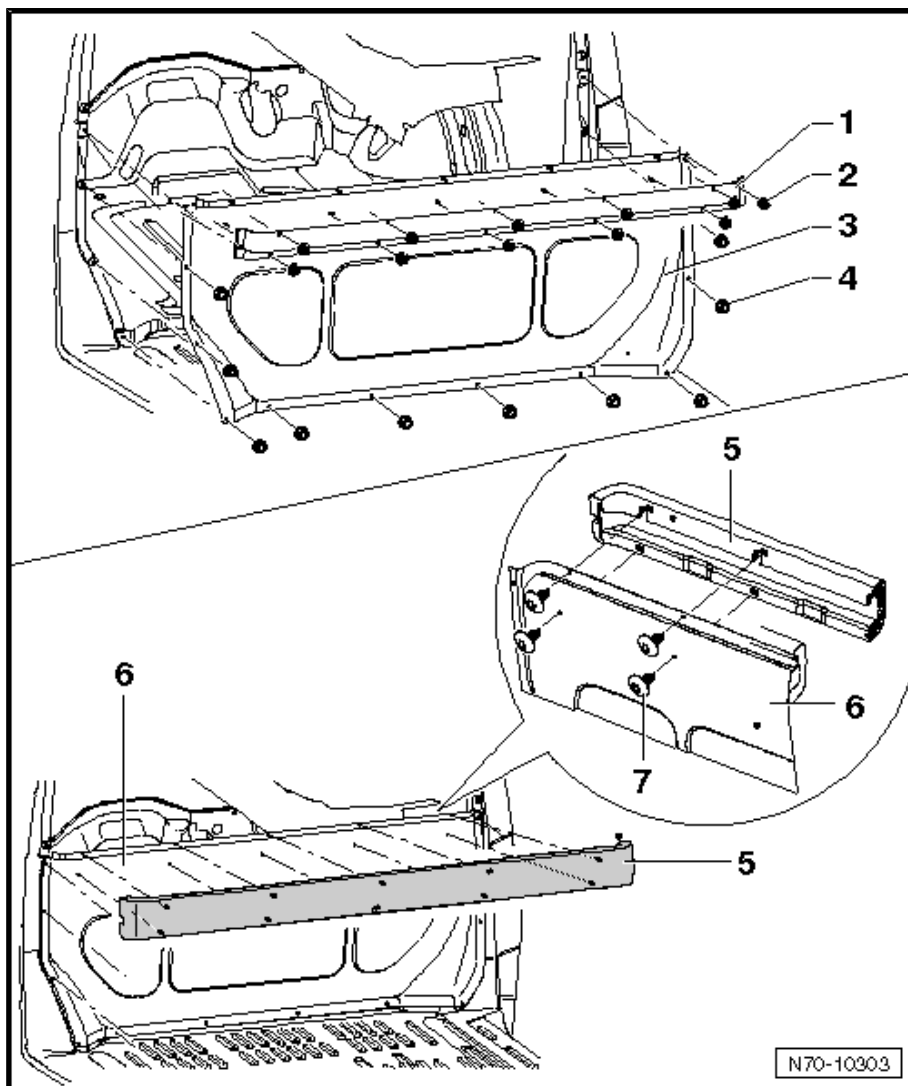
- ☐ Only installed with semi high partition

### 6 - Lower part of partition panel

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 53](#)

### 7 - Bolt

- ☐ Qty. 10
- ☐ 2 Nm







## 2.2 Assembly overview - grab handles on pillar trims

### 1 - Pillar trim

- ☐ B-pillar trim in this example
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 51](#)

### 2 - Coat hook

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 51](#)

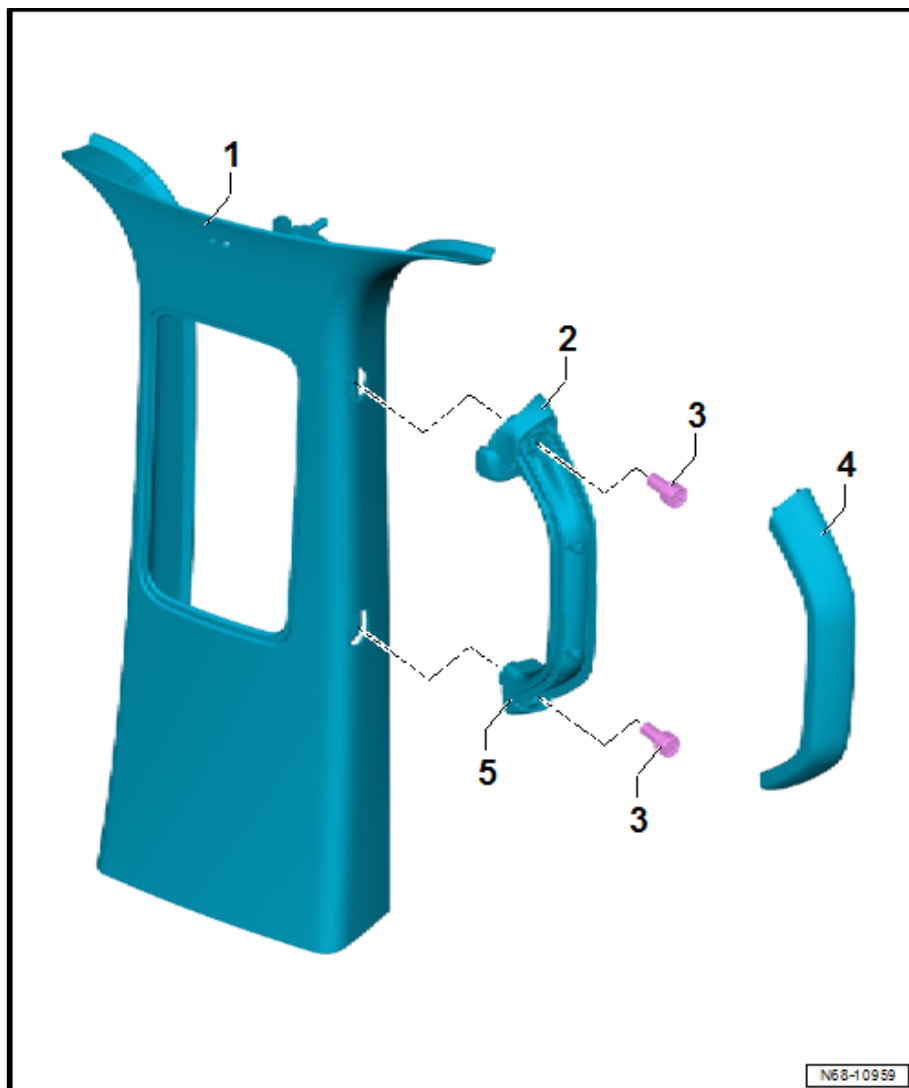
### 3 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 6 Nm

### 4 - Cover

### 5 - Handle

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 51](#)





## 2.3 Assembly overview – ashtray/cup holder, rear

### 1 - Ashtray/cup holder with frame

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 55](#)

### 2 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 7
- ❑ 1 Nm

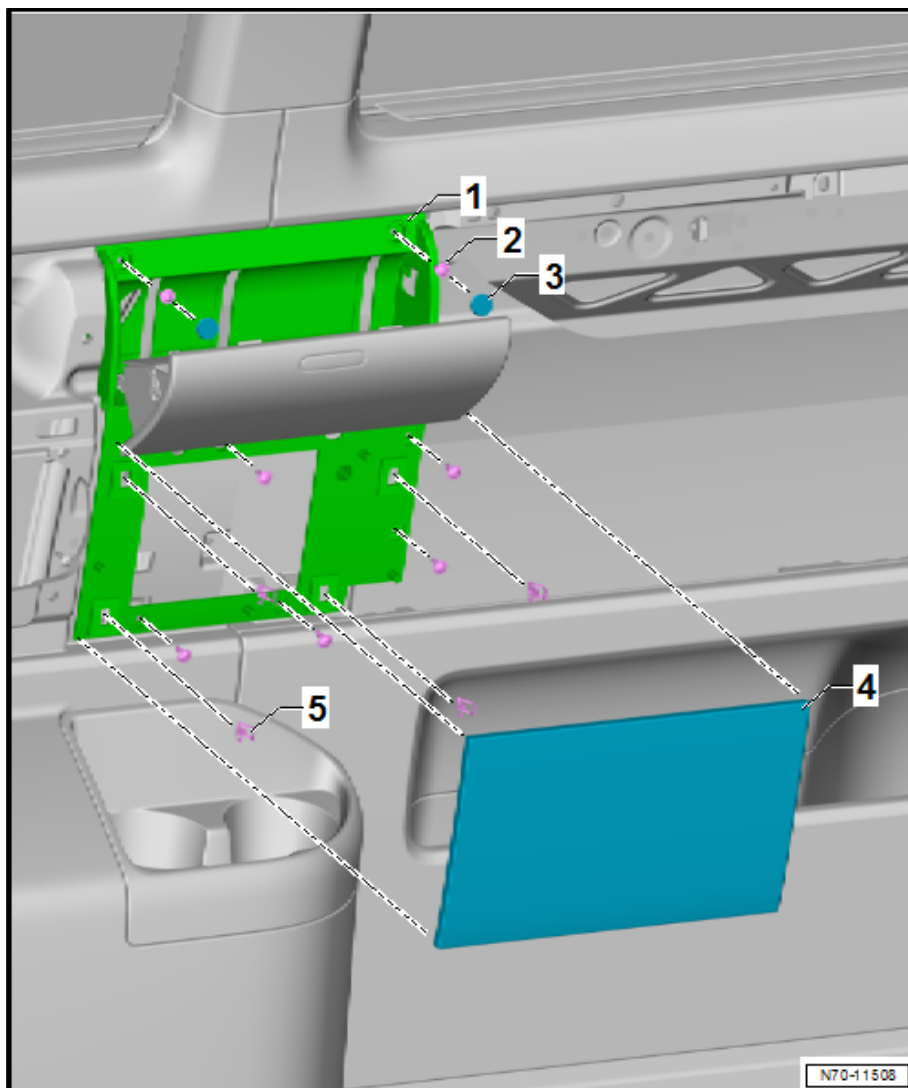
### 3 - Cover

- ❑ Qty. 2

### 4 - Trim

### 5 - Clips

- ❑ Qty. 4





## 2.4 Assembly overview - sun blind

### 1 - Sun blind

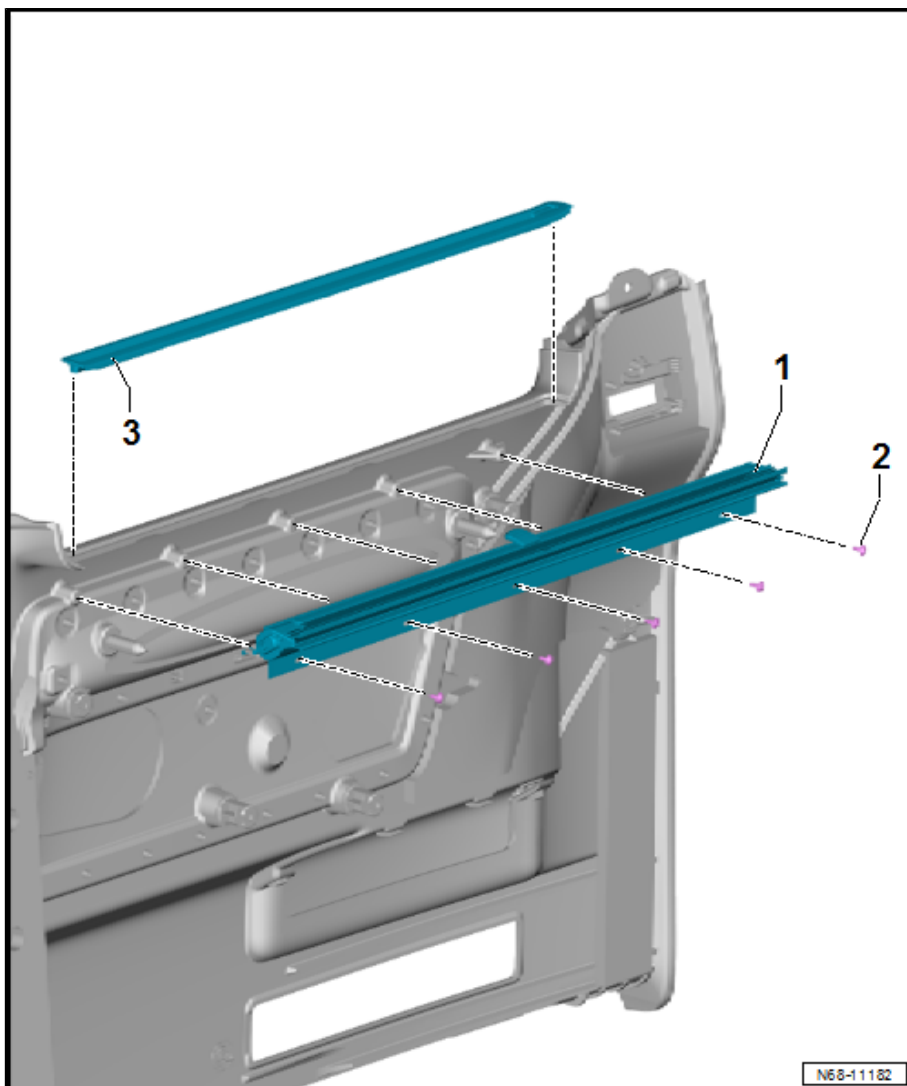
- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 56](#)

### 2 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 5
- ❑ 2 Nm

### 3 - Guide rail

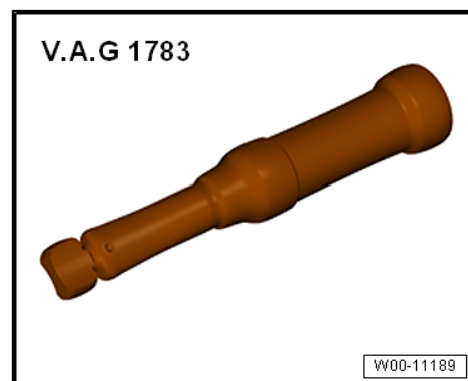
- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 56](#)



## 2.5 Removing and installing bracket for net partition

Special tools and workshop equipment required

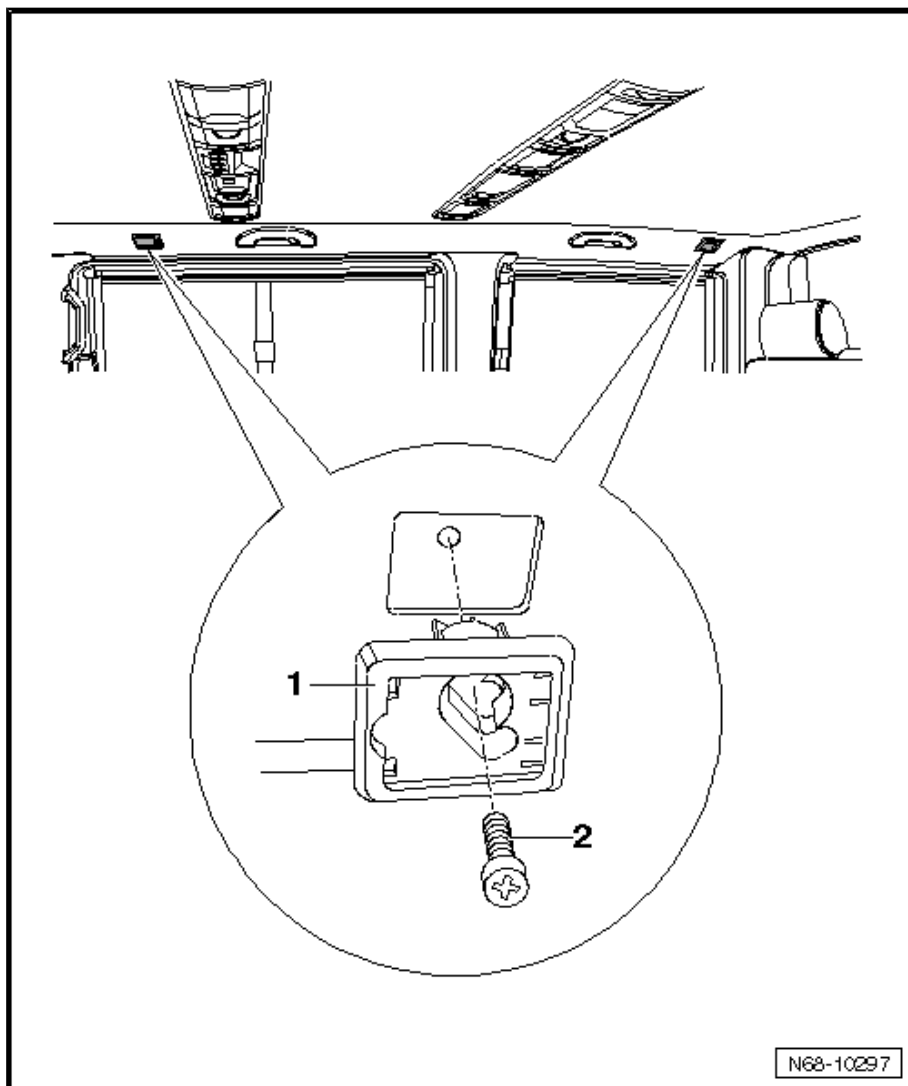
- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-





### Note

*The removal and installation procedure is described for the right-hand side of the vehicle. Removal and installation of the left vehicle side is similar.*



### Removing

- Unscrew bolt -2-, and pull brackets for net partition -1- out of moulded headliner.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

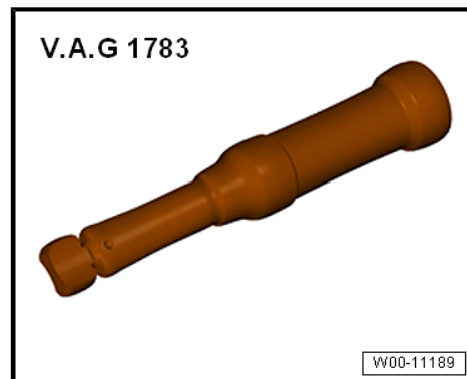
Component	Specified torque
Bolt for securing retainer for net partition	8 Nm

## 2.6 Removing and installing sun visor

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



◆ Front end hook - 3370-



**Note**

*Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. The removal and installation of the right side of the vehicle is similar.*

**Removing**

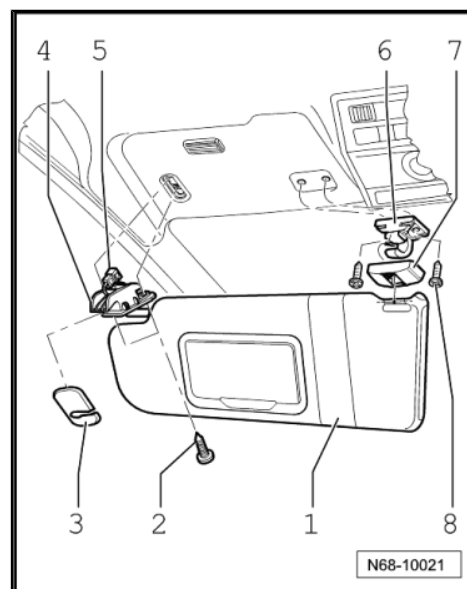
- Switch off ignition.
- Release sun visor -1- from holding fixture -6-.
- Fit front end hook - 3370- on cap -3- in succession at left and right of "slot", and pull it straight downwards.
- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Pull sun visor catch -4- out of holding fixture.
- Disconnect connector -5-.
- Lever out cover cap -7-.
- Unscrew bolts -8-.
- Remove mountings -6-.

**Installing**

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

**Specified torques**

Component	Specified torque
Bolt for sun visor	2 Nm

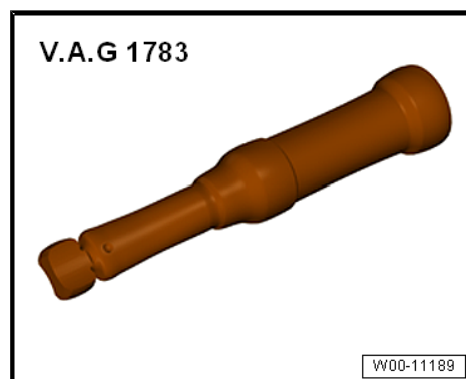




## 2.7 Removing and installing roof grab handle

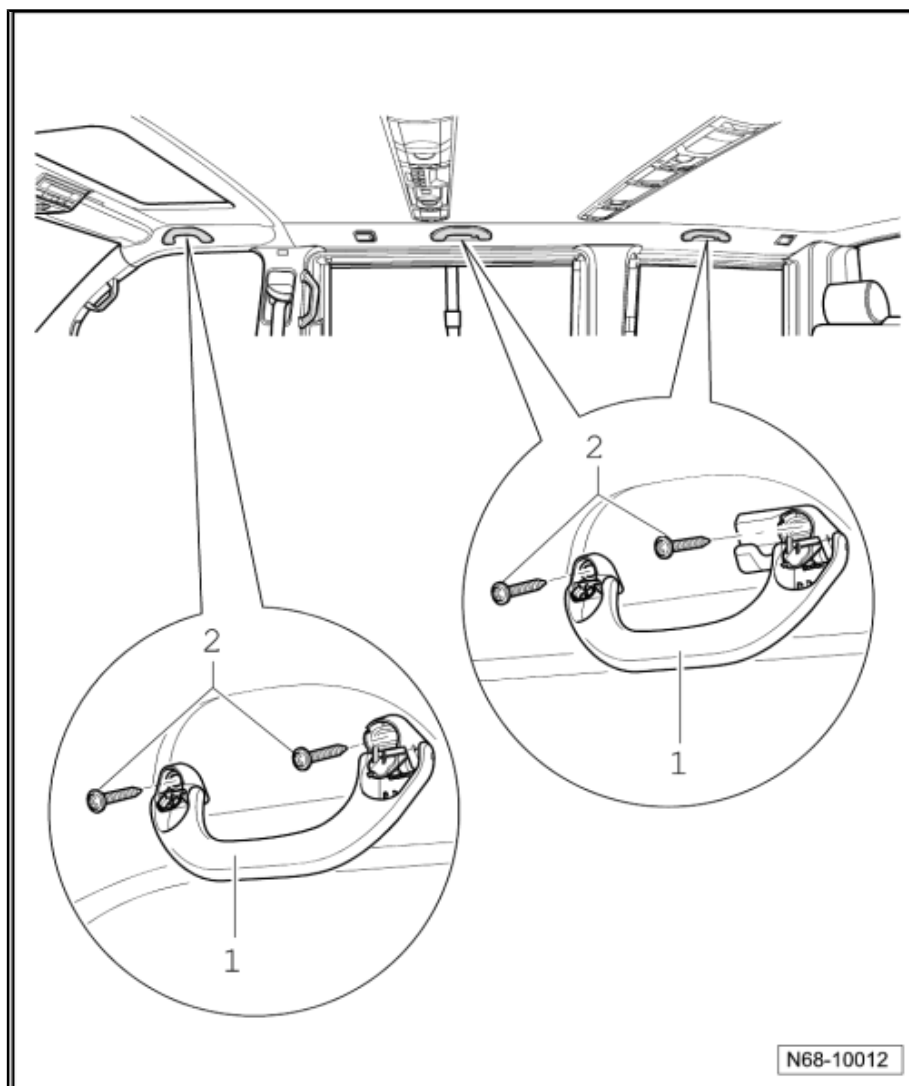
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



### Note

*The removal and installation procedure is described for the right-hand side of the vehicle. Removal and installation of the left vehicle side is similar.*



### Removing

- Fold down grab handles -1-.
- Lever off cover caps using a small screwdriver.
- Fold up caps, and lock grab handles -1- in place.
- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Remove grab handles -1-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

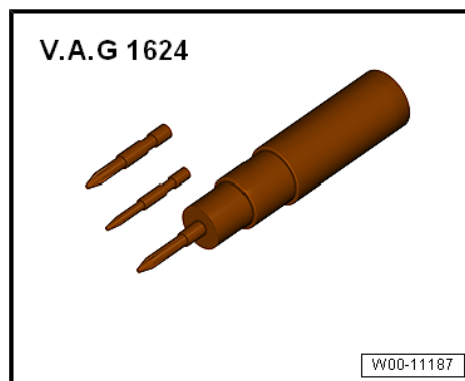
Component	Specified torque
Bolt for grab handle	2 Nm

## 2.8 Removing and installing grab handles on pillar trims

Special tools and workshop equipment required



- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



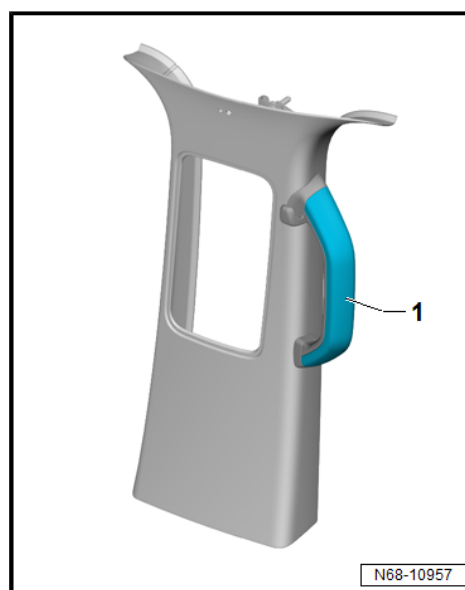
## Removing



### Note

*The removal and installation procedure is described for the grab handle on the B-pillar. Apply the same instructions for the grab handles on the other pillar trims as appropriate.*

- Unclip cover -1- using removal wedge - 3409- .







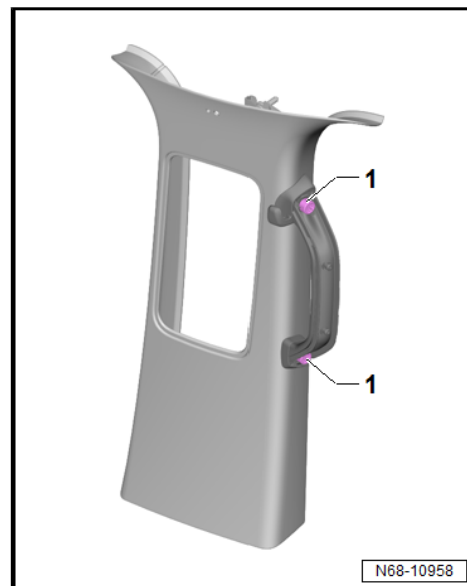
- Unscrew bolts -1-.
- Remove grab handle.
- If fitted, pull off coat hook from removed grab handle.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ ["2.2 Assembly overview - grab handles on pillar trims", page 45](#)



## 2.9 Removing and installing partition, panel van

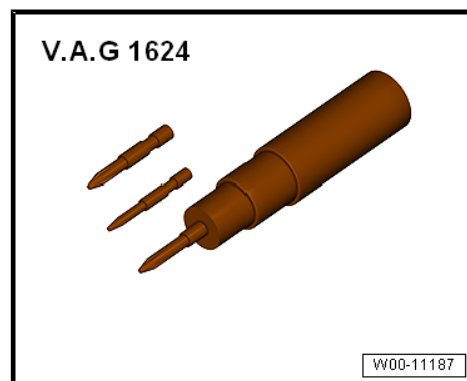
⇒ ["2.9.1 Removing and installing partition, panel van, partition upper part", page 53](#)

⇒ ["2.9.2 Removing and installing partition, panel van, partition lower part", page 54](#)

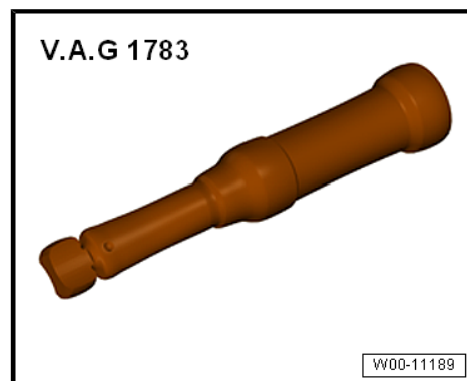
### 2.9.1 Removing and installing partition, panel van, partition upper part

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



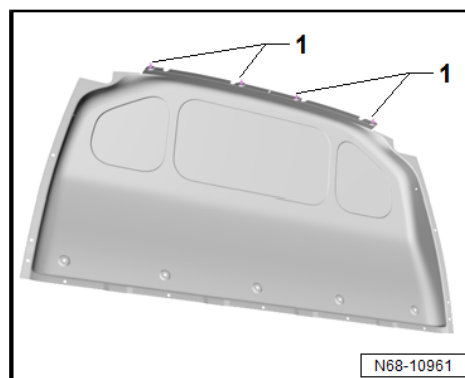
- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-





## Removing

- Unscrew bolts -1- in passenger compartment.



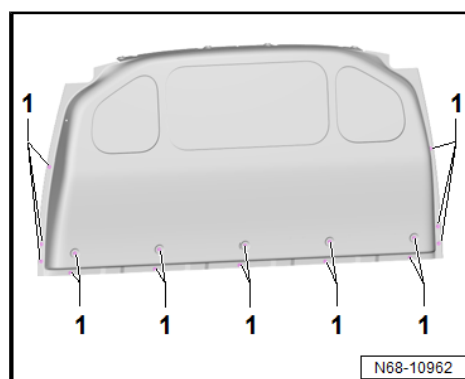
- Unscrew nuts -1- in luggage compartment.
- Remove partition.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

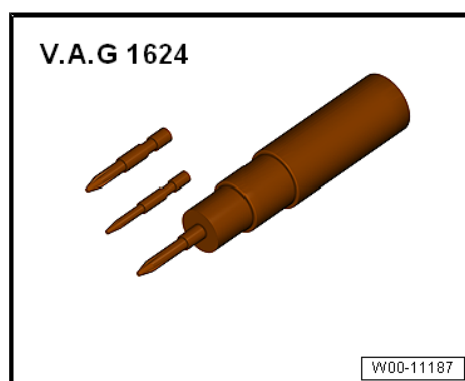
- ♦ ⇒ [“2.1 Assembly overview - partition, panel van”, page 42](#)



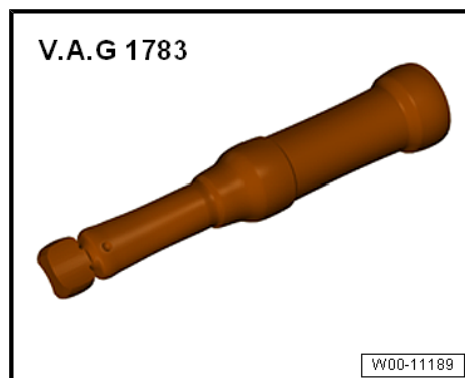
## 2.9.2 Removing and installing partition, panel van, partition lower part

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-





### Removing

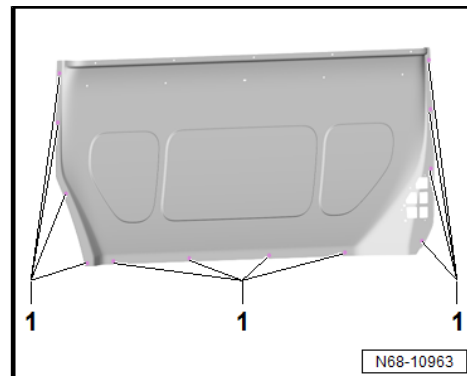
- Remove partition upper part ⇒ [page 53](#) .
- Unscrew nuts -1-.
- Remove partition.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

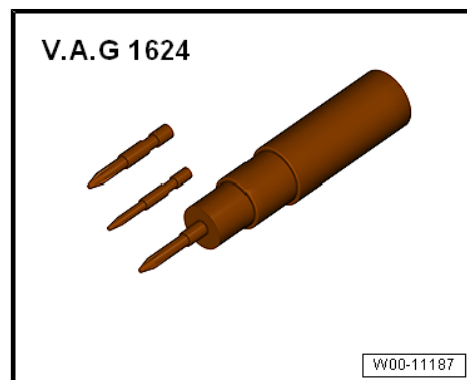
- ♦ ⇒ [“2.1 Assembly overview - partition, panel van”, page 42](#)



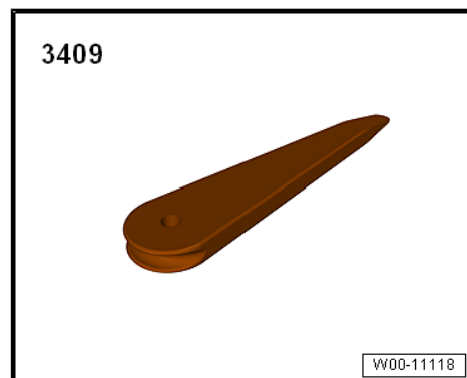
## 2.10 Removing and installing ashtray/cup holder, rear

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



- ♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

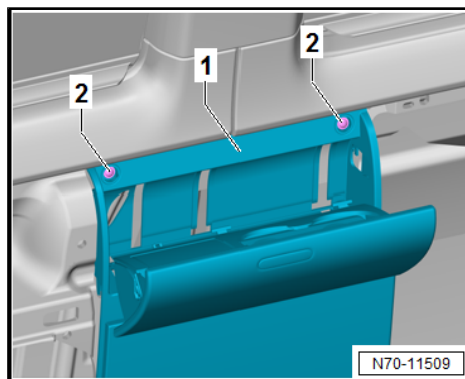


### Removing

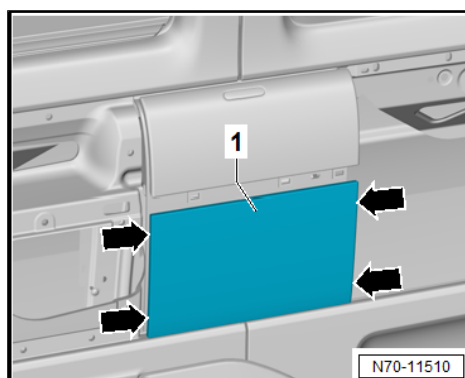
- Fold out ashtray/cup holder.
- Remove caps for bolts in installation frame -1-.



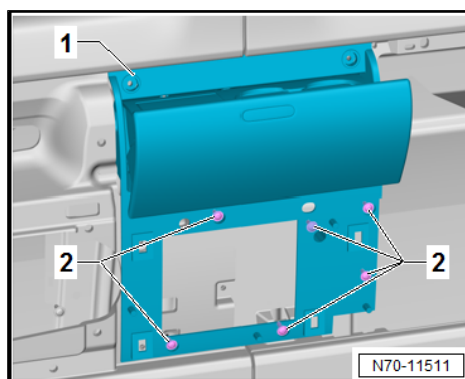
- Unscrew bolts -2-.



- Unclip trim -1- at positions marked with -arrows-.



- Unscrew bolts -2- from installation frame -1-.
- Remove ashtray/cup holder with installation frame from side trim panel.



#### Vehicles without comfort trim

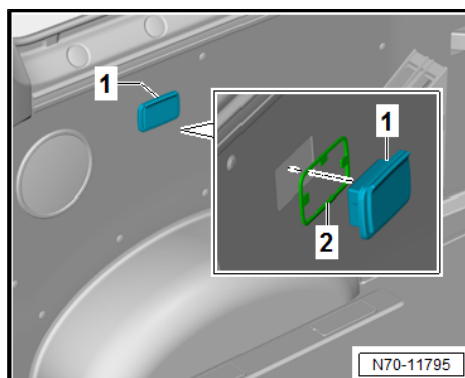
- Use wedge - T10383- to unclip ashtray -1- from side trim.
- Use wedge - T10383- to unclip cover -2- from side trim.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

- ♦ ⇒ [“2.3 Assembly overview – ashtray/cup holder, rear”, page 46](#)

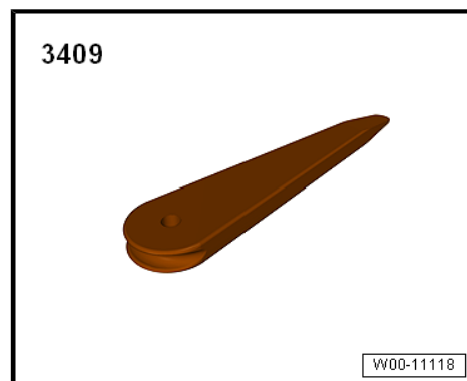


## 2.11 Removing and installing sun blind

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



**Removing**

**Vehicles with front side trim panel**

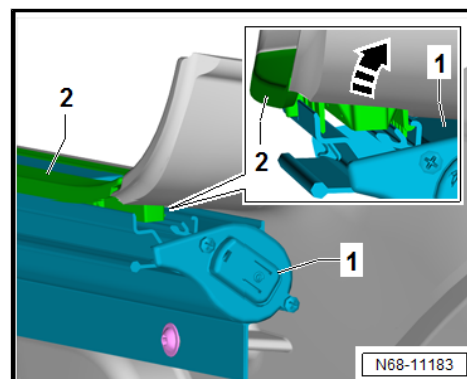
- Remove side trim panel ⇒ [page 242](#) .

**Vehicles with rear luggage compartment side trim**

- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 259](#) .

**Continued for all vehicles**

- Unclip guide rail -2- from side trim panel using removal wedge - 3409- in direction of -arrow-.
- Pull sun blind -1- slightly out of side trim panel and remove tab through guide rail -2-.



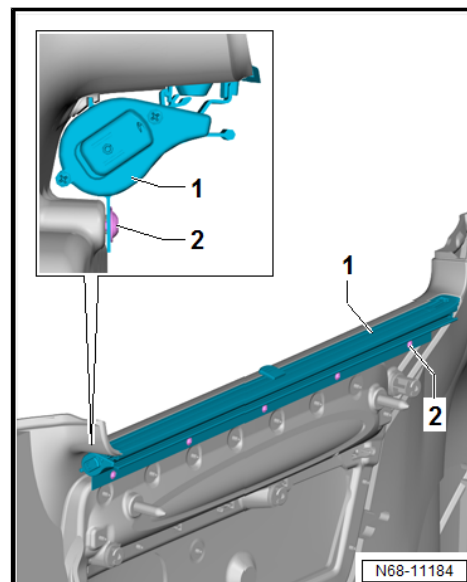
- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Remove sun blind -1-.

**Installing**

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

**Specified torque**

- ◆ ⇒ [“2.4 Assembly overview - sun blind”, page 47](#)



### 3 Centre console

⇒ [“3.1 Assembly overview - centre console”, page 58](#)

⇒ [“3.2 Removing and installing centre console cover”, page 59](#)

⇒ [“3.3 Removing and installing centre console insert”, page 62](#)

⇒ [“3.4 Removing and installing centre console front storage compartment”, page 63](#)

⇒ [“3.5 Removing and installing centre console”, page 63](#)

⇒ [“3.6 Removing and installing cup holder”, page 65](#)

#### 3.1 Assembly overview - centre console

⇒ [“3.1.1 Assembly overview - centre console, Multivan”, page 58](#)

⇒ [“3.1.2 Assembly overview - centre console, Transporter”, page 59](#)

##### 3.1.1 Assembly overview - centre console, Multivan

###### 1 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 14
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

###### 2 - Upper centre console cover

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 59](#)

###### 3 - Storage compartment

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 63](#)

###### 4 - Cup holder

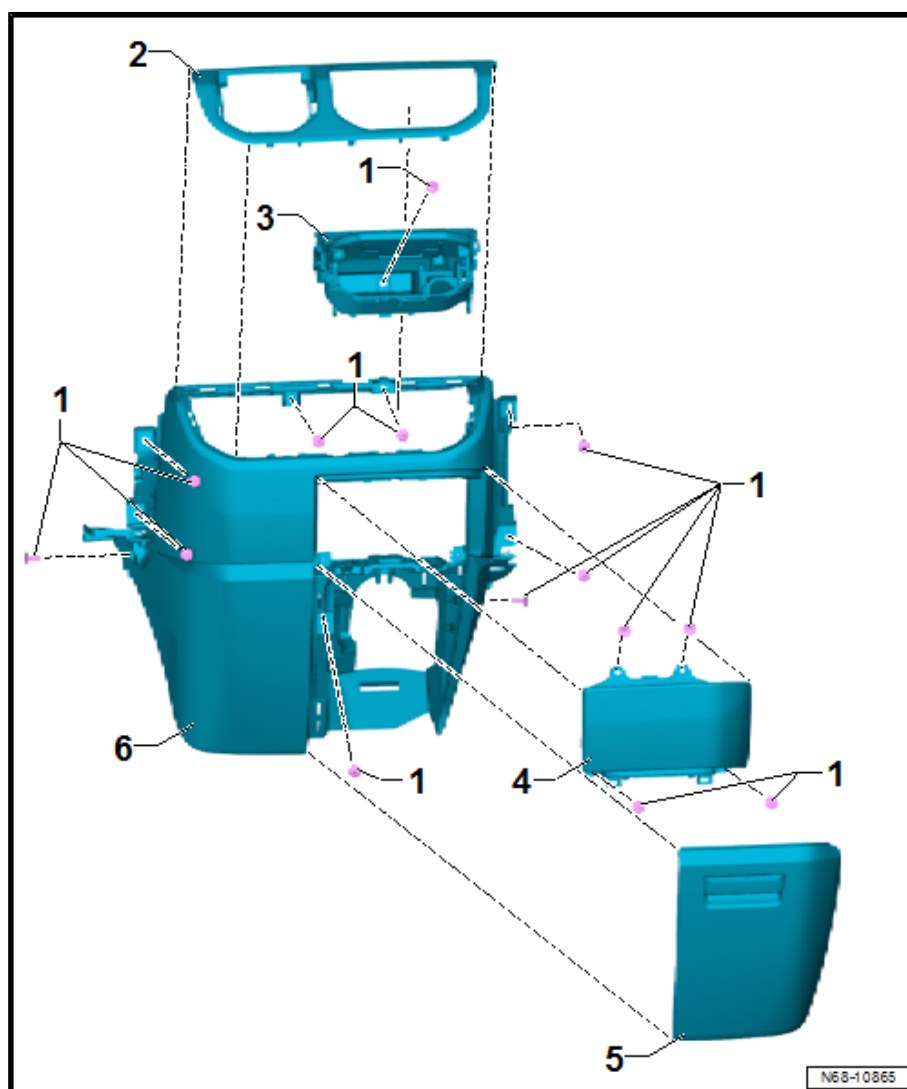
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 65](#)

###### 5 - Centre console insert

- ☐ As bottle holder in this example
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 62](#)

###### 6 - Centre console

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 63](#)





### 3.1.2 Assembly overview - centre console, Transporter



#### Note

Minor differences may be encountered during repair work, depending on vehicle model.

#### 1 - Centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 63](#)

#### 2 - Upper centre console cover

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 59](#)

#### 3 - Storage compartment

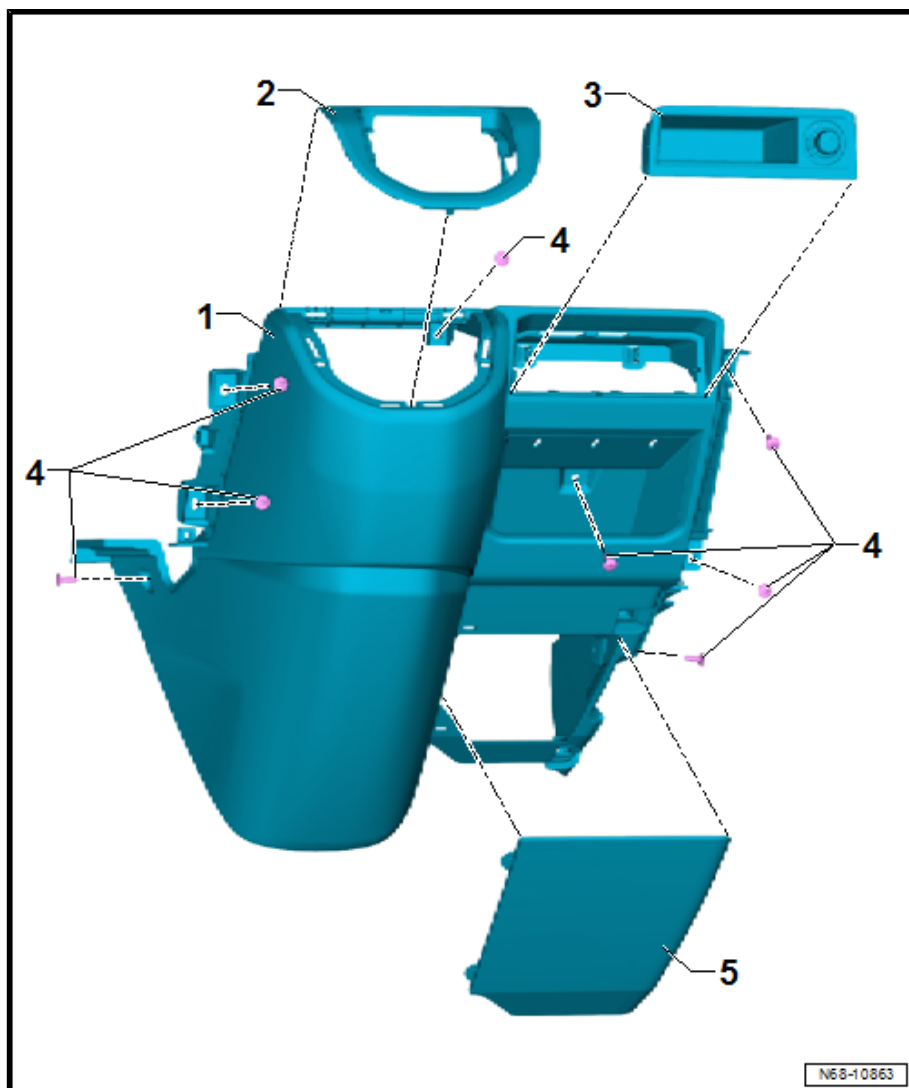
- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 63](#)

#### 4 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 8
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

#### 5 - Lower centre console cover

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 61](#)



### 3.2 Removing and installing centre console cover

⇒ [“3.2.1 Removing and installing centre console cover, Multivan, Transporter”, page 59](#)

⇒ [“3.2.2 Removing and installing centre console cover, Transporter, cover on gear selector guide”, page 61](#)

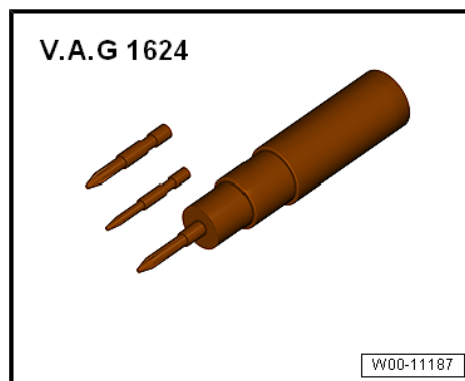
⇒ [“3.2.3 Removing and installing centre console cover, Transporter, lower right centre console cover”, page 61](#)

#### 3.2.1 Removing and installing centre console cover, Multivan, Transporter

Special tools and workshop equipment required



- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



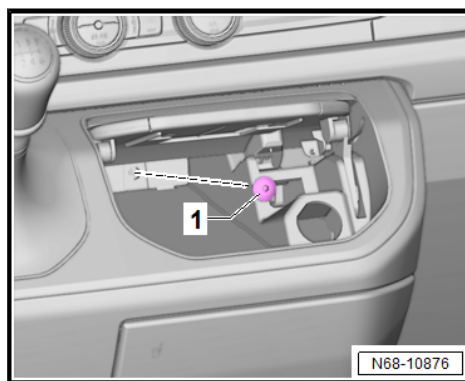
## Removing

### Vehicles with 7-speed dual clutch gearbox

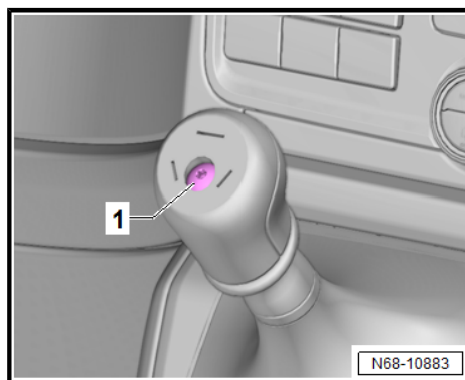
- Remove selector lever handle ⇒ 7-speed dual clutch gearbox 0BT; Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector lever handle .

### Continued for all vehicles

- Open lid of storage compartment insert.
- Remove rubber pad from interior of storage compartment.
- Unscrew bolt -1-.
- Unclip plastic cover on gear lever.



- Unscrew bolt -1-.







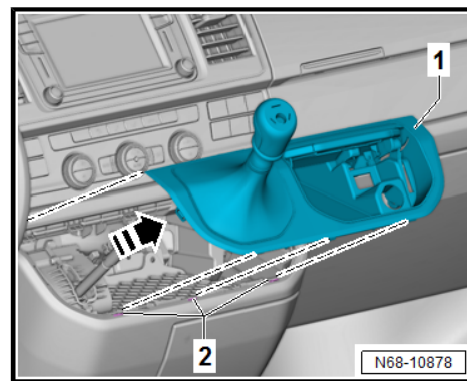
- Unclip cover -1- from catches -2-.
- Pull cover -1- together with storage compartment and gear lever gaiter upwards in -direction of arrow- out of centre console.
- Disconnect connector on socket.
- If fitted, disconnect connector on connection for external multimedia devices (USB).

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

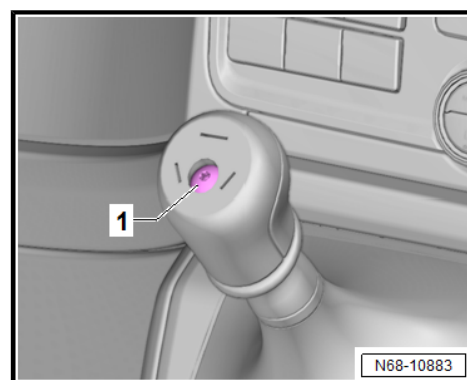
- ◆ ⇒ [“3.1 Assembly overview - centre console”, page 58](#)



### 3.2.2 Removing and installing centre console cover, Transporter, cover on gear selector guide

#### Removing

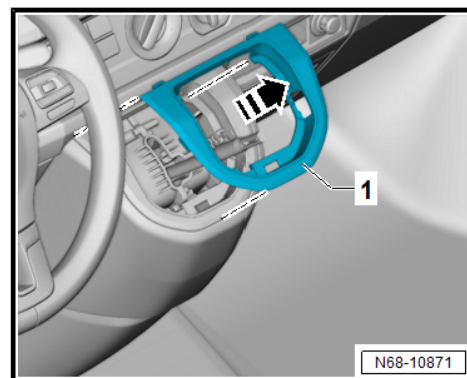
- Unclip plastic cover on gear lever.
- Unscrew bolt -1-.
- Pull gear lever gaiter upwards off gear lever.



- Unclip cover -1- in -direction of arrow-, and remove it upwards.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

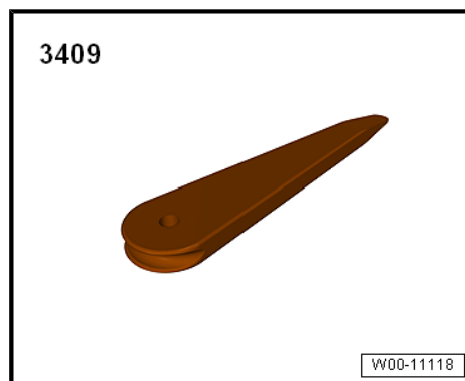


### 3.2.3 Removing and installing centre console cover, Transporter, lower right centre console cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

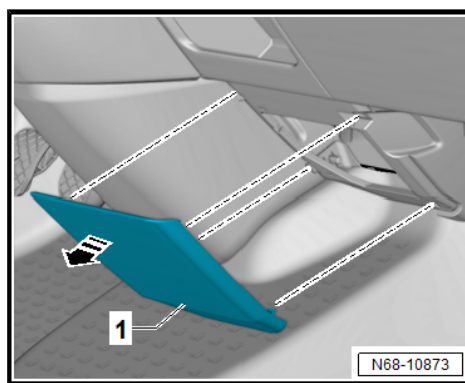


**Removing**

- Unclip and remove cover -1- in -direction of arrow-.

**Installing**

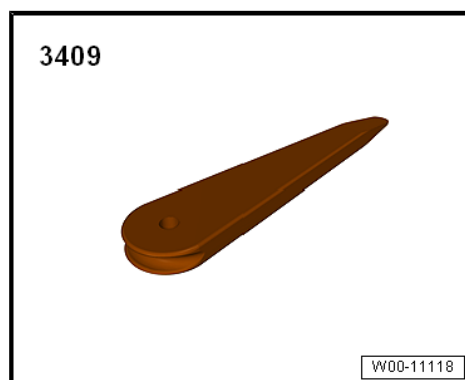
Installation is carried out in reverse order.



### 3.3 Removing and installing centre console insert

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

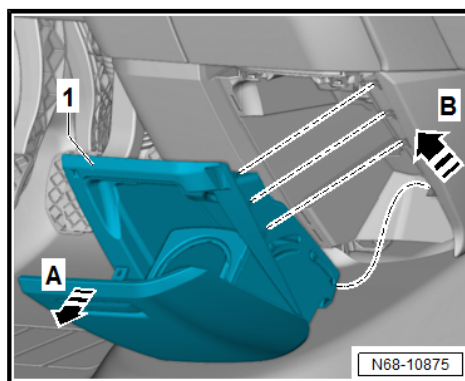


**Removing**

- Fold up centre console insert, bottle holder, -1- in direction of arrow -A-.
- Detach retaining clips on side of centre console insert -1- from centre console in direction of -arrow A-.
- Unclip and remove centre console insert -1- from centre console in direction of -arrow B-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse order.





### 3.4 Removing and installing centre console front storage compartment

⇒ [“3.4.1 Removing and installing centre console front storage compartment, Multivan, Transporter”, page 63](#)

⇒ [“3.4.2 Removing and installing centre console front storage compartment, Transporter”, page 63](#)

#### 3.4.1 Removing and installing centre console front storage compartment, Multivan, Transporter

Storage compartment is available as a replacement part only in conjunction with cover.

Remove centre console cover ⇒ [page 59](#) .

#### 3.4.2 Removing and installing centre console front storage compartment, Transporter



#### Note

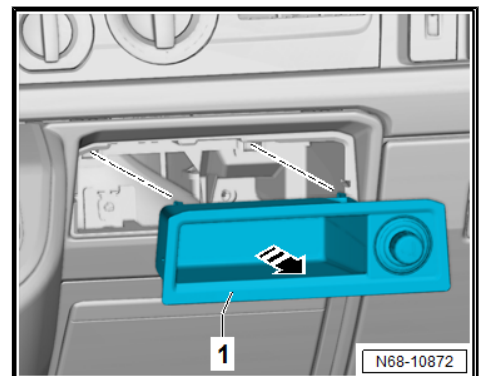
*Depending on equipment, centre console storage compartments designated for Multivan models can also be installed in Transporter models ⇒ [page 63](#) .*

#### Removing

- Unclip centre console storage compartment -1- in -direction of arrow- from centre console.
- Disconnect connector on socket.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.



### 3.5 Removing and installing centre console

⇒ [“3.5.1 Removing and installing centre console, Multivan”, page 63](#)

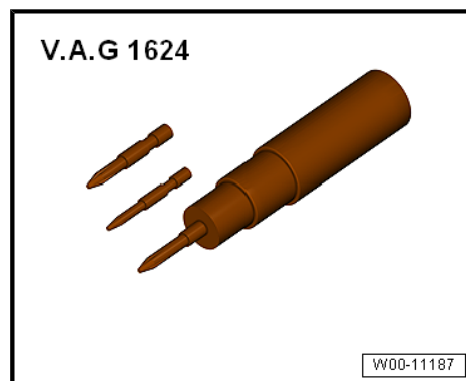
⇒ [“3.5.2 Removing and installing centre console, Transporter”, page 64](#)

#### 3.5.1 Removing and installing centre console, Multivan

Special tools and workshop equipment required



- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



### Removing

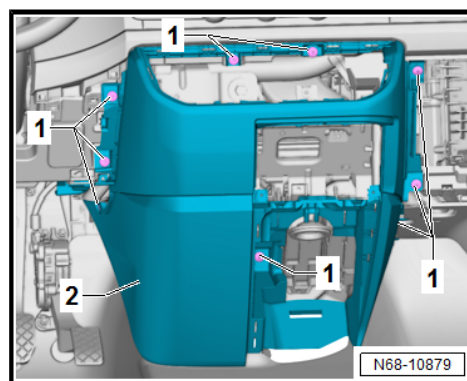
- Remove front centre console cover ⇒ [page 59](#) .
- Remove front centre console insert ⇒ [page 62](#) .
- Remove cup holder ⇒ [page 65](#) .
- Remove footwell covers on left and right ⇒ [page 31](#) .
- Remove dash panel cover on driver side ⇒ [page 28](#) .
- Remove glove compartment ⇒ [page 32](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -1- from centre console -2-.
- Remove centre console -2- from beneath dash panel.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

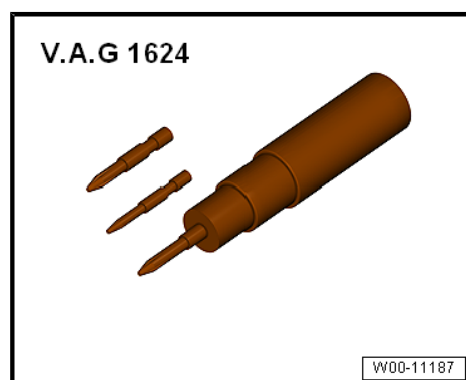
- ◆ ⇒ [“3.1 Assembly overview - centre console”, page 58](#)



## 3.5.2 Removing and installing centre console, Transporter

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-





## Removing



### Note

*The removal and installation procedures may have to be modified slightly depending on model variants.*

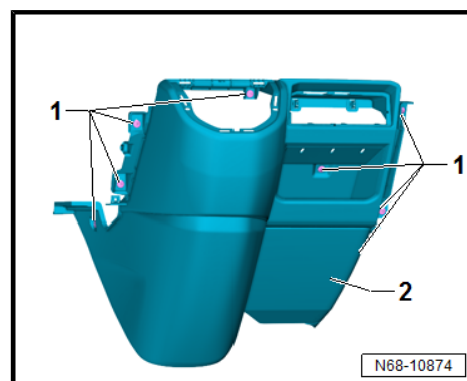
- Remove front centre console cover ⇒ [page 59](#) .
- Remove centre console front storage compartment ⇒ [page 63](#) .
- Remove footwell covers on left and right ⇒ [page 31](#) .
- If fitted, unclip ashtray insert in bottom centre trim of storage compartment.
- Unscrew bolts -1- from centre console -2-.
- Remove centre console -2- from beneath dash panel.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

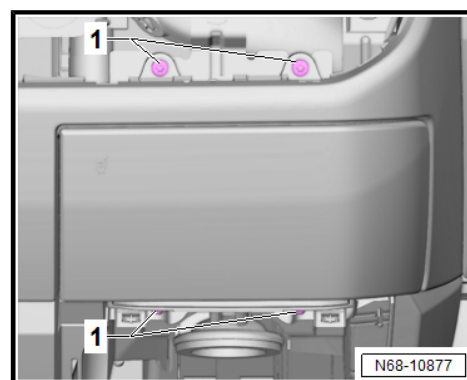
- ◆ ⇒ [“3.1 Assembly overview - centre console”, page 58](#)



## 3.6 Removing and installing cup holder

### Removing

- Remove centre console storage compartment ⇒ [page 63](#) .
- Remove centre console insert ⇒ [page 62](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -1-.
- Press catches -1-.



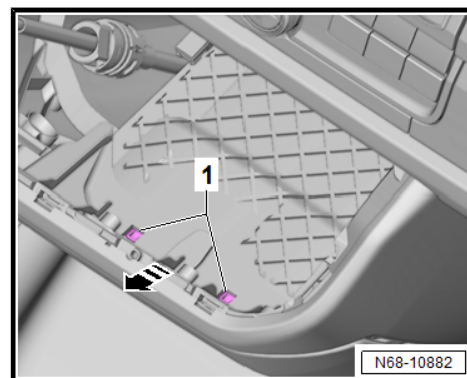
- Pull cup holder in -direction of arrow A- out of centre console.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“3.1 Assembly overview - centre console”, page 58](#)

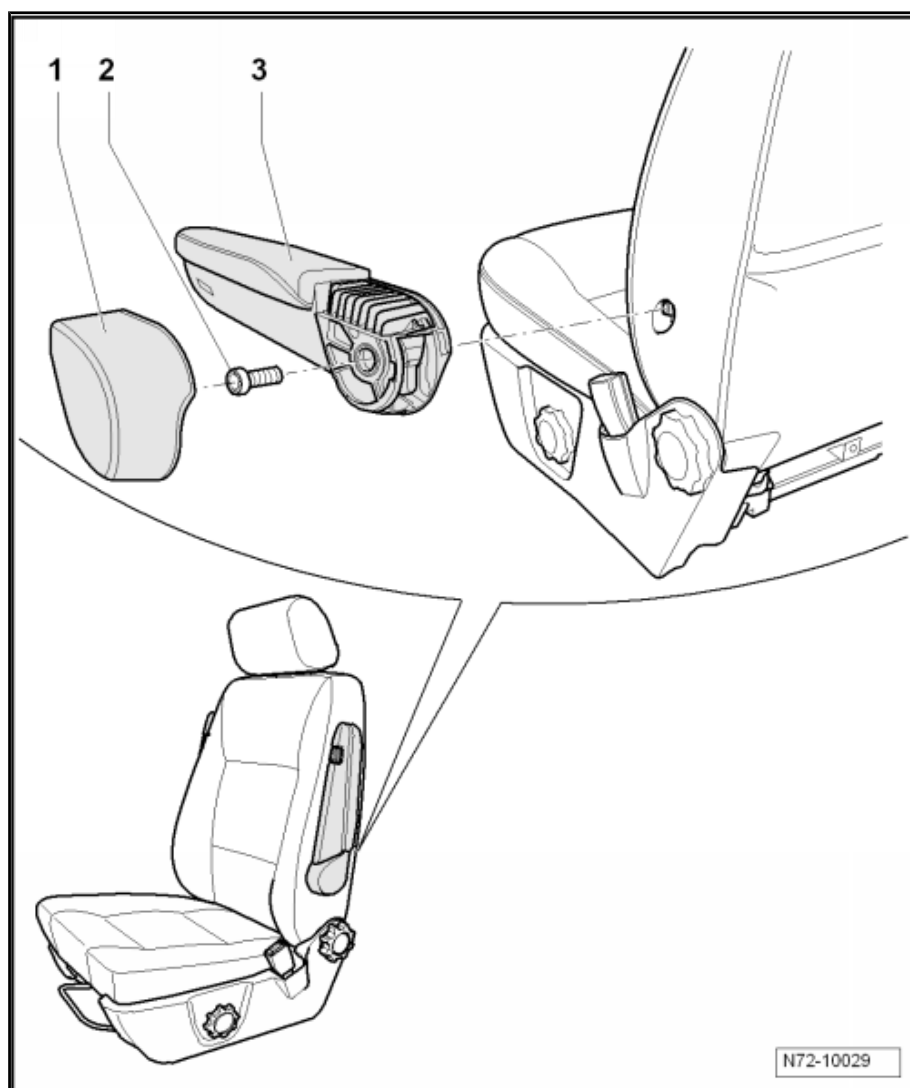




## 4 Front centre armrest

⇒ ["4.1 Removing and installing front centre armrest", page 66](#)

### 4.1 Removing and installing front centre armrest



#### Removing

- Lever off cover cap -1- using a small screwdriver.
- Unscrew bolt -2-.



#### Note

- ♦ *The bolt -2- is microencapsulated and must be renewed each time it is loosened.*
- ♦ *Before a new bolt is installed, the thread of the corresponding nut must be cleaned.*
- Remove arm rest -3- from seat.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ ["2.3 Assembly overview – front backrest", page 292](#)



## 5 On inside

⇒ [“5.1 Assembly overview - interior mirror”, page 68](#)

⇒ [“5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror”, page 70](#)

### 5.1 Assembly overview - interior mirror

⇒ [“5.1.1 Assembly overview - manual anti-dazzle interior mirror without rain sensor”, page 68](#)

⇒ [“5.1.2 Assembly overview - manual or automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror with rain sensor and with main beam assist control unit J844”, page 69](#)

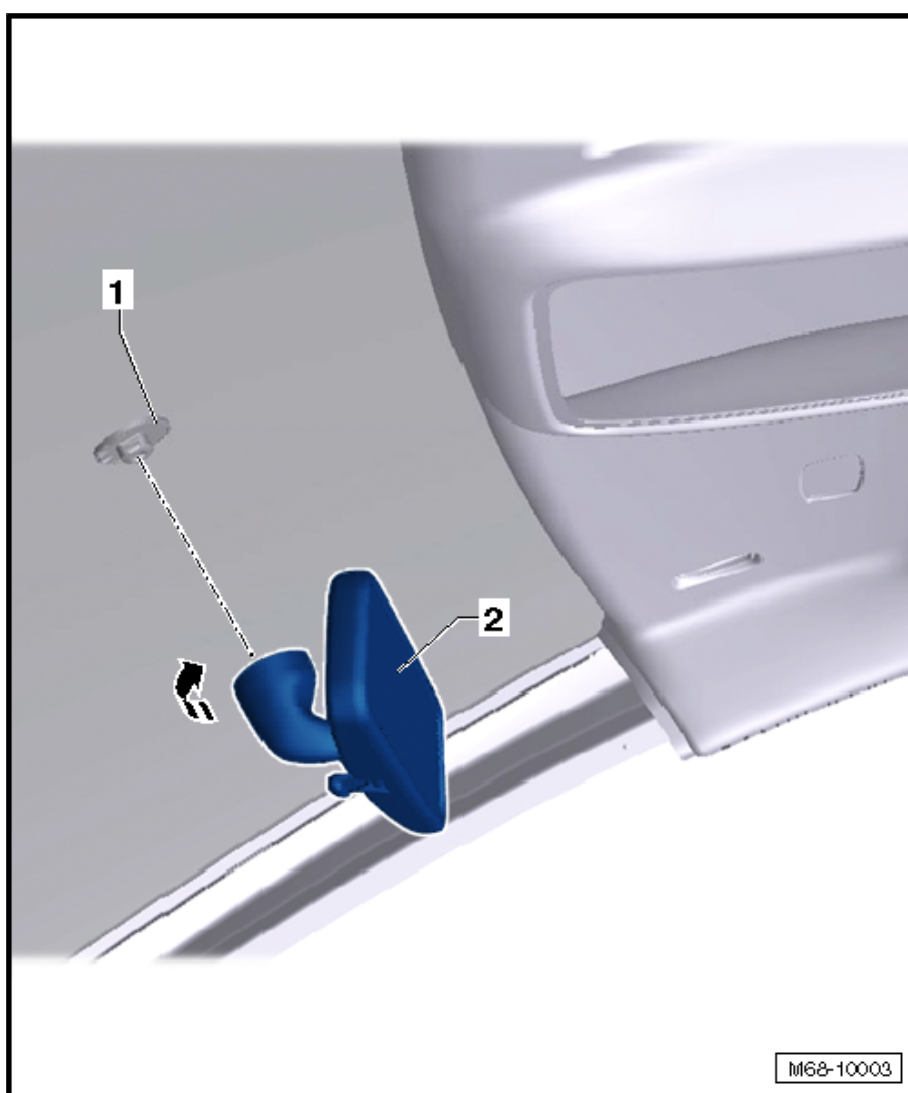
#### 5.1.1 Assembly overview - manual anti-dazzle interior mirror without rain sensor

##### 1 - Retaining plate

- ☐ Retaining plate for mirror base
- ☐ Glued to windscreen
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 70](#)

##### 2 - On inside

- ☐ Manually operated
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 70](#)







## 5.1.2 Assembly overview - manual or automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror with rain sensor and with main beam assist control unit - J844-

### 1 - On inside - EX5-

- ☐ With front camera for driver assist systems - R242-
- ☐ With main beam assist control unit - J844-
- ☐ With anti-dazzle interior mirror button - E386-
- ☐ Not available as separate replacement part
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 70](#)

### 2 - Front cover

- ☐ For mirror base

### 3 - Rain and light sensor - G397- / rain sensor - G213-

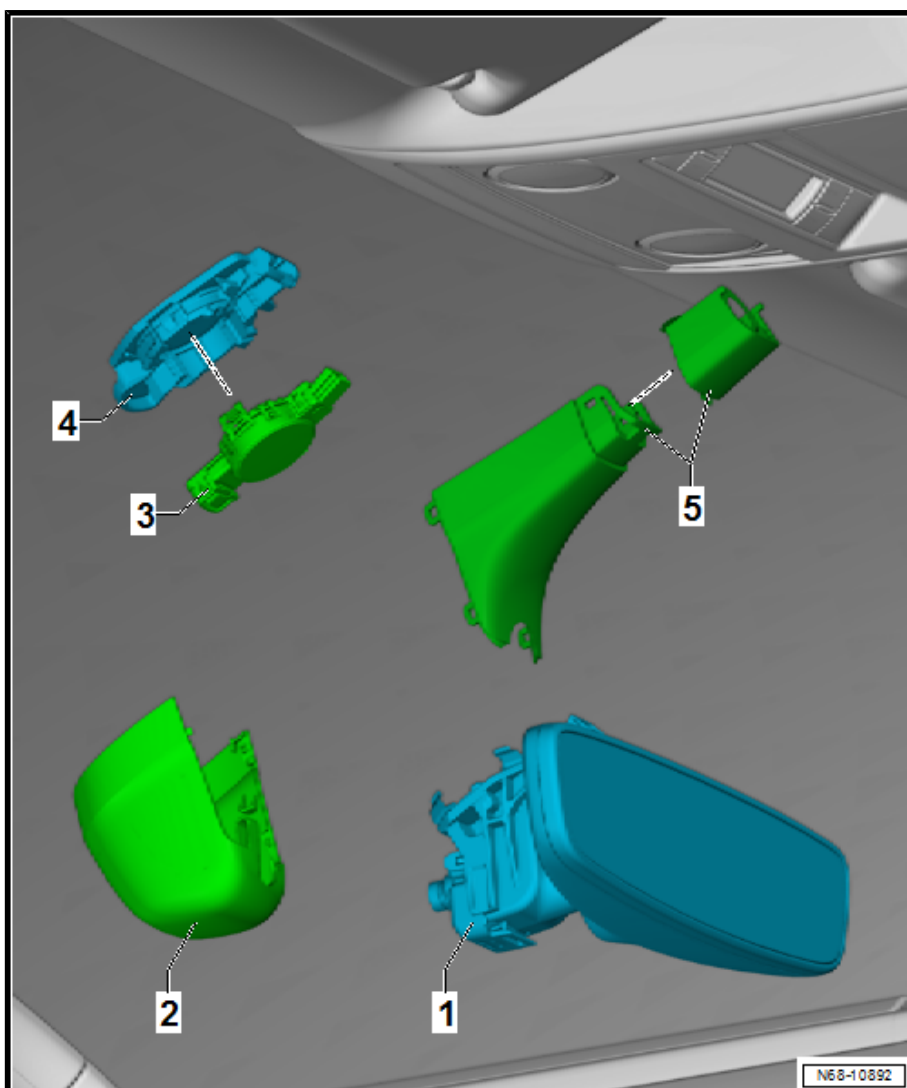
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ Electrical system;  
Rep. gr. 92 ; Wind-  
screen wiper system;  
Removing and installing  
rain and light sensor .

### 4 - Retaining plate

- ☐ Retaining plate for mirror base
- ☐ Glued to windscreen
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 70](#)

### 5 - Rear covers

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ For mirror base





## 5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror

⇒ [“5.2.1 Removing and installing manual anti-dazzle interior mirror without rain sensor”, page 70](#)

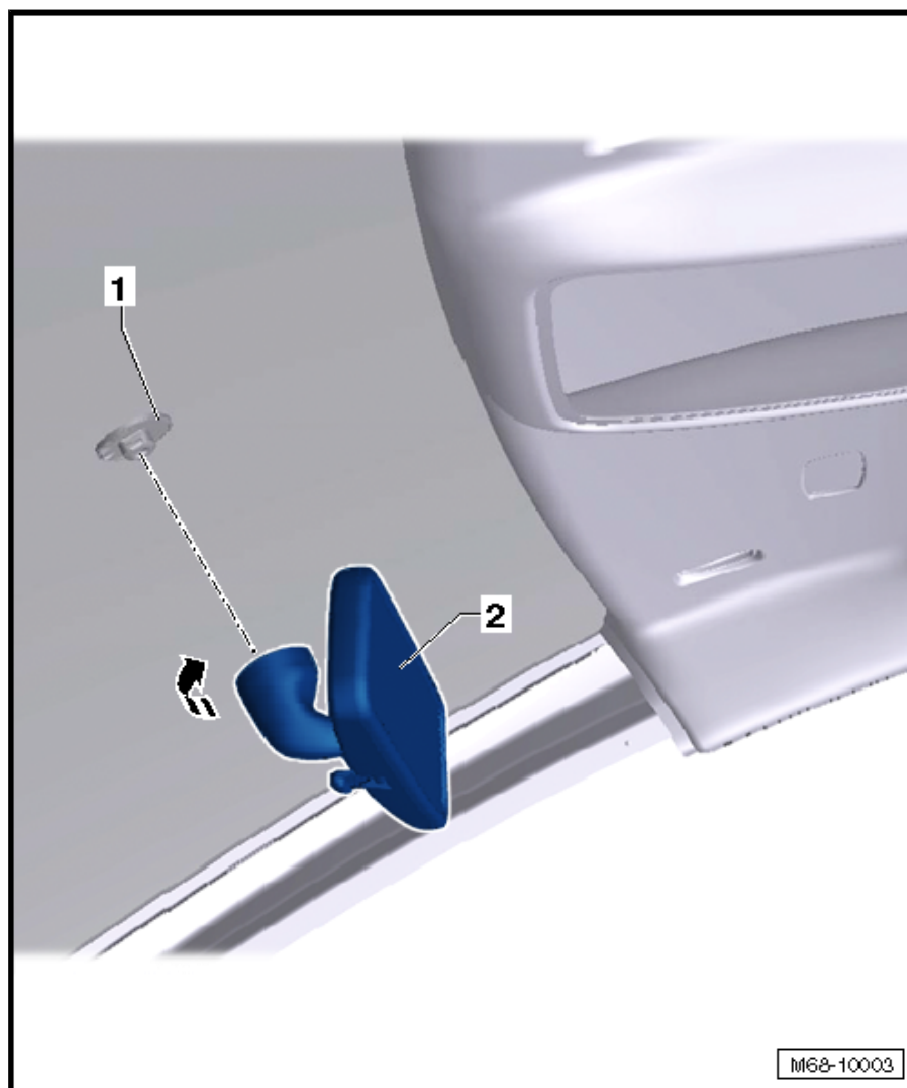
⇒ [“5.2.2 Removing and installing manual or automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror with rain sensor and with main beam assist control unit J844”, page 71](#)

⇒ [“5.2.3 Removing and installing retaining plate for manual anti-dazzle interior mirror without rain sensor”, page 72](#)

⇒ [“5.2.4 Removing and installing retaining plate for manual or automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror with rain sensor”, page 74](#)

### 5.2.1 Removing and installing manual anti-dazzle interior mirror without rain sensor

#### Removing



- Turn interior mirror -2- anti-clockwise -arrow- by 90° (1/4 turn).
- Remove interior mirror -2- from glued-on retaining plate -1-.



## Installing



### Note

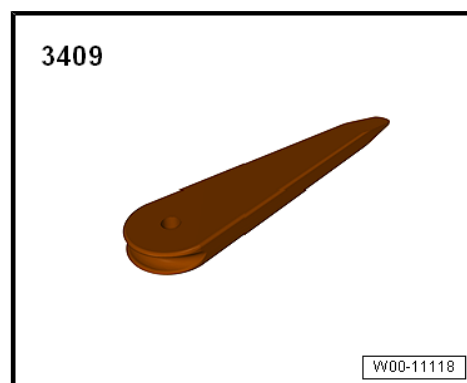
*Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

## 5.2.2 Removing and installing manual or automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror with rain sensor and with main beam assist control unit - J844-

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

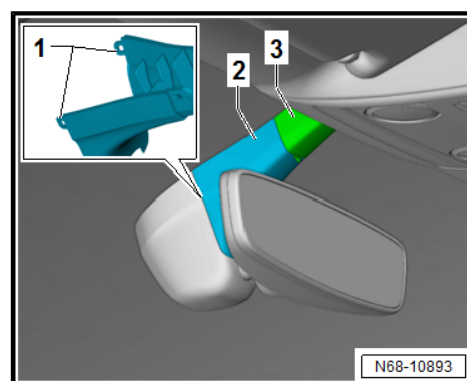


## Removing

Front camera for driver assist systems - R242- , anti-dazzle interior mirror button - E386- and main beam assist control unit - J844- are not available separately as a replacement part.

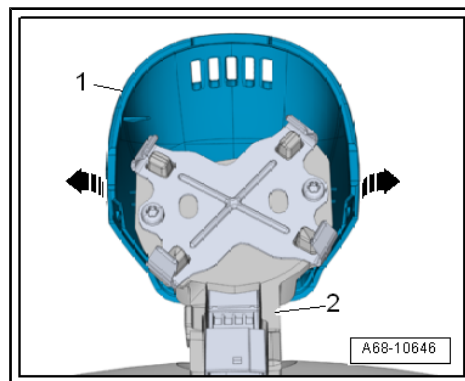
In the event of renewal, interior mirror - EX5- must be replaced. Calibration is not necessary.

- Swing interior mirror downwards by approx. 25° as far as stop.
- Use removal wedge - 3409- to release cover -3-. Remove cover -3-.
- Pull cover -2- at rear downwards while simultaneously releasing catches -1- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Detach cover -2- from mirror base and remove it.





- Carefully release locking lugs -arrows- and pull front cover -1- downwards out of guides on mirror base -2-.

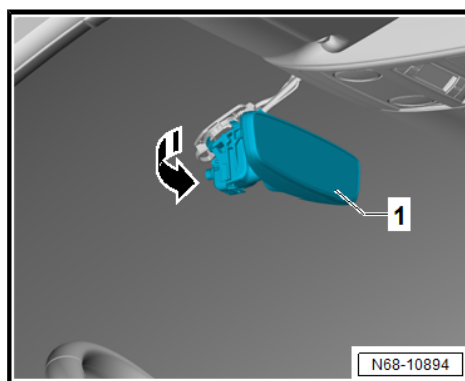


- Turn interior mirror -1- anti-clockwise by 20° -arrow-, and remove it downwards.
- If fitted, disconnect connector on interior mirror.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.



### 5.2.3 Removing and installing retaining plate for manual anti-dazzle interior mirror without rain sensor



#### Note

- ◆ *With the repair procedure described, it is no longer necessary to renew the windscreen.*
- ◆ *At the same time, it is also possible to reuse the old mirror base which has fallen off.*

#### Materials

- ◆ Glass-metal adhesive kit "D 000 703 A1"

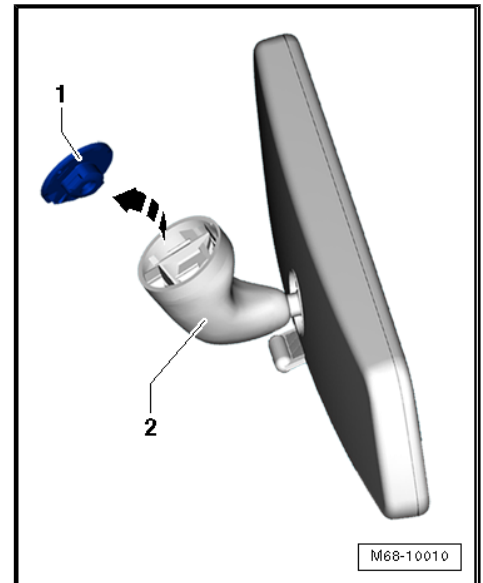
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Glass scraper (commercially available) -1-
- ◆ Blade (commercially available) -2-

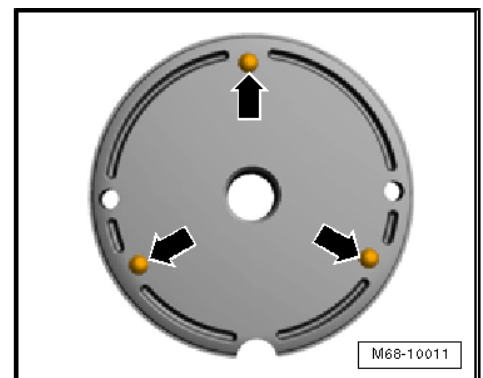


## Bonding

- Detach retaining plate -1- from mirror foot -2- in -direction of arrow-.
- Remove PUR adhesive sealant from retaining plate -1- using a wire brush.



- Grind off the three spacer protrusions -arrows- on bonding surface. To do this, use sandpaper (360/400 grain) laid on flat surface.
- Keep sanded surface clean and free of grease.
- Remove PUR adhesive sealant as well as old glass/paint primer down to ceramic layer on windscreen using a glass scraper.



### Caution

***Do not damage ceramic coating. Scratches will remain permanently visible.***

- Clean adhesive contact area with adhesive remover - D 002 000 10- or cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .
- Cut a piece of mesh nylon fabric -3- from glass-metal adhesive set - D 000 703 A1- exactly to the size of the retaining plate -2-.



### Note

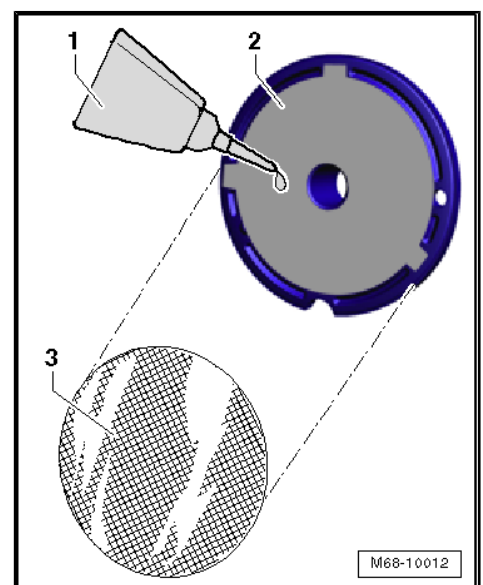
*Wear hand protection (rubber gloves).*

- Apply a good layer of adhesive -1- from glass-metal adhesive set - D 000 703 A1- uniformly to the retaining plate -2-.
- Place nylon mesh fabric -3- on retaining plate -2-.
- Dab nylon mesh fabric -3- with tube of adhesive -1- while applying further adhesive.



### Note

- ◆ *It is essential to bear in mind the drying time of the adhesive.*
- ◆ *Only 30 seconds are available from laying nylon mesh fabric on adhesive to pressing plate onto windscreen.*



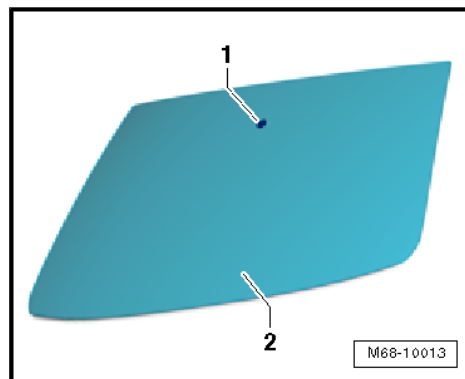


- Press retaining plate -1- (do not use force) against windscreen -2- for 15 seconds.



**Note**

*Interior mirror can be installed after 15 minutes.*



## 5.2.4 Removing and installing retaining plate for manual or automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror with rain sensor



**Note**

- ♦ *With the repair procedure described, it is no longer necessary to renew the windscreen.*
- ♦ *At the same time, it is also possible to reuse the old mirror base which has fallen off.*

### Preparing windscreen

- All adhesive and primer residue must be removed from the ceramic pre-coating.
- Clean bonding area with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .
- Adhere to “flash-off period” of at least 10 minutes.
- Apply glass/paint primer - D 009 200 02- to ceramic pre-coating.
- Flash-off period until bonding: minimum of 10 minutes to maximum of 1 hour.

### Preparation of detached retaining plate

- Mechanically remove adhesive residue:
- ♦ Prepare bonding surface with “wet-on-wet” method by sanding down with wet fine emery paper (800 to 1,200 grade) until bonding surface is completely moist.
- ♦ Then clean with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .
- ♦ Adhere to “flash-off period” of at least 10 minutes.

### Gluing retaining plate on

- Apply the 2-component polyurethane adhesive - D 180 KD2 A1- directly onto the sanded and cleaned bonding surface -1- of the retaining plate.

Adhesive bead diameter: approx. 2.5...3.0 mm.

- Press retaining plate into position on prepared windscreen -2- immediately after applying adhesive.
- Align retaining plate in position on ceramic pre-coat surface and secure with adhesive tape.

### Cleaning and removing excessive adhesive

- Carefully remove adhesive tape 0.5 ... 1 hour after gluing on retaining plate.



- Remove excessive and still soft adhesive using a small spatula.
- Then remove remaining excessive adhesive completely using a cloth or primer applicator soaked in cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- .



**Note**

*The interior mirror can be fitted 2.5 hours after retaining plate has been glued on.*



## 6 Table modules, Multivan/Business

⇒ ["6.1 Assembly overview - table modules, table module in seat rails", page 76](#)

⇒ ["6.2 Assembly overview - table modules, table module in side panel", page 79](#)

⇒ ["6.3 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing table module", page 80](#)

⇒ ["6.4 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing table top", page 82](#)

⇒ ["6.5 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing cup holder", page 83](#)

⇒ ["6.6 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing ashtray", page 84](#)

⇒ ["6.7 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing drawer", page 85](#)

⇒ ["6.8 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing front trim", page 86](#)

⇒ ["6.9 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing rear trim", page 87](#)

⇒ ["6.10 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing side trim with magazine rack", page 87](#)

⇒ ["6.11 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing rollers and support", page 89](#)

⇒ ["6.12 Removing and installing table module in sidewall", page 91](#)

### 6.1 Assembly overview - table modules, table module in seat rails

⇒ ["6.1.1 Assembly overview - table modules, table module in seat rails, attachments", page 76](#)

⇒ ["6.1.2 Assembly overview - table modules, table module in seat rails, rail system", page 78](#)

#### 6.1.1 Assembly overview - table modules, table module in seat rails, attachments





# 1 - Table top

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 82](#)

# 2 - Fasteners

# 3 - Upper bearing shell

# 4 - Carrier plate

# 5 - Lower bearing shell

# 6 - Spacer ring

# 7 - Cover

# 8 - Table module

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 80](#)

# 9 - Front table module trim

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 86](#)

# 10 - Cup holder

- ☐ Front and rear cup holder on table module
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 83](#)

# 11 - Ashtray

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 84](#)

# 12 - Drawer

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 85](#)

# 13 - Spacer bush

# 14 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 1 Nm

# 15 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 1 Nm

# 16 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 1 Nm

# 17 - Trim, magazine rack

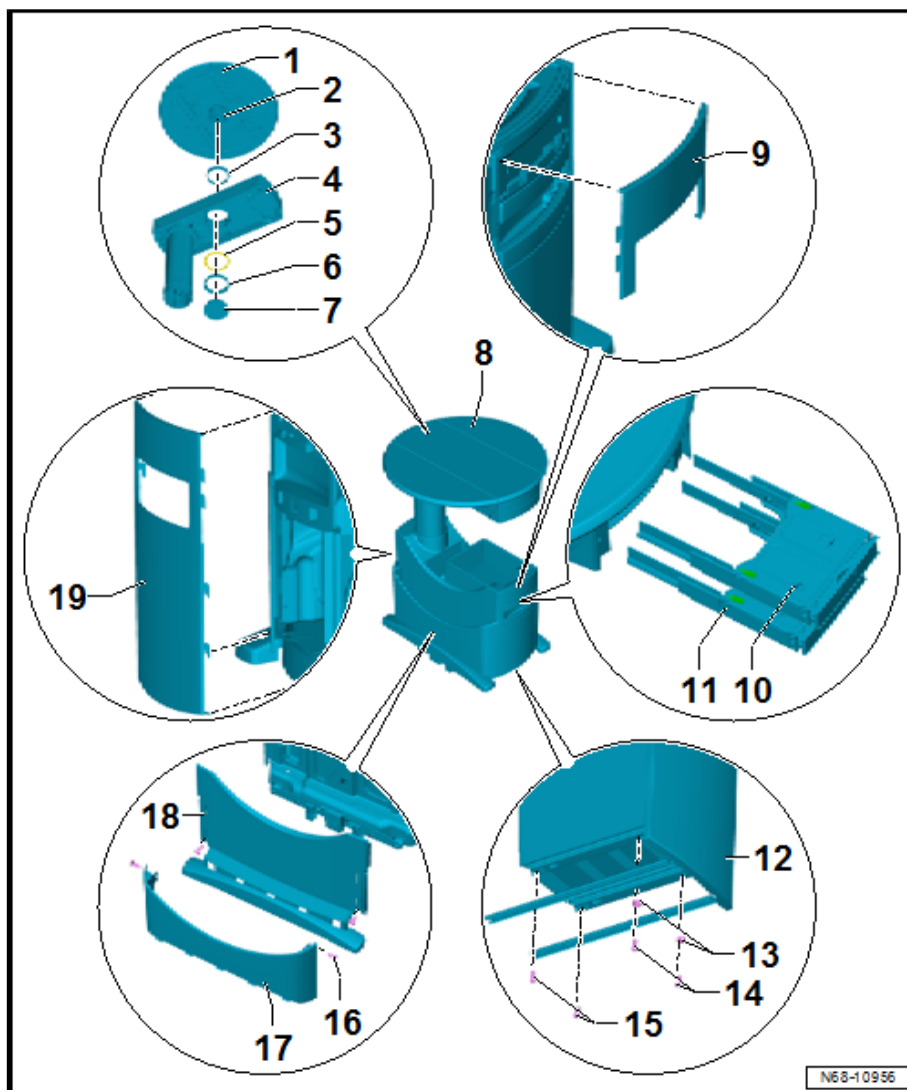
- ☐ Magazine racks, left and right of table module
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 87](#)

# 18 - Table module trim, side

- ☐ Trims, left and right of table module
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 87](#)

# 19 - Table module trim, rear

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 87](#)



N66-10956



## 6.1.2 Assembly overview - table modules, table module in seat rails, rail system

### 1 - Table module

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 80](#)

### 2 - Spring

### 3 - Guide

### 4 - Roller

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 89](#)

### 5 - Spacer bush

### 6 - Reinforcing member

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 89](#)

### 7 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

### 8 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 4
- ❑ 8 Nm

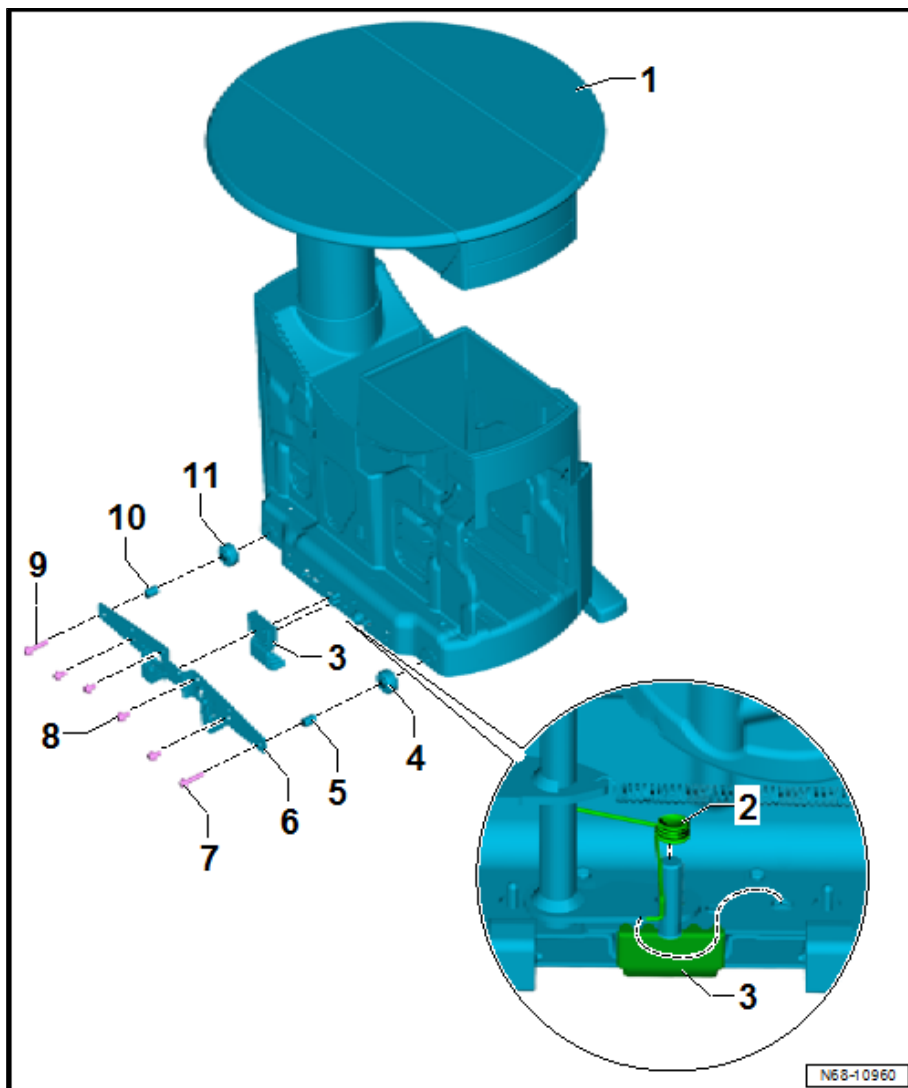
### 9 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

### 10 - Spacer bush

### 11 - Roller

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 89](#)





## 6.2 Assembly overview - table modules, table module in side panel

### 1 - Bolt

- Qty. 4
- 9 Nm

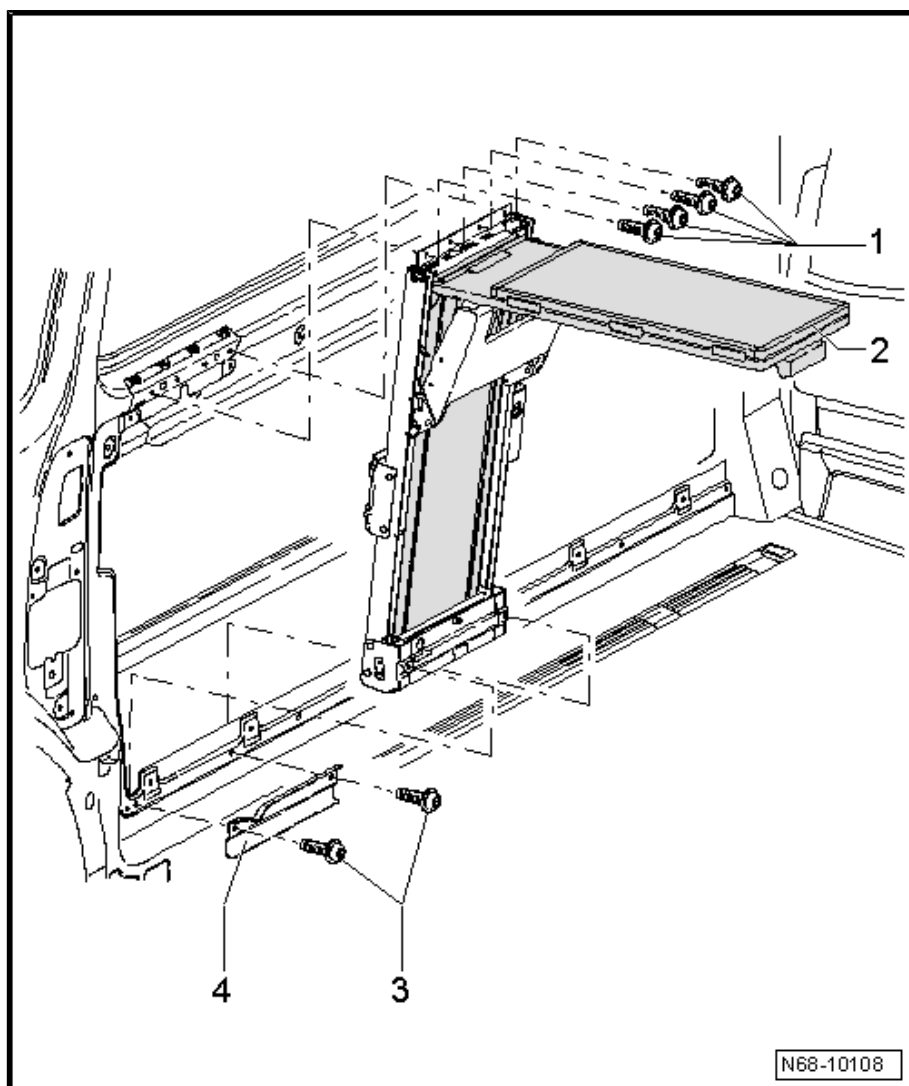
### 2 - Table module

- Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 91](#)

### 3 - Bolt

- Qty. 2
- 9 Nm

### 4 - Mounting plate

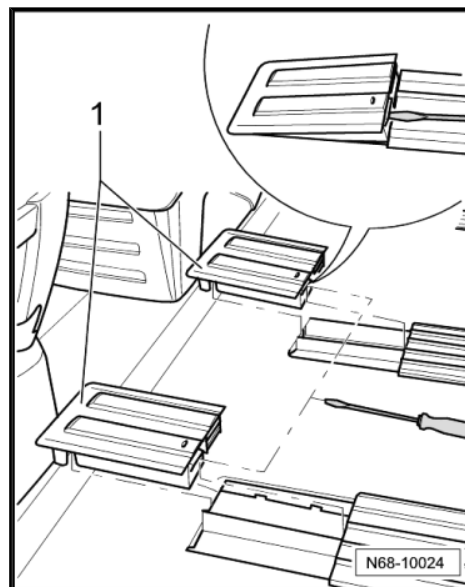


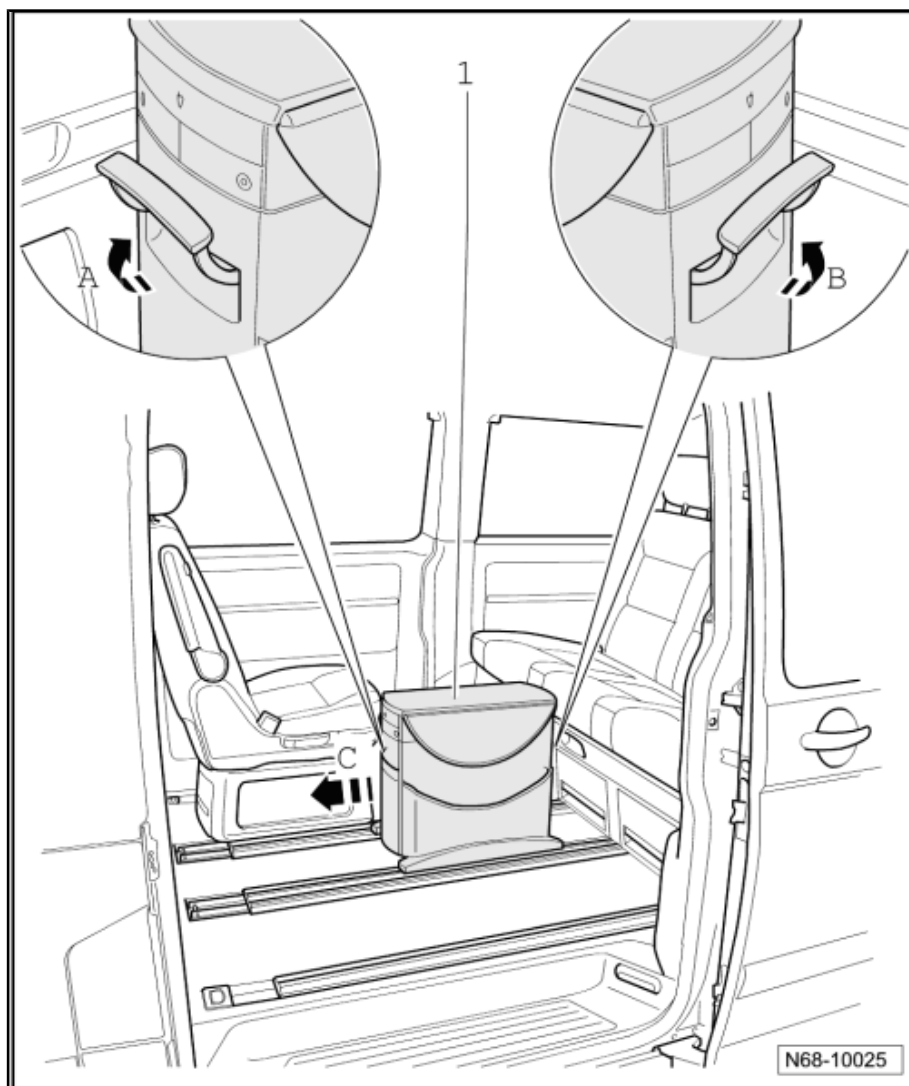


## 6.3 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing table module

### Removing

- Move seats of 2nd seat row to rearmost position.
- Use a screwdriver to release end caps -1- of seat rails and pull out upwards.





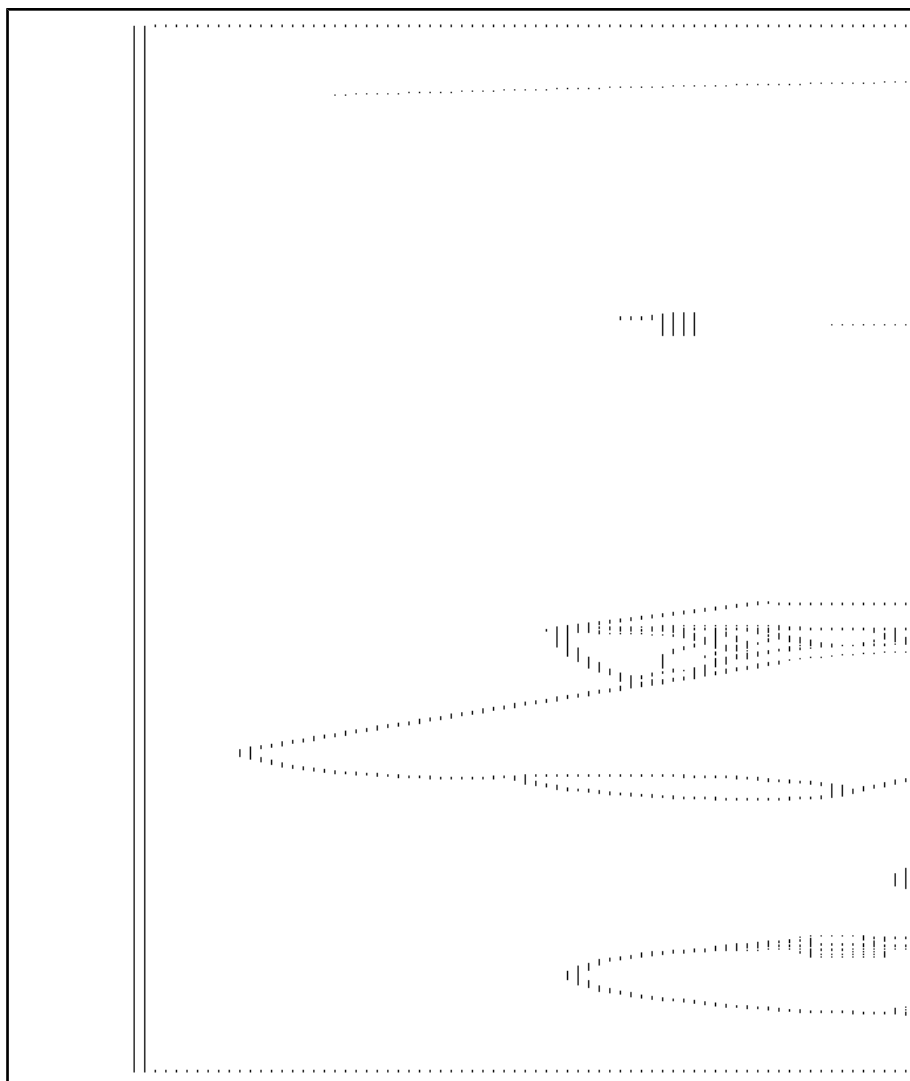
- Release table module -1- from seat rails by raising handles -arrows A and B-.
- Move table module -1- to foremost position -arrow C- and lift it out of vehicle.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.



## 6.4 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing table top



### Removing

- Remove table module ➔ [page 80](#) .
- Move table to uppermost position.
- Turn table top 90°.
- Use a small screwdriver to lever off end cap -7- from carrier plate -4-.
- Push fasteners -2- inwards around circumference and remove spacer ring -6- and lower bearing shell -5- from carrier plate -4-.
- Remove table top -1- from carrier plate.
- Detach upper bearing shell -3- from table top.

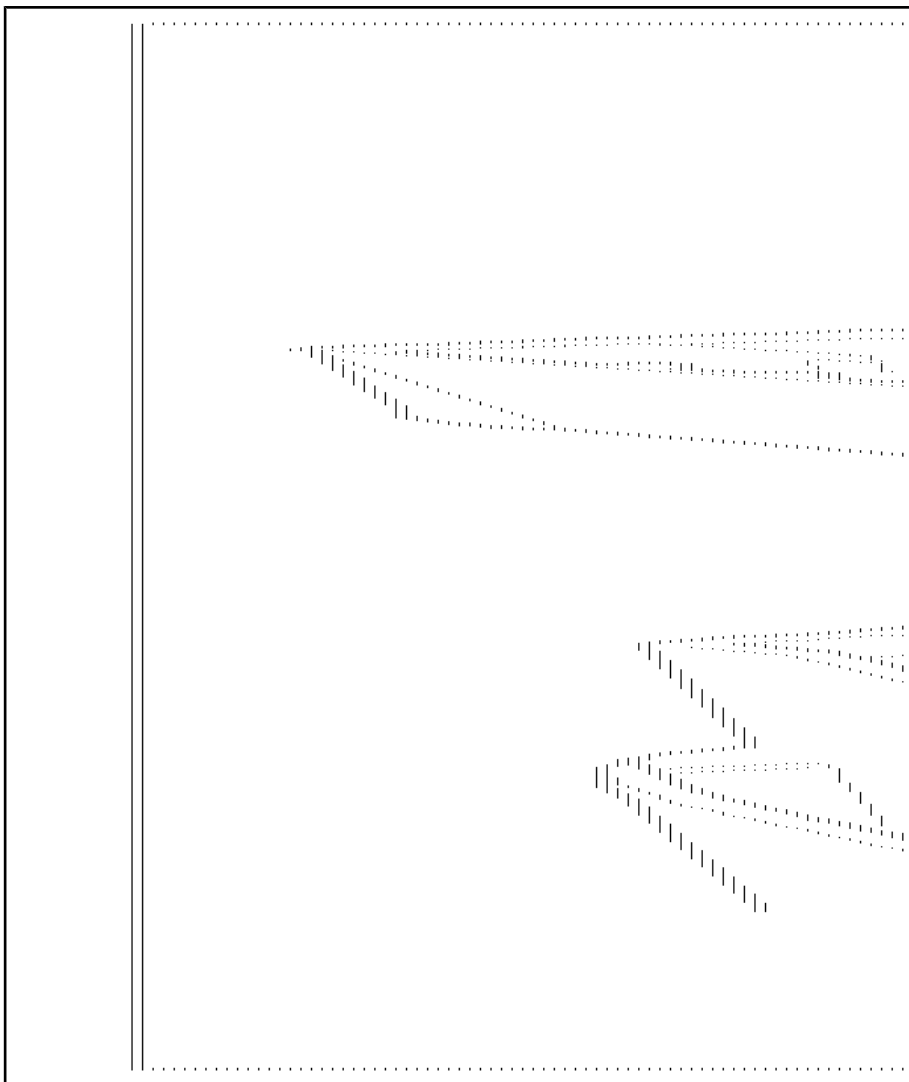
### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Check that all locking elements -2- are engaged following installation.



## 6.5 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing cup holder



### Removing



#### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the front drink holder in the carrier plate. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of the rear drink holder in the carrier plate as appropriate.*

- Remove table module ⇒ [page 80](#) .
- Move table to uppermost position.
- Turn table top 90°.
- Remove table top ⇒ [page 82](#) .
- Push down 2 retaining lugs -arrows- and pull out cup holder  
-2- from carrier plate -1-.

### Installing

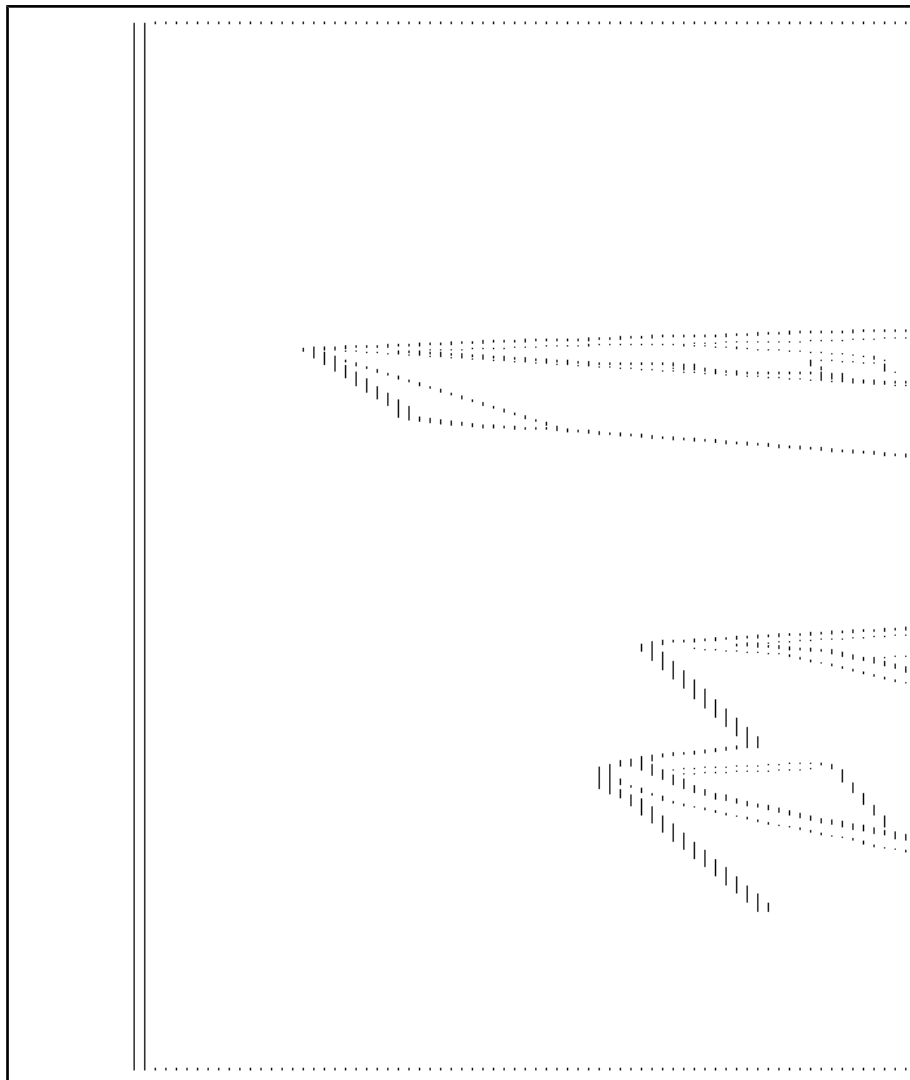
Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check position of both guides. Retaining tabs may need to be bent up slightly.



- Carefully slide cup holder in carrier plate until it can be seen and heard to engage.

## 6.6 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing ashtray



### Removing

- Remove table module ⇒ [page 80](#) .
- Move table to uppermost position.
- Turn table top 90°.
- Remove table top ⇒ [page 82](#) .
- Remove front cup holder ⇒ [page 83](#) .
- Push down 2 retaining lugs -arrows- and pull out ashtray -2- from carrier plate -1-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check position of both guides. Retaining tabs may need to be bent up slightly.
- Carefully slide ashtray in carrier plate until it can be seen and heard to engage.

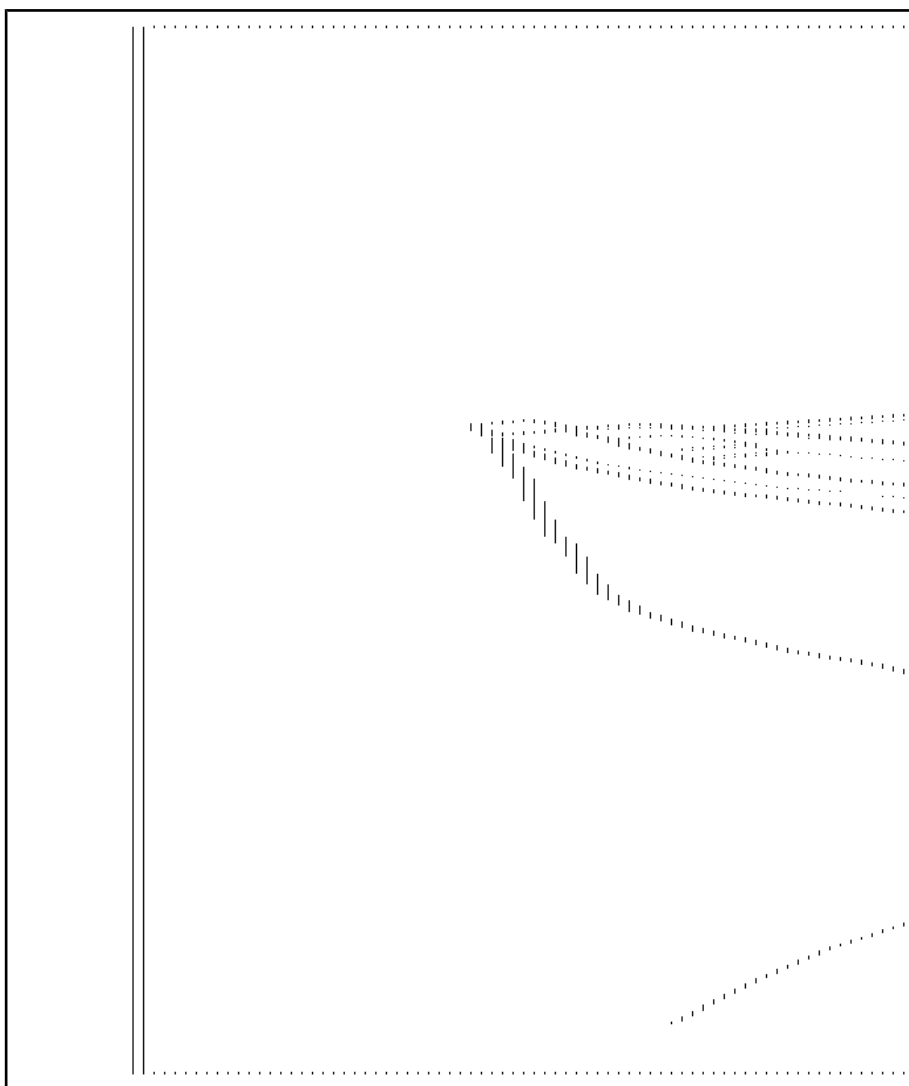
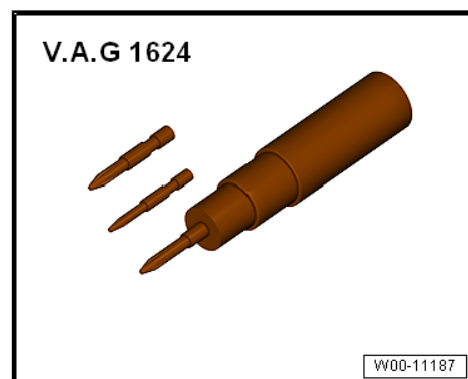




## 6.7 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing drawer

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



### Removing

- Remove table module ⇒ [page 80](#) .
- Open drawer -1-.



- Unscrew bolts -2- and remove together with spacer bushes -3-.
- Guide out rear slide rails -arrows- and pull drawer out of table module.

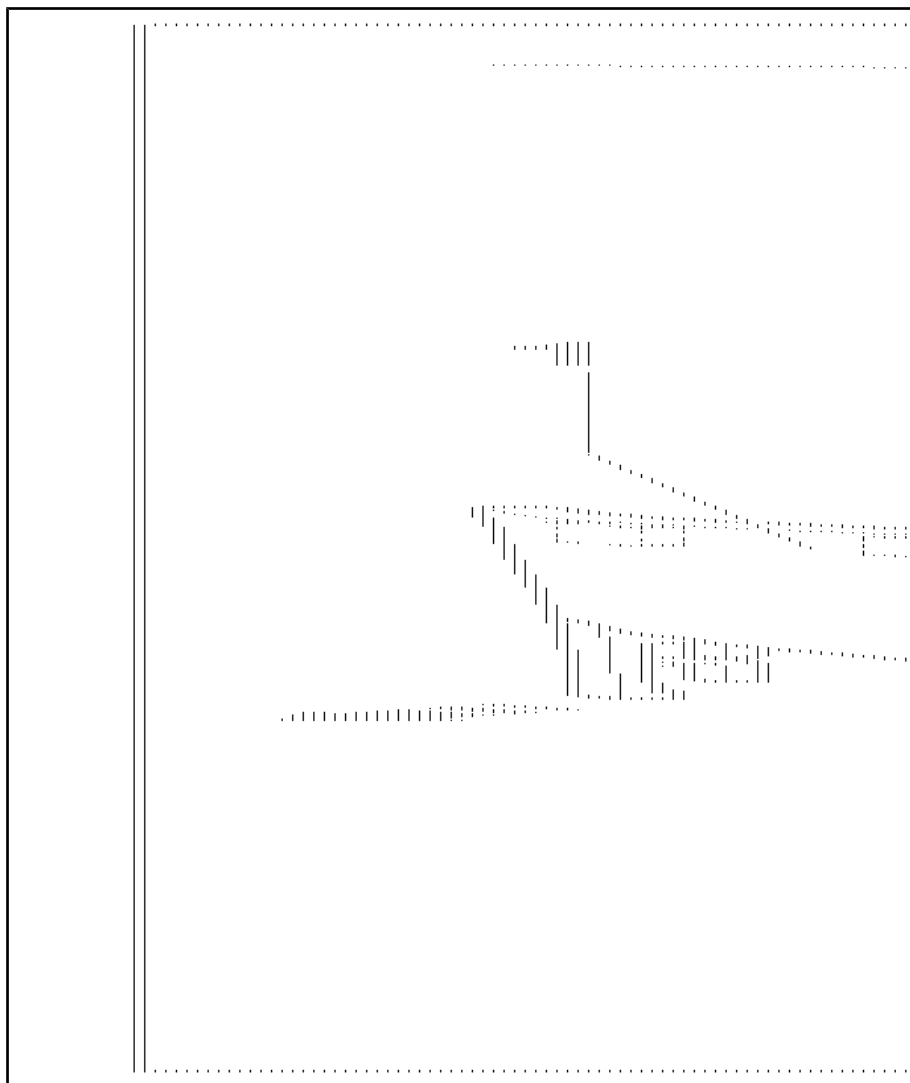
### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

- ♦ ⇒ ["6.1 Assembly overview - table modules, table module in seat rails", page 76](#)

## 6.8 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing front trim



### Removing

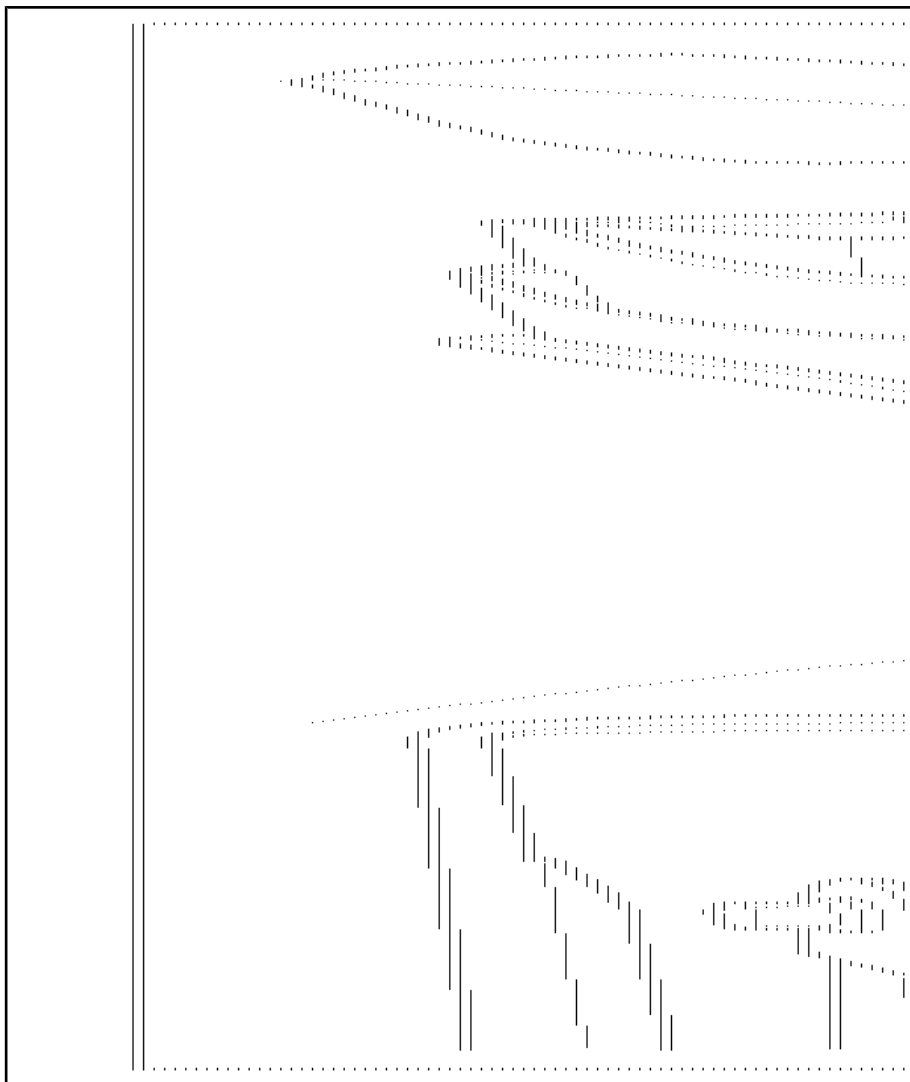
- Move table to uppermost position.
- Pull up both lower lips of trim -1- slightly in direction of -arrow- while sliding trim upwards at same time.
- Unhook trim from mountings in table module.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.



## 6.9 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing rear trim



### Removing

- Remove table module ⇒ [page 80](#) .
- Move table to uppermost position.
- Push both locking hooks forwards in direction of -arrow- while sliding trim -1- upwards at same time.
- Unhook trim from mountings in table module.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

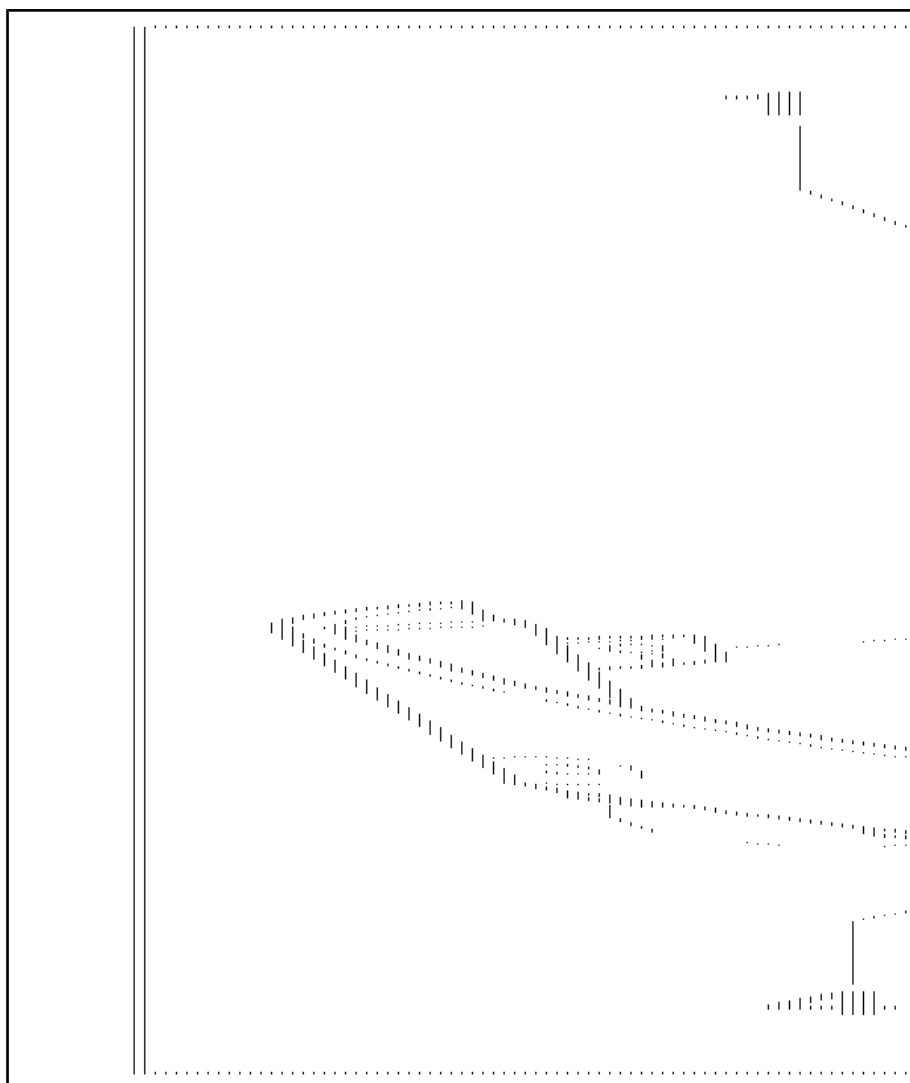
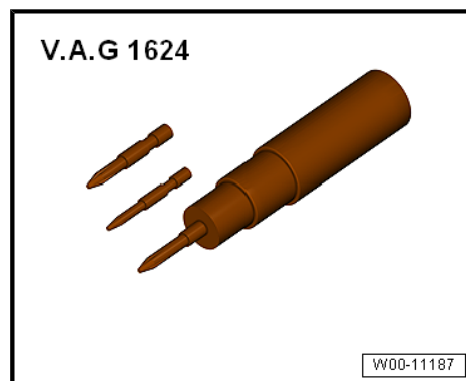
- In order to avoid damage during installation, check clearance to all retaining lugs and locking hooks.

## 6.10 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing side trim with magazine rack

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



## Removing



### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the trim with magazine rack on the right-hand side of the table module. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of the trim with magazine rack on the left-hand side of the table module as appropriate.*



- Remove table module ⇒ [page 80](#) .
- Remove drawer ⇒ [page 85](#) .
- Move table to uppermost position.
- Remove front trim ⇒ [page 86](#) .
- Remove rear trim ⇒ [page 87](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -2- and -3- in front and rear.
- Unhook trim -1- upwards out of retainers in base frame.
- Remove magazine rack -4-, in upper area, from trim.
- Remove magazine rack -4-, in lower area, from trim.

### Installing

Install in the reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Following installation, ensure that trim is seated securely in respective mountings.

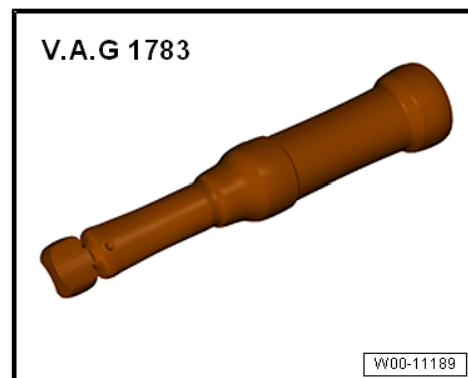
### Specified torques

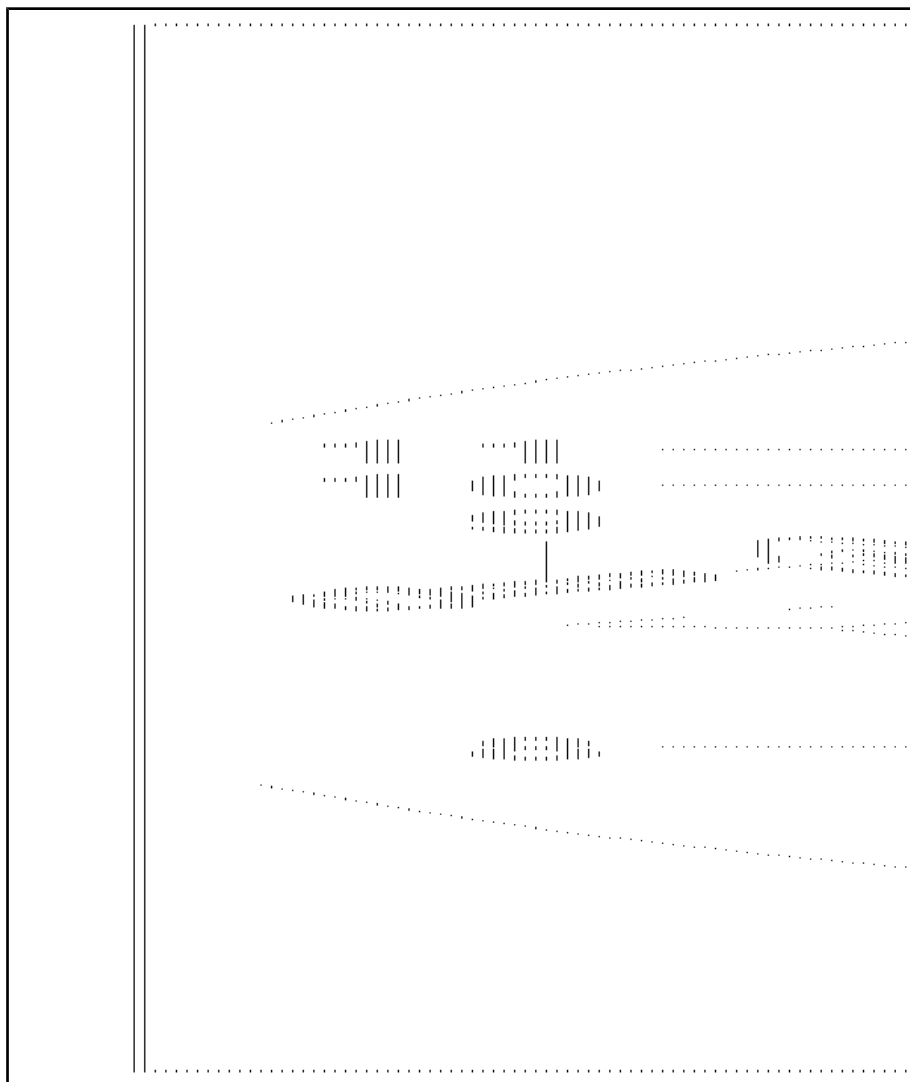
- ◆ ⇒ ["6.1 Assembly overview - table modules, table module in seat rails", page 76](#)

## 6.11 Table module in seat rails, removing and installing rollers and support

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-





## Removing



### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the rollers and support on the right-hand side of the table module. Removal and installation of the rollers and support on the left-hand side of the table module are similar.*

- Remove table module ⇒ [page 80](#) .
- Remove drawer ⇒ [page 85](#) .
- Move table to uppermost position.
- Remove front trim ⇒ [page 86](#) .
- Remove rear trim ⇒ [page 87](#) .
- Remove right trim ⇒ [page 87](#) .
- Unscrew bolt -7- and take out roller -4- with spacer sleeve -5- between base frame -1- and support -6-.
- Unscrew bolt -9- and take out roller -11- with spacer sleeve -10- between base frame -1- and support -6-.
- Release spring -2- to remove from guiding element -3-.



- Unscrew bolts -8- and remove support -6- and guiding element -3- from base frame -1-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“6.1 Assembly overview - table modules, table module in seat rails”, page 76](#)

## 6.12 Removing and installing table module in sidewall

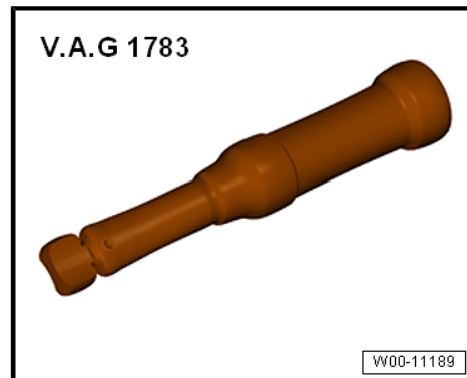
⇒ [“6.12.1 Removing and installing table module in sidewall, mechanical”, page 91](#)

⇒ [“6.12.2 Removing and installing table module in sidewall, electrical”, page 92](#)

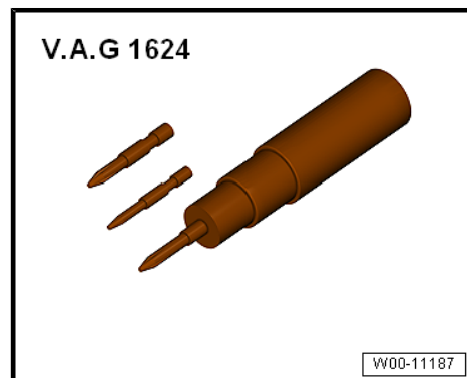
### 6.12.1 Removing and installing table module in sidewall, mechanical

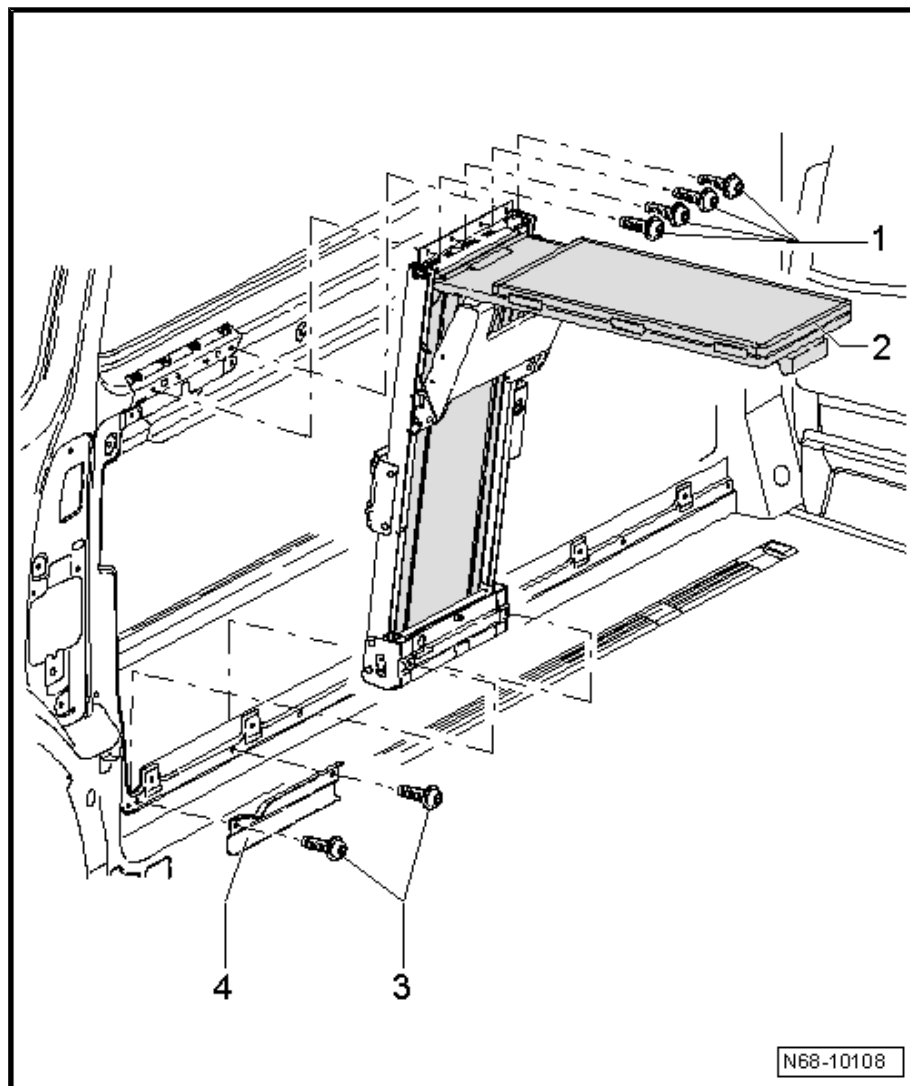
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-





### Removing

- Remove upper B-pillar trim ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- Remove upper C-pillar trim ⇒ [page 237](#) .
- Remove upper D-pillar trim ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove rear side panel trim ⇒ [page 259](#) .
- Remove front side panel trim ⇒ [page 242](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -3- and remove assembly plate -4-.
- Unscrew bolts -1- and remove table module -2- from side board.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

- ♦ ⇒ [“6.2 Assembly overview - table modules, table module in side panel”, page 79](#)

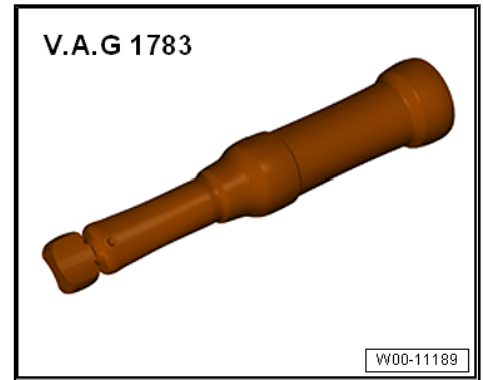
## 6.12.2 Removing and installing table module in sidewall, electrical

Special tools and workshop equipment required

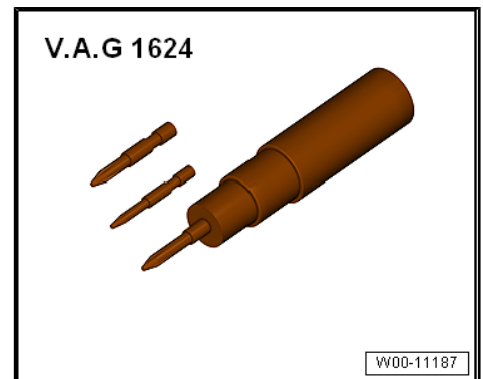


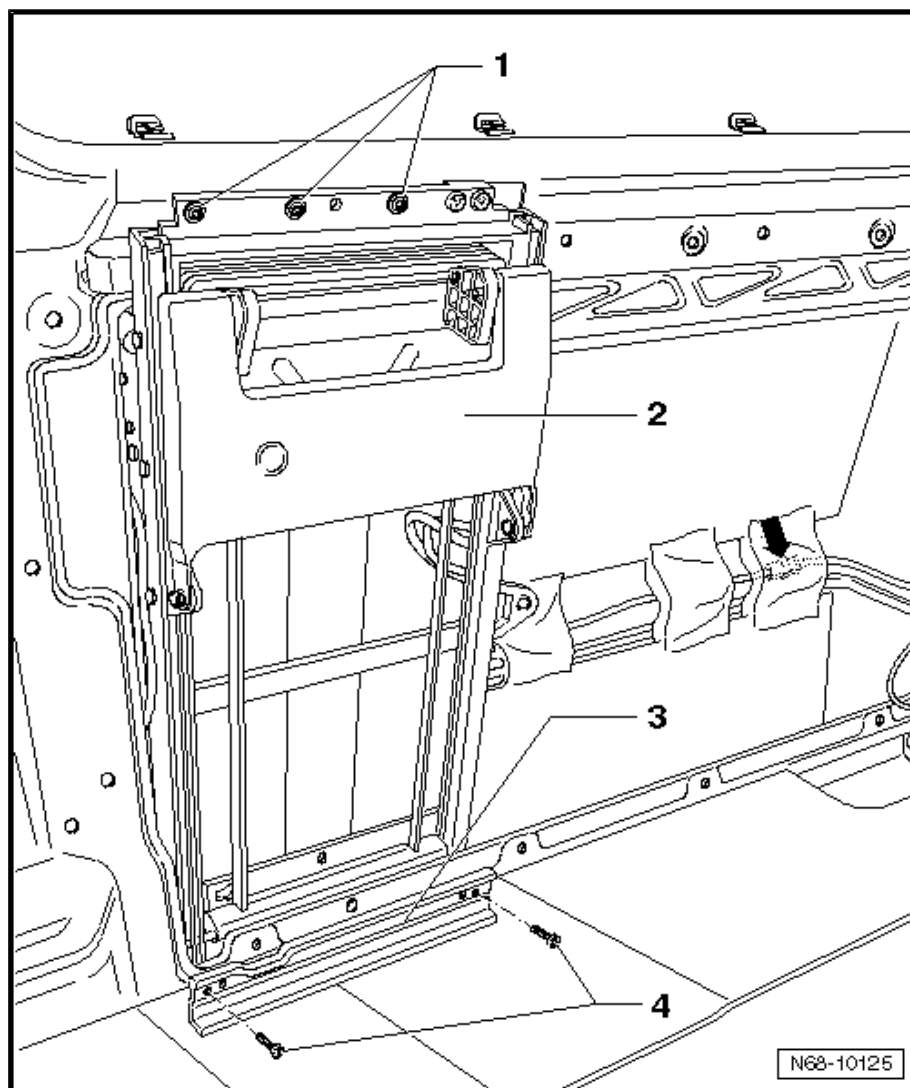


- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-





### Removing

- Remove upper B-pillar trim ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- Remove upper C-pillar trim ⇒ [page 237](#) .
- Remove upper D-pillar trim ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove rear side panel trim ⇒ [page 259](#) .
- Remove front side panel trim ⇒ [page 242](#) .
- Separate electrical connector -arrow-.
- Unscrew bolts -4-.
- Remove mounting plate -3-.
- Unscrew bolts -1-.
- Remove table module -2- from side panel.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- All cable ties and insulation materials that were loosened or cut during removal must be installed in the same position.



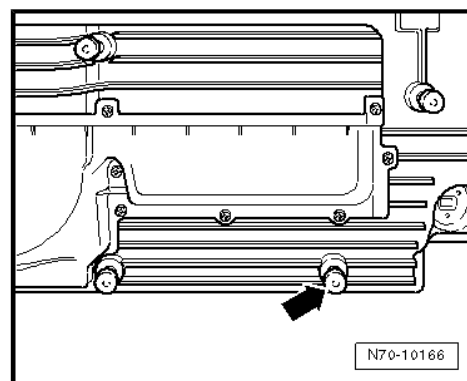
# **Note**

*Before installing side panel trim, ensure that retaining clip -arrow- is not fitted. Otherwise the table will not function correctly when unfolding it.*

- All remaining retaining clips must be checked for damage and renewed if necessary before installing.

## **Specified torques**

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for table module	9 Nm



## 7 Seat rail systems

⇒ ["7.1 Assembly overview - seat rail systems", page 96](#)

⇒ ["7.2 Removing and installing seat rails", page 99](#)

### 7.1 Assembly overview - seat rail systems

⇒ ["7.1.1 Assembly overview - seat rail systems, middle seat rail, for table module", page 96](#)

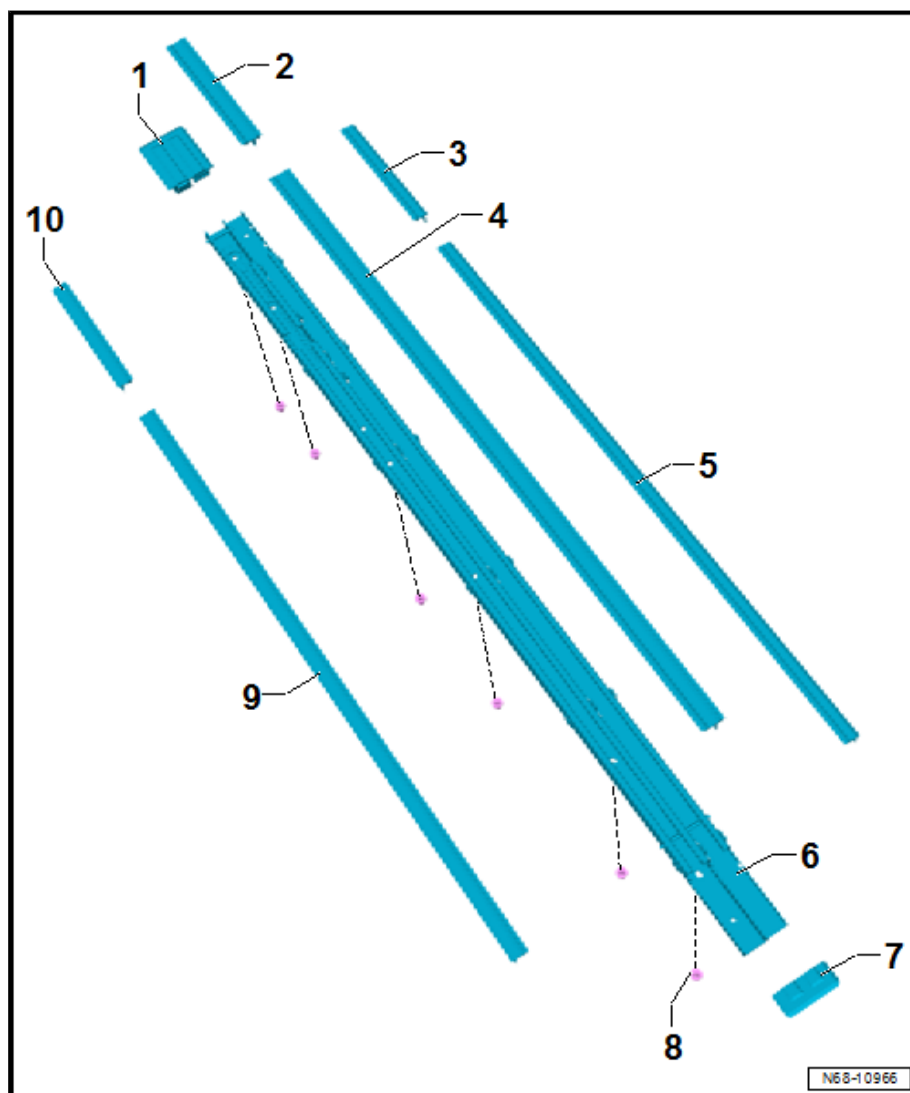
⇒ ["7.1.2 Assembly overview - seat rail systems, middle seat rail, for seats and benches", page 97](#)

⇒ ["7.1.3 Assembly overview - seat rail systems, outer seat rail", page 98](#)

⇒ ["7.1.4 Assembly overview - seat rail systems, seat rails, permanently installed seats and benches", page 99](#)

#### 7.1.1 Assembly overview - seat rail systems, middle seat rail, for table module

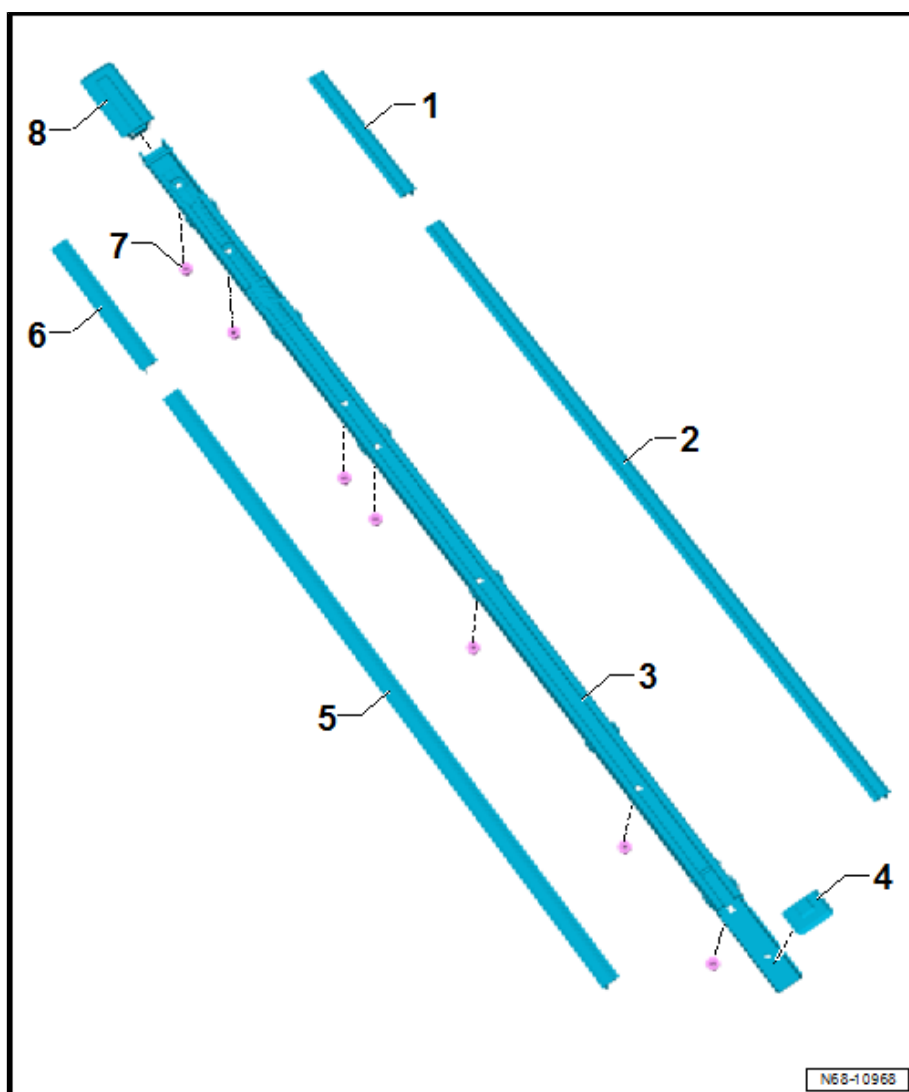
- 1 - Front cover
- 2 - Cover, front centre
- 3 - Cover, front right
- 4 - Cover, rear centre
- 5 - Cover, rear right
- 6 - Seat rail base frame
  - ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 99](#)
- 7 - Rear cover
- 8 - Nuts
  - ☐ Qty. 9, long wheelbase
  - ☐ Qty. 7, short wheelbase
  - ☐ 55 Nm
- 9 - Cover, rear left
- 10 - Cover, front left





## 7.1.2 Assembly overview - seat rail systems, middle seat rail, for seats and benches

- 1 - Cover, front right
- 2 - Cover, rear right
- 3 - Seat rail base frame
  - ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 99](#)
- 4 - Rear cover
- 5 - Cover, rear left
- 6 - Cover, front left
- 7 - Nuts
  - ☐ Qty. 9, long wheelbase
  - ☐ Qty. 7, short wheelbase
  - ☐ 55 Nm
- 8 - Front cover





### 7.1.3 Assembly overview - seat rail systems, outer seat rail

#### 1 - Bolts

- Qty. 2
- 0.8 Nm

#### 2 - Fastening ring

- Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 270](#)

#### 3 - Front cover

#### 4 - Cover, front right

#### 5 - Cover, rear right

#### 6 - Seat rail base frame

- Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 99](#)

#### 7 - Fastening ring

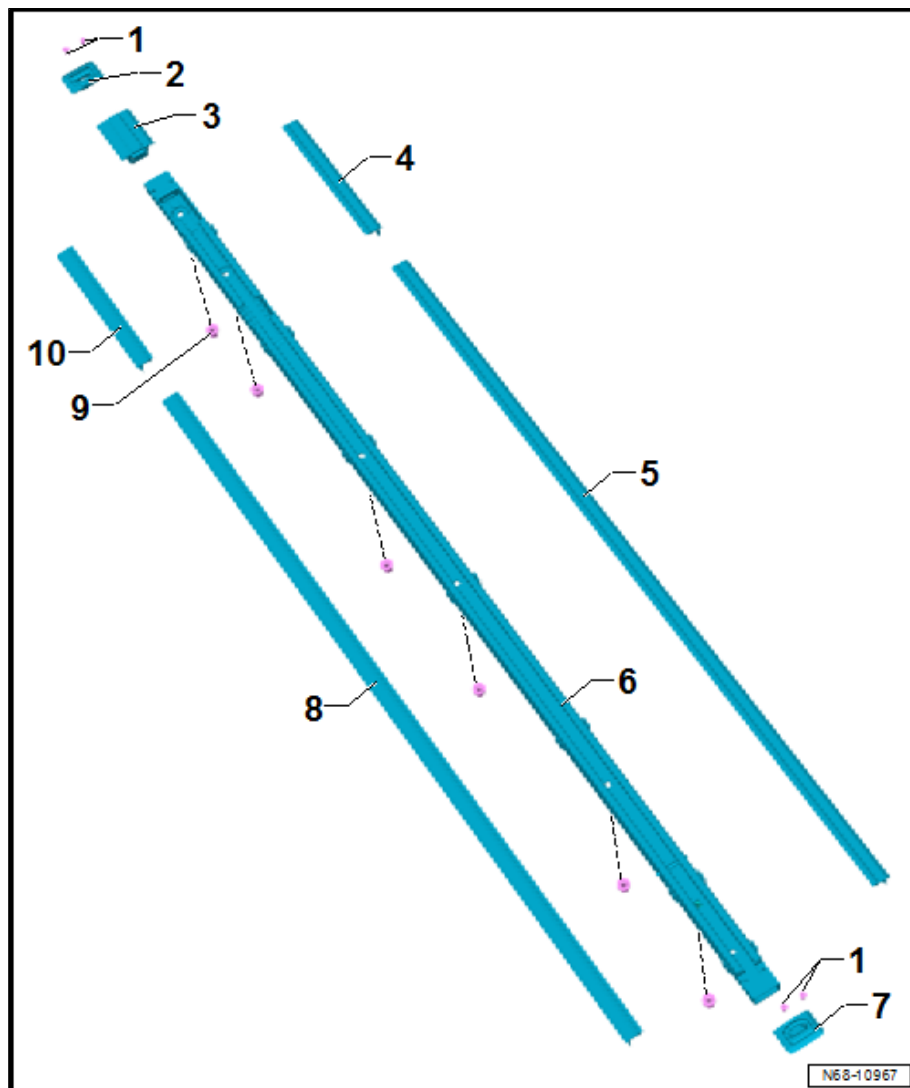
- Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 270](#)

#### 8 - Cover, rear left

#### 9 - Nuts

- Qty. 6, long wheelbase
- Qty. 5, short wheelbase
- 55 Nm

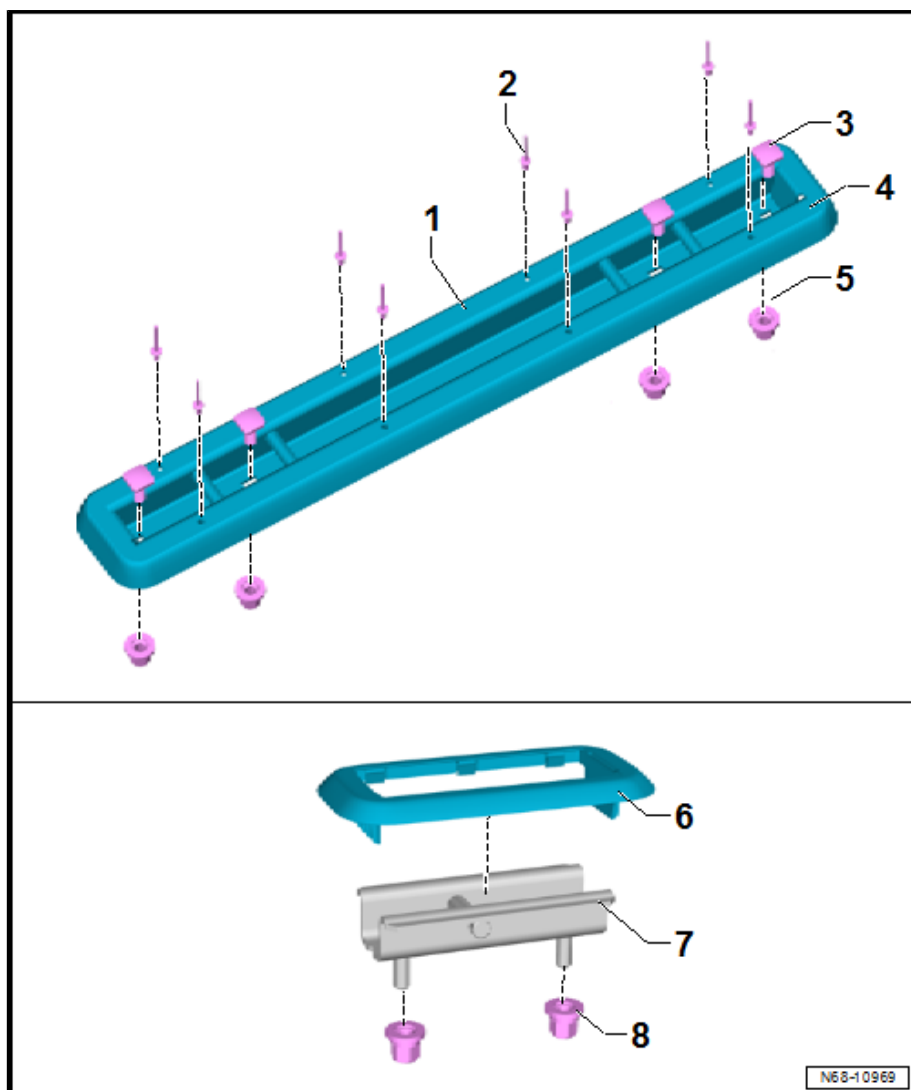
#### 10 - Cover, front left





## 7.1.4 Assembly overview - seat rail systems, seat rails, permanently installed seats and benches

- 1 - Cover, long
- 2 - Pop rivets
  - ☐ Qty. 8
- 3 - Bolts
  - ☐ Qty. 4
- 4 - Seat rail base frame, long
  - ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 99](#)
- 5 - Nuts
  - ☐ Qty. 4
  - ☐ 55 Nm
- 6 - Cover, short
- 7 - Seat rail base frame, short
  - ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 99](#)
- 8 - Nuts
  - ☐ Qty. 2
  - ☐ 55 Nm



## 7.2 Removing and installing seat rails

⇒ [“7.2.1 Removing and installing seat rails, seat rails for sliding modules”, page 99](#)

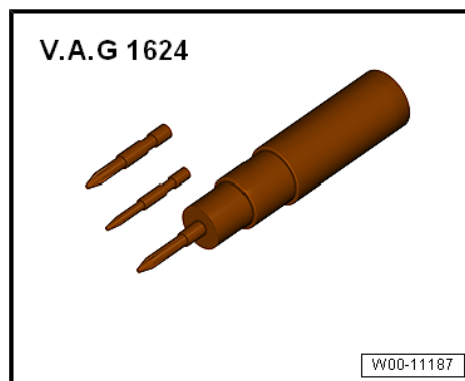
⇒ [“7.2.2 Removing and installing seat rails, seat rails for permanently installed seats and benches”, page 101](#)

### 7.2.1 Removing and installing seat rails, seat rails for sliding modules

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-

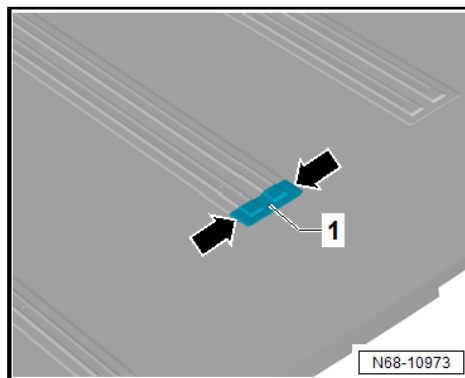


◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-

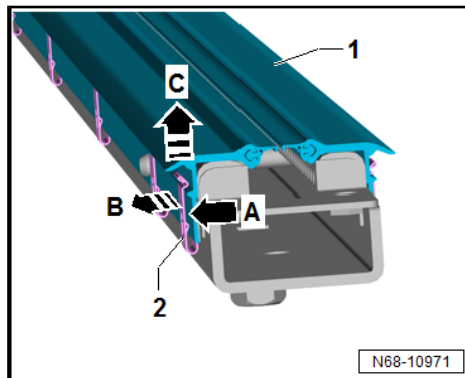


### Removing

- Remove seats and benches in rear ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- If fitted, remove table module ⇒ [page 80](#) .
- If fitted, remove lashing eyes at outer seat rails ⇒ [page 270](#) .



- If fitted, unclip cover -1- from ends of seat rails at positions marked with -arrows-.
- Remove outer covers from left and right seat rails. To do this, insert medium sized screwdriver at -A- in clip -2-.
- Widen clip -2- in direction -B- by turning screwdriver.
- Carefully pull off outer cover from seat rail in direction -C-.
- Proceed in same manner for remaining clips.





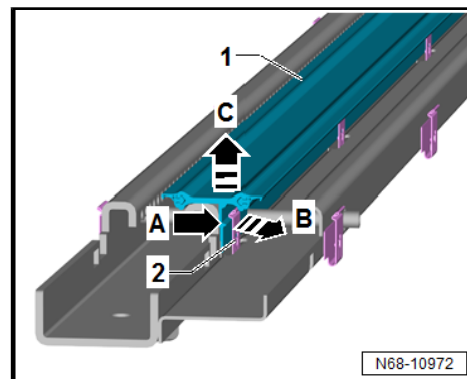


### Middle seat rails for table module

- Remove middle cover of seat rail. To do this, insert medium sized screwdriver at -A- in clip -2-.
- Widen clip -2- in direction -B- by turning screwdriver.
- Carefully pull off middle cover -1- from seat rail in direction -C-.
- Proceed in same manner for remaining clips.

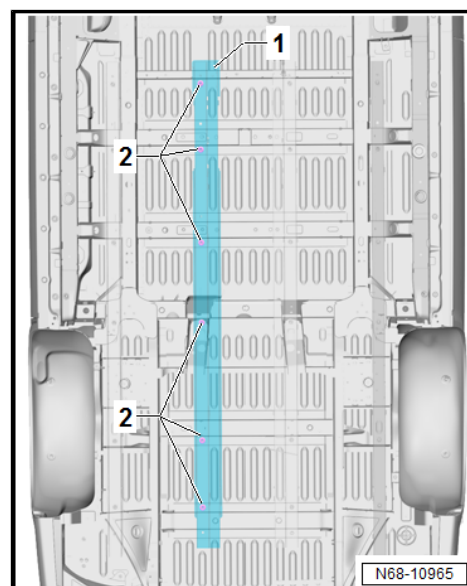
### Continuation for all

- To gain access to nuts of seat rail that needs to be removed, remove relevant underbody cladding beneath vehicle ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Underbody cladding; Assembly overview – underbody cladding .



### Middle seat rail

- Unscrew nuts -2- of middle seat rail -1- on underbody.
- Remove seat rail from floor in passenger compartment.



### Outer seat rails

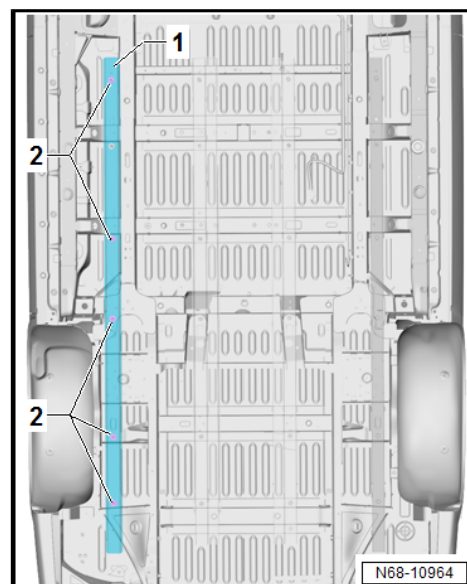
- Unscrew nuts -2- of outer seat rail -1- on underbody.
- Remove seat rail from floor in passenger compartment.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ ["7.1 Assembly overview - seat rail systems", page 96](#)

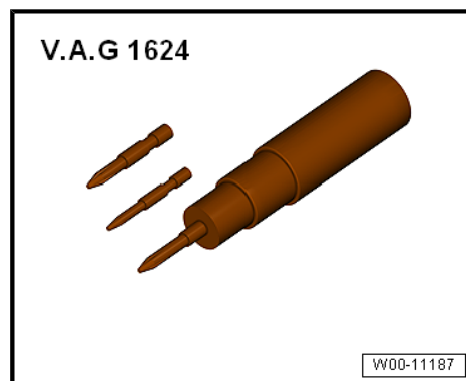


## 7.2.2 Removing and installing seat rails, seat rails for permanently installed seats and benches

Special tools and workshop equipment required



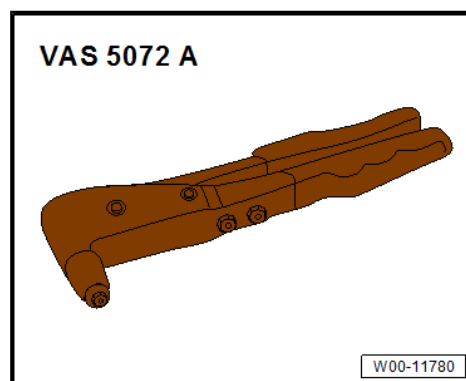
◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-



◆ Pop rivet pliers - V.A.S 5072A-



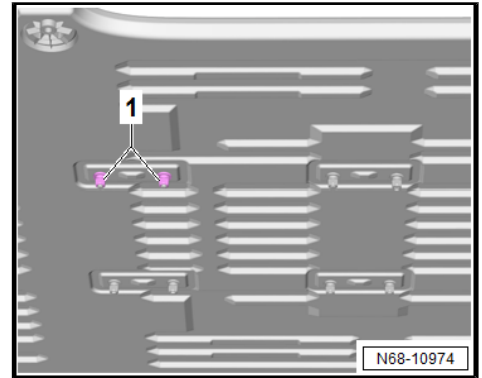
## Removing

### Short seat rails

- Remove affected seat or rear bench seat ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- To gain access to nuts of seat rail, remove relevant underbody cladding beneath vehicle ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Underbody cladding; Assembly overview – underbody cladding .



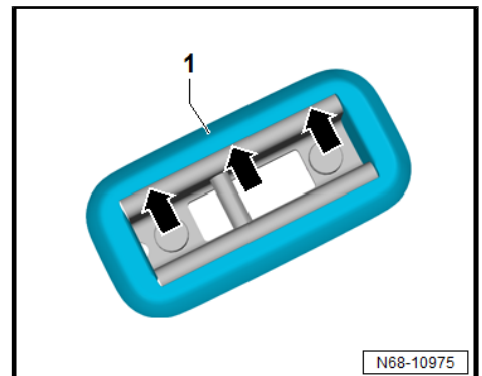
- Unscrew nuts -1- of short seat rail on underbody.
- Remove seat rail from floor in passenger compartment.



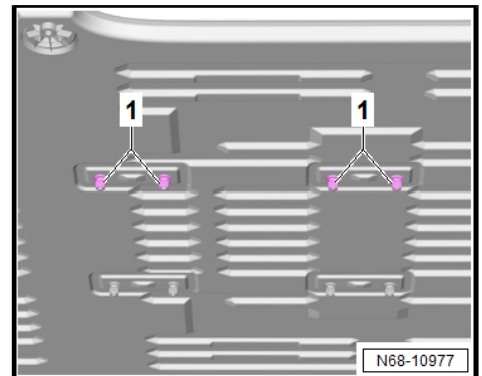
- If fitted, unclip cover -1- from seat rail at positions marked with -arrows- using a small screwdriver.

#### Long seat rail

- Remove affected seat or rear bench seat ⇒ [page 361](#) .



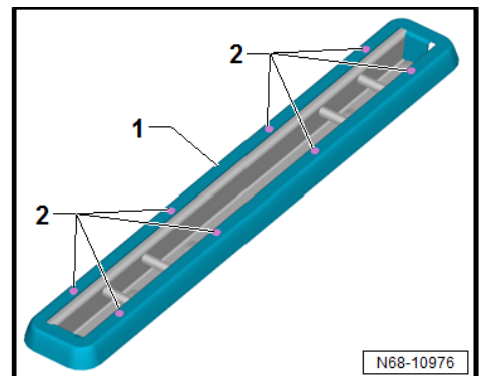
- To gain access to nuts of seat rail, remove relevant underbody cladding beneath vehicle ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Underbody cladding; Assembly overview – underbody cladding .
- Unscrew nuts -1- of long seat rail on underbody.



- Remove seat rail from floor in passenger compartment.
- If removal of cover -1- is necessary, drill out rivets -2- on seat rail.
- Remove cover from seat rail.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:





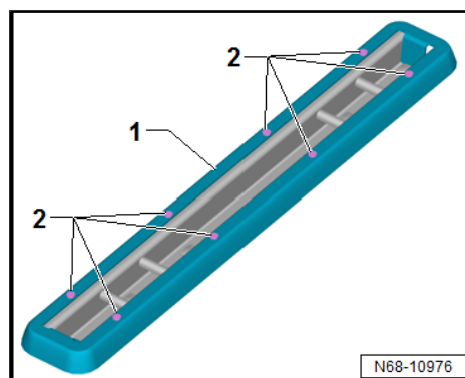
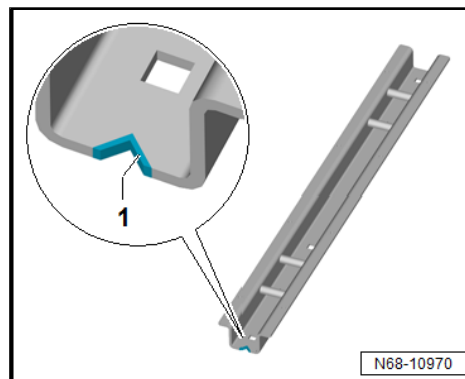
- Install seat rails in such a way that notch -1- in seat rail points in direction of normal travel.

#### Riveted cover of long seat rail



#### Note

- ◆ If the cover -1- was removed with the seat rail in situ, make sure that any swarf from drilling is removed completely to prevent corrosion damage to the seat rail and vehicle floor.
- ◆ Use pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072A- to fit new pop rivets -2-.





## 69 – Passenger protection

### 1 Seat belts



#### WARNING

*If the vehicle has been converted by ABT e-Line, it is possible that the repair instructions provided below are no longer valid.*

- *In this case, please always refer to the repair instructions from ABT e-Line, available in ElsaPro in the tab "Super-structures and modifications".*

⇒ ["1.1 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt", page 105](#)

⇒ ["1.2 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt", page 108](#)

⇒ ["1.3 Removing and installing front three-point seat belt", page 109](#)

⇒ ["1.4 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt", page 116](#)

⇒ ["1.5 Removing and installing rear outer belt end fitting", page 124](#)

⇒ ["1.6 Removing and installing belt height adjuster", page 127](#)

⇒ ["1.7 Removing and installing front belt buckle", page 130](#)

⇒ ["1.8 Removing and installing rear belt buckle", page 135](#)

#### 1.1 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt

⇒ ["1.1.1 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt, Multivan", page 105](#)

⇒ ["1.1.2 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt, Transporter", page 107](#)

##### 1.1.1 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt, Multivan



**1 - Bolt**

- 40 Nm

**2 - Belt end fitting**

**3 - Bolt**

- 40 Nm

**4 - Three-point seat belt**

- Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 109](#)

**5 - Electrical connector**

**6 - Bolts**

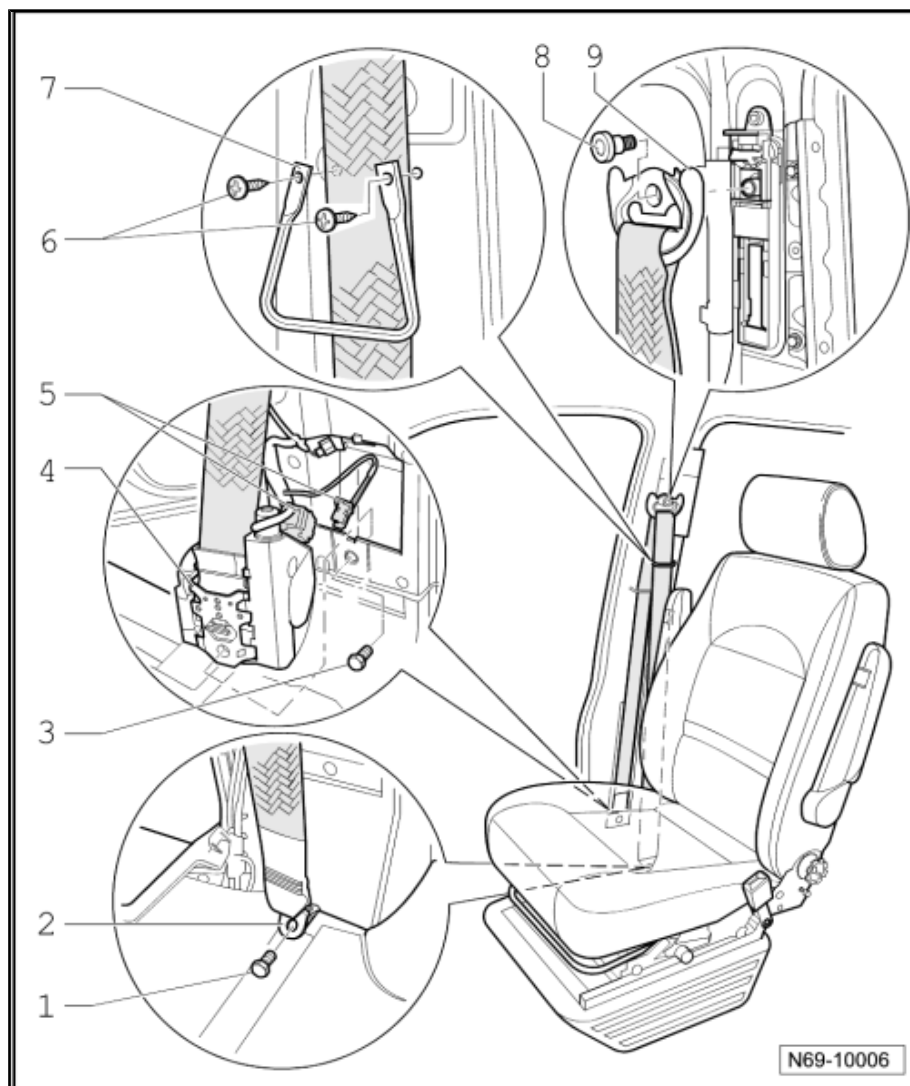
- Qty. 2
- 2.5 Nm

**7 - Belt guide**

**8 - Bolt**

- 40 Nm

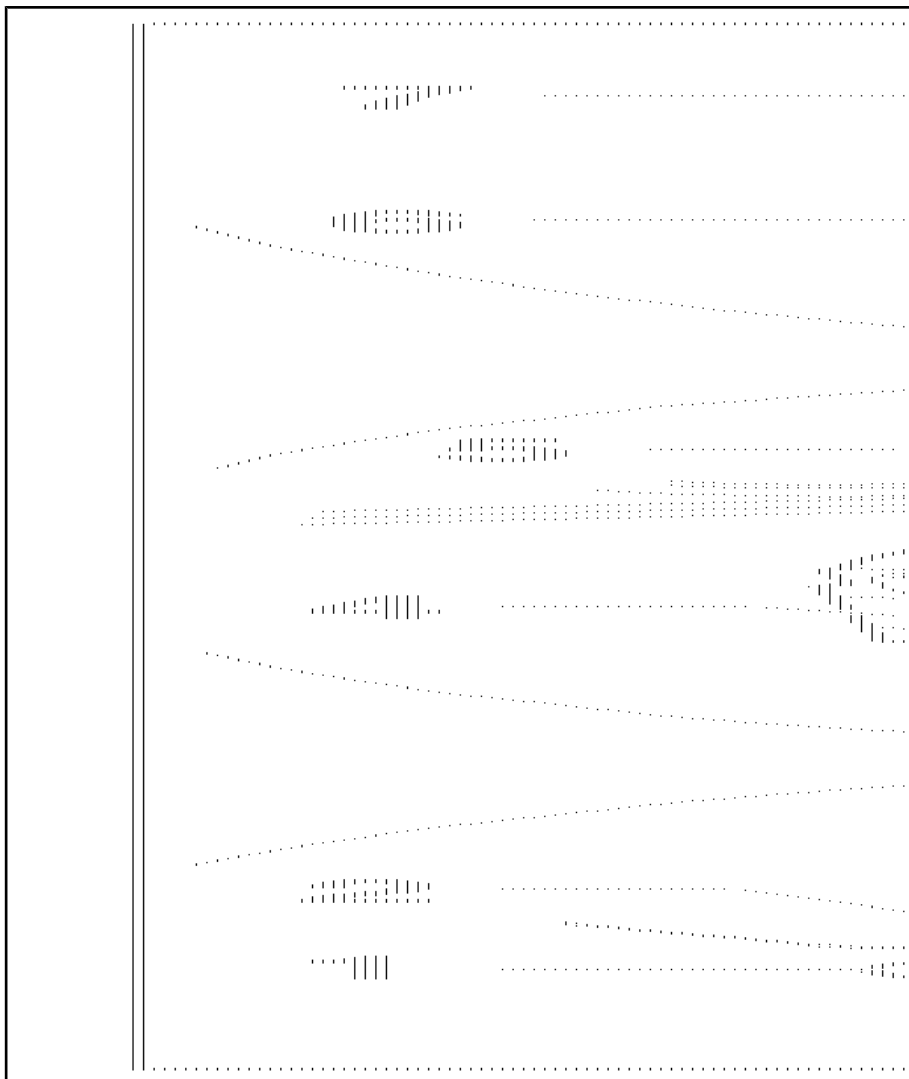
**9 - Belt anchor**





## 1.1.2 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt, Transporter

- 1 - Bolt
  - ☐ 40 Nm
- 2 - Belt end fitting
- 3 - Bolt
  - ☐ 40 Nm
- 4 - Three-point seat belt
  - ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 109](#)
- 5 - Electrical connector
- 6 - Bolts
  - ☐ Qty. 2
  - ☐ 2.5 Nm
- 7 - Belt guide
- 8 - Bolt
  - ☐ 40 Nm
- 9 - Cover
- 10 - Belt anchor





## 1.2 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt

⇒ ["1.2.1 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt, Kombi", page 108](#)

⇒ ["1.2.2 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt, Transporter", page 109](#)

### 1.2.1 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt, Kombi

#### 1 - Three-point seat belt

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 116](#)

#### 2 - Bolt

- ☐ 40 Nm

#### 3 - Washer

#### 4 - Cover

#### 5 - Bolt

- ☐ 40 Nm

#### 6 - Belt anchor

#### 7 - Belt buckle

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 135](#)

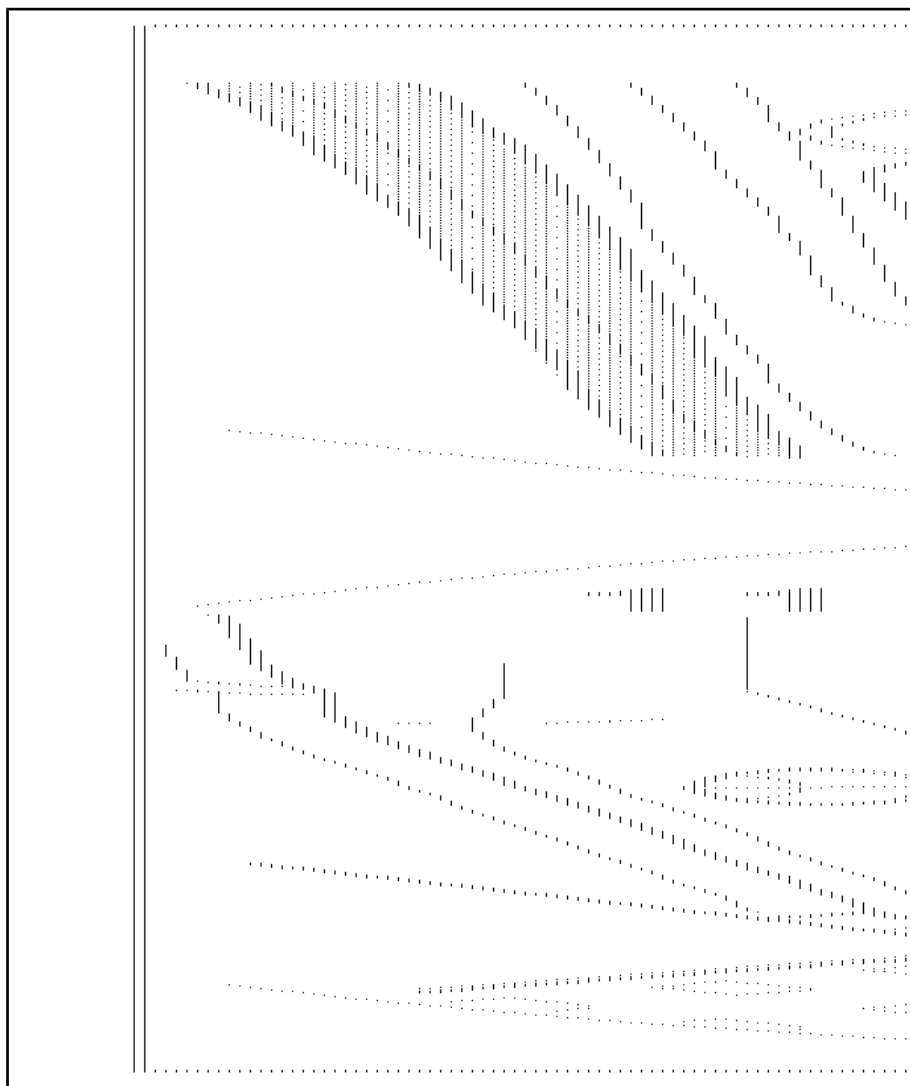
#### 8 - Cover

#### 9 - Bolt

- ☐ 40 Nm

#### 10 - Belt end fitting

#### 11 - Spacer bush

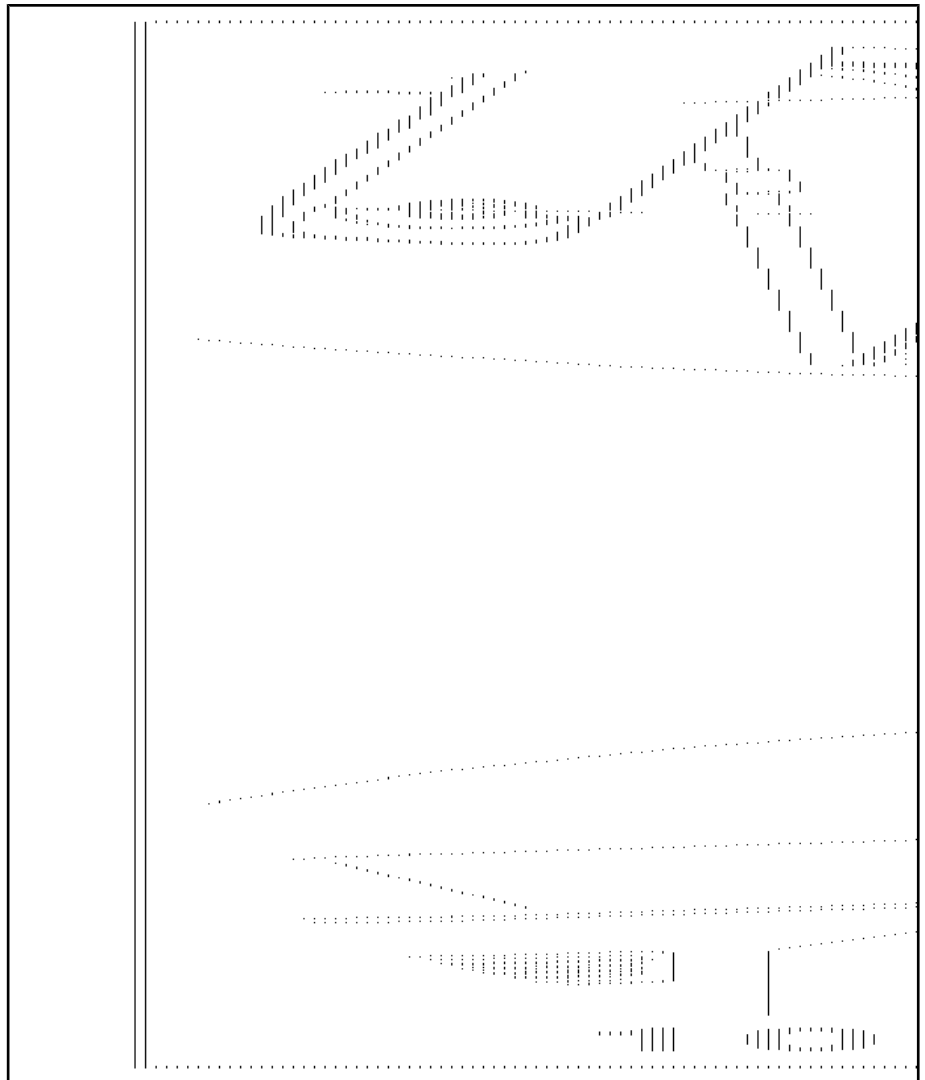






## 1.2.2 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt, Transporter

- 1 - belt anchor bracket
- 2 - Cover
- 3 - Belt anchor
- 4 - Bolt
  - ☐ 40 Nm
- 5 - Bolt
  - ☐ 40 Nm
- 6 - Cover
  - ☐ On vehicles without moulded headliner only
- 7 - Cover
- 8 - Bolt
  - ☐ 40 Nm
- 9 - Belt end fitting
- 10 - Spacer bush
- 11 - Bolt
  - ☐ 40 Nm
- 12 - Three-point seat belt
  - ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 116](#)



## 1.3 Removing and installing front three-point seat belt

⇒ [“1.3.1 Removing and installing front three-point seat belt, Multivan”, page 109](#)

⇒ [“1.3.2 Removing and installing front three-point seat belt, Transporter”, page 112](#)

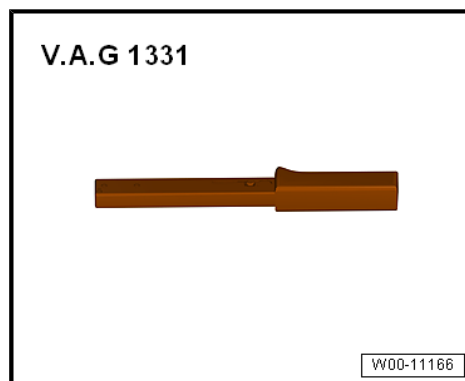
⇒ [“1.3.3 Removing and installing front three-point seat belt, front double bench seat”, page 114](#)

### 1.3.1 Removing and installing front three-point seat belt, Multivan

Special tools and workshop equipment required



- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



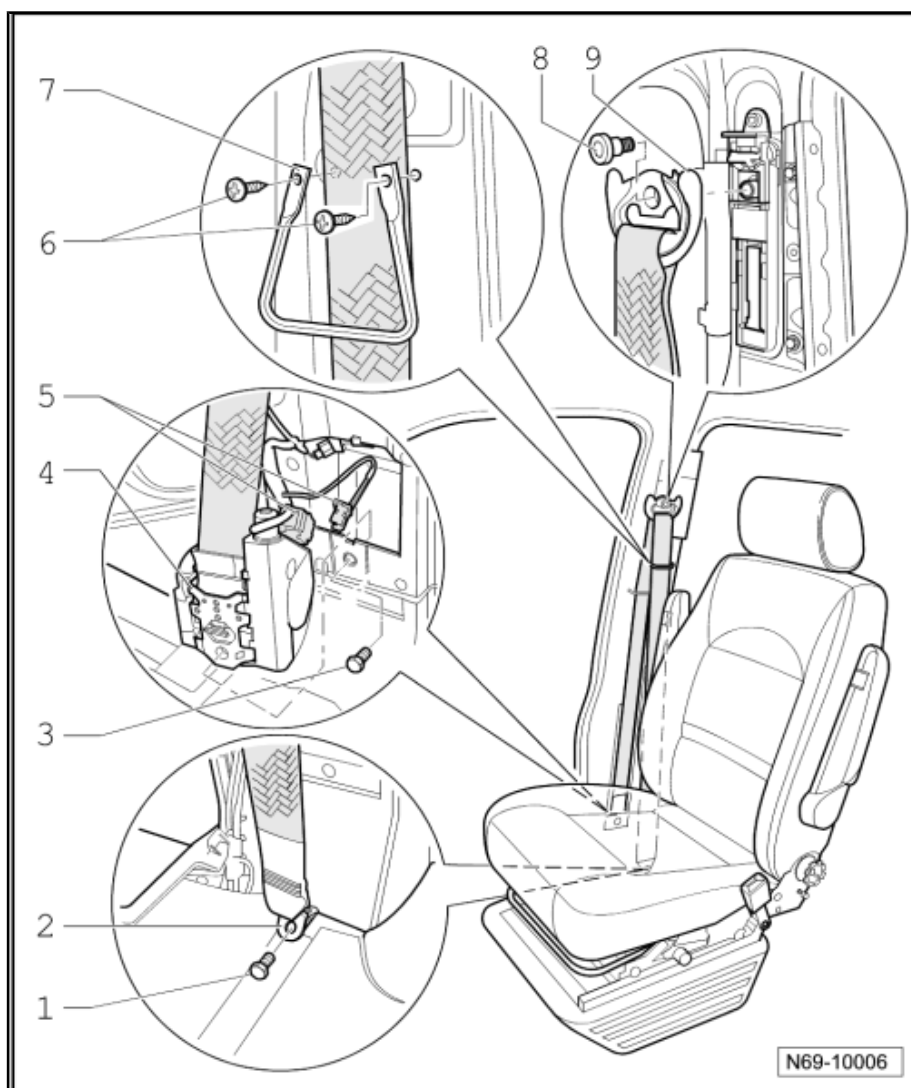
#### Note

*The removal and installation procedure is described for the right-hand side of the vehicle. Removal and installation of the left vehicle side is similar.*



#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ➔ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Observe special instructions for seat belts ➔ [page 11](#).*



## Removing

- Switch on ignition.
- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove upper B-pillar trim ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- Remove lower B-pillar trim ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- Left side of vehicle without sliding door: remove front side trim panel ⇒ [page 242](#) .
- Unscrew bolt -1-.
- Detach end belt end fitting -2- from body.
- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Remove belt inertia reel -4- from B-pillar.



#### WARNING

*Electrostatic discharges may result in unintentional triggering of belt tensioner. Therefore, the mechanic must electrostatically discharge him/herself before disconnecting the igniter and earth wires. This can be done by briefly touching the body or striker plate of the door.*

- Disconnect connector -5-.
- Unscrew bolts -6-.
- Remove belt guide -7-.
- Unscrew bolt -8-.
- Detach belt guide fitting -9- from belt height adjuster.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

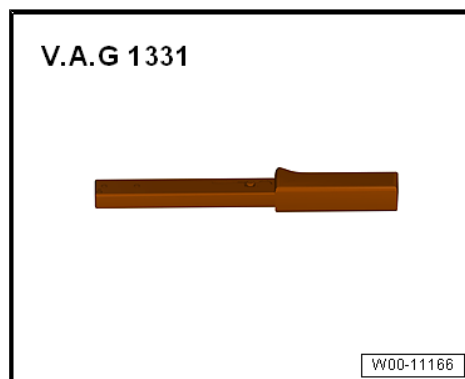
#### Specified torques

- ♦ ⇒ ["1.1.1 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt, Multivan", page 105](#)

### 1.3.2 Removing and installing front three-point seat belt, Transporter

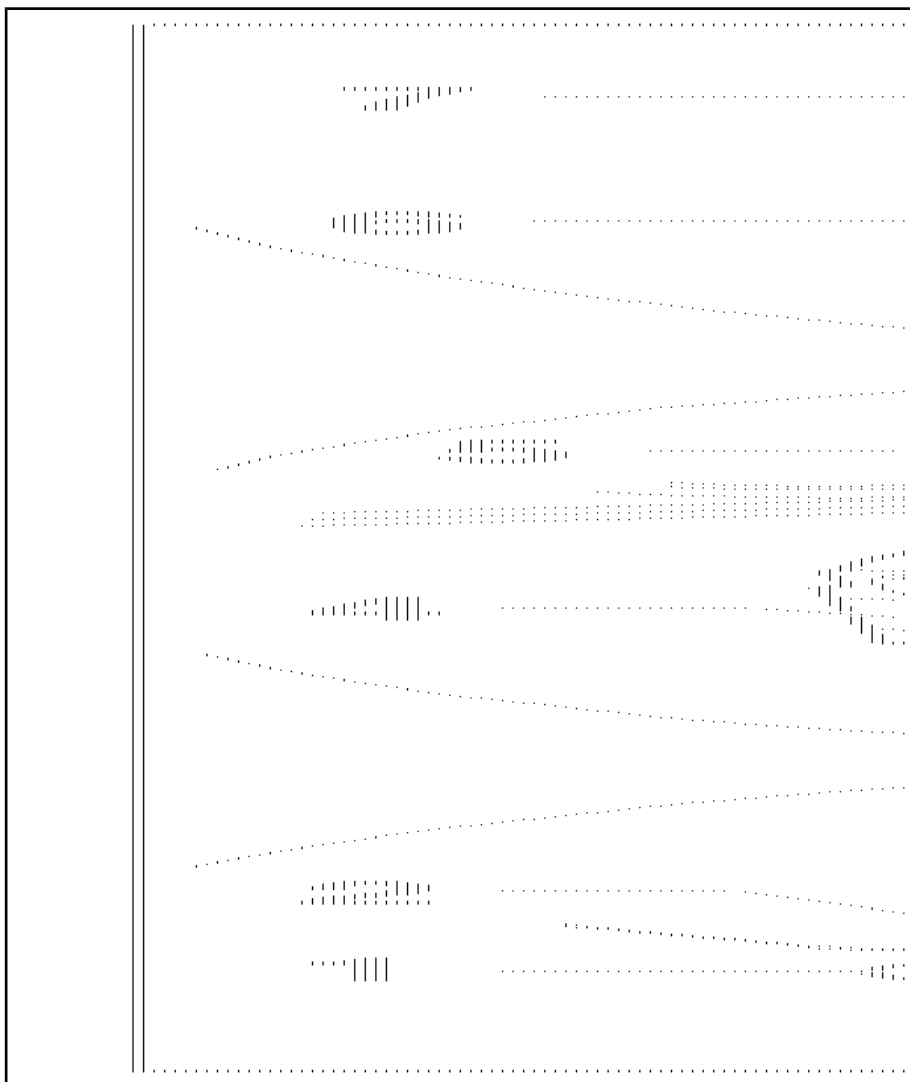
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



#### Note

*The removal and installation procedure is described for the right-hand side of the vehicle. Removal and installation of the left vehicle side is similar.*



### Removing

- Switch on ignition.
- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove upper B-pillar trim ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- Remove lower B-pillar trim ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- Unscrew bolt -1-.
- Detach end belt end fitting -2- from body.
- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Remove belt inertia reel -4- from B-pillar.



### WARNING

*Electrostatic discharges may result in unintentional triggering of belt tensioner. Therefore, the mechanic must electrostatically discharge him/herself before disconnecting the igniter and earth wires. This can be done by briefly touching the body or striker plate of the door.*



- Disconnect connector -5-.
- Unscrew bolts -6-.
- Remove belt guide -7-.
- Clip on cap -9-.
- Unscrew bolt -8-.
- Detach belt guide fitting -10- from belt height adjuster.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

### Specified torques

- ♦ ⇒ [“1.1.2 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt, Transporter”, page 107](#)

## 1.3.3 Removing and installing front three-point seat belt, front double bench seat

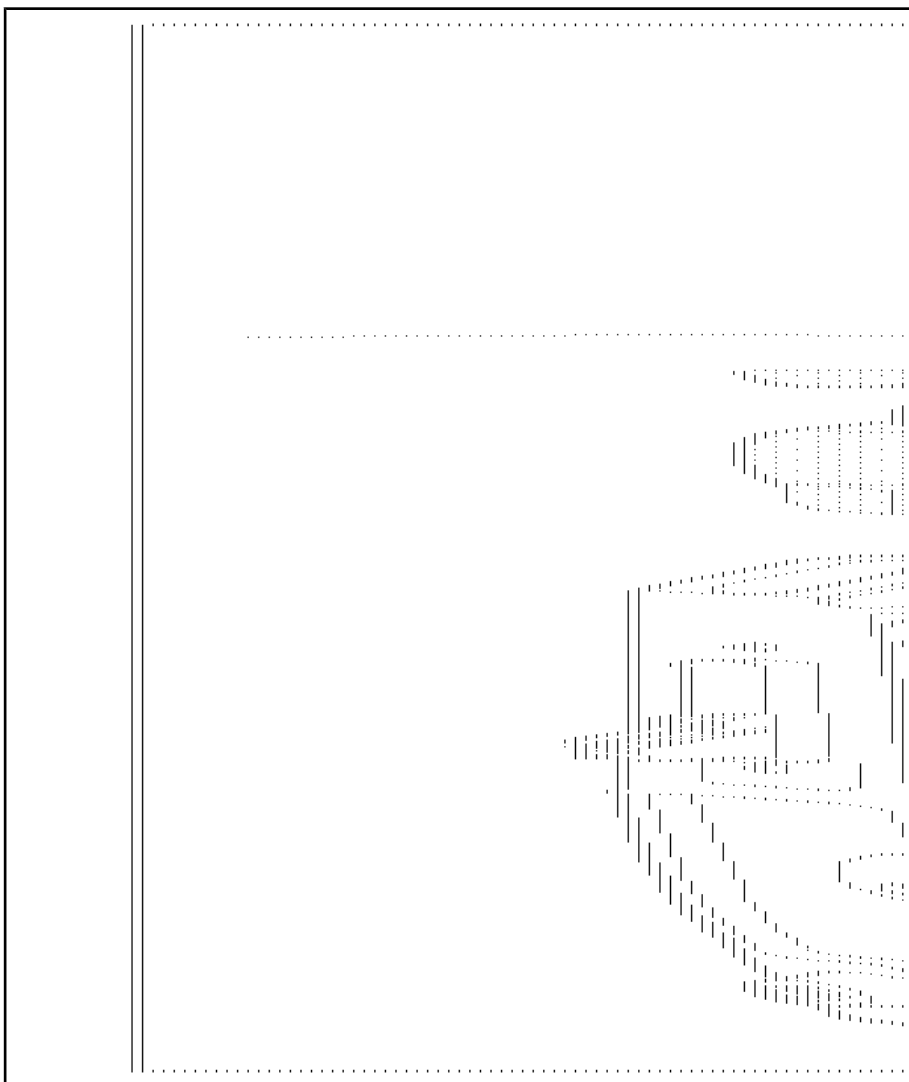
### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



### Note

*On vehicles equipped with partition panel, the backrest must be removed ⇒ [page 336](#) .*



### Removing

- Remove centre belt buckle ⇒ [page 130](#) .
- Remove cover and backrest padding ⇒ [page 444](#) .
- Carefully unclip cover -2- from backrest frame.
- Guide belt webbing out of backrest frame.
- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Pull belt inertia reel -1- to side in order to remove it from backrest frame.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for belt inertia reel	40 Nm



## 1.4 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt

⇒ [“1.4.1 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt, Multivan/Business, individual seat in 2nd row”, page 116](#)

⇒ [“1.4.2 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt, Transporter, double bench seat in 2nd row”, page 118](#)

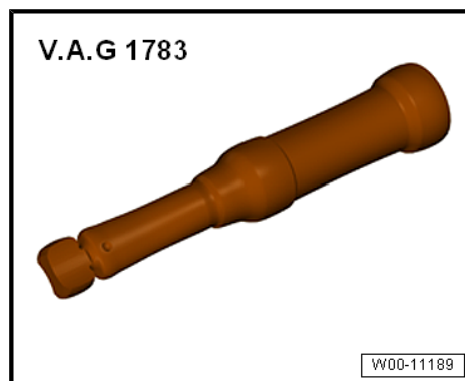
⇒ [“1.4.3 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt, double cab, 3-seat bench seat in 2nd row”, page 120](#)

⇒ [“1.4.4 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt, Kombi, outer seats of 2nd row”, page 122](#)

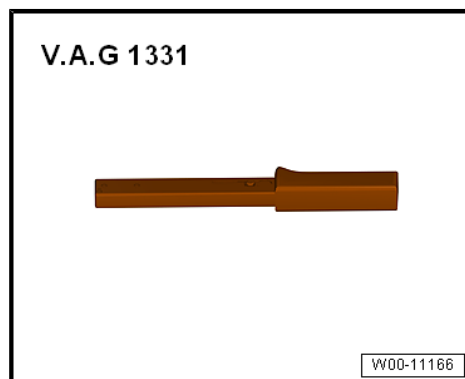
### 1.4.1 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt, Multivan/Business, individual seat in 2nd row

Special tools and workshop equipment required

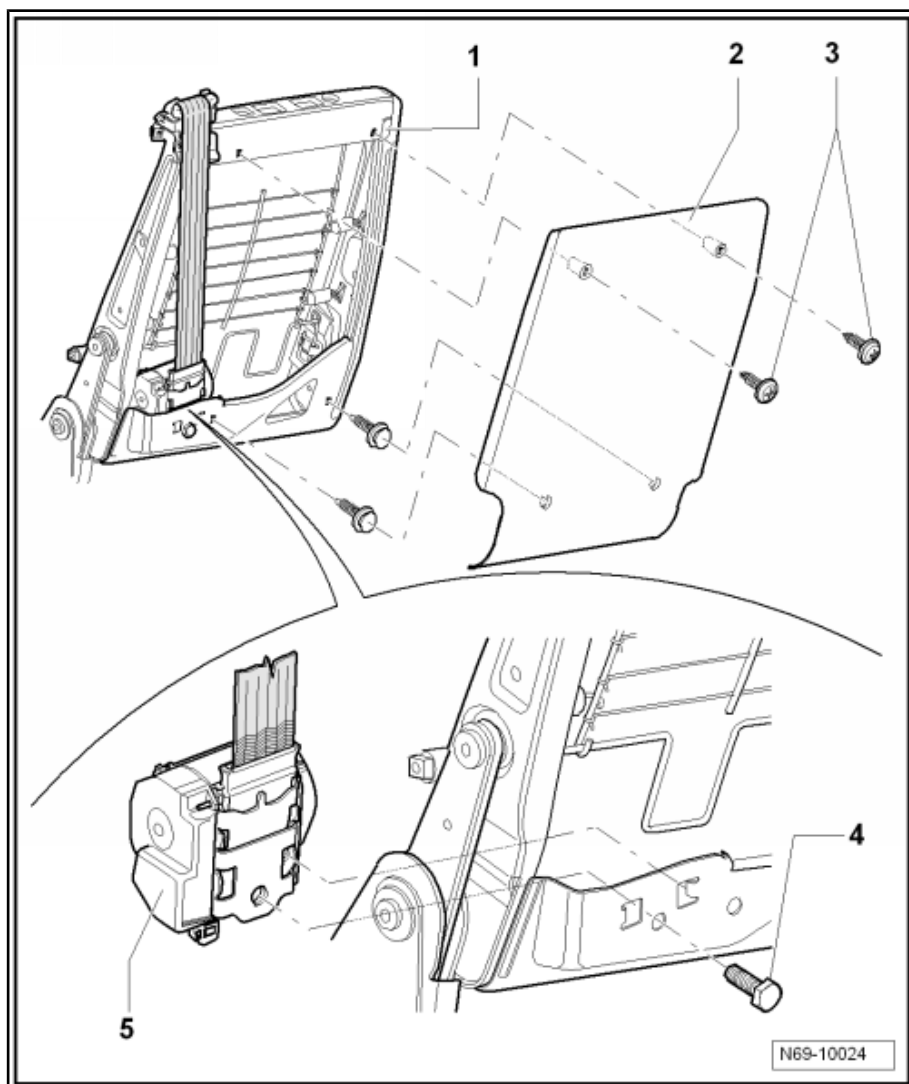
◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-







### Removing

- Remove trims on individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove belt end fitting ⇒ [page 124](#) .
- Remove cover and padding from backrests of individual seats in 2nd row ⇒ [page 444](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- Pull backrest rear panel -2- out of its mountings in backrest frame -1-.
- Unscrew bolt -4-.
- Remove belt inertia reel -5- from backrest frame -1-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

*Before installing, check retaining clips for damage and renew if necessary.*



### Specified torques

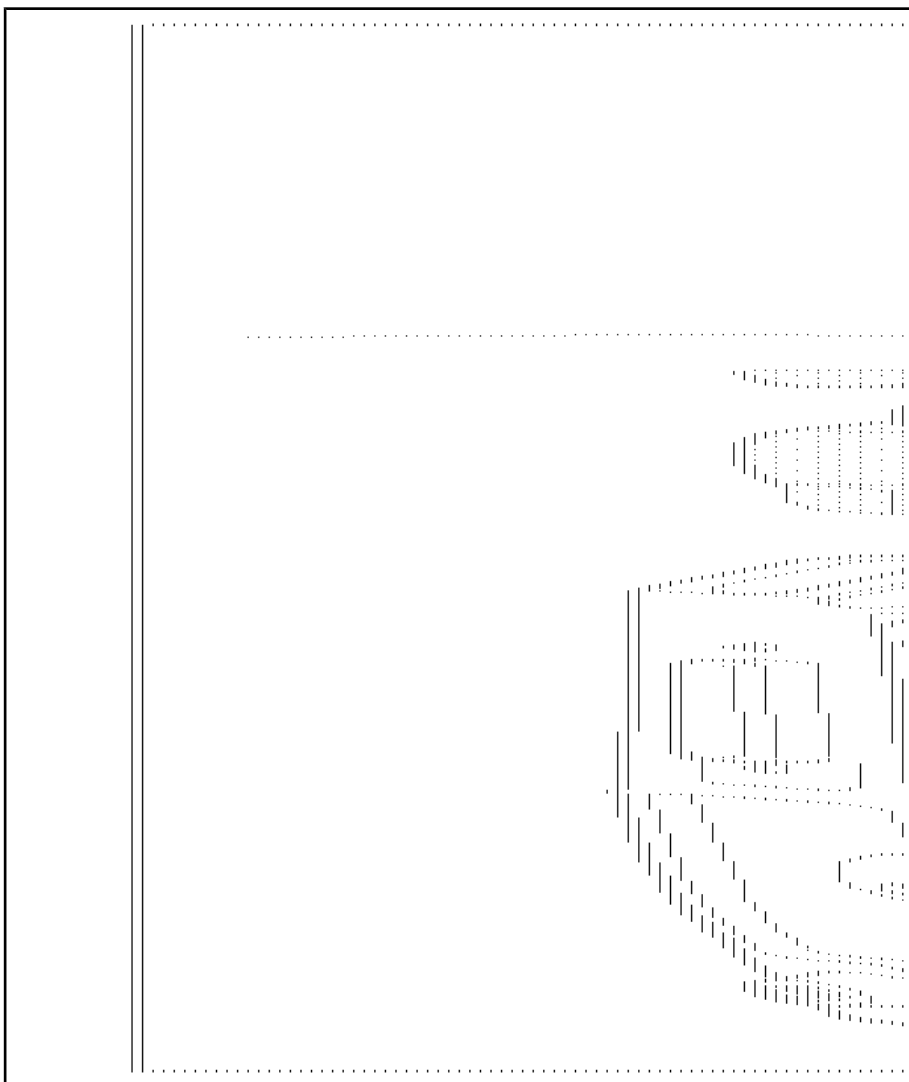
Component	Specified torque
Bolts -3- for backrest rear panel	2 Nm
Bolts -4- for belt inertia reel	40 Nm

## 1.4.2 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt, Transporter, double bench seat in 2nd row

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-





### Removing

- Remove bench seat ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove belt buckle ⇒ [page 136](#) .
- Remove seat padding ⇒ [page 460](#) .
- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 369](#) .
- Remove backrest cover and cushion from double seat, 2nd row ⇒ [page 444](#) .
- Carefully unclip cover -2- from backrest frame.
- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Pull belt inertia reel -1- to side in order to remove it from backrest frame.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

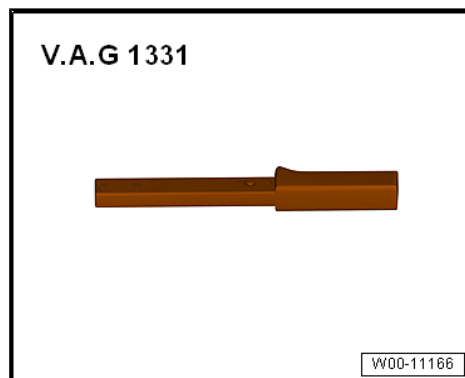
Component	Specified torque
Bolts for belt inertia reel	40 Nm



### 1.4.3 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt, double cab, 3-seat bench seat in 2nd row

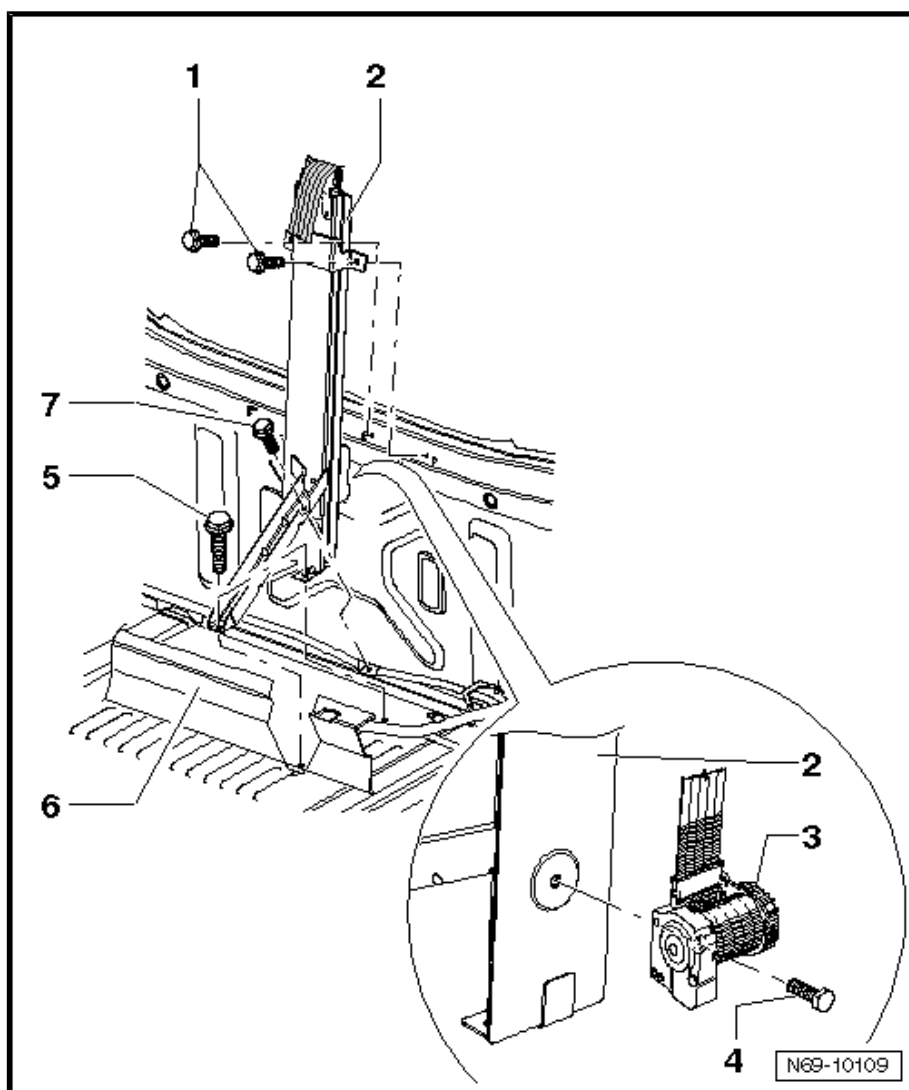
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-





### Removing

- Fold out seat cushion.
- Detach centre seat belt with buckle from seat belt mounting bracket.
- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 369](#).
- Unscrew bolts -1-.
- Unscrew bolt -7-.
- Unscrew bolts -5-.
- Remove seat belt mounting bracket -2- from seat frame -6-.
- Unscrew bolt -4-.
- Remove belt inertia reel -3- from seat belt mounting bracket -2-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

*During installation, bolts must be installed in sequence -5-, -7- and -1-.*

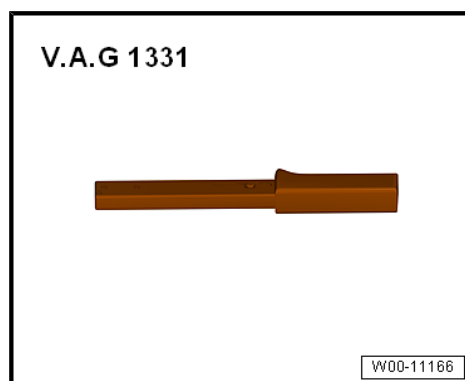
#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts -1- for seat belt mounting bracket	25 Nm
Bolts -4- for belt inertia reel	40 Nm
Bolts -5- and -7- for seat belt mounting bracket	55 Nm

### 1.4.4 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt, Kombi, outer seats of 2nd row

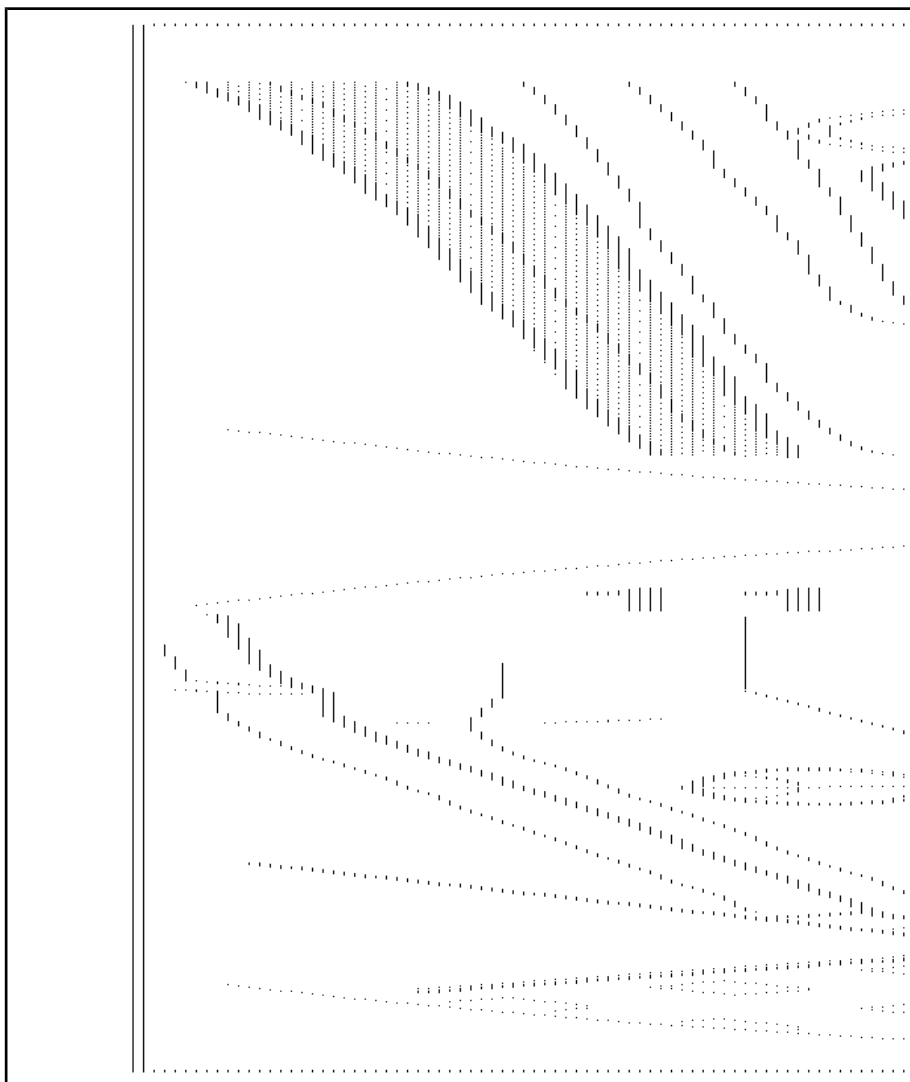
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



#### Note

*The removal and installation procedure is described for the right-hand side of the vehicle. Removal and installation of the left vehicle side is similar.*



### Removing

- Remove seats from 2nd and 3rd rows ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Use a small screwdriver to lever off cap -8- from bolt -9-.
- Unscrew bolt -9-.
- Remove belt end fitting -10- and spacer bush -11-.
- Remove side trim panel ⇒ [page 259](#) .
- Clip on cap -4-.
- Unscrew bolt -5-.
- Remove belt guide fitting -6- and washer -3-.
- Unscrew bolt -2-.
- Remove belt inertia reel -1- from C-pillar.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for seat belts	40 Nm



## 1.5 Removing and installing rear outer belt end fitting

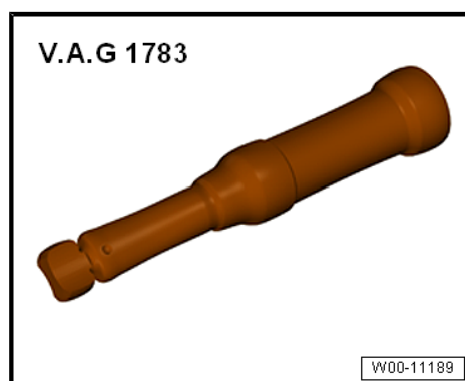
⇒ [“1.5.1 Removing and installing rear outer belt end fitting, Multivan/Business, belt end fitting of individual seat in 2nd row”, page 124](#)

⇒ [“1.5.2 Removing and installing rear outer belt end fitting, Multivan, belt end fitting of 3-seater bench seat”, page 126](#)

### 1.5.1 Removing and installing rear outer belt end fitting, Multivan/Business, belt end fitting of individual seat in 2nd row

Special tools and workshop equipment required

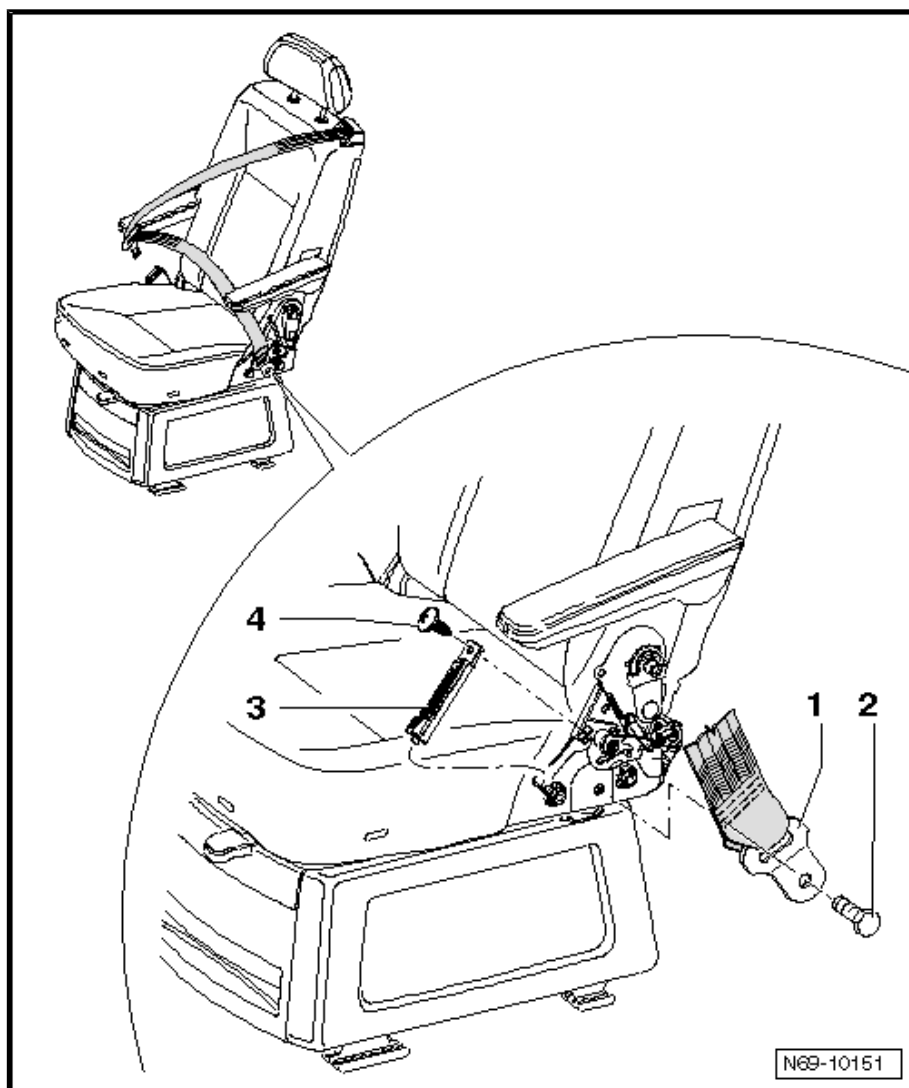
◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-







### Removing

- Remove front trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove rear trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove left trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Unscrew bolt -4-.
- Remove belt guide -3- from seat frame.
- Gently pull seat belt out of belt guide.
- Unscrew bolt -2-.
- Detach belt end fitting -1- from seat.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

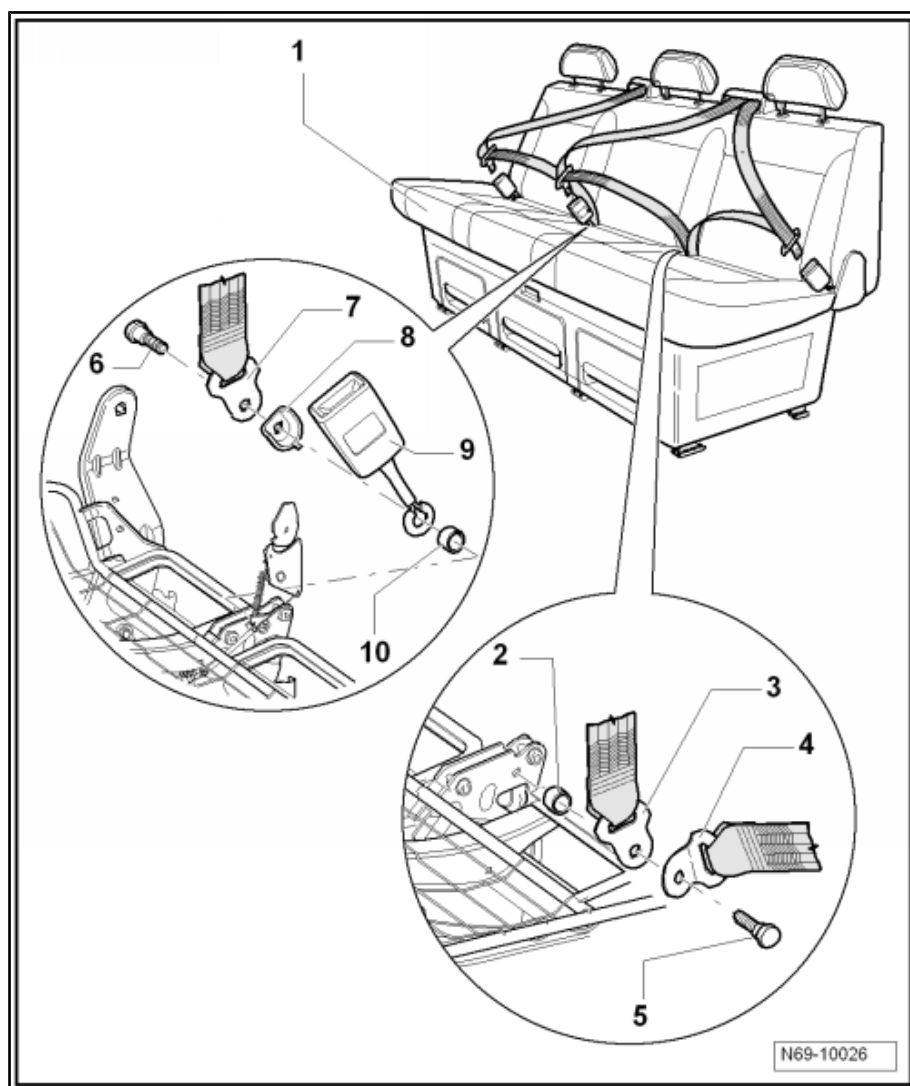
Component	Specified torque
Bolts -4- for belt guide	3 Nm
Bolts -2- for belt end fitting	40 Nm



## 1.5.2 Removing and installing rear outer belt end fitting, Multivan, belt end fitting of 3-seater bench seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



### Removing

- Remove rear trim of 3-seat bench seat.



- Fold seat cushion -1- forwards.
- Unscrew bolt -5-.
- Remove left belt end fitting -4-, centre belt end fitting -3- as well as spacer -2-.
- Unscrew bolt -6-.
- Remove belt end fitting -7-, centre belt buckle -9- with cover plate -8- and spacer -10-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for belt end fittings	40 Nm

### 1.6 Removing and installing belt height adjuster

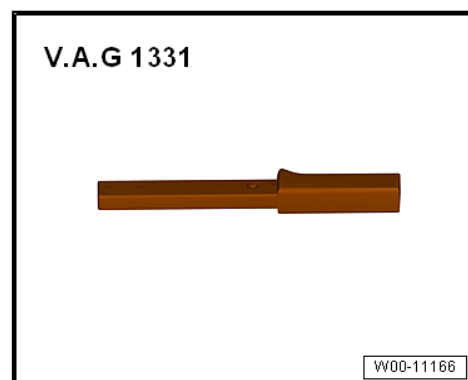
⇒ ["1.6.1 Removing and installing belt height adjuster, Multivan", page 127](#)

⇒ ["1.6.2 Removing and installing belt height adjuster, Transporter", page 128](#)

#### 1.6.1 Removing and installing belt height adjuster, Multivan

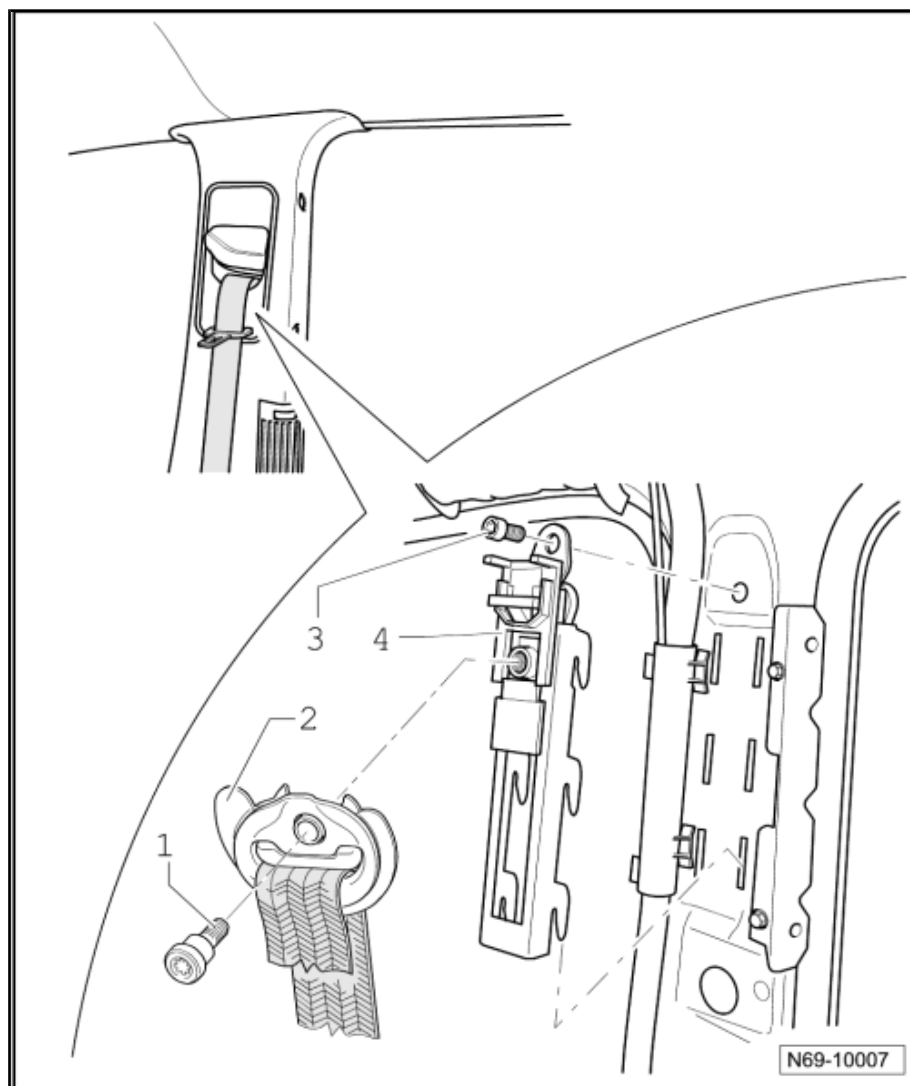
##### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



#### Note

*The removal and installation procedure is described for the right-hand side of the vehicle. Removal and installation of the left vehicle side is similar.*



### Removing

- Remove upper B-pillar trim ➔ [page 231](#) .
- Unscrew bolt -1-.
- Detach belt guide fitting -2- from belt height adjuster -4-.
- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Remove belt height adjuster -4- from mountings in support plate.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

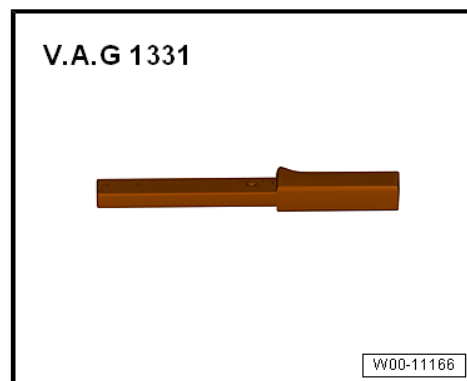
Component	Specified torque
Bolts for belt guide fitting	40 Nm
Bolts for belt height adjuster	25 Nm

## 1.6.2 Removing and installing belt height adjuster, Transporter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

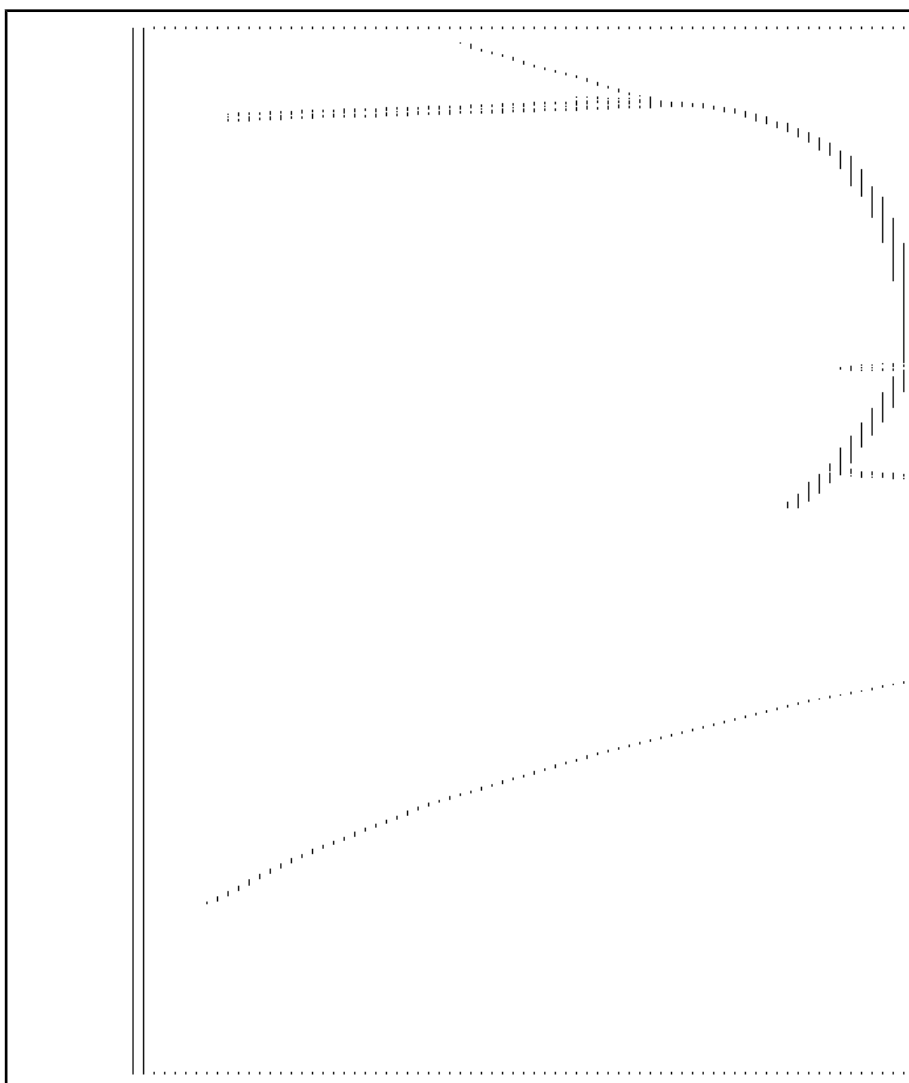


◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



Note

*The removal and installation procedure is described for the right-hand side of the vehicle. Removal and installation of the left vehicle side is similar.*





## Removing

- Remove belt guide fitting.
- Remove upper B-pillar trim ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- Unscrew bolt -2-.
- Remove belt height adjuster -1- from mountings in support bracket.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for belt height adjuster	25 Nm

## 1.7 Removing and installing front belt buckle

⇒ [“1.7.1 Removing and installing front belt buckle, height adjustable seat”, page 130](#)

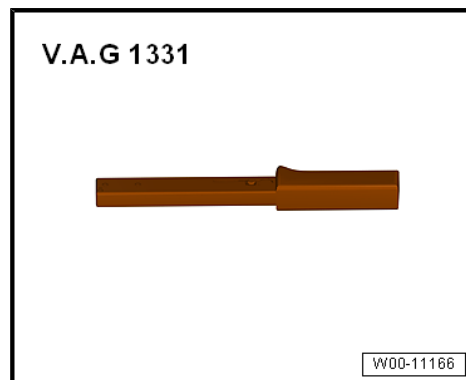
⇒ [“1.7.2 Removing and installing front belt buckle, swivel seat”, page 131](#)

⇒ [“1.7.3 Removing and installing front belt buckle, double bench seat”, page 133](#)

### 1.7.1 Removing and installing front belt buckle, height adjustable seat

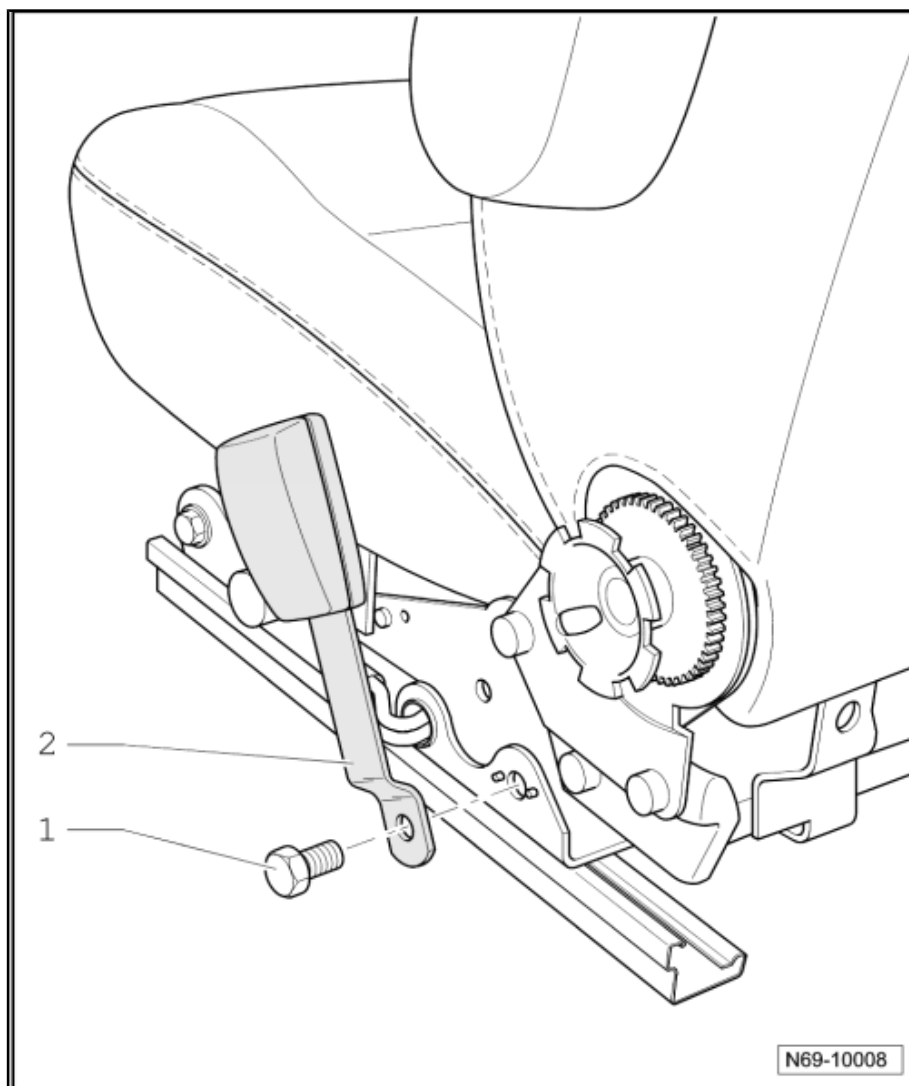
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



#### Note

*Removal and installation of the belt buckle is described for the front right seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of the belt buckle for the front left seat as appropriate.*



### Removing

- Remove rear trim for front seat ⇒ [page 326](#) .
- Remove lateral trim for front seat ⇒ [page 319](#) .
- Disconnect connector of seat belt reminder to belt buckle.
- Cut through cable tie on wiring harness.
- Unscrew bolt -1-.
- Remove belt buckle -2-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Renew cable tie on wiring harness.

### Specified torques

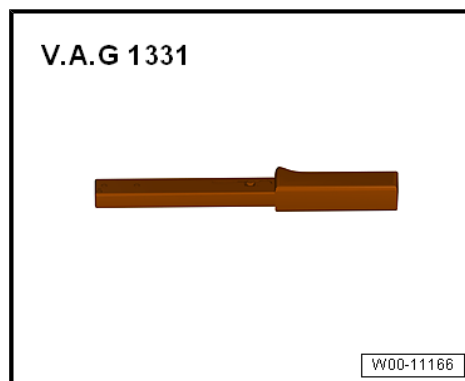
Component	Specified torque
Belt buckle	40 Nm

## 1.7.2 Removing and installing front belt buckle, swivel seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

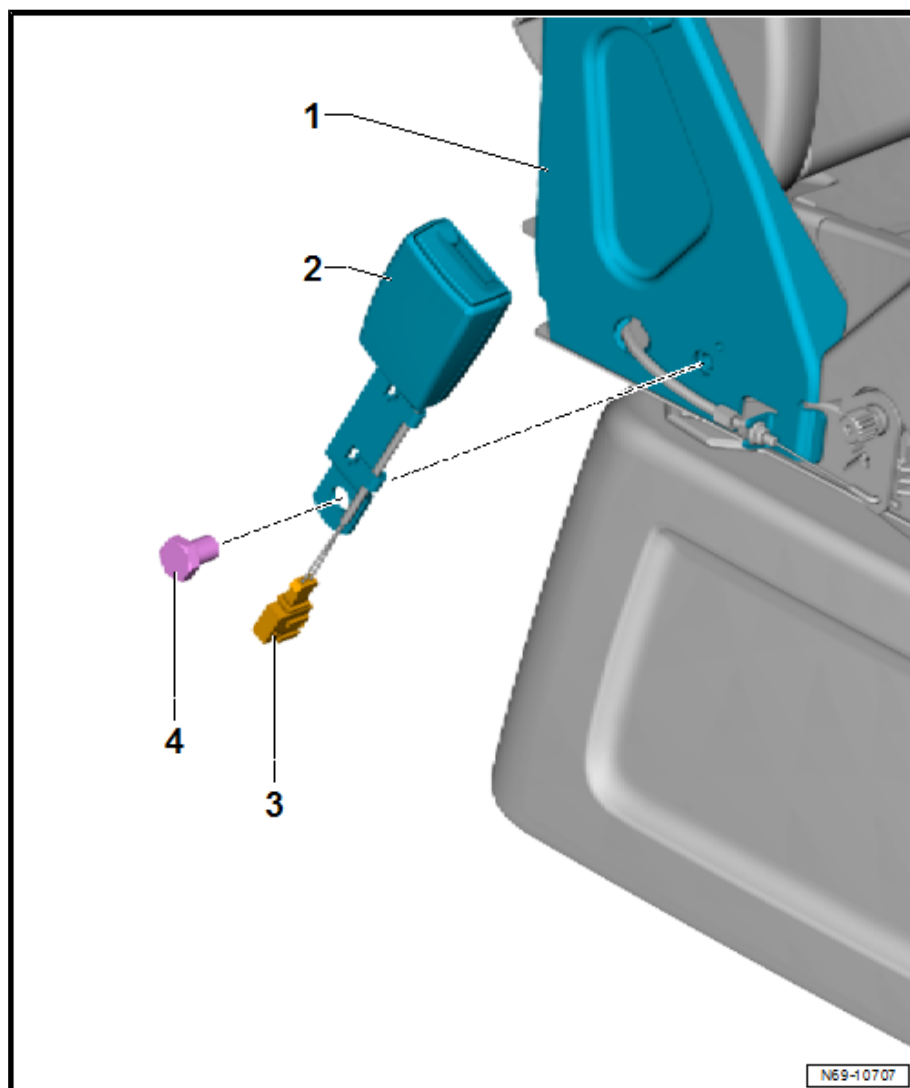


- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



#### Note

*Removal and installation of the belt buckle is described for the front right seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of the belt buckle for the front left seat as appropriate.*



#### Removing

- Remove front swivel seat ➔ [page 300](#) .





- Remove right front seat trim.
- Disconnect connector -3- to belt buckle.
- Unscrew bolt -4-.
- Remove belt buckle -2- from seat -1-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

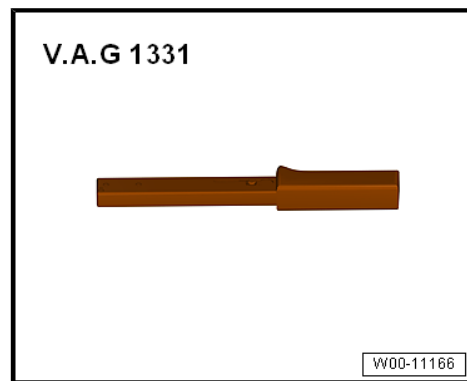
#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Belt buckle	40 Nm

### 1.7.3 Removing and installing front belt buckle, double bench seat

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

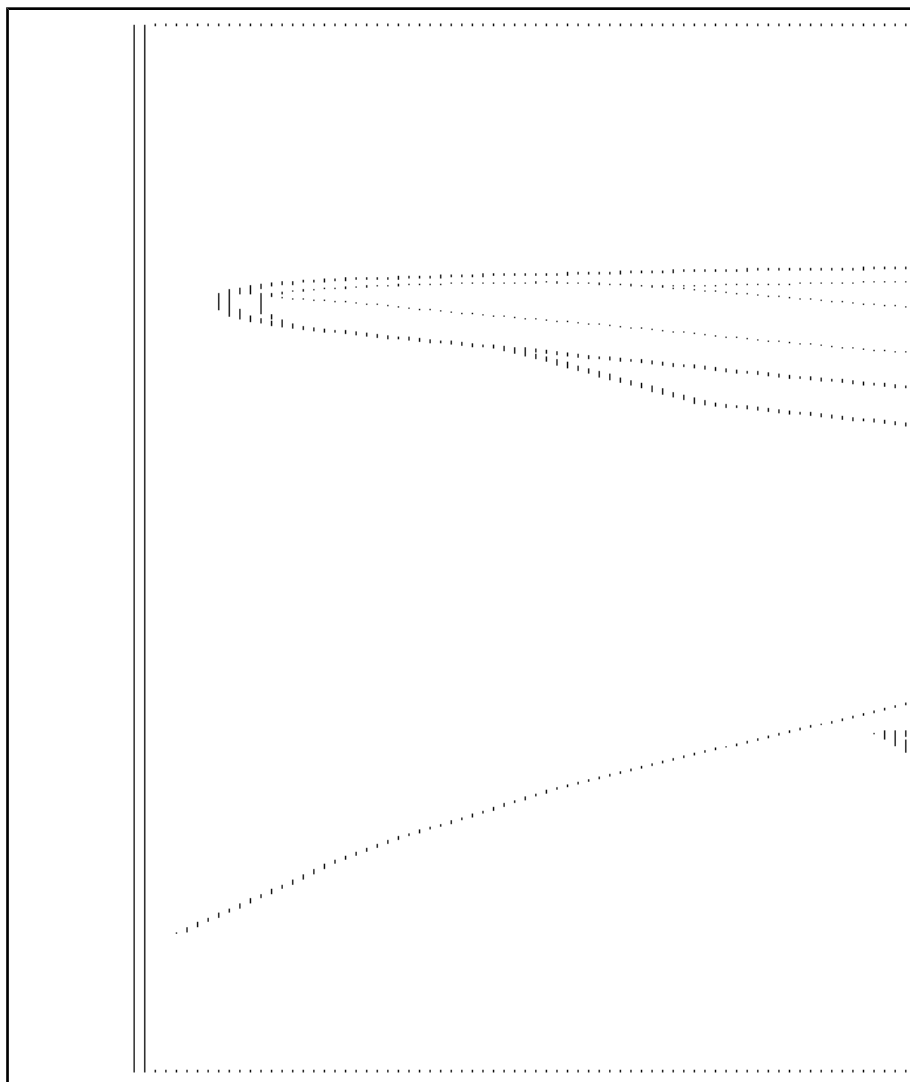


- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-



#### Note

*The belt buckle -1- cannot be removed individually. It forms one component with the seat belt.*



### Removing

- Fold out seat cushions of double bench seat.
- Unscrew bolts -4-.
- Remove outer belt buckle -5-.
- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Remove right belt buckle -1- with cover plate -2-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts -4- for belt buckle	55 Nm
Bolts -3- for belt buckle	40 Nm



## 1.8 Removing and installing rear belt buckle

⇒ [“1.8.1 Removing and installing rear belt buckle, Multivan/Business, individual seat of 2nd row”, page 135](#)

⇒ [“1.8.2 Removing and installing rear belt buckle, Transporter, individual seat of 2nd row”, page 136](#)

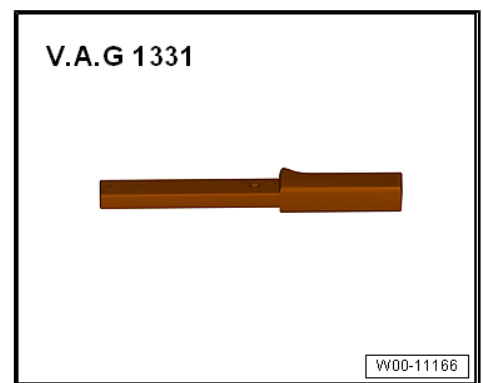
⇒ [“1.8.3 Removing and installing rear belt buckle, Transporter, double bench seat of 2nd row”, page 138](#)

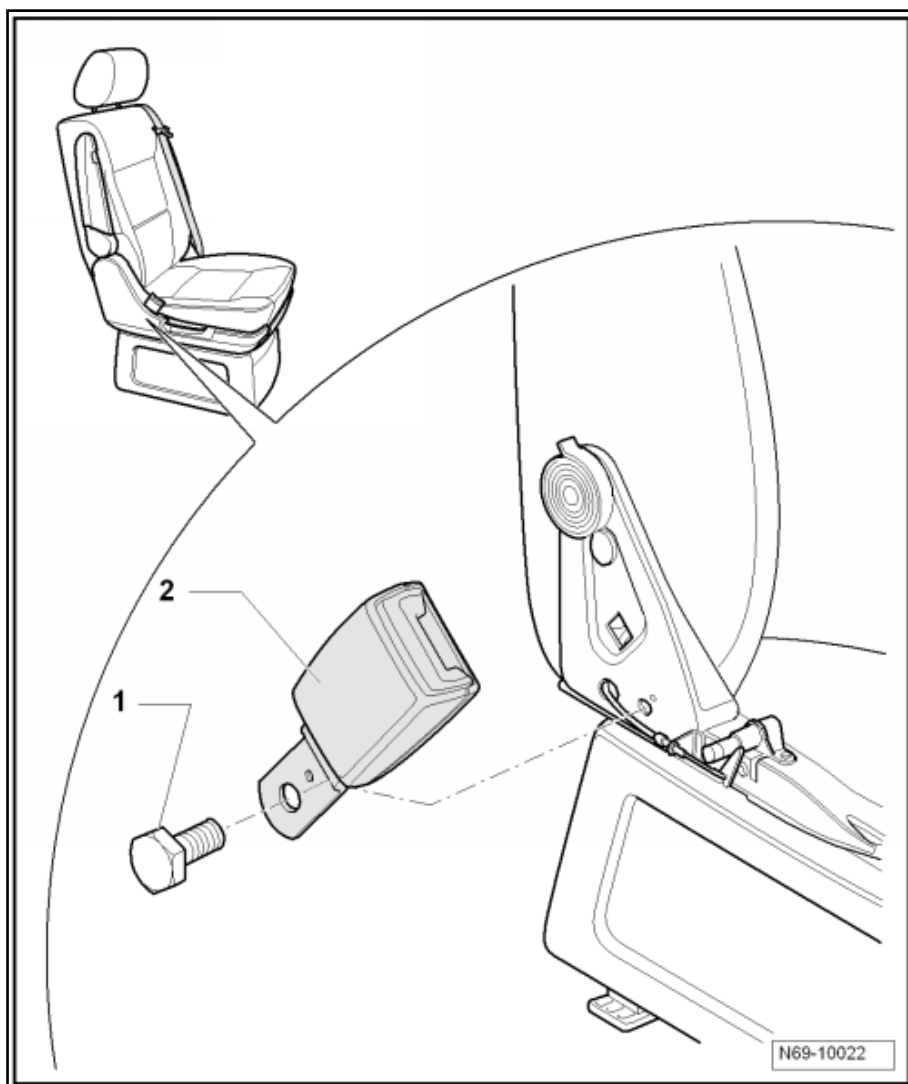
⇒ [“1.8.4 Removing and installing rear belt buckle, double cab, 3-seater bench seat of 2nd row”, page 140](#)

### 1.8.1 Removing and installing rear belt buckle, Multivan/Business, individual seat of 2nd row

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-





### Removing

- Remove front trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove rear trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove right trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Unscrew bolt -1-.
- Detach belt buckle -2- from seat.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for belt buckle	40 Nm

### 1.8.2 Removing and installing rear belt buckle, Transporter, individual seat of 2nd row

Special tools and workshop equipment required

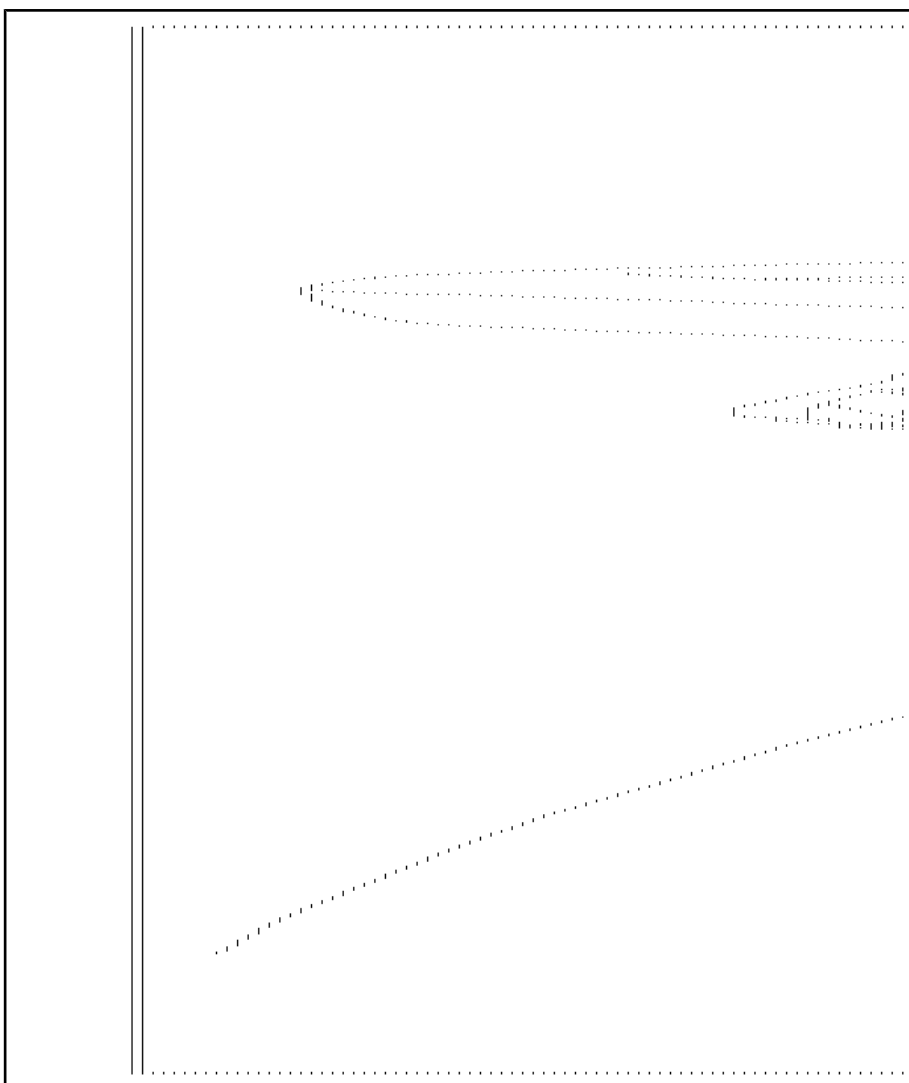


- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

V.A.G 1331



W00-11166



### Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove left trim on seat.
- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Remove belt buckle -1- and cover plate -2- from seat frame.



## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

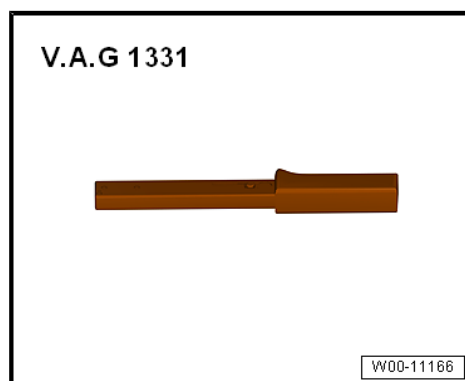
### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolt for belt buckle	40 Nm

### 1.8.3 Removing and installing rear belt buckle, Transporter, double bench seat of 2nd row

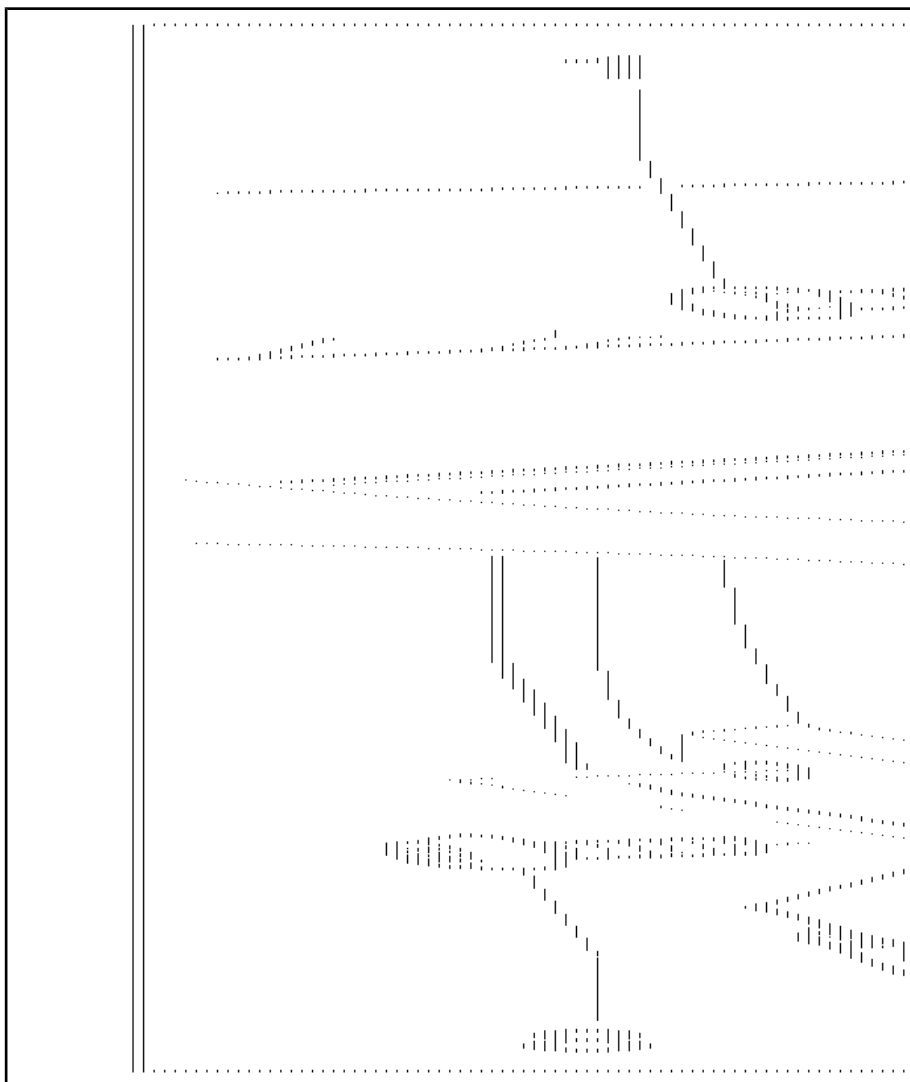
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-





### Removing

- Unscrew bolts -8-.
- Remove right belt buckle -7- from seat frame.
- Unscrew bolt -1-.
- Remove cover plate -2- and release belt buckle -3- and belt end fitting -4- from seat frame.
- Pull belt buckle trim -5- out of seat cushion.
- Using a small screwdriver, release retaining hooks -arrows-.
- Remove lower part -6- of belt buckle trim -5-.
- Pull belt buckle -3- downwards out of belt buckle trim.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

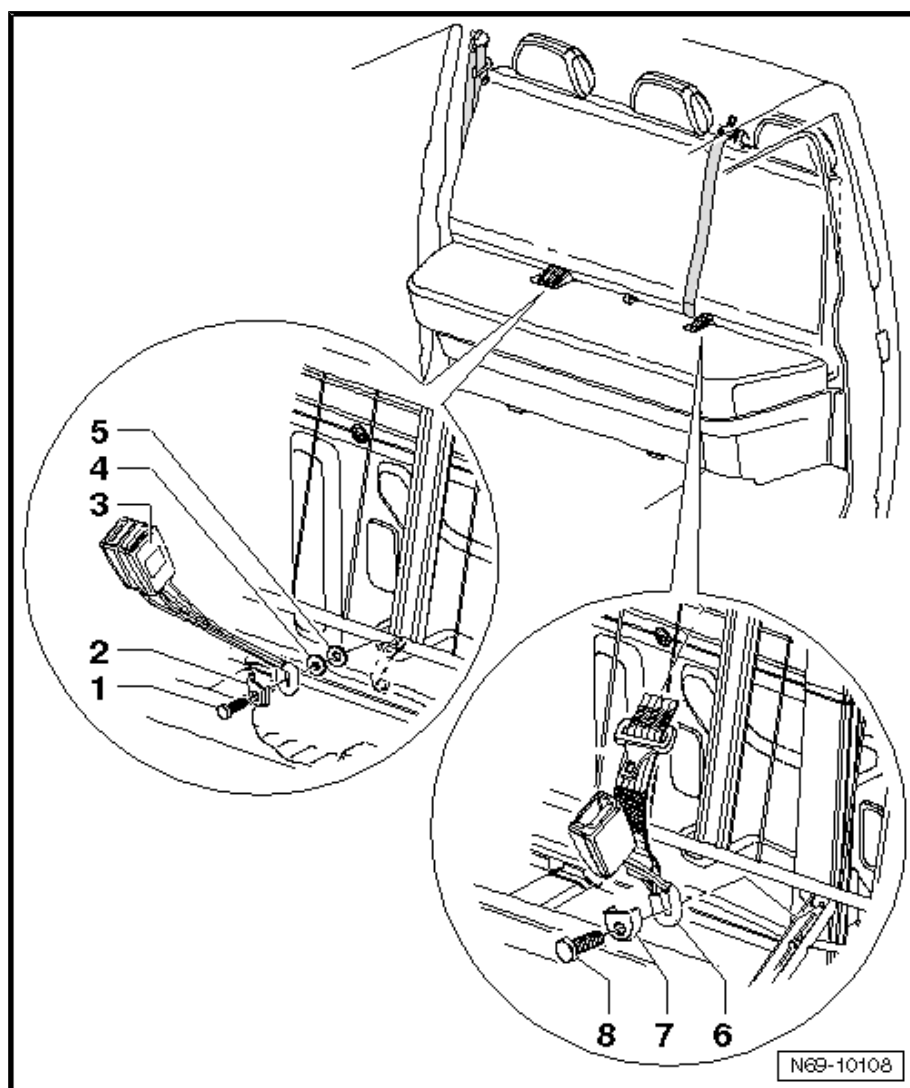
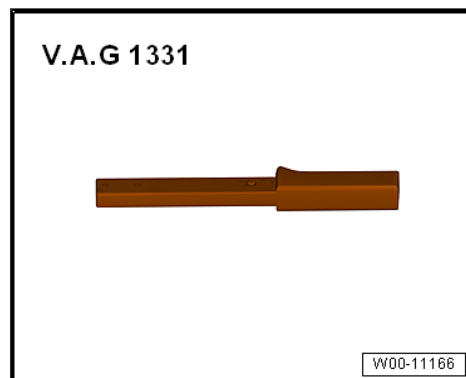
Component	Specified torque
Bolts -8- for belt buckle	55 Nm
Bolt -1- for belt buckle	40 Nm



### 1.8.4 Removing and installing rear belt buckle, double cab, 3-seater bench seat of 2nd row

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



#### Removing

- Fold out seat cushion.





- Unscrew bolt -1-.
- Detach twin belt buckle -3- with cap -2-, washer -4- and seal -5- from bracket.
- Unscrew bolt -8-.
- Detach seat belt with belt buckle -6- and cap -7- from seat belt mounting bracket.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for belt buckles	40 Nm



## 2 Child seat anchors



### WARNING

*If the vehicle has been converted by ABT e-Line, it is possible that the repair instructions provided below are no longer valid.*

- *In this case, please always refer to the repair instructions from ABT e-Line, available in ElsaPro in the tab "Super-structures and modifications".*

⇒ ["2.1 Assembly overview - front child seat anchors, Multivan/Business", page 142](#)

⇒ ["2.2 Assembly overview - rear child seat anchors", page 143](#)

### 2.1 Assembly overview - front child seat anchors, Multivan/Business



#### Note

- ◆ *Removal and installation are described for the Top Tether retaining ring for individual seats. Removal and installation for the 3-seat bench seat are analogous.*
- ◆ *Refer to the respective operating manual when installing the Top Tether retaining rings for the various seat versions.*



1 - Rear seat frame trim

2 - Spacer sleeve

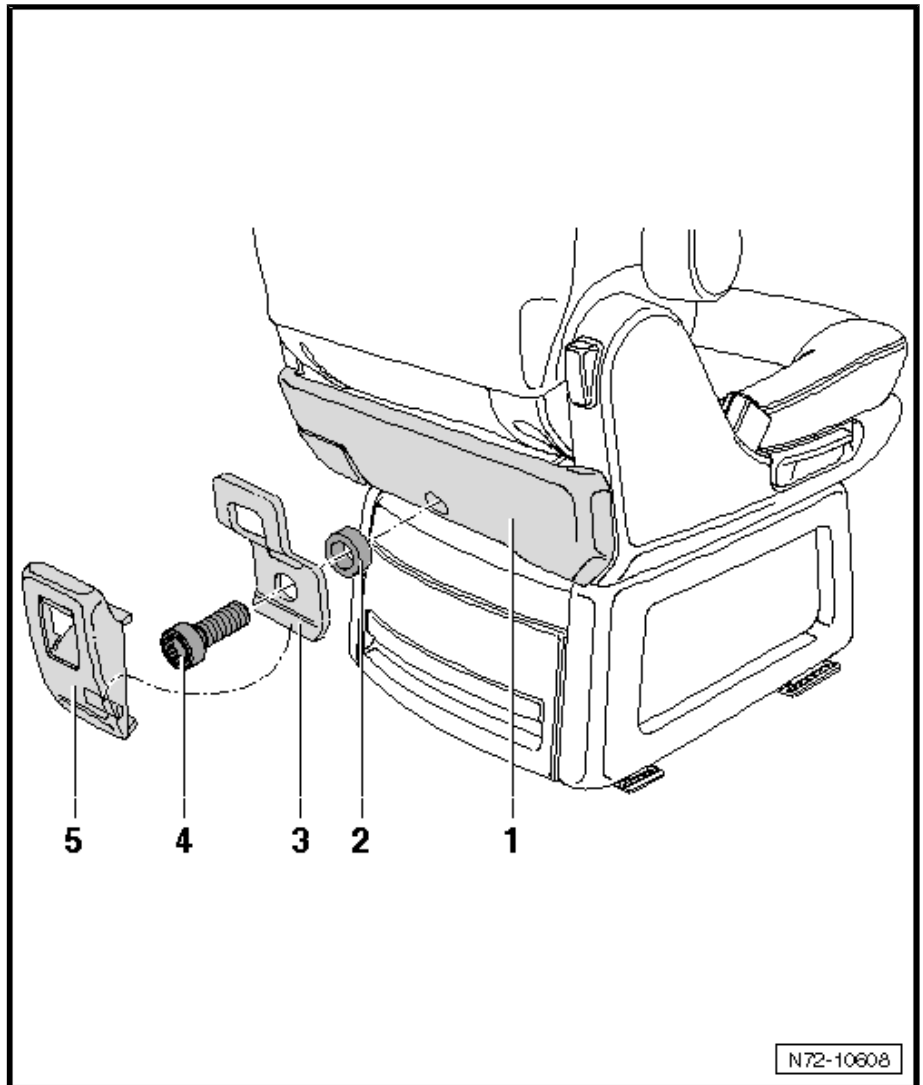
3 - Anchor fitting

4 - Bolt

□ 20 Nm

5 - Cover

- For Top Tether child seat anchor.
- Attach to anchor fitting, and push it in until it audibly engages.



## 2.2 Assembly overview - rear child seat anchors

The rear retaining ring for the top tether child seat anchor is removed and installed in the same way as the front retaining ring for the top tether child seat anchor ⇒ [page 142](#).

## 3 Airbag system



### WARNING

*If the vehicle has been converted by ABT e-Line, it is possible that the repair instructions provided below are no longer valid.*

- *In this case, please always refer to the repair instructions from ABT e-Line, available in ElsaPro in the tab "Superstructures and modifications".*

⇒ ["3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system", page 144](#)

### 3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system

⇒ ["3.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - front airbag system", page 144](#)

⇒ ["3.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system, curtain airbag and crash sensors", page 145](#)

#### 3.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - front airbag system

##### 1 - Airbag unit on driver side

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 149](#)

##### 2 - Airbag warning lamp - K75- in dash panel insert

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ Electrical system;  
Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel  
insert; Removing and installing dash panel insert KX2

##### 3 - Airbag unit on front passenger side

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 154](#)
- ❑ Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate front passenger airbag ⇒ [page 156](#).

##### 4 - Side airbag, front passenger side

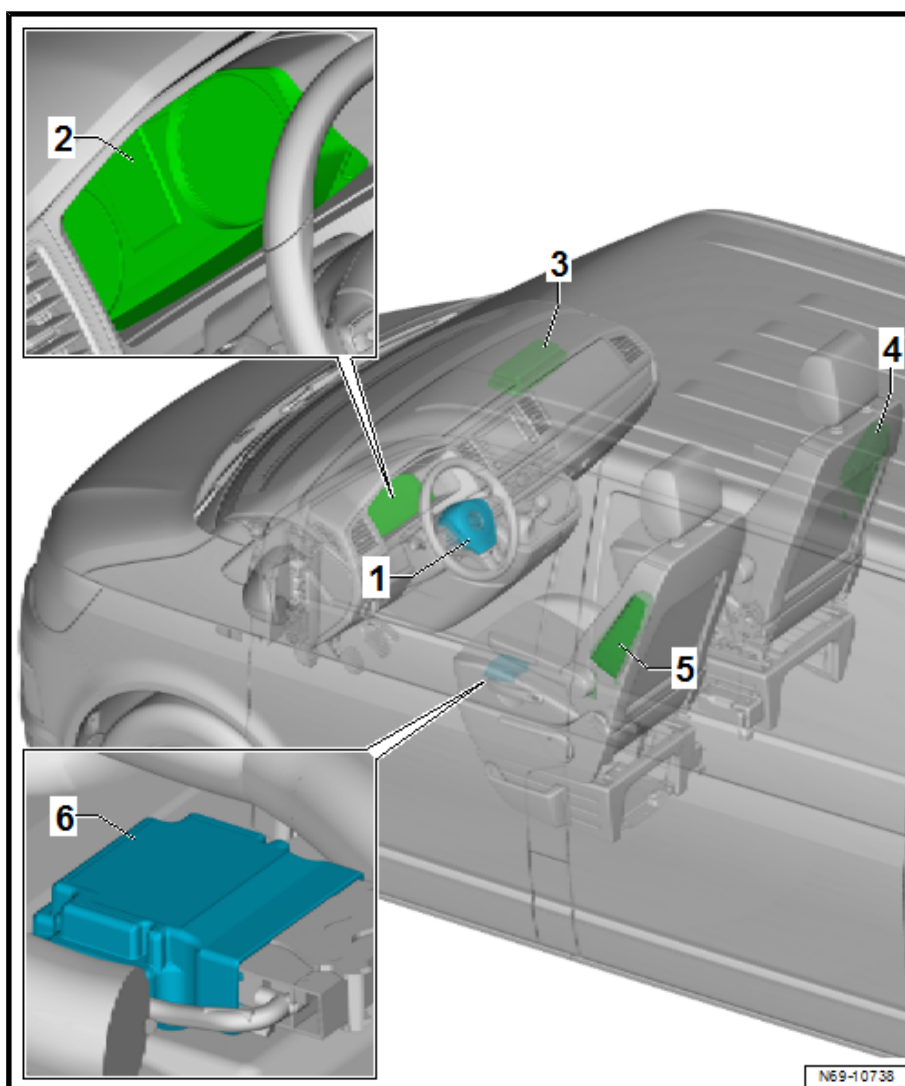
- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 158](#)

##### 5 - Side airbag, driver side

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 158](#)

##### 6 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 146](#)





### 3.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system, curtain airbag and crash sensors

**1 - Curtain airbag in front seat area on driver side**

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 164](#)

**2 - Curtain airbag in front seat area on front passenger side**

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 164](#)

**3 - Curtain airbag in passenger compartment on driver side**

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 164](#)

**4 - Curtain airbag in passenger compartment on front passenger side**

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 164](#)

**5 - Rear side airbag crash sensor, front passenger side - G257-**

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 172](#)

**6 - Rear side airbag crash sensor, driver side - G256-**

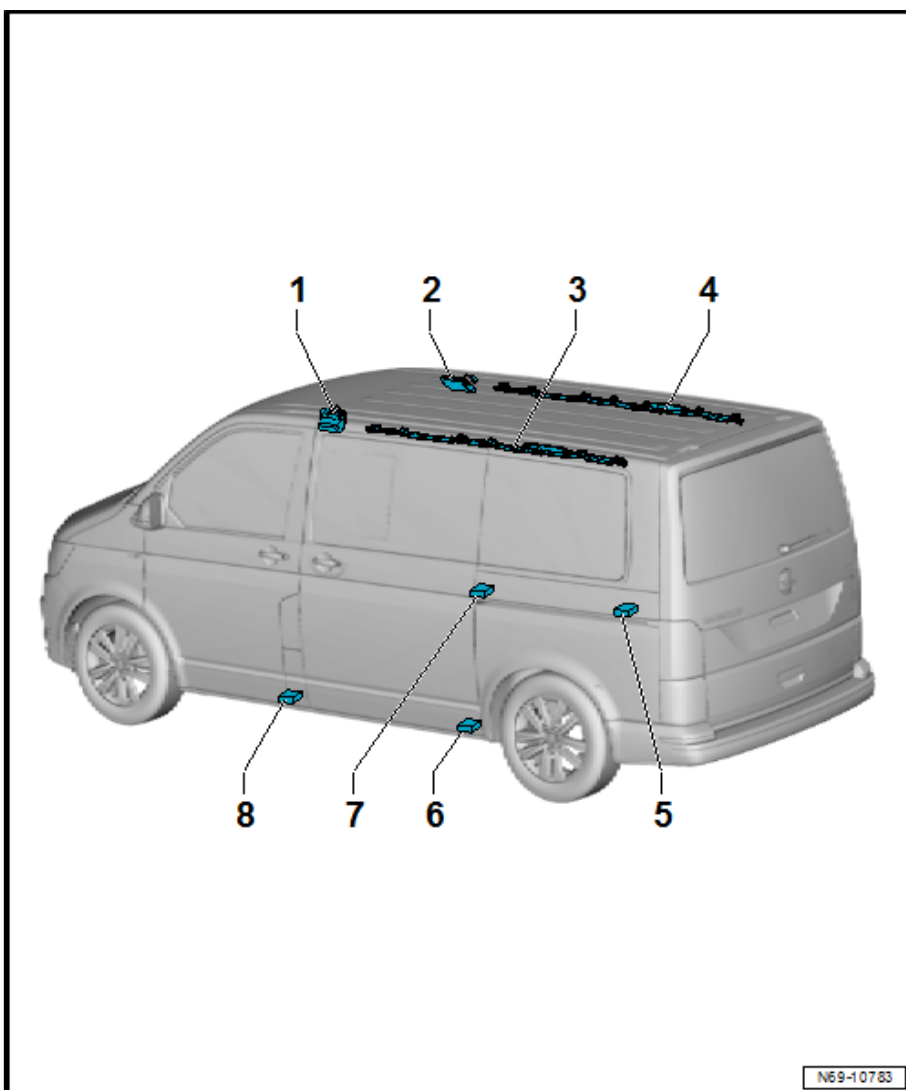
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 172](#)

**7 - Side airbag crash sensor, front passenger side - G180-**

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 172](#)

**8 - Side airbag crash sensor, driver side - G179-**

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 172](#)





## 4 Airbag control unit



### WARNING

*If the vehicle has been converted by ABT e-Line, it is possible that the repair instructions provided below are no longer valid.*

- *In this case, please always refer to the repair instructions from ABT e-Line, available in ElsaPro in the tab "Superstructures and modifications".*

⇒ "4.1 Assembly overview - airbag control unit", page 146

⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234", page 146

### 4.1 Assembly overview - airbag control unit

1 - Cover

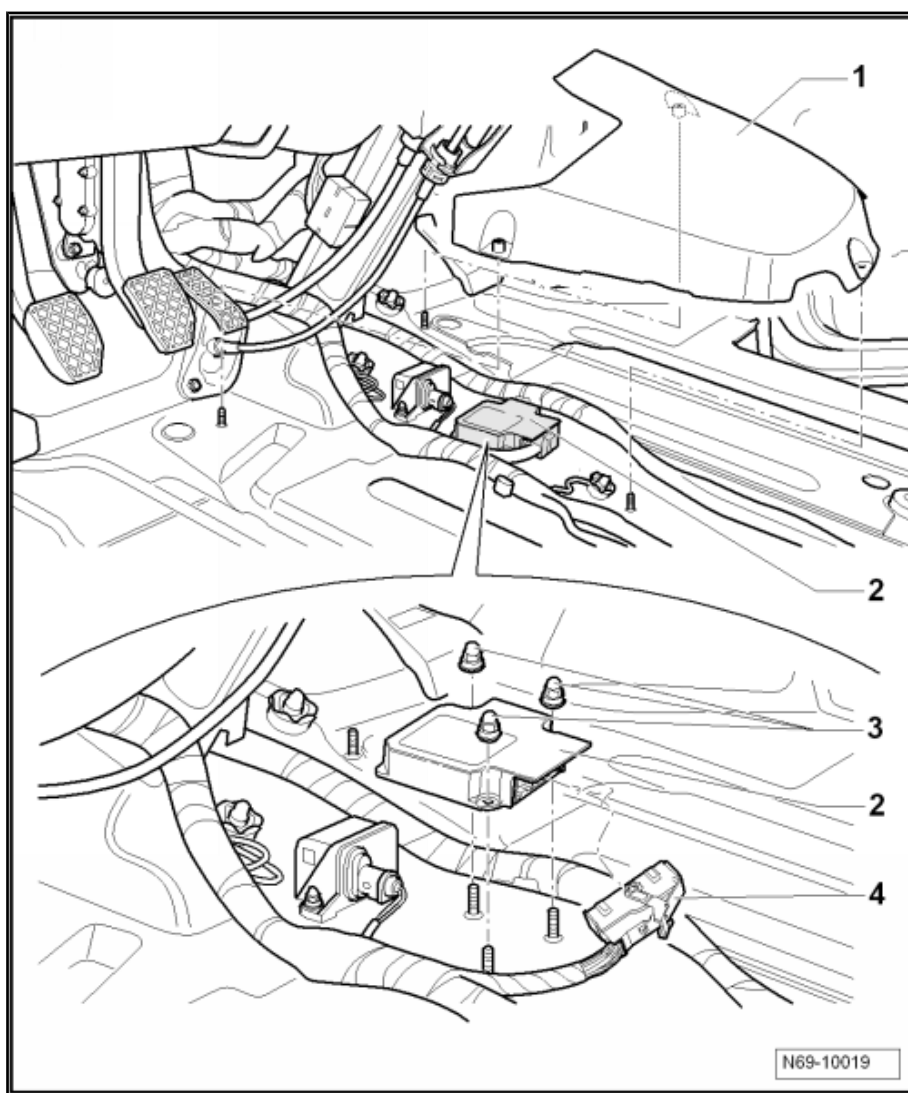
2 - Airbag control unit - J234-

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 146](#)

3 - Nuts

- ❑ Qty. 3
- ❑ 9 Nm

4 - Electrical connector



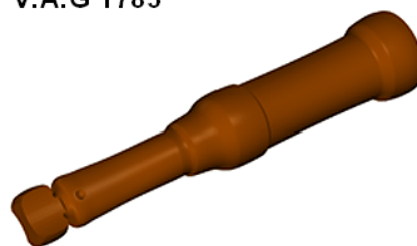
### 4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit - J234-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

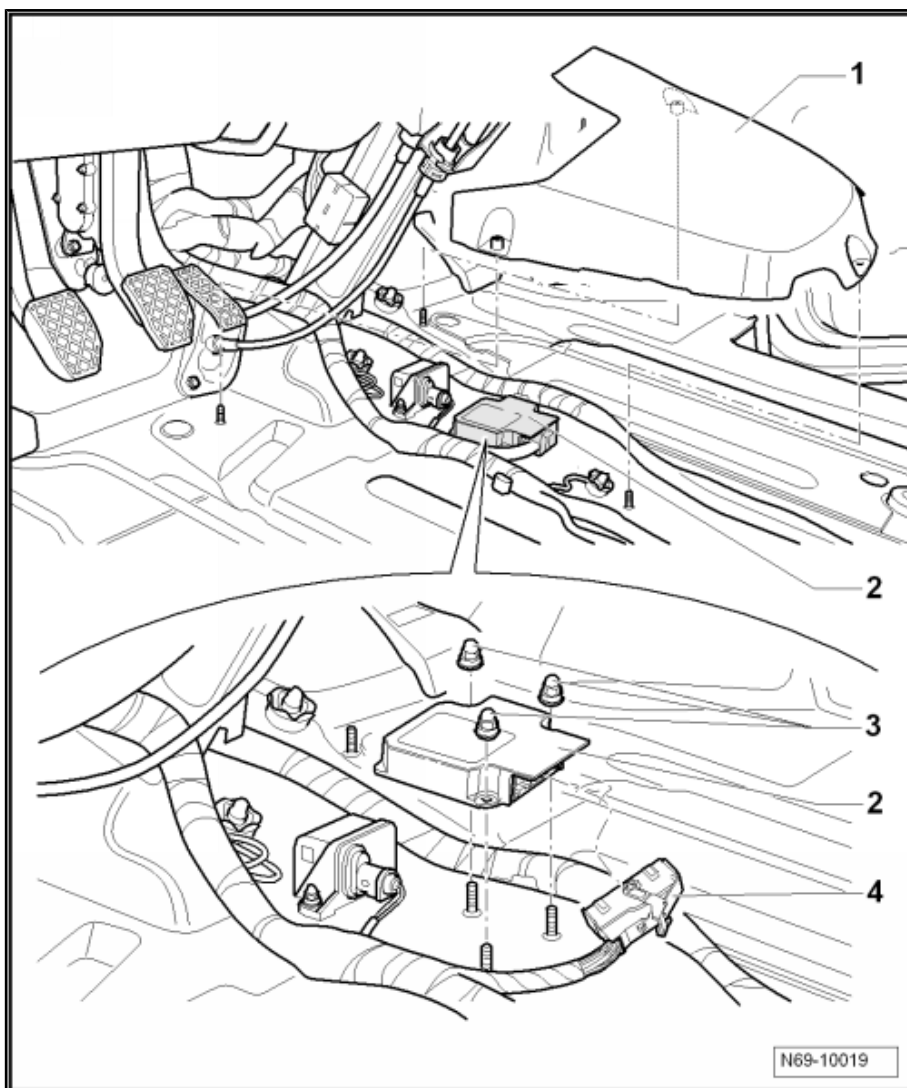


- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

V.A.G 1783



W00-11189



#### Removing



#### WARNING

*When working on the airbag control unit - J234- , observe the safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components  
⇒ [page 3](#) .*



- Switch on ignition.
- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Protect seat from being soiled.
- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 63](#) .
- Remove front passenger side footwell cover ⇒ [page 31](#) .
- Remove glove compartment ⇒ [page 32](#) .
- Remove dash panel cover on driver side ⇒ [page 28](#) .
- Release snap fasteners of front floor covering.



#### WARNING

*Electrostatic discharges may result in unintentional triggering of airbag. Therefore, the mechanic must electrostatically discharge him/herself before disconnecting the igniter and earth wires. This can be carried out e.g. by briefly touching the body or striker plate of the door.*

- Pull out floor covering from beneath dash panel.
- Fold back floor covering and place it onto seats.
- Pull cover -1- off retaining pins.
- Disconnect connector -4-.
- Unscrew nuts -3-.
- Remove airbag control unit - J234- -2-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

*It is vital for the control unit to be properly bolted before the ignition is switched on and the battery is connected.*



#### WARNING

*Ensure that nobody is in vehicle.*

- Switch on ignition.
- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Finally, read and clear event memory of airbag control unit since faults may be stored as a result of disconnecting electrical connectors ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.





## 5 Driver's airbag



### WARNING

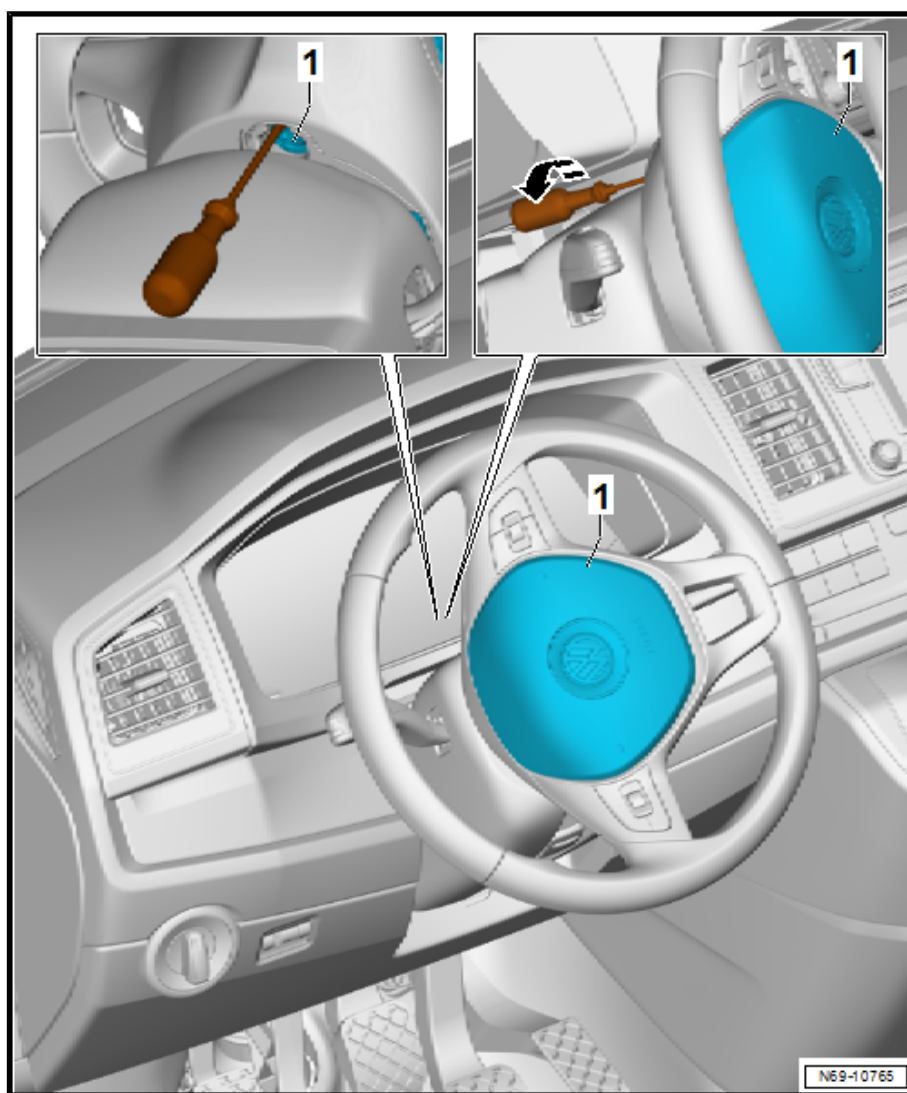
*If the vehicle has been converted by ABT e-Line, it is possible that the repair instructions provided below are no longer valid.*

- *In this case, please always refer to the repair instructions from ABT e-Line, available in ElsaPro in the tab "Superstructures and modifications".*

⇒ ["5.1 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniter", page 149](#)

⇒ ["5.2 Removing and installing return spring with slip ring \(coil connector\)", page 153](#)

### 5.1 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniter





## Removing



### WARNING

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*

*Observe safety instructions for airbags ⇒ [page 6](#).*

- Switch on ignition.
- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Move steering wheel to lowest position.
- Adjust steering wheel reach so that the steering wheel projects as far into the passenger compartment as possible.



### WARNING

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.*



### Note

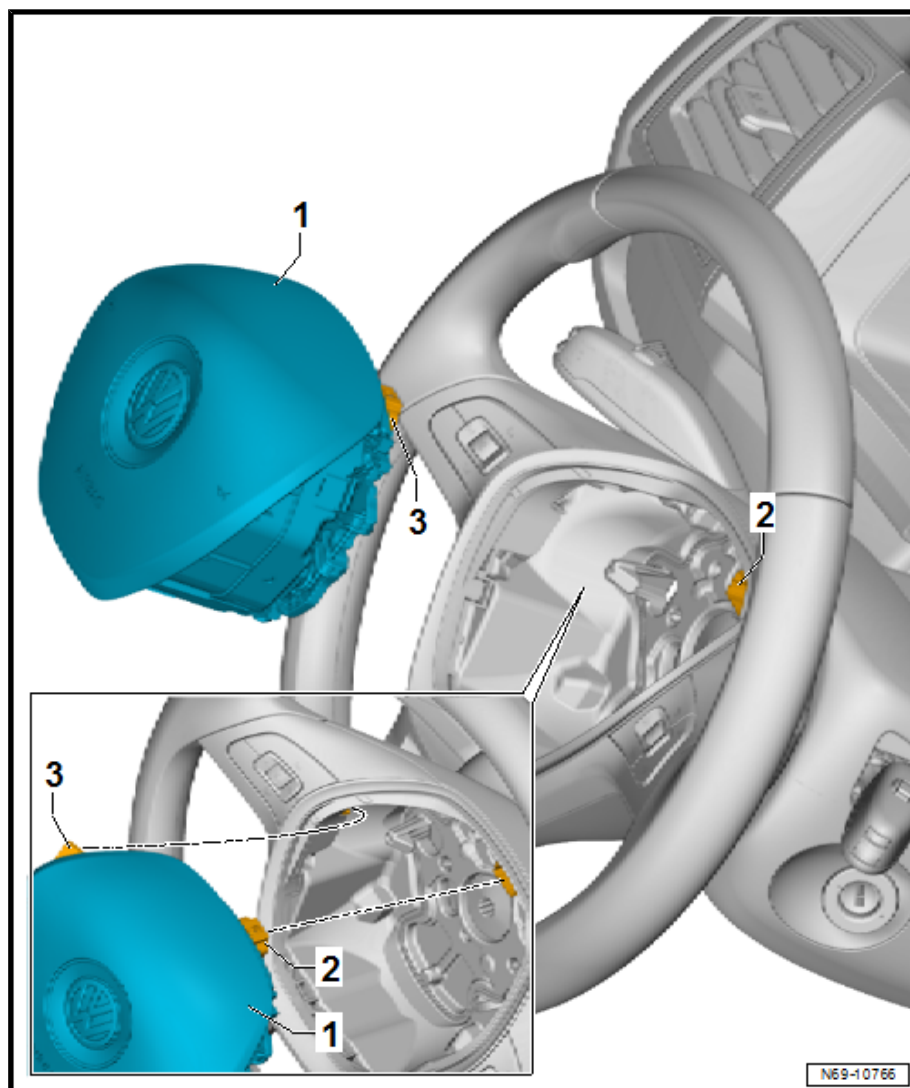
*The screwdriver described in the following activities should be about 150 mm long and have a blade width of 5 mm. Alternatively an angled screwdriver with a blade width of 5 mm may be used.*

- Turn steering wheel to position shown.
- Insert a screwdriver into hole in back of steering wheel as far as stop.
- Turn screwdriver in -direction of arrow-. As a result, catch of airbag unit -1- is released in on the right-hand side of the steering wheel.
- Turn steering wheel 180° and release catch of airbag unit on left side of steering wheel as described.
- Turn steering wheel back to centre position.



- 

*Place airbag to one side such that the impact padding points upwards.*



### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### WARNING

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ➔ [page 3](#).*

*Cable must be prevented from lying on balancer.*

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. connecting the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.*



#### Note

- ◆ *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Ensure that no wires are trapped.*
- Join connector -2- and -3-.



- Press airbag unit -1- into steering wheel.
- Lightly pull on the airbag unit to check whether airbag unit has engaged in steering wheel on right and left.
- Switch on ignition.



**WARNING**

*Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.*

- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Read and clear event memory of airbag control unit since faults may be stored as a result of disconnecting electrical connectors ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

## 5.2 Removing and installing return spring with slip ring (coil connector)

Return ring with slip ring (coil connector) is securely attached to steering column electronics control unit - J527- .

- Removing and installing steering column electronics control unit - J527- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column electronics control unit - J527- .



## 6 Front passenger side airbag



### WARNING

*If the vehicle has been converted by ABT e-Line, it is possible that the repair instructions provided below are no longer valid.*

- *In this case, please always refer to the repair instructions from ABT e-Line, available in ElsaPro in the tab "Superstructures and modifications".*

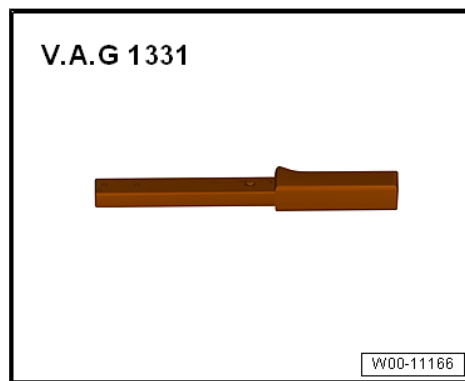
⇒ ["6.1 Removing and installing front passenger side airbag unit with igniter", page 154](#)

⇒ ["6.2 Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag", page 156](#)

### 6.1 Removing and installing front passenger side airbag unit with igniter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



#### Removing



### WARNING

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*

*Observe procedure for storage, transportation and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components) ⇒ [page 5](#).*

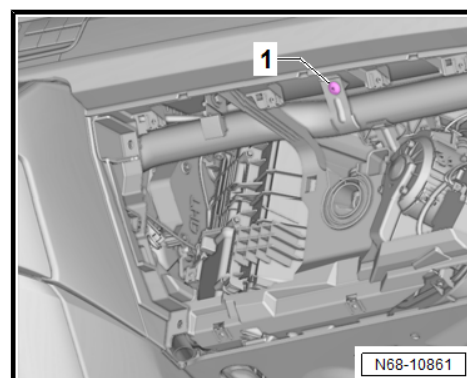
*Note allocation of airbag unit to dash panel ⇒ [Electronic Parts Catalogue](#).*

- Switch on ignition.
- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove glove compartment ⇒ [page 32](#) .
- Remove right dash panel vent ⇒ [page 213](#) .
- Remove mounting frame for radio/navigation system ⇒ [page 205](#) .



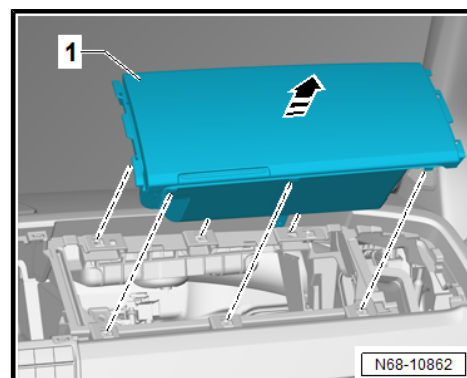
### Multivan only

- Unscrew bolt -1-.

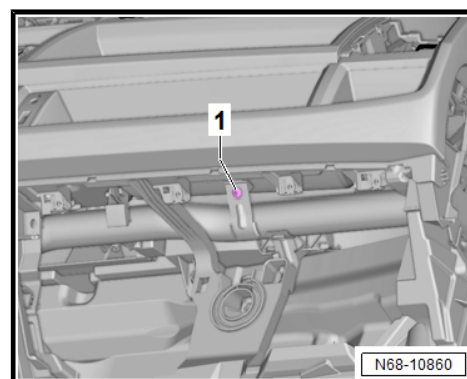


- Unclip storage compartment -1- in -direction of arrow-.

### Transporter only



- Unscrew bolt -1-.



- Unclip storage compartment -1- in -direction of arrow-.

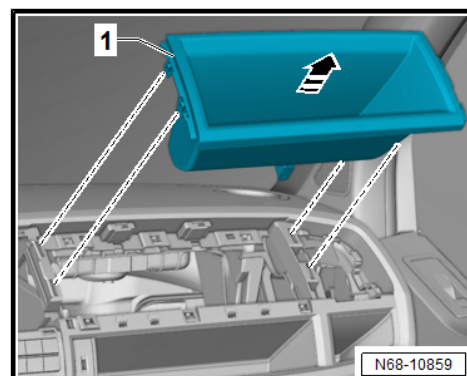
### Continuation for all vehicles



#### WARNING

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.*

- Disconnect connector on front passenger airbag.





- Unscrew bolts -2- of front passenger airbag -1-.
- Pull front passenger airbag out of dash panel.



#### WARNING

*Place airbag to one side such that the impact padding points upwards.*

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

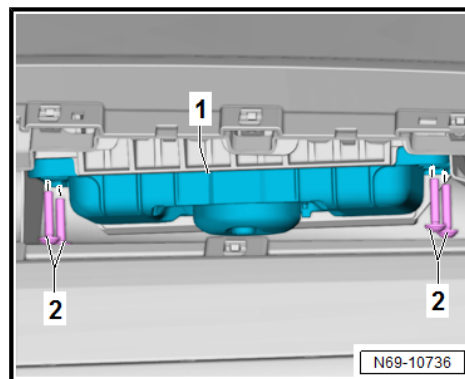


#### WARNING

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ➔ [page 3](#) .*

*Observe procedure for storage, transportation and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components) ➔ [page 5](#) .*

*Note allocation of airbag unit to dash panel ➔ [Electronic Parts Catalogue](#) .*



#### WARNING

*Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.*

- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ➔ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Finally, read and clear event memory of airbag control unit since faults may be stored as a result of disconnecting electrical connectors ➔ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

#### Specified torques

- ♦ ➔ [“4.1 Assembly overview - central tube for dash panel”, page 219](#)

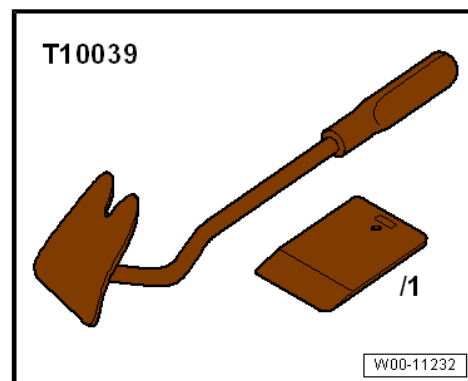
## 6.2 Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag

Special tools and workshop equipment required





◆ Release lever - T10039-

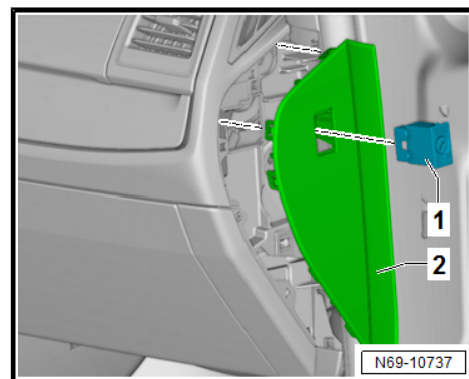


**Removing**

- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove right of dash panel end cover ⇒ [page 199](#) .
- Disconnect connector on key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag.
- Unclip key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag -1- from dash panel cover -2-.

**Installing**

- Installation is carried out in reverse order.
- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .





## 7 Side airbags



### WARNING

*If the vehicle has been converted by ABT e-Line, it is possible that the repair instructions provided below are no longer valid.*

- *In this case, please always refer to the repair instructions from ABT e-Line, available in ElsaPro in the tab "Superstructures and modifications".*

⇒ ["7.1 Removing and installing front side airbag with igniter", page 158](#)

### 7.1 Removing and installing front side airbag with igniter

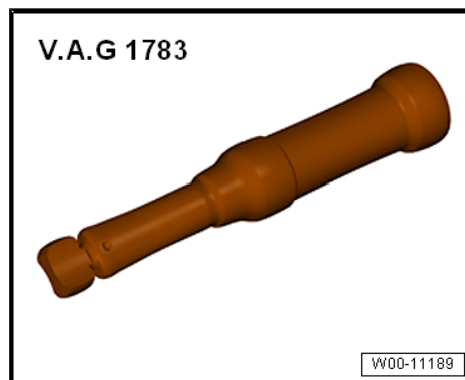
⇒ ["7.1.1 Removing and installing front side airbag with igniter, individual seats at front", page 158](#)

⇒ ["7.1.2 Removing and installing front side airbag with igniter, individual seat and double bench seat at front", page 160](#)

#### 7.1.1 Removing and installing front side airbag with igniter, individual seats at front

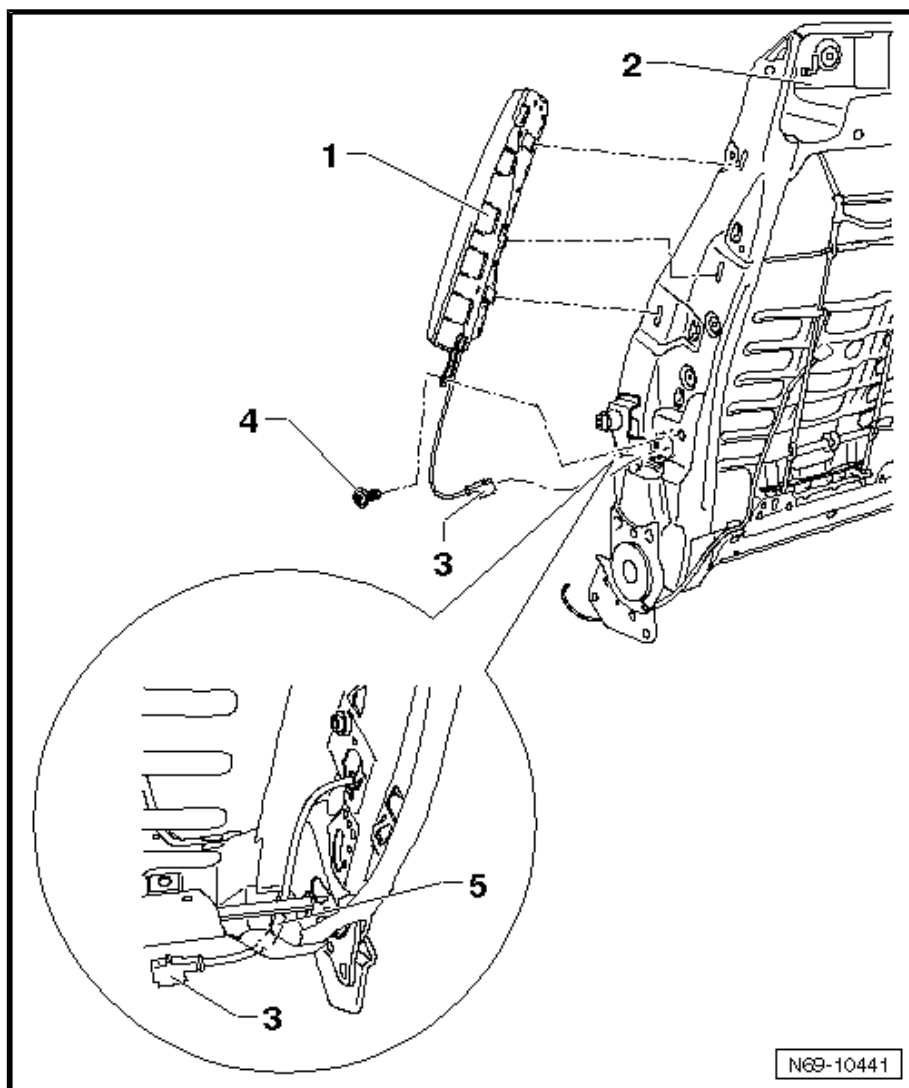
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the left front seat. Removal and installation for the right front seat is similar.*



#### Removing



#### WARNING

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*

*Observe procedure for storage, transportation and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components) ⇒ [page 5](#).*

*Observe additional safety regulations for side airbag ⇒ [page 5](#).*

- Switch on ignition.
- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove cover and padding from front seat backrest ⇒ [page 444](#) .
- Disconnect connector -3- below seat.
- Guide line -5- through backrest frame -2-.



- Unscrew bolt -4-.
- Carefully detach airbag unit -1- from backrest frame -2-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- First, engage side airbag on driver/front passenger side -1-.
- Then, screw in bolt -4-.



### Note

- ♦ *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*
- ♦ *Ensure that no wires are trapped.*



### WARNING

*Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.*

- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



### Note

*If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and then read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

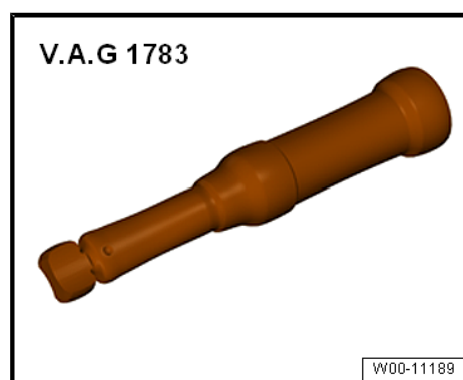
### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Side airbag, driver/front passenger	9 Nm

## 7.1.2 Removing and installing front side airbag with igniter, individual seat and double bench seat at front

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



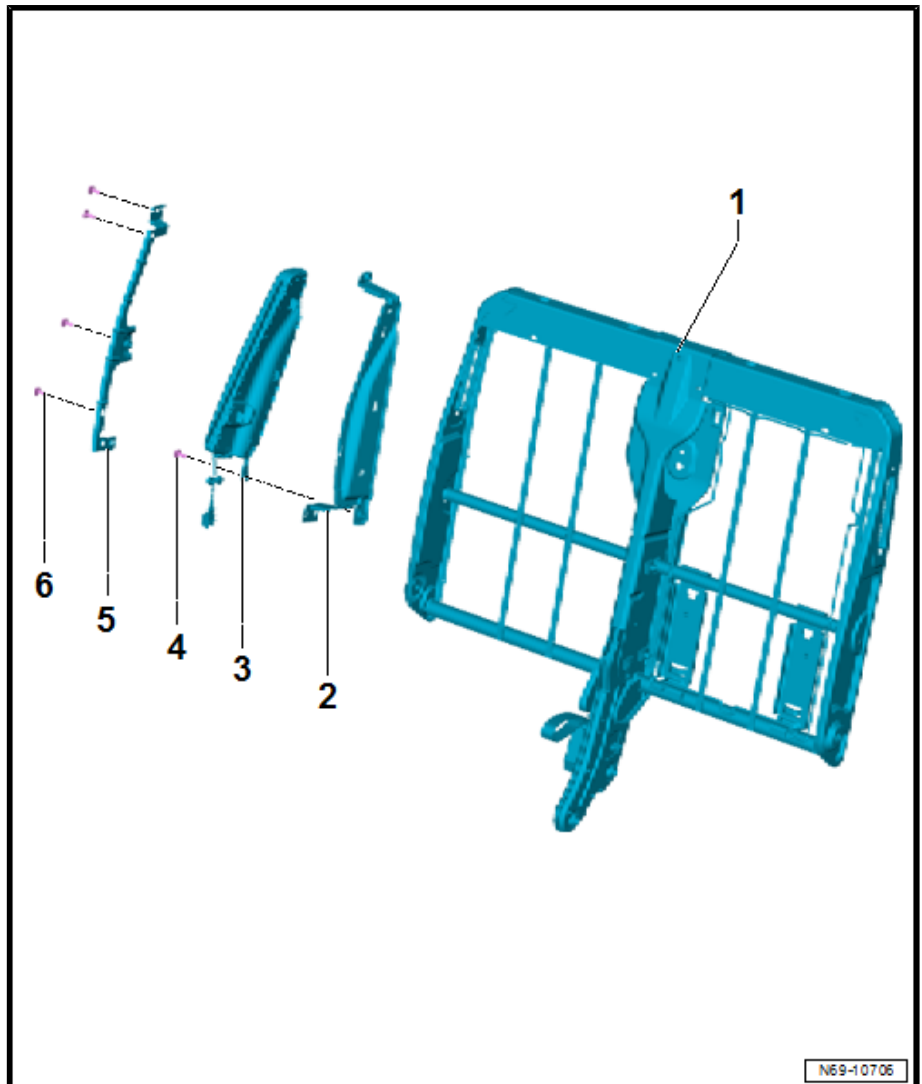


◆ Airbag adapter - VAS 6283-

**VAS 6283**



W00-12050



N69-10706



## Removing



### WARNING

*Observe safety measures when working with pyrotechnic components ➔ [page 3](#).*

*Observe procedure for storage, transportation and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components) ➔ [page 5](#).*

*Observe additional safety regulations for side airbag ➔ [page 5](#).*

- Switch on ignition.
- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ➔ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove backrest cover and padding for front double bench seat ➔ [page 444](#) .
- Disconnect wiring harnesses for side airbag.
- Fit airbag adapter - VAS 5232/1- onto plug-in connector of side airbag -3-.
- Detach wires from backrest frame -1-.
- Unscrew bolts -6- from backrest frame -1-.
- Remove side airbag -3- from edge protection -5-.
- Remove bracket -2- from backrest frame -1-.
- Unscrew bolt -4-.
- Remove side airbag -3- from bracket -2-.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



### Note

- ◆ *Ensure that the electrical connectors are pushed fully onto stop and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Ensure that no wires are trapped.*



### WARNING

*Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.*

- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ➔ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



**Note**

*If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and then read again  
⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Specified torques**

Component	Specified torque
Side airbag, double bench seat	9 Nm



## 8 Curtain airbags



### WARNING

*If the vehicle has been converted by ABT e-Line, it is possible that the repair instructions provided below are no longer valid.*

- *In this case, please always refer to the repair instructions from ABT e-Line, available in ElsaPro in the tab "Superstructures and modifications".*

⇒ ["8.1 Removing and installing curtain airbag with igniter", page 164](#)

### 8.1 Removing and installing curtain airbag with igniter

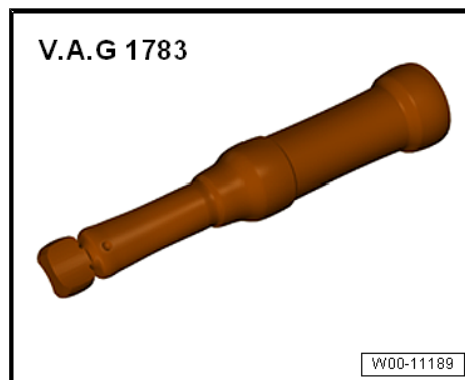
⇒ ["8.1.1 Removing and installing curtain airbag with igniter, front seat area", page 164](#)

⇒ ["8.1.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with igniter, passenger compartment", page 167](#)

#### 8.1.1 Removing and installing curtain airbag with igniter, front seat area

Special tools and workshop equipment required

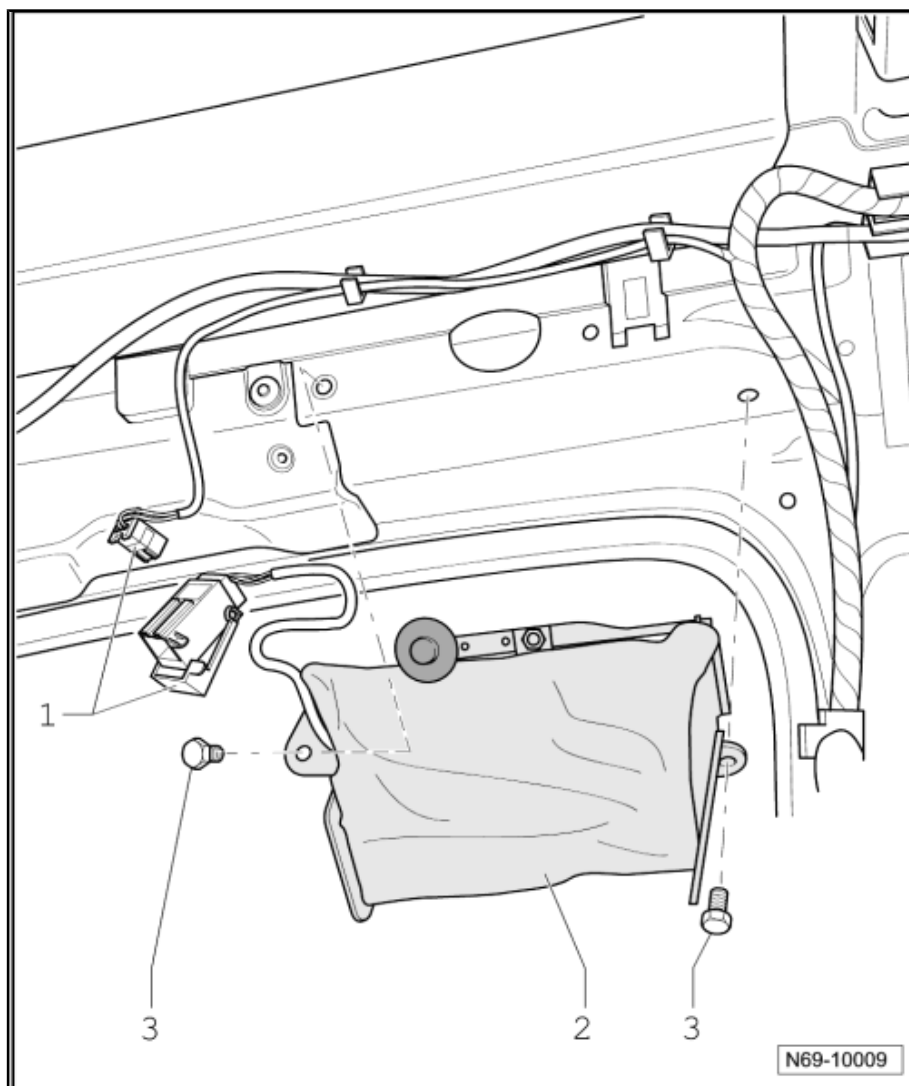
- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



### Note

*The removal and installation procedure is described for the right-hand side of the vehicle. Removal and installation of the left vehicle side is similar.*





## Removing



### WARNING

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*

*Observe procedure for storage, transportation and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components) ⇒ [page 5](#).*

*Observe special instructions for curtain airbag modules ⇒ [page 6](#).*

- Switch on ignition.
- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove centre interior lights ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .
- Remove rear interior lights ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .



- Remove grab handles on B-pillars.
- Remove upper B-pillar trims ⇒ [page 231](#) . The belt end fittings do not need to be removed.
- Remove retainer for net partition ⇒ [page 47](#) .
- Remove upper C-pillar trims ⇒ [page 237](#) .
- Remove upper D-pillar trims ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove roof end strip ⇒ [page 279](#) .
- Remove grab handles (roof) in centre and at rear ⇒ [page 50](#) .
- Remove moulded headliner in passenger compartment ⇒ [page 280](#) .
- Remove controls in roof console ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls on roof trim .
- Remove storage compartment in roof headliner ⇒ [page 36](#) .
- Remove sun visors ⇒ [page 48](#) .
- Remove light for vanity mirror ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing illuminated vanity mirror - W20- / -W14- .
- Remove grab handles on A-pillars.
- Remove A-pillar trims ⇒ [page 229](#) .
- Remove moulded headliner in driver area ⇒ [page 280](#) .



#### WARNING

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.*

- Disconnect connector -1- from airbag unit -2-.
- Unscrew bolts -3-, and carefully remove airbag unit -2- from vehicle.



#### Note

- ◆ Bolts -3- are micro-encapsulated. They must be renewed each time after loosening.
- ◆ Before new bolts are installed, the thread of the corresponding nut must be cleaned.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### WARNING

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*

*Observe procedure for storage, transportation and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components) ⇒ [page 5](#) .*

*Observe special instructions for curtain airbag modules ⇒ [page 6](#) .*



## WARNING

*Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.*

- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



## Note

*If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## Specified torques

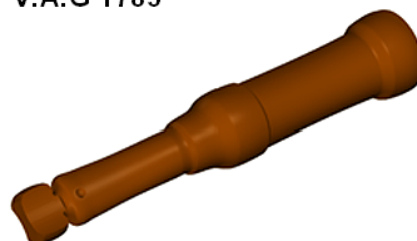
Component	Specified torque
Curtain airbag	8 Nm

## 8.1.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with igniter, passenger compartment

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

V.A.G 1783

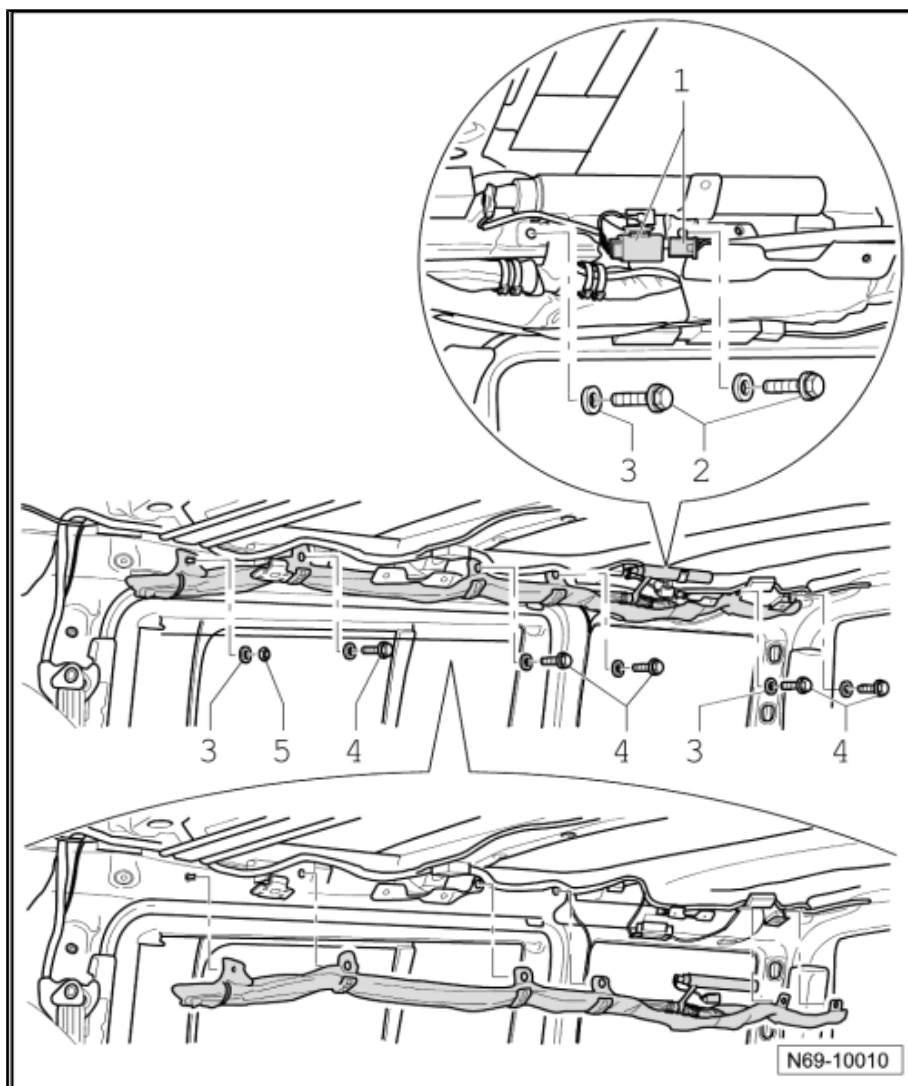


W00-11189



## Note

*The removal and installation procedure is described for the right-hand side of the vehicle. Removal and installation of the left vehicle side is similar.*



## Removing



### WARNING

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ➔ [page 3](#).*

*Observe procedure for storage, transportation and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components) ➔ [page 5](#).*

*Observe special instructions for curtain airbag modules ➔ [page 6](#).*

- Switch on ignition.
- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ➔ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove centre interior lights ➔ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .
- Remove rear interior lights ➔ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .



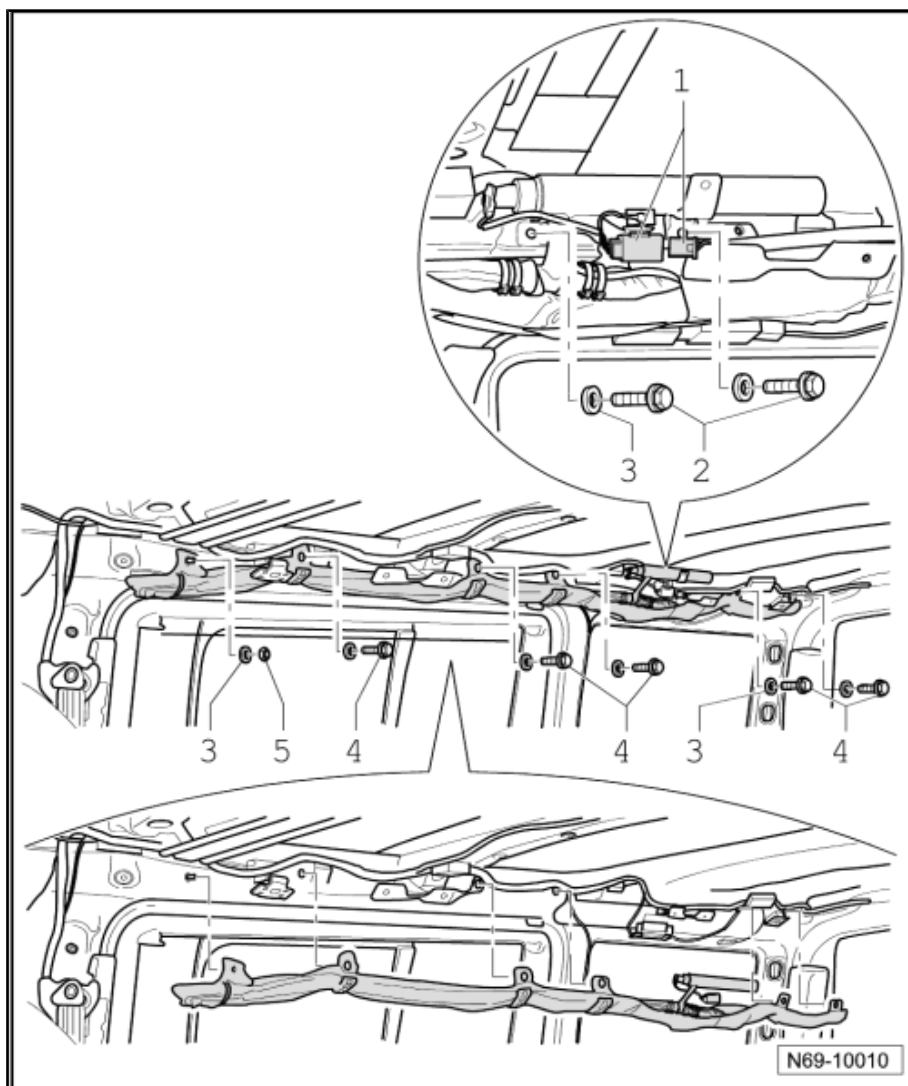
- Remove grab handles on B-pillars.
- Remove upper B-pillar trims ⇒ [page 231](#) . The belt end fittings do not need to be removed.
- Remove retainer for net partition ⇒ [page 47](#) .
- Remove upper C-pillar trims ⇒ [page 237](#) .
- Remove upper D-pillar trims ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove roof end strip ⇒ [page 279](#) .
- Remove grab handles (roof) in centre and at rear ⇒ [page 50](#) .
- Remove moulded headliner in passenger compartment ⇒ [page 280](#) .



#### WARNING

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. separating the electrical connector), the person handling them must ensure that he/she is "electrically discharged". To do this briefly touch, for example, the door striker plate.*

- Disconnect connector -1-.
- Unscrew nut -5- from stud, and remove washer -3-.
- Unscrew bolts -4-.
- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Detach all clips of curtain airbag from body.
- Remove curtain airbag from vehicle.



### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### WARNING

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ➔ [page 3](#).*

*Observe procedure for storage, transportation and disposal of airbag, belt tensioner and battery isolator units (pyrotechnic components) ➔ [page 5](#).*

*Observe special instructions for curtain airbag modules ➔ [page 6](#).*



#### Note

- ◆ The nut -5- is self-locking and must be renewed each time it is loosened.
- ◆ Bolts -2- and -4- are micro-encapsulated. They must be renewed each time after loosening.
- ◆ Before new bolts are installed, the thread of the corresponding nut must be cleaned.
- ◆ A washer -3- must be used with each screwed connection.



#### WARNING

**Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, seat belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they may be accidentally triggered after the battery is connected. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.**

- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



#### Note

*If airbag warning lamp - K75- indicates a fault following installation, event memory must be read, deleted and read again ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts -2-	8 Nm
Bolts -4-	5 Nm
Nut -5-	8 Nm



## 9 Airbag crash sensors



### WARNING

*If the vehicle has been converted by ABT e-Line, it is possible that the repair instructions provided below are no longer valid.*

- *In this case, please always refer to the repair instructions from ABT e-Line, available in ElsaPro in the tab "Superstructures and modifications".*

⇒ "9.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag crash sensors", page 172

⇒ "9.2 Removing and installing side airbag crash sensors on driver side G179 / G180", page 173

⇒ "9.3 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensors on driver side G256 / G257", page 174

### 9.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag crash sensors

#### 1 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G179- / -G180-

- ❑ Installed under chrome strip of front left and front right doors
- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 173](#)

#### 2 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm

#### 3 - Rear side airbag crash sensor, driver side - G256-

- ❑ Fitting location: on rear wheel housing
- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 174](#)

#### 4 - Bolt

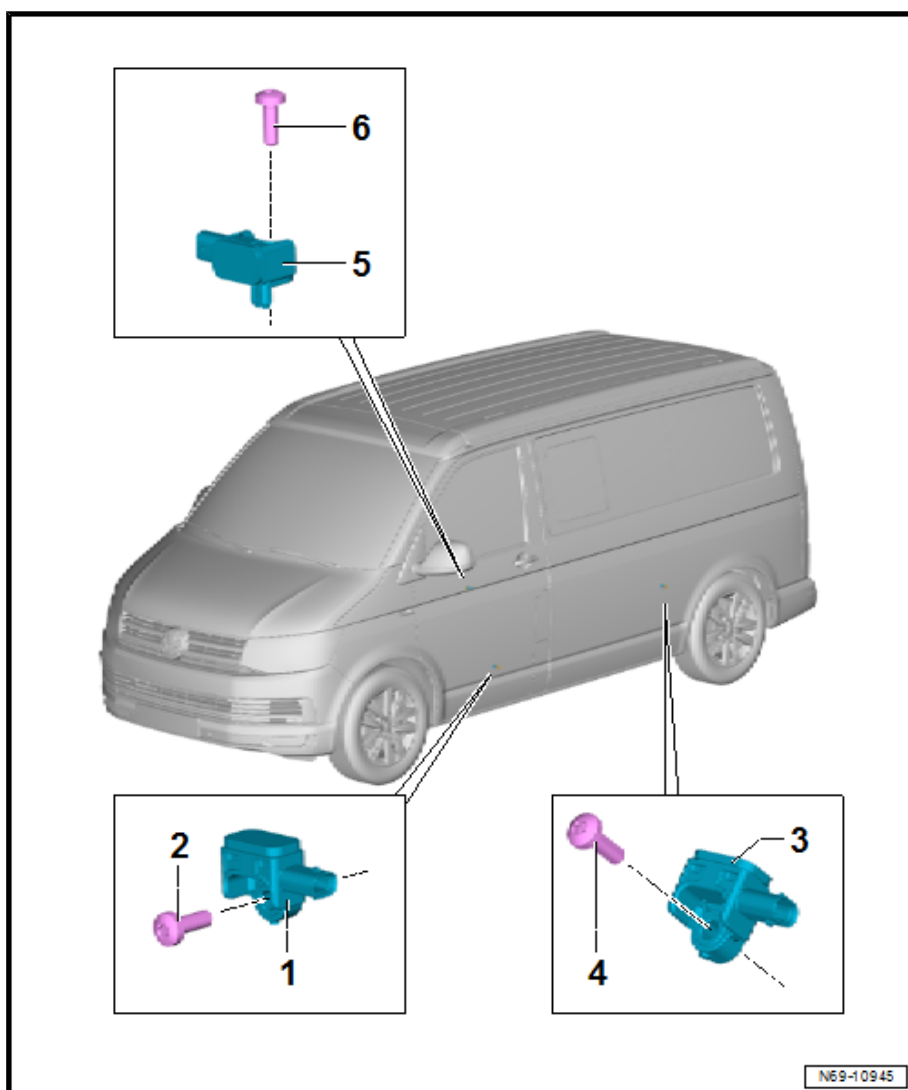
- ❑ 9 Nm

#### 5 - Rear side airbag crash sensor, front passenger side - G257-

- ❑ Fitting location: under chrome strip of sliding door
- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 174](#)

#### 6 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm



N69-1 0945

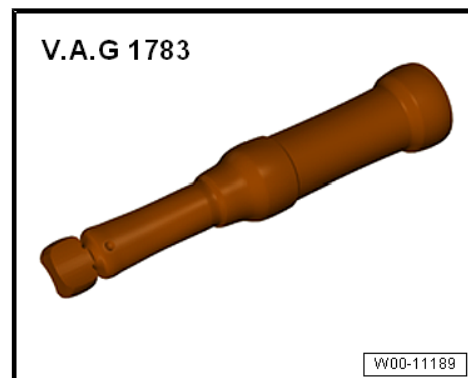




## 9.2 Removing and installing side airbag crash sensors on driver side - G179- / - G180-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



### Removing

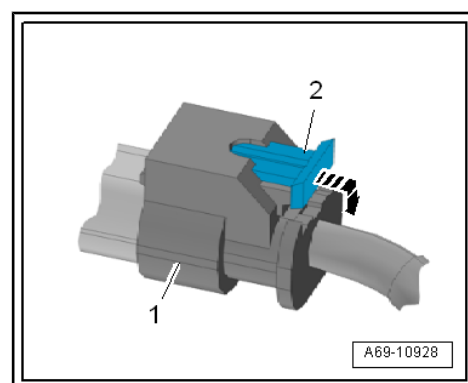


#### Caution

*Pyrotechnic components can trigger unintentionally.*

*Discharge any static electricity in body by briefly touching door striker plate.*

- Switch on ignition.
- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove rear left sill panel moulding ⇒ [page 224](#) .
- Release locking mechanism -2- on connector -1- in direction of -arrow-.

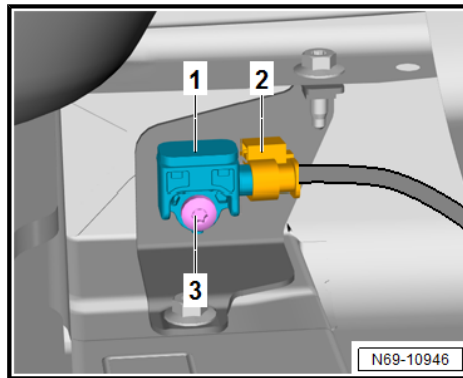




- Disconnect connector -2-.
- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Detach side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G179- -1-.
- Disconnect connector -2-.

#### Installing

- Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:
- Switch on ignition.
- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



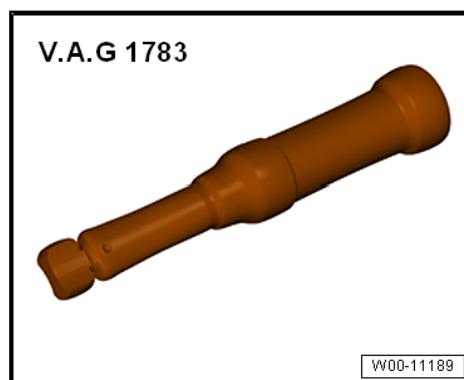
#### Specified torques

- ♦ ⇒ [“9.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag crash sensors”, page 172](#)

### 9.3 Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensors on driver side - G256- / - G257-

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



#### Removing



#### Caution

*Pyrotechnic components can trigger unintentionally.*

*Discharge any static electricity in body by briefly touching door striker plate.*

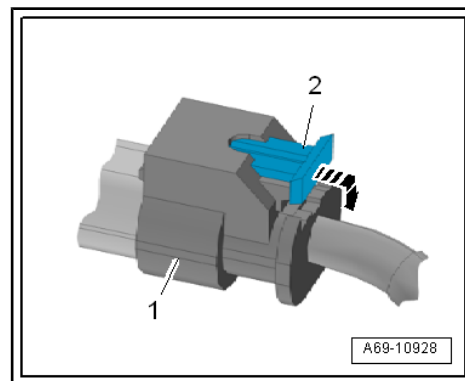
- Switch on ignition.
- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

#### Removing rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G256-

- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 259](#) .



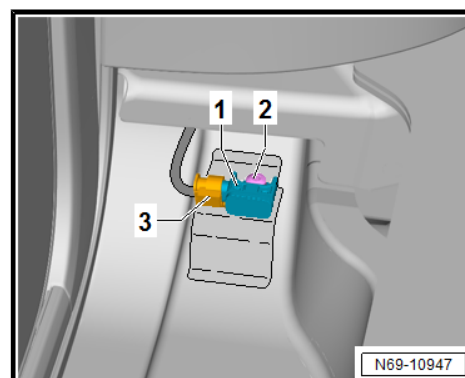
- Release locking mechanism -2- on connector -1- in direction of -arrow-.



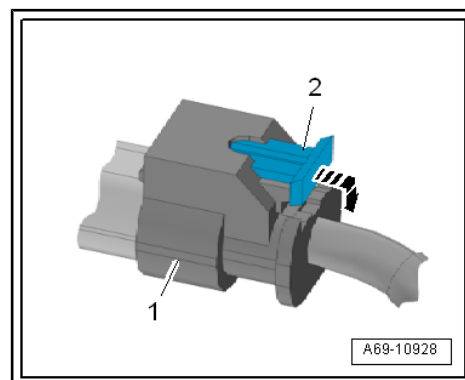
- Disconnect connector -3-.
- Unscrew bolt -2-.
- Detach rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side - G256- -1-.

#### Removing rear side airbag crash sensor on passenger side - G257-

- Remove rear right sill panel moulding ⇒ [page 224](#) .



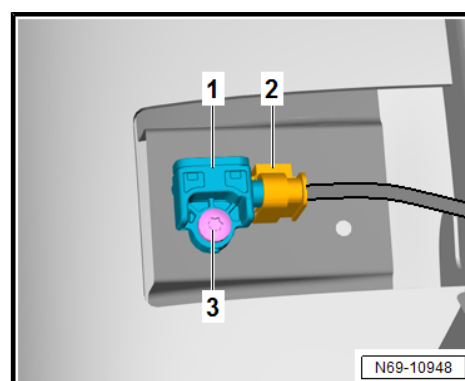
- Release locking mechanism -2- on connector -1- in direction of -arrow-.



- Disconnect connector -2-.
- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Detach rear side airbag crash sensor on passenger side - G257- -1-.

#### Installing

- Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:
- Switch on ignition.
- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



#### Specified torques

- ♦ ⇒ ["9.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag crash sensors", page 172](#)

## 70 – Trim, insulation

### 1 Front door trims

⇒ [“1.1 Assembly overview - front door trim”, page 176](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Removing and installing front door trim”, page 176](#)

#### 1.1 Assembly overview - front door trim

1 - Handle recess with trim

2 - Switch unit for window regulators and electric exterior mirrors

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ Electrical system;  
Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls;  
Removing and installing  
operating unit for win-  
dow regulator in driver  
door - E512- .
- ❑ On vehicles without  
switch unit, a trim is in-  
stalled instead

3 - Bolts for upper door trim

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

4 - Door trim

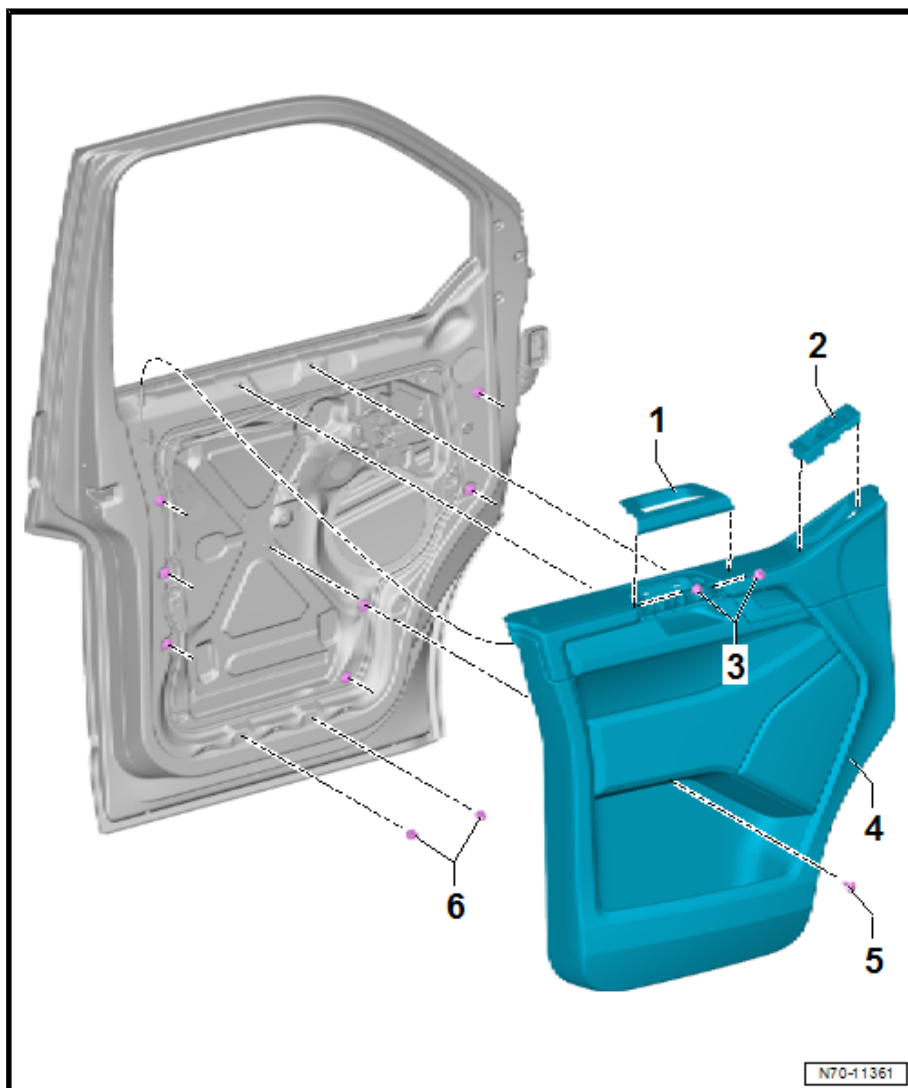
- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 176](#)

5 - Bolt for centre door trim

- ❑ 4.5 Nm

6 - Lower securing clip

- ❑ Qty. 2

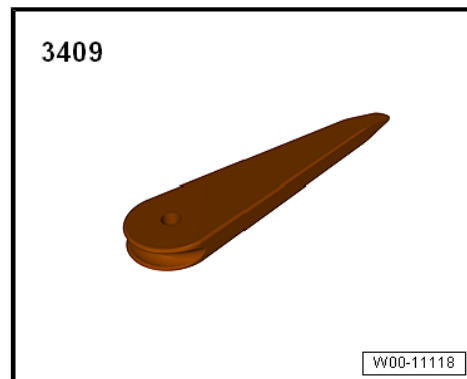


#### 1.2 Removing and installing front door trim

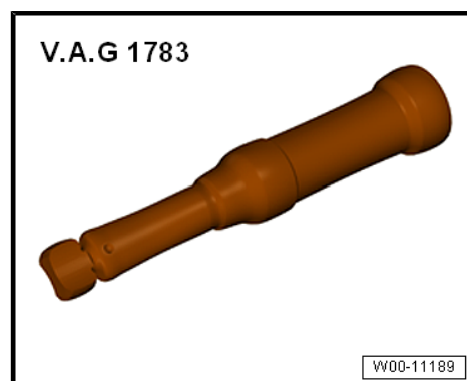
Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



## Removing



### Note

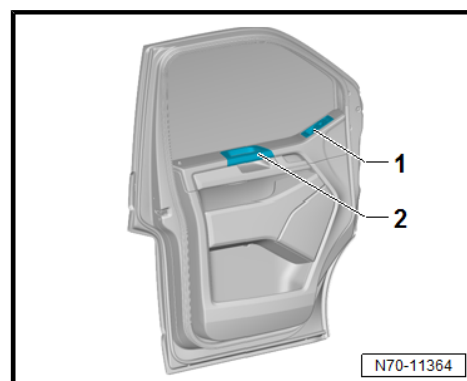
*Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. The removal and installation of the right side of the vehicle is similar.*

- Switch off ignition.
- Lever trim -2- out of door panel using removal wedge - 3409- .

### Vehicles with window regulators and/or electric exterior mirrors

- Remove operating unit -1- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing operating unit for window regulator in driver door - E512- .

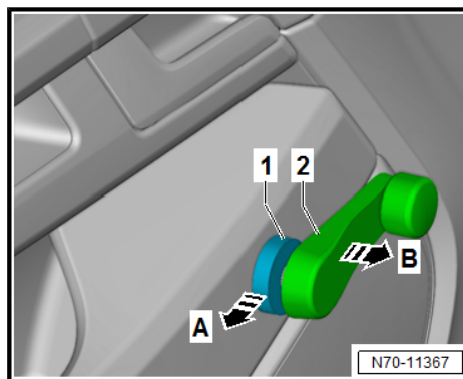
### Vehicles with manual window regulators



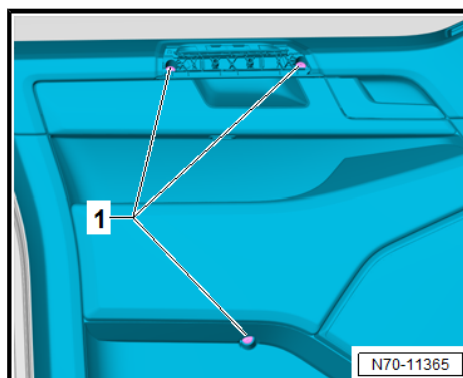


- Unclip securing clip -1- in -direction of arrow A-.
- Pull off window winder -2- in -direction of arrow B-.

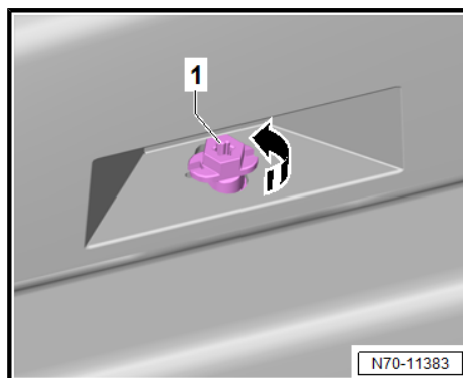
#### Continuation for all vehicles



- Unscrew bolts -1-.



- Turn the 2 securing clips -1- 90° in -direction of arrow-.
- Using wedge - T10039/1- , lever door trim out of mountings in vicinity of fastening elements.
- Pull door trim at bottom out of securing clips.
- Lift door trim vertically upwards, and detach door trim from door.
- Disconnect connectors of any controls on inside of door trim.
- Pull catch of Bowden cable outwards in -direction of arrow A-.



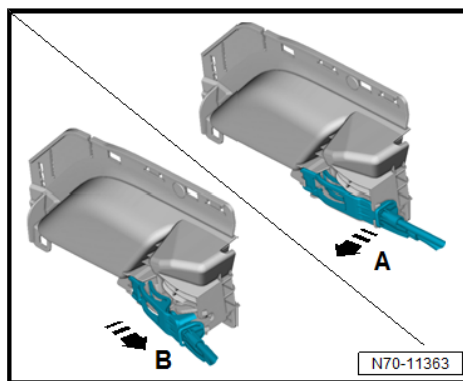
- Pull Bowden cable in -direction of arrow B- out of interior door handle.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, disconnect connectors from electrical components.
- Detach wiring harnesses from inner side of door trim.
- Remove door trim.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

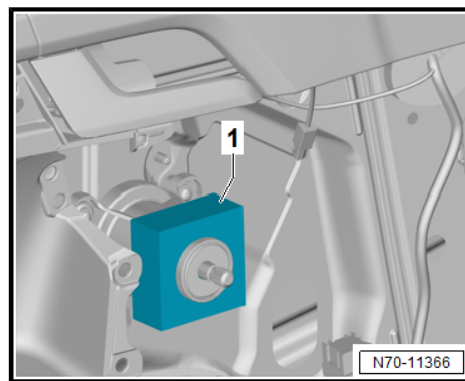
- Before installing, check retaining clips and add-on parts for damage and renew if necessary.

#### Vehicles with manual window regulators





- Fit padding for window winder -1- onto window regulator shaft before installing door trim.

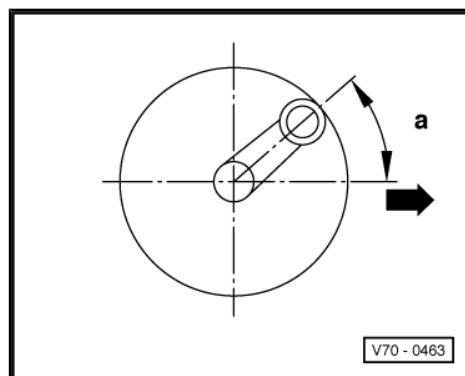


- Clip window crank onto window lifter drive in locked position.
- After being installed, window winder must be in the position shown with the window closed.



#### Note

- ◆ *The illustration shows the left-hand window winder (right-hand window winder is a mirror image).*
- ◆ *-Arrow- points forwards.*



Installation position with window closed: angle -a- =  $45^\circ \pm 12^\circ$

Continuation for all vehicles

#### Specified torques

- ◆ [⇒ "1.1 Assembly overview - front door trim", page 176](#)



## 2 Rear door trims

⇒ [“2.1 Assembly overview - rear door trim”, page 180](#)

⇒ [“2.2 Assembly overview - sun blind for door window”, page 186](#)

⇒ [“2.3 Removing and installing rear door trim”, page 186](#)

⇒ [“2.4 Removing and installing sun blind for door window”, page 195](#)

### 2.1 Assembly overview - rear door trim

⇒ [“2.1.1 Assembly overview - rear door trim, California, bottom of sliding door”, page 180](#)

⇒ [“2.1.2 Assembly overview - rear door trim, Multivan, top of sliding door”, page 182](#)

⇒ [“2.1.3 Assembly overview - rear door trim, Multivan, bottom of sliding door”, page 183](#)

⇒ [“2.1.4 Assembly overview - rear door trim, Transporter, sliding door with long hardboard-type trim”, page 184](#)

⇒ [“2.1.5 Assembly overview - rear door trim, Transporter, sliding door with short centre hardboard-type trim”, page 185](#)

⇒ [“2.1.6 Assembly overview - rear door trim, Transporter, high sliding door with short upper hardboard panel”, page 186](#)

#### 2.1.1 Assembly overview - rear door trim, California, bottom of sliding door





**1 - Sliding door**

**2 - Cover**

- ☐ For door adjuster

**3 - Bolts**

- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

**4 - Sliding door trim**

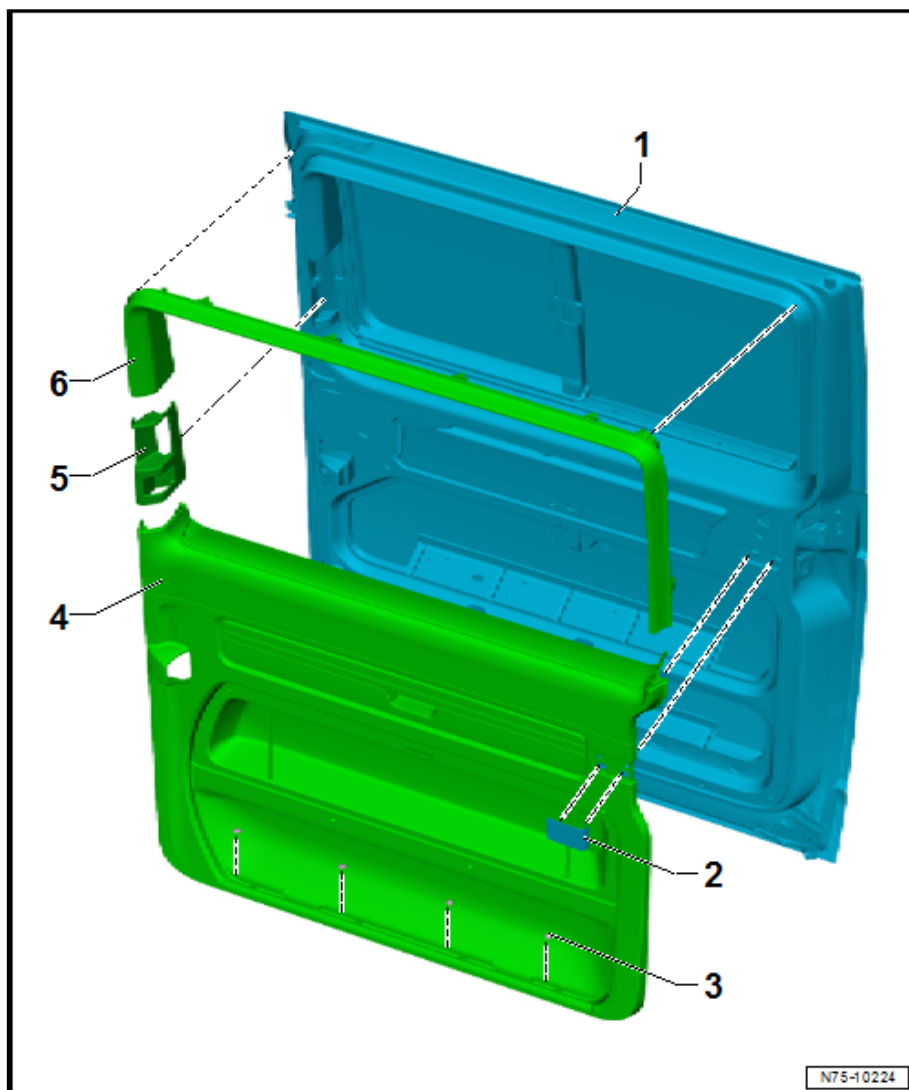
- ☐ Removing and installing

**5 - Trim for interior door handle**

- ☐ Removing and installing

**6 - Window frame trim**

- ☐ Removing and installing





## 2.1.2 Assembly overview - rear door trim, Multivan, top of sliding door

### 1 - Upper sliding door trim

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 186](#)

### 2 - Interior door handle

### 3 - Bolt

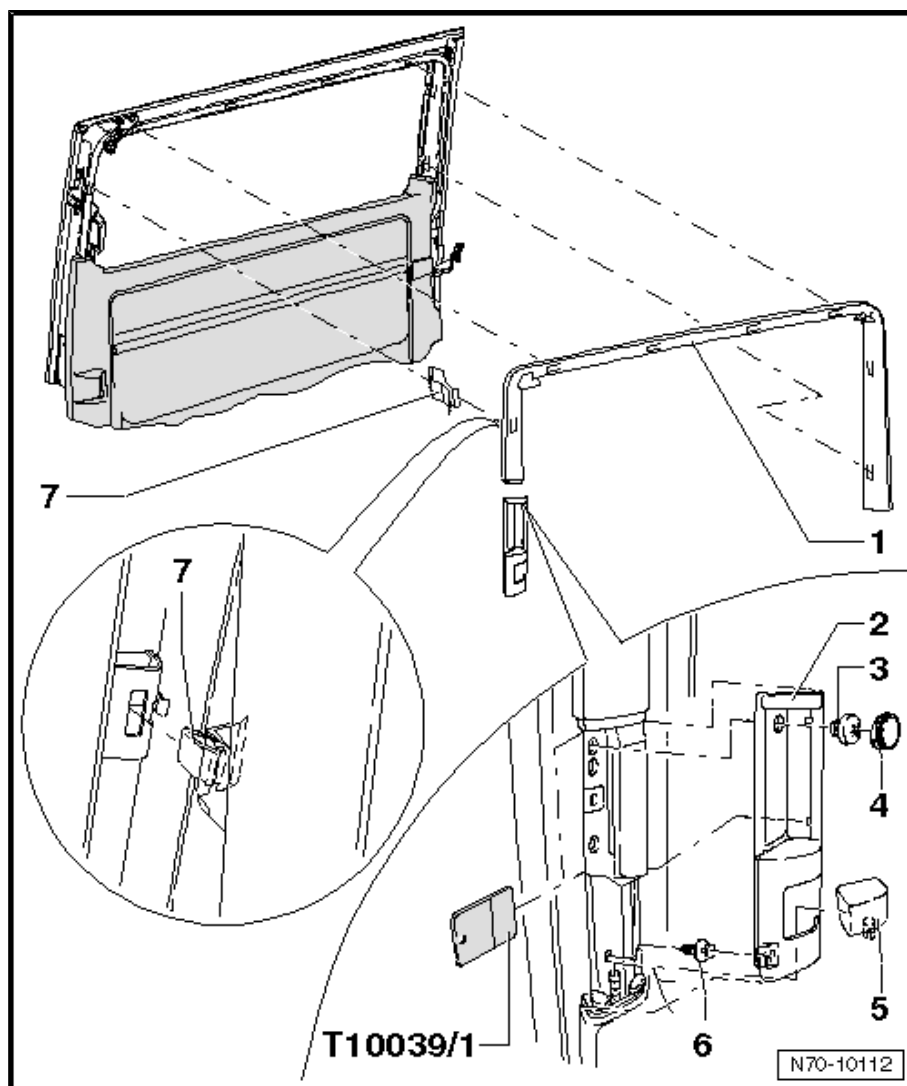
- ❑ 2.0 Nm

### 4 - Cover

### 5 - Lock button

### 6 - Fastener

### 7 - Retaining clips



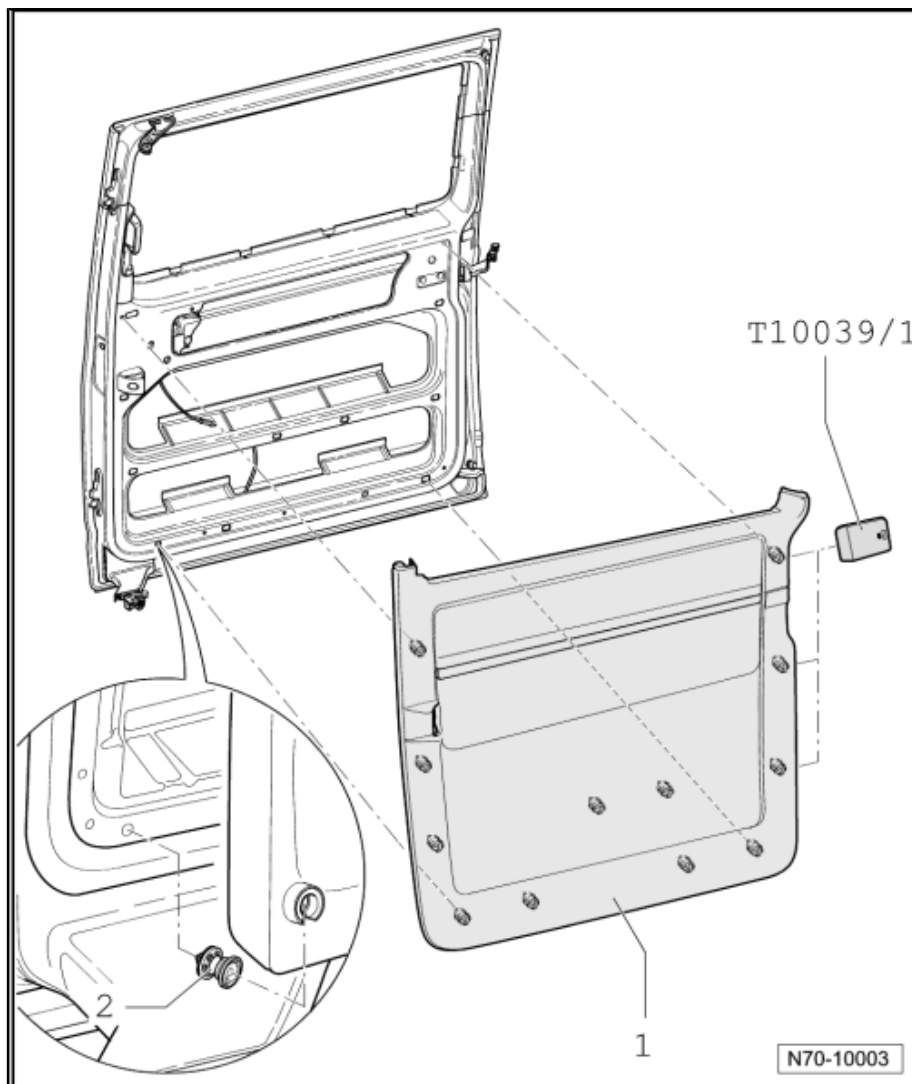


## 2.1.3 Assembly overview - rear door trim, Multivan, bottom of sliding door

### 1 - Lower sliding door trim

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 186](#)
- ❑ Removing and installing  
sliding door bottom trim  
panel for vehicles with  
camper table ⇒ General  
body repairs, California;  
Rep. gr. 75 ; Interior  
trim; Removing and in-  
stalling sliding door trim

### 2 - Fastener





## 2.1.4 Assembly overview - rear door trim, Transporter, sliding door with long hardboard-type trim

### 1 - Sliding door

### 2 - Securing bracket

- ☐ For securing upper trim  
-4- on sliding door
- ☐ Qty. 10

### 3 - Pop rivets

- ☐ For attaching securing  
bracket -2-
- ☐ Qty. 10
- ☐ Insert using pop rivet pli-  
ers - VAS 5072-

### 4 - Sliding door upper trim

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 186](#)

### 5 - Sliding door lower trim

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 186](#)

### 6 - Cover

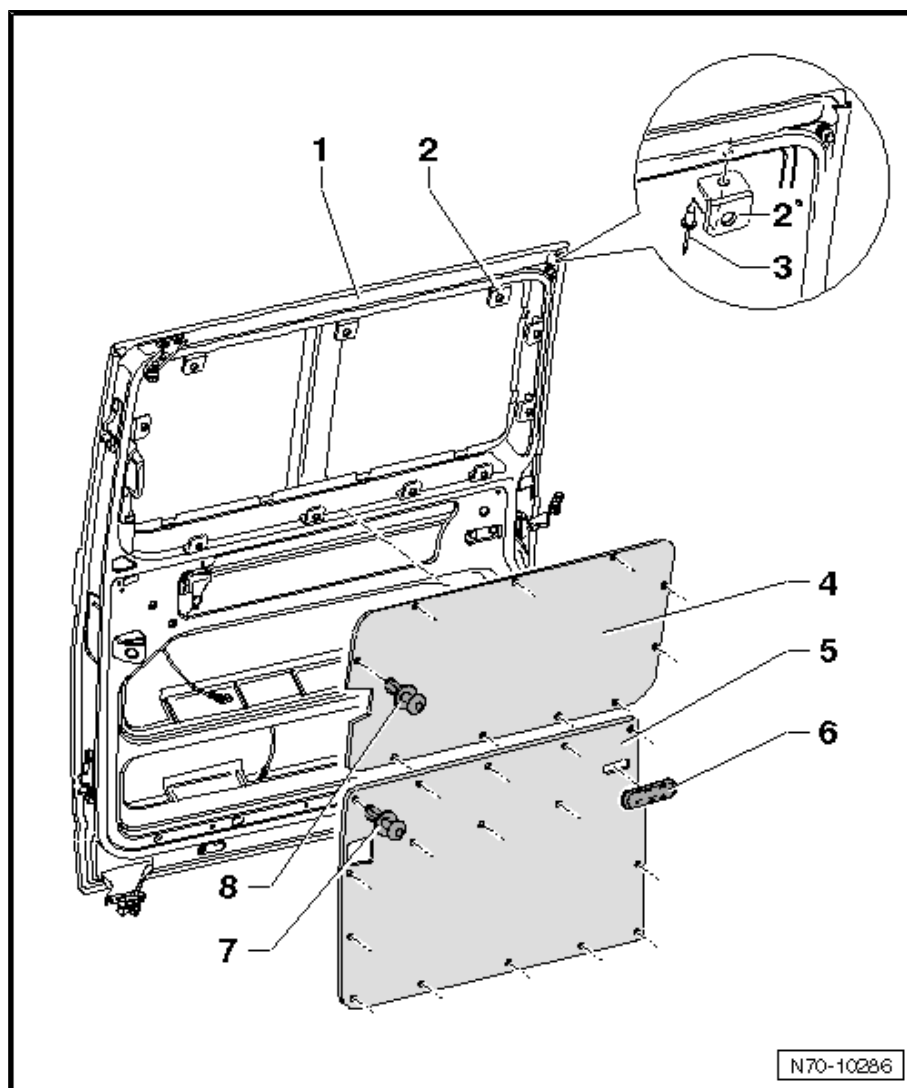
- ☐ For bolts on hinge
- ☐ Clipped into lower trim  
of sliding door -5-

### 7 - Clip

- ☐ For securing lower trim  
-5- on sliding door
- ☐ Qty. 16

### 8 - Clip

- ☐ For securing upper trim  
-4- on sliding door
- ☐ Qty. 10





## 2.1.5 Assembly overview - rear door trim, Transporter, sliding door with short centre hardboard-type trim

### 1 - Sliding door trim

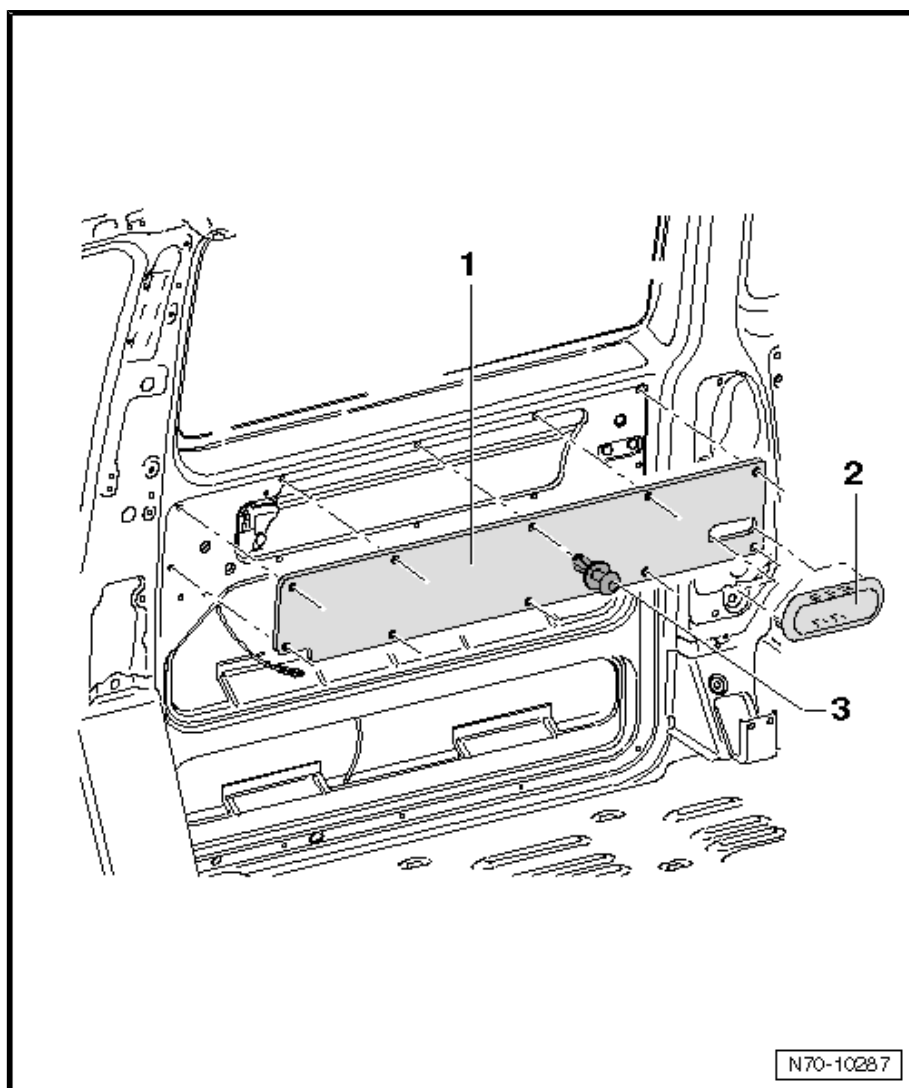
- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 186](#)

### 2 - Cover

- ❑ For bolts on hinge
- ❑ Clipped into trim of sliding door -1-

### 3 - Clip

- ❑ For securing trim -1- on sliding door
- ❑ Qty. 10





## 2.1.6 Assembly overview - rear door trim, Transporter, high sliding door with short upper hardboard panel

1 - High sliding door

2 - Sliding door trim

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 186](#)

3 - Clip

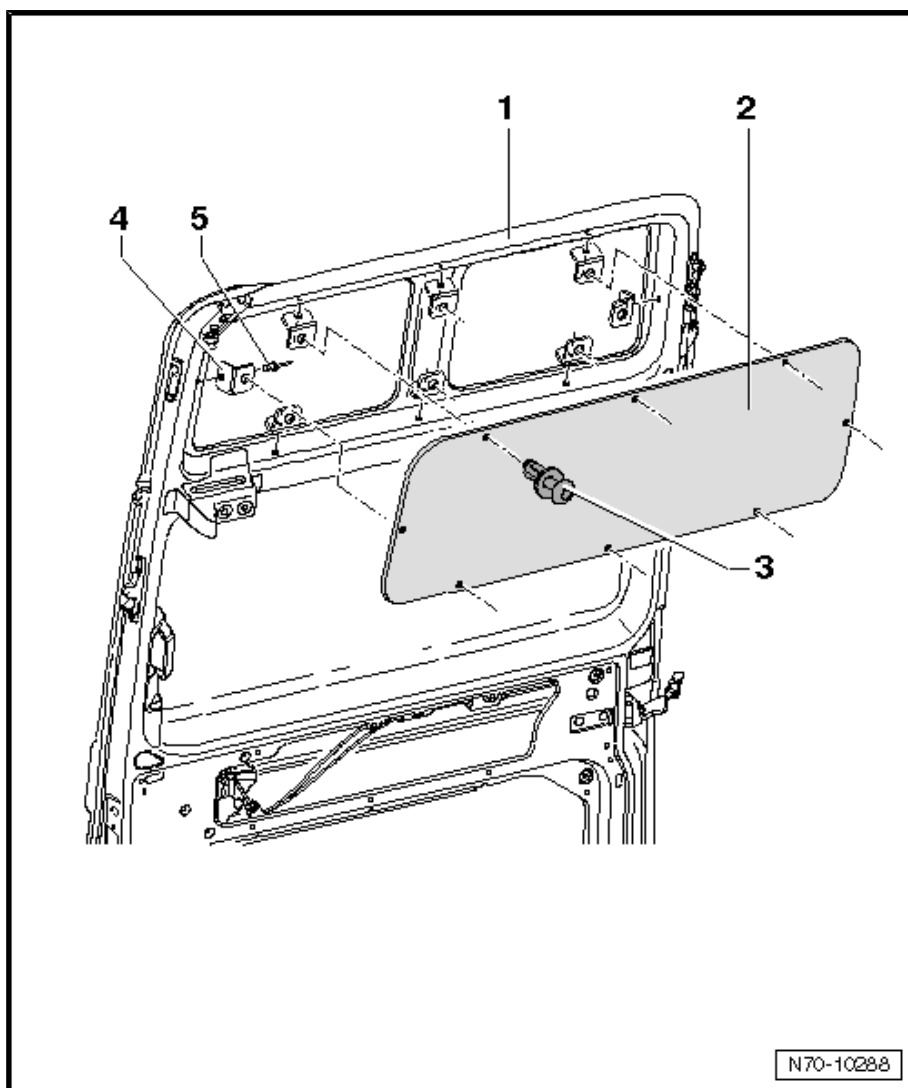
- ❑ For securing trim -1- on sliding door
- ❑ Qty. 8

4 - Securing bracket

- ❑ For securing trim -1- on sliding door
- ❑ Qty. 8

5 - Pop rivets

- ❑ For attaching securing bracket -4-
- ❑ Qty. 8
- ❑ Insert using pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072-



## 2.2 Assembly overview - sun blind for door window

There is no difference between the assembly overview for the door window sun blind and the assembly overview for the sun blind ⇒ [page 47](#) .

## 2.3 Removing and installing rear door trim



⇒ [“2.3.2 Removing and installing rear door trim, sliding door, Multivan, top of sliding door”, page 189](#)

⇒ [“2.3.3 Removing and installing rear door trim, sliding door, Multivan, bottom of sliding door”, page 191](#)

⇒ [“2.3.4 Removing and installing rear door trim, sliding door, Transporter, bottom of sliding door, sliding door with long hardboard-type trim”, page 192](#)

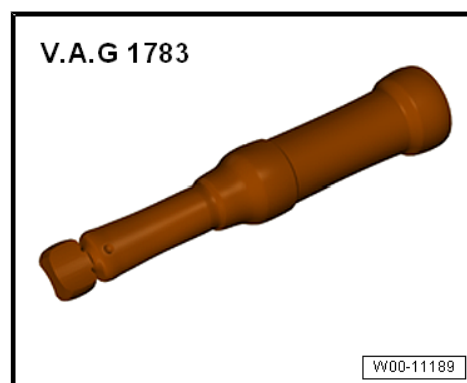
⇒ [“2.3.5 Removing and installing rear door trim, sliding door, Transporter, bottom of sliding door, sliding door with short hardboard-type trim”, page 194](#)

⇒ [“2.3.6 Removing and installing rear door trim, sliding door, Transporter, high sliding door with short upper hardboard panel”, page 195](#)

## 2.3.1 Removing and installing rear door trim, California, bottom of sliding door

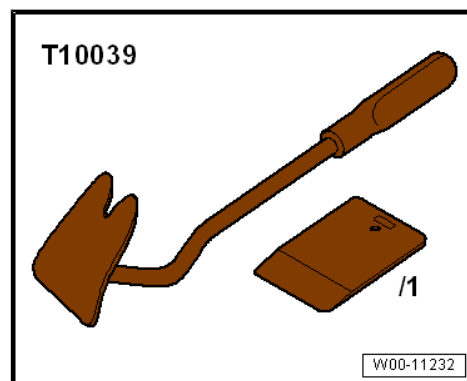
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

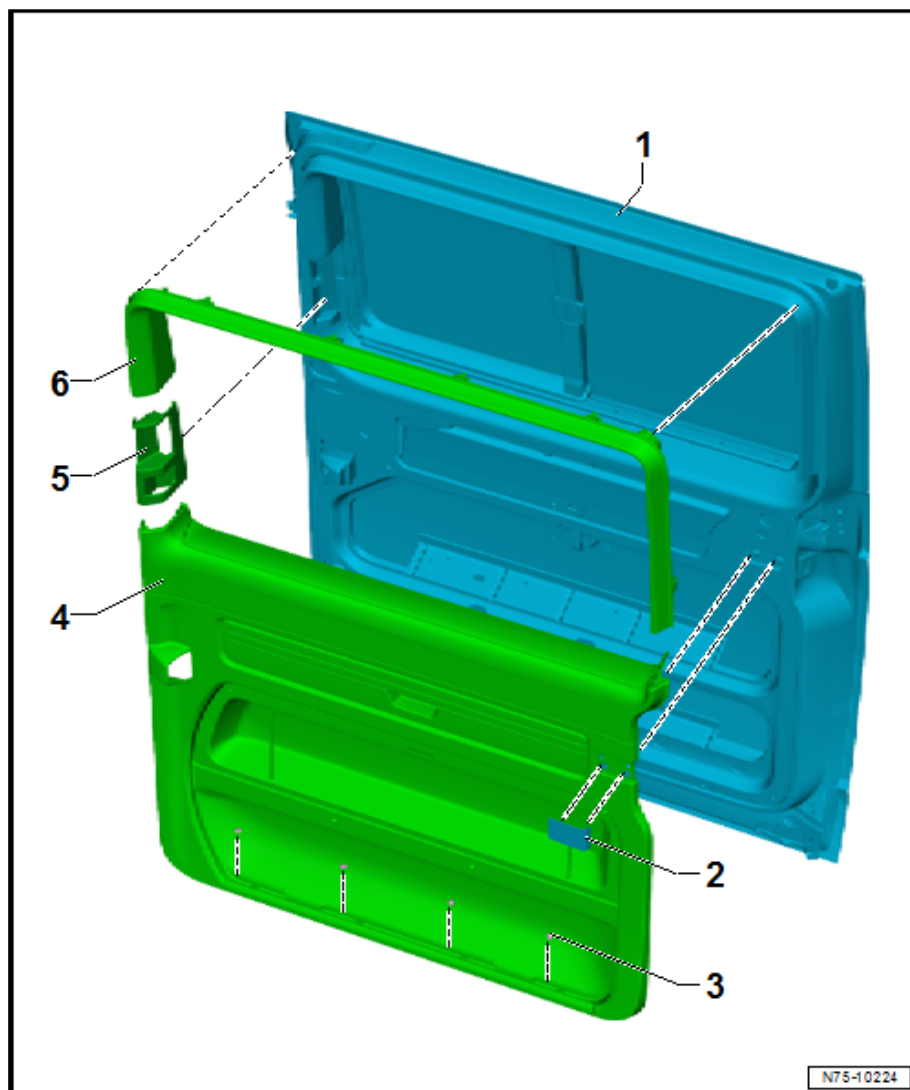


Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-



### Removing



- Starting at the sides and working from the outside towards the inside, unclip window frame trim -6-.
- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- Unclip trim for interior door handle -5-.
- Unclip cap -2-.
- Using wedge - T10039/1- , unclip sliding door trim -4- from sliding door -1-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

*Before installing, check clips for damage, and renew them if necessary.*

#### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ ["2.1.1 Assembly overview - rear door trim, California, bottom of sliding door", page 180](#)

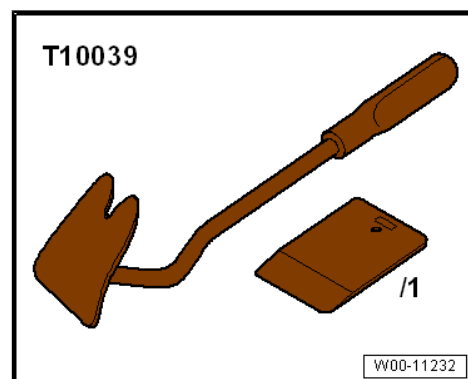




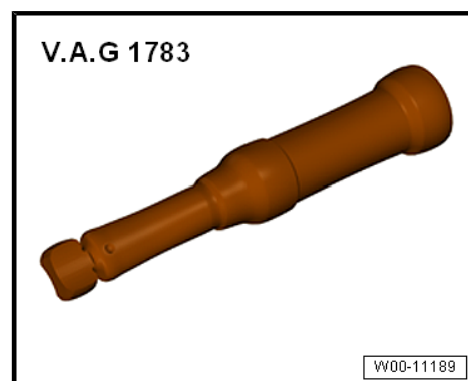
## 2.3.2 Removing and installing rear door trim, sliding door, Multivan, top of sliding door

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-

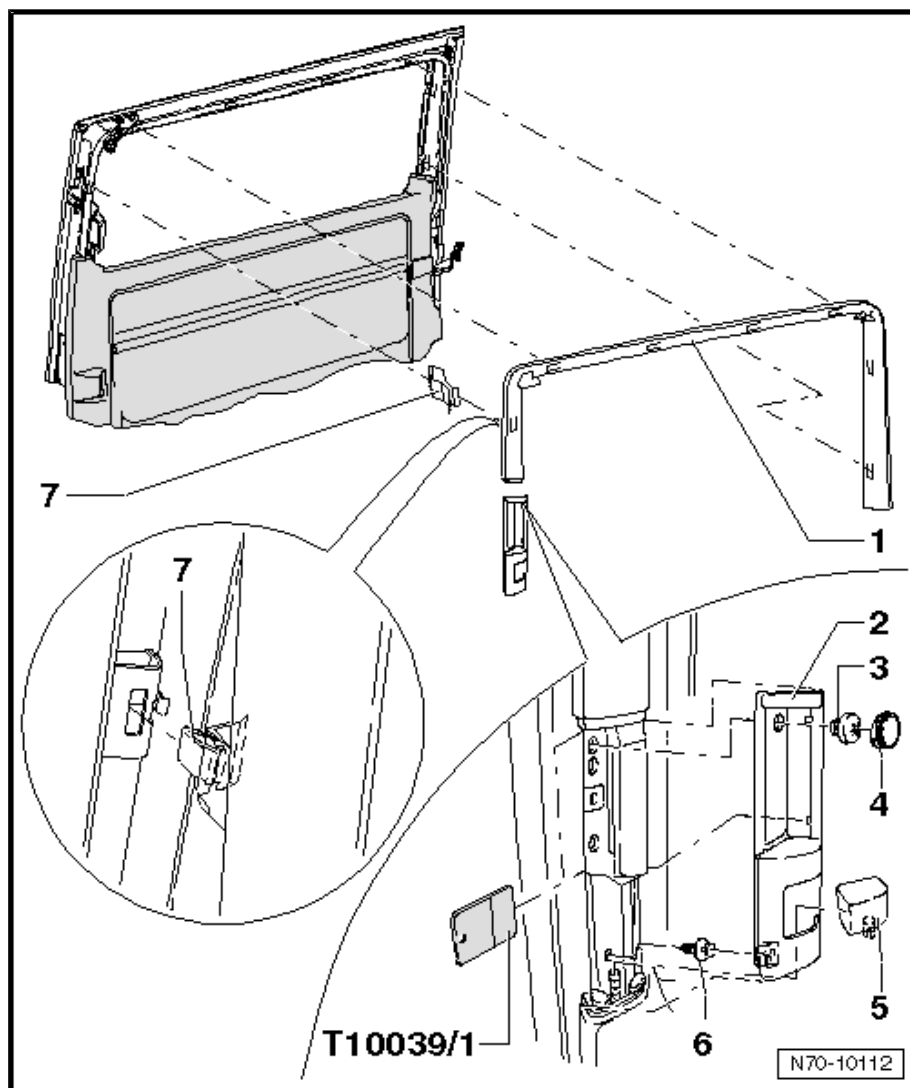


- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



### Note

*Removal and installation of trim are described for the right sliding door. Removal and installation of trim for the left sliding door are similar.*



### Removing

- Switch off ignition.
- Pull off button -5- for catch upwards.
- Using a small screwdriver, lever cap -4- out of door handle trim -2-.
- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Using wedge - T10039/1 -, lever door handle trim out of mountings, starting at top, and remove trim upwards.
- Starting at the sides, pull off trim -1- inwards.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check retaining clips -7- and clip -6- for damage and renew if necessary.

### Specified torques

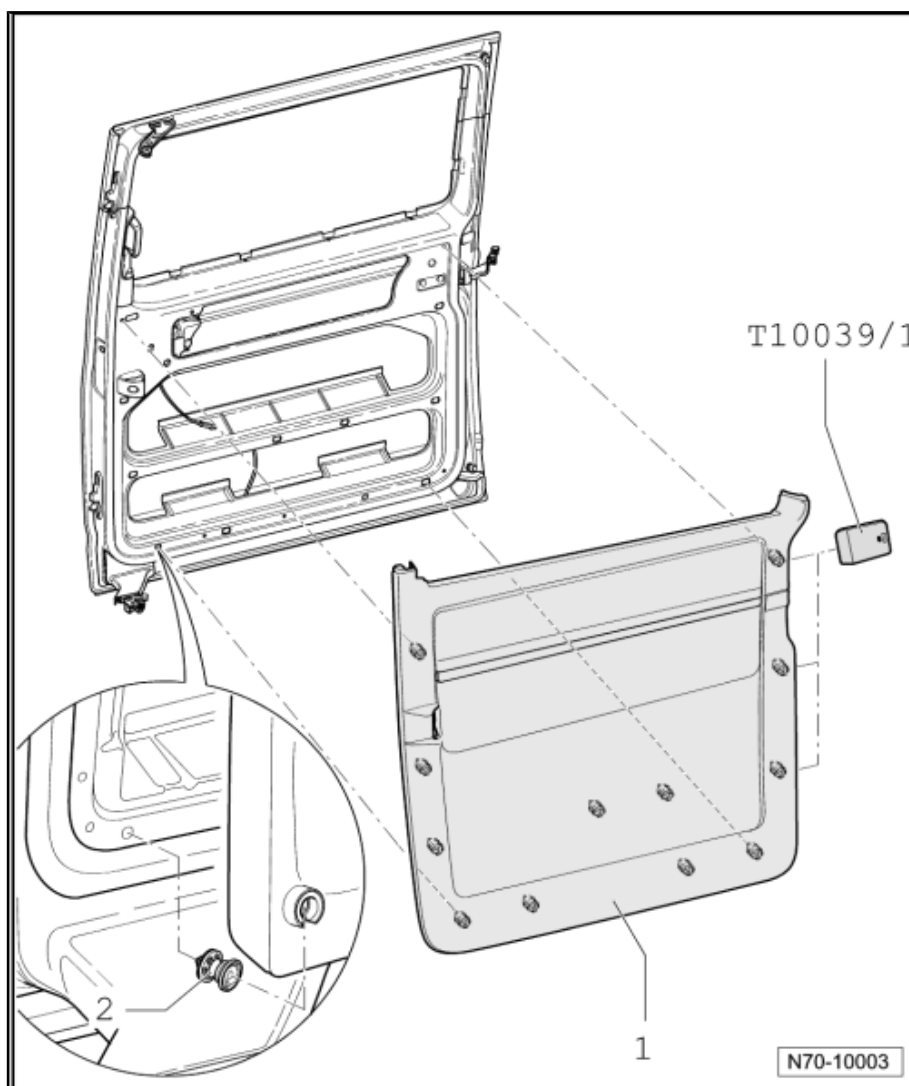
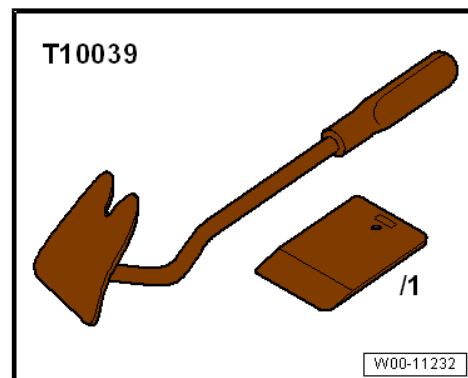
- ♦ ➔ [“2.1 Assembly overview - rear door trim”, page 180](#)



### 2.3.3 Removing and installing rear door trim, sliding door, Multivan, bottom of sliding door

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-





## Removing



### Note

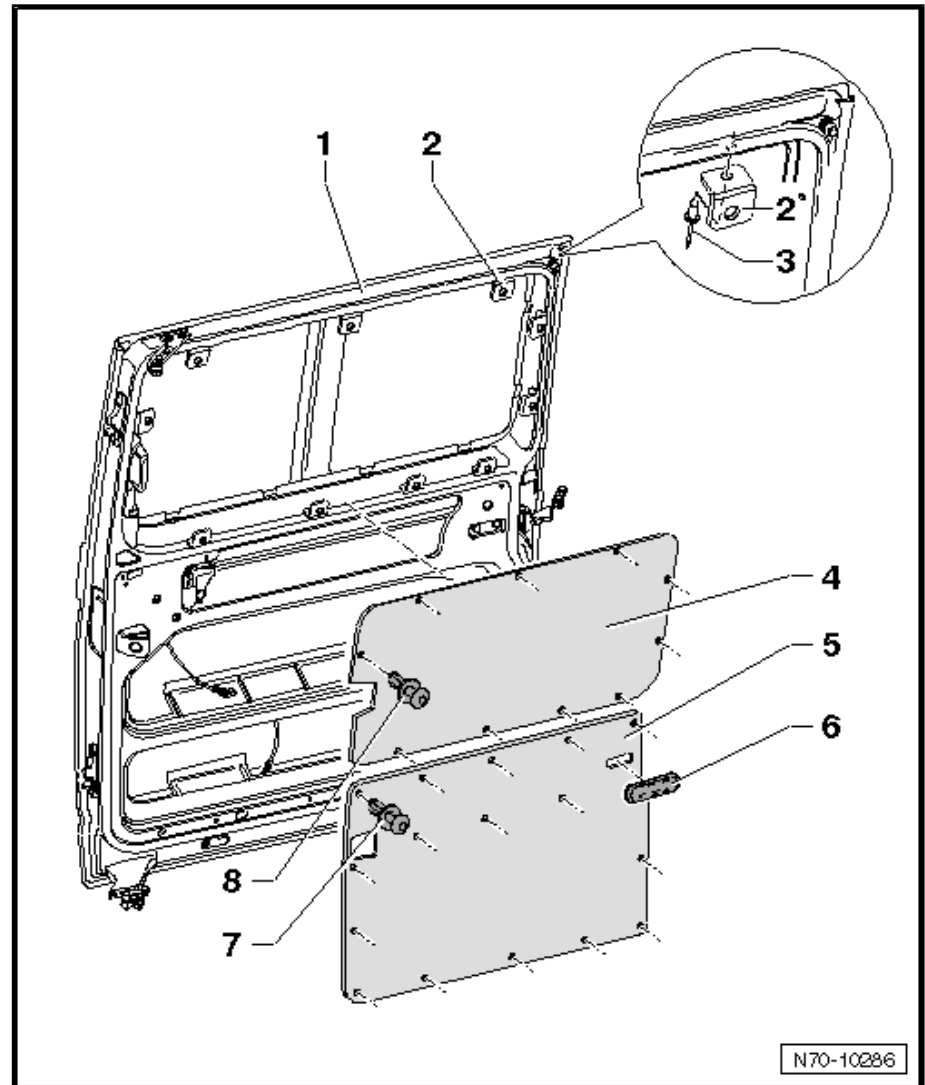
- ◆ *Removal and installation of trim are described for the right sliding door. Removal and installation of trim for the left sliding door are similar.*
- ◆ *Various versions of buttons for deactivating the sliding door with electrical controls are possible.*
- ◆ *The sliding door with electrical controls will not open as easily once deactivated.*
- Deactivate electrical controls of sliding door by pressing button in dash panel.
- Open sliding door as far as possible until trim -1- is freely accessible.
- Detach upper sliding door trim at front and rear.
- Using wedge - T10039/1- , lever out trim -1- at mounting points, starting at bottom.
- Remove trim -1- inwards from mountings.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check retaining clips -2- for damage and renew if necessary.

### 2.3.4 Removing and installing rear door trim, sliding door, Transporter, bottom of sliding door, sliding door with long hardboard-type trim



### Removing

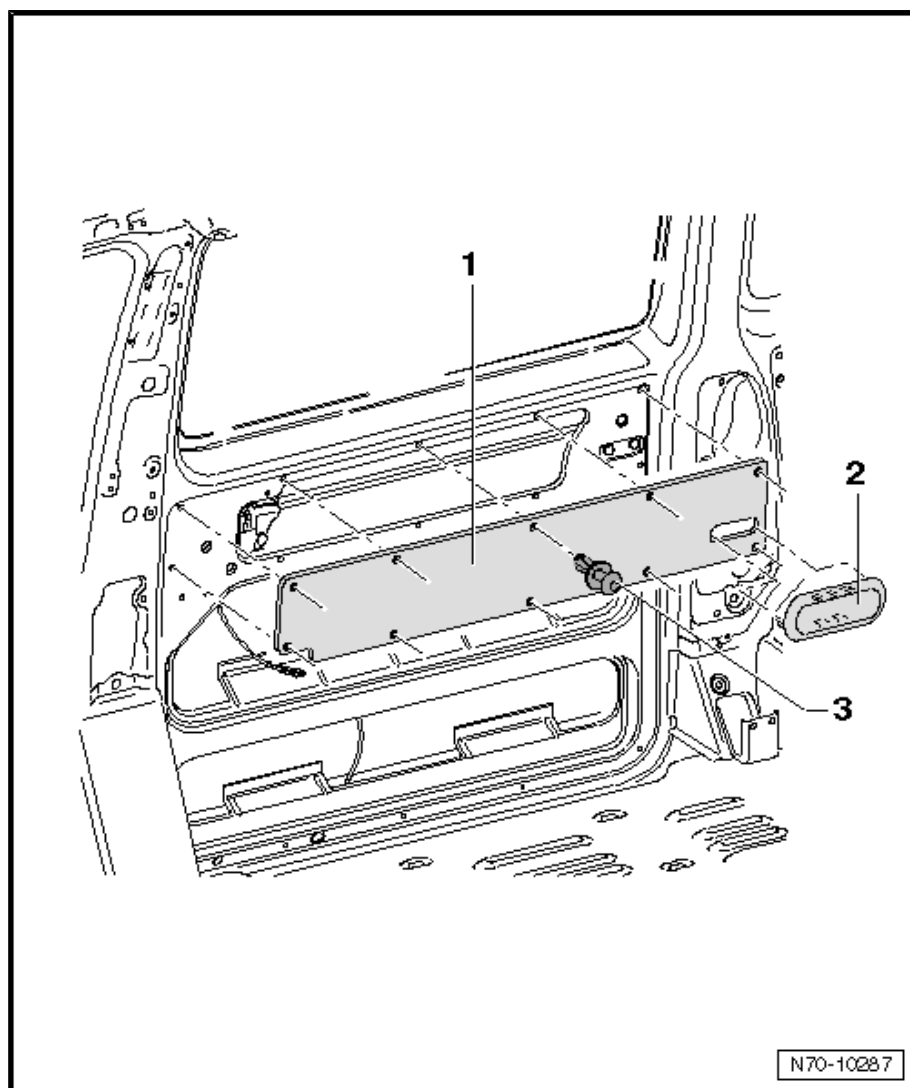
- Use a hexagon socket to unscrew clamping pin from spreader rivets -7- and -8-.
- Unclip spreader rivets -7- and -8-.
- Remove trim -4- and -5-.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.



### 2.3.5 Removing and installing rear door trim, sliding door, Transporter, bottom of sliding door, sliding door with short hardboard-type trim



#### Removing

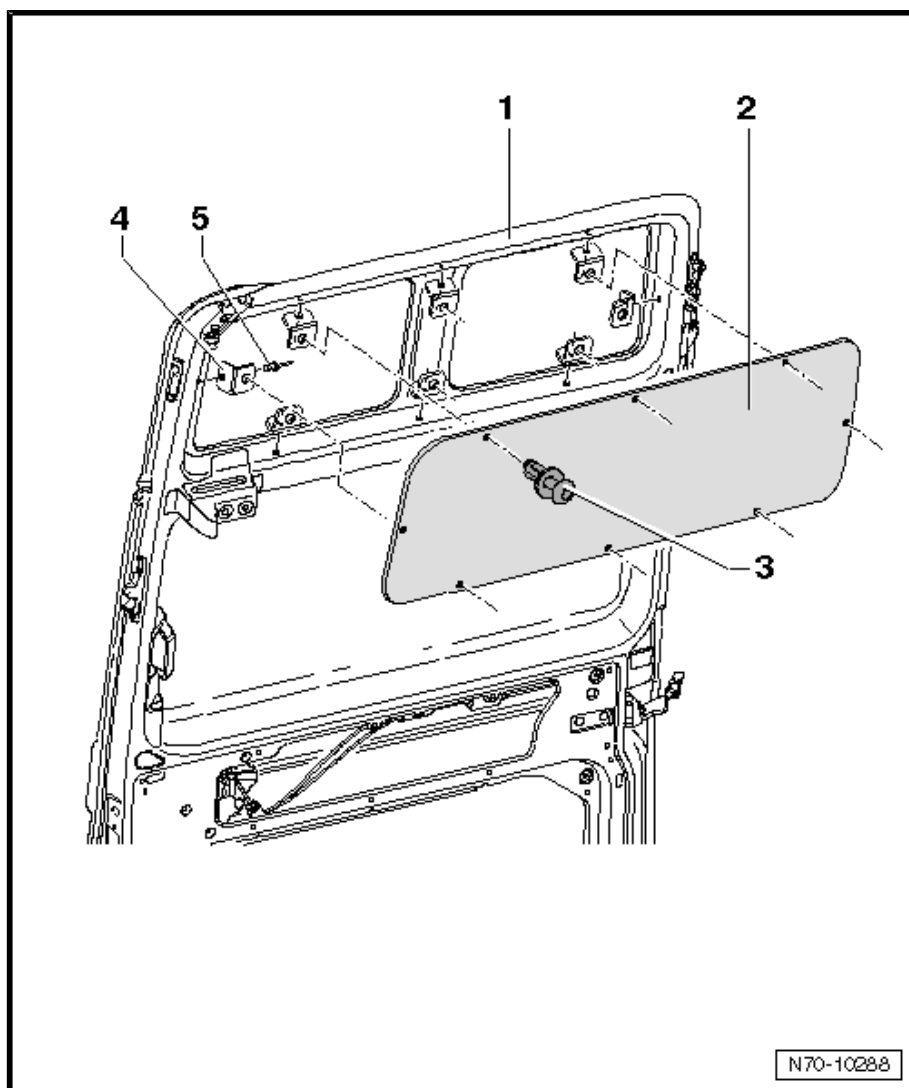
- Use a hexagon socket to unscrew clamping pin from spreader rivets -3-.
- Unclip spreader rivets -3-.
- Remove trim -1-.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.



### 2.3.6 Removing and installing rear door trim, sliding door, Transporter, high sliding door with short upper hardboard panel



#### Removing

- Use a hexagon socket to unscrew clamping pin from spreader rivets -3-.
- Unclip spreader rivets -3-.
- Remove trim -2-.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

### 2.4 Removing and installing sun blind for door window

The removal procedure for the door window sun blind is the same as that for the sun blind [⇒ page 56](#).



## 3 Dash panel

- ⇒ ["3.1 Assembly overview - dash panel", page 196](#)
- ⇒ ["3.2 Assembly overview - auxiliary console", page 199](#)
- ⇒ ["3.3 Removing and installing dash panel end cover", page 199](#)
- ⇒ ["3.4 Removing and installing dash panel trim", page 200](#)
- ⇒ ["3.5 Removing and installing dash panel insert trim", page 203](#)
- ⇒ ["3.6 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim", page 203](#)
- ⇒ ["3.7 Removing and installing light switch trim", page 204](#)
- ⇒ ["3.8 Removing and installing radio/navigation system mounting frame", page 205](#)
- ⇒ ["3.9 Removing and installing mounting frame of operating unit of heater and air conditioning unit", page 205](#)
- ⇒ ["3.10 Removing and installing dash panel", page 206](#)
- ⇒ ["3.11 Removing and installing loudspeaker mounting", page 211](#)
- ⇒ ["3.12 Removing and installing cup holder", page 212](#)
- ⇒ ["3.13 Removing and installing dash panel vents", page 213](#)
- ⇒ ["3.14 Removing and installing auxiliary console", page 215](#)
- ⇒ ["3.15 Installing No Airbag sign", page 217](#)

### 3.1 Assembly overview - dash panel





### 1 - Dash panel insert trim

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 203](#)

### 2 - Sunlight penetration photo-sensor - G107-

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Other control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photo sensor - G107-

### 3 - Dash panel vent

- ☐ Centre left
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 213](#)

### 4 - Dash panel vent

- ☐ Centre right
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 213](#)

### 5 - Mounting frame for radio/navigation system

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 205](#)

### 6 - Bolt for bracket of front passenger airbag

- ☐ Qty. 2

### 7 - Side defroster vent

- ☐ Right

### 8 - Dash panel vent

- ☐ Right
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 213](#)

### 9 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

### 10 - Bolt

- ☐ 1.5 Nm

### 11 - Bolt

- ☐ 1.5 Nm

### 12 - Mounting frame of operating unit of heater and air conditioning unit

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 205](#)

### 13 - Bolt

- ☐ 1.5 Nm

### 14 - Bolt

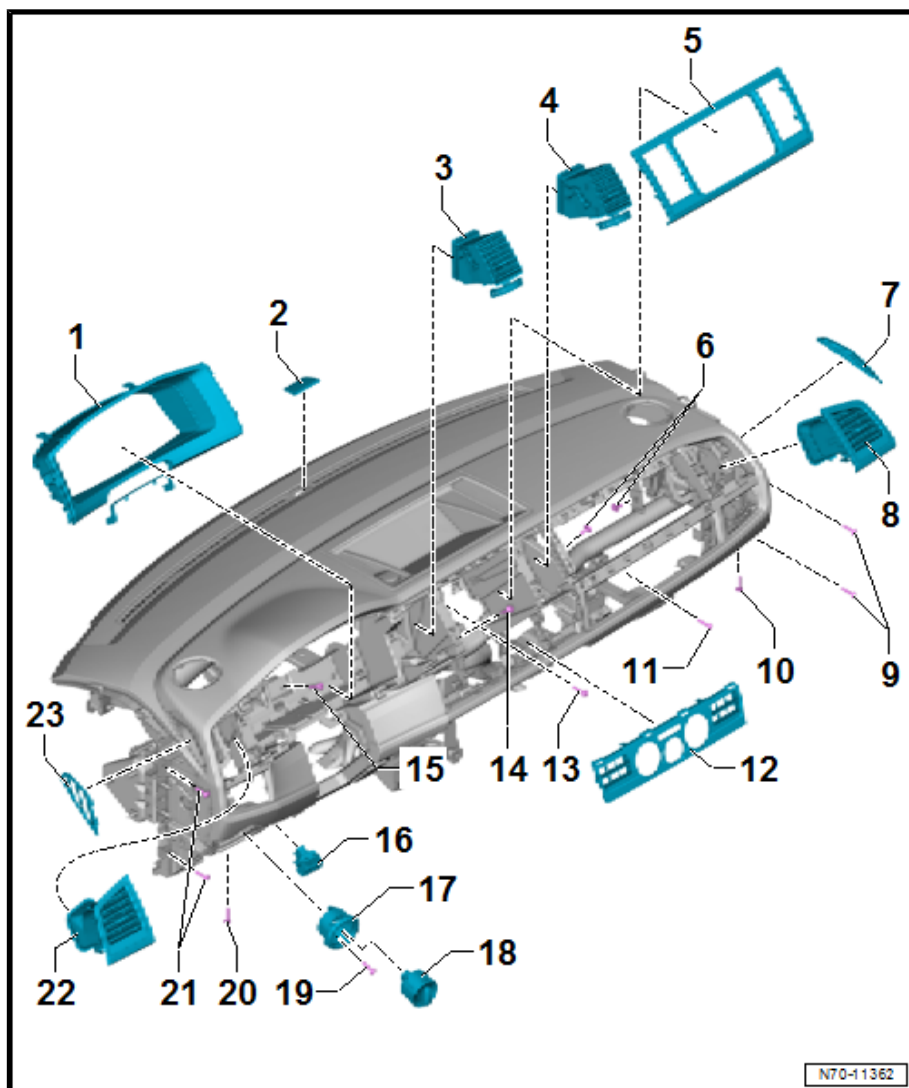
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

### 15 - Bolt

- ☐ 1.5 Nm

### 16 - Headlight range control regulator - E102-

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing headlight range control regulator -E102-





**17 - Light switch trim**

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 204](#)

**18 - Rotary light switch - EX1-**

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing rotary light switch EX1

**19 - Bolt**

- ☐ 1.5 Nm

**20 - Bolt**

- ☐ 1.5 Nm

**21 - Bolt**

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

**22 - Dash panel vent**

- ☐ Left
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 213](#)

**23 - Side defroster vent**

- ☐ Left



## 3.2 Assembly overview - auxiliary console

### 1 - Auxiliary console

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 215](#)

### 2 - Upper cover

- ☐ With 2 fasteners

### 3 - Base retainer

### 4 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 5
- ☐ 2.5 Nm

### 5 - Front cover

### 6 - Bolts

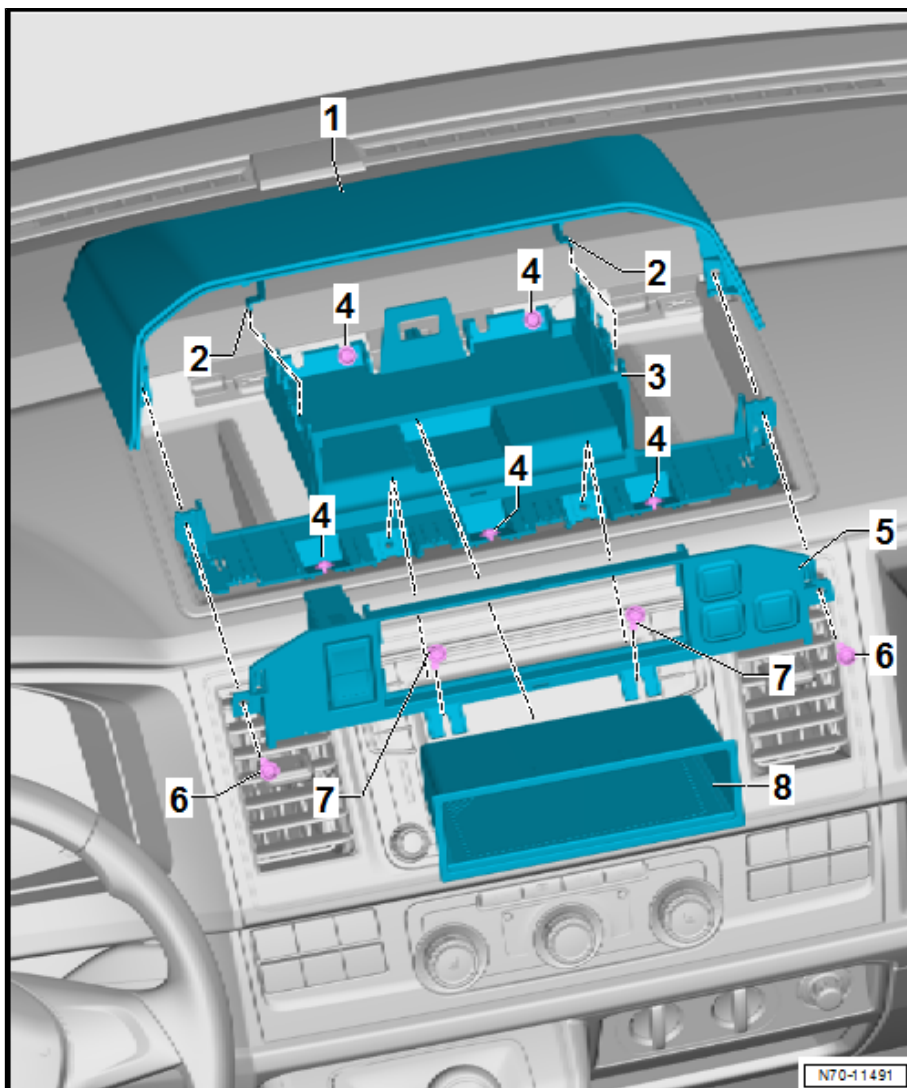
- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

### 7 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 1.5 Nm

### 8 - Storage compartment

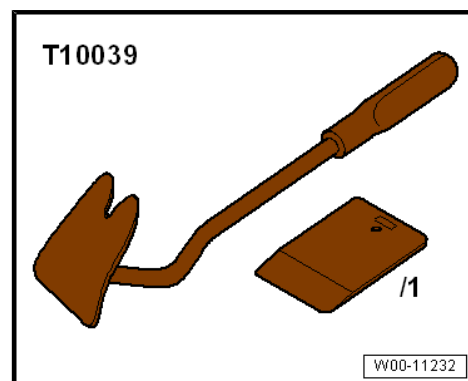
- ☐ Depending on the equipment, a different device may be installed in place of the storage compartment



## 3.3 Removing and installing dash panel end cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-





#### Note

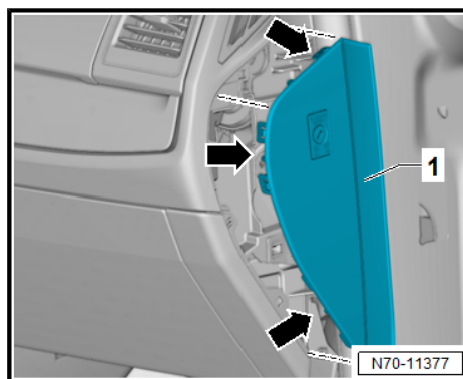
*Removal and installation sequence is only described for the right side. The procedures for the left side are analogous.*

#### Removing

- Using wedge - T10039/1- , lever right dash panel end cover -1- out of catches -arrows-.
- If fitted, disconnect connector on key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag.

#### Installing

- If fitted, connect connector of key operated switch to deactivate front passenger side airbag.
- Fit dash panel end cover in installation position, and press it on until catches can be heard to engage.



### 3.4 Removing and installing dash panel trim

⇒ [“3.4.1 Removing and installing dash panel trim panel, Multivan, trim panel on front passenger side”, page 200](#)

⇒ [“3.4.2 Removing and installing dash panel trim panel, Multivan, left trim panel on driver side”, page 201](#)

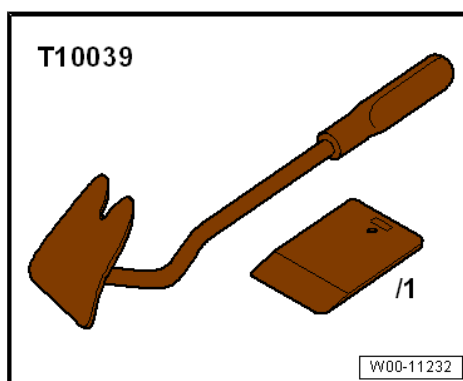
⇒ [“3.4.3 Removing and installing dash panel trim panel, Multivan, right trim panel on driver side”, page 201](#)

⇒ [“3.4.4 Removing and installing dash panel trim panel, trim panel on storage compartment of centre dash panel”, page 202](#)

#### 3.4.1 Removing and installing dash panel trim panel, Multivan, trim panel on front passenger side

##### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-



#### Removing

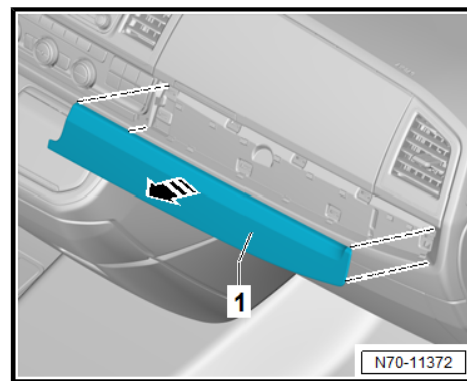
- Remove dash panel vent on front passenger side  
⇒ [page 213](#) .



- Using wedge - T10039/1- , unclip trim panel -1- in -direction of arrow- from catches.

#### Installing

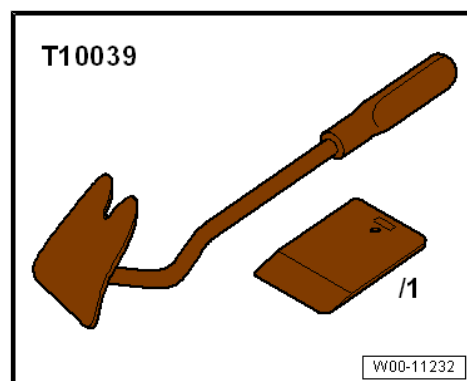
- Fit trim panel in installation position, and press it on until catches can be heard to engage.



### 3.4.2 Removing and installing dash panel trim panel, Multivan, left trim panel on driver side

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-

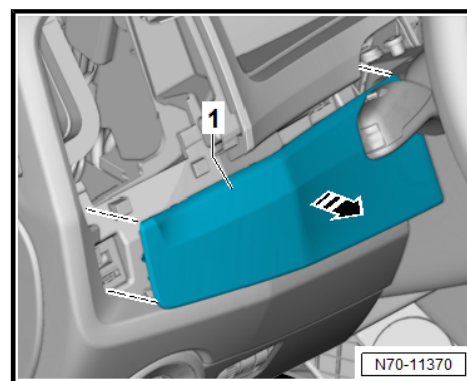


#### Removing

- Remove dash panel vent on driver side ⇒ [page 213](#) .
- Using wedge - T10039/1- , unclip trim panel -1- in -direction of arrow- from catches.

#### Installing

- Fit trim panel in installation position, and press it on until catches can be heard to engage.

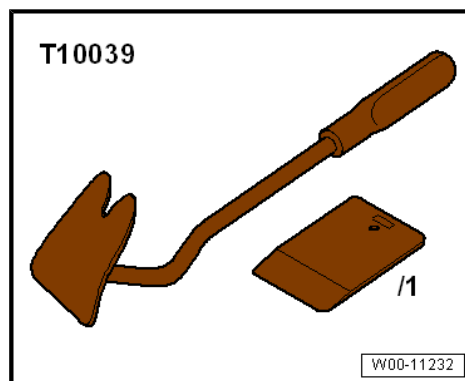


### 3.4.3 Removing and installing dash panel trim panel, Multivan, right trim panel on driver side

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required



- ◆ Release lever - T10039-

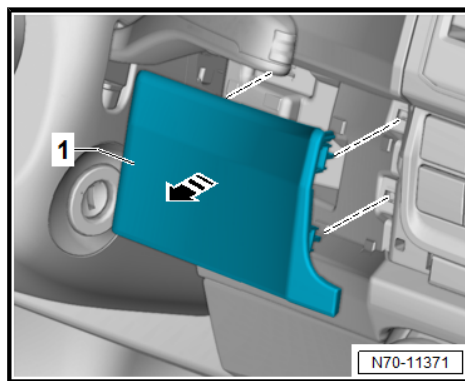


#### Removing

- Using wedge - T10039/1- , unclip trim panel -1- in -direction of arrow- from catches.

#### Installing

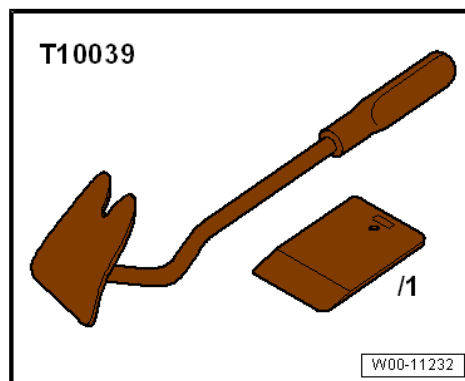
- Fit trim panel in installation position, and press it on until catches can be heard to engage.



### 3.4.4 Removing and installing dash panel trim panel, trim panel on storage compartment of centre dash panel

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-



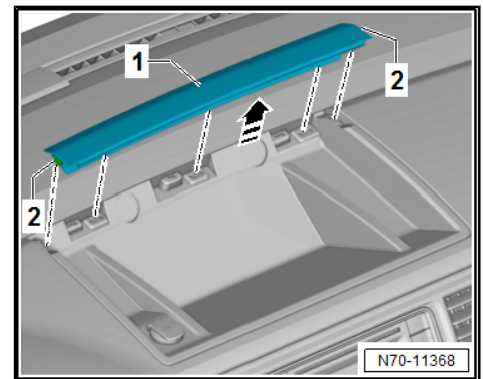


### Removing

- Using wedge - T10039/1- and starting at position -2-, unclip trim panel -1- in -direction of arrow- from catches.

### Installing

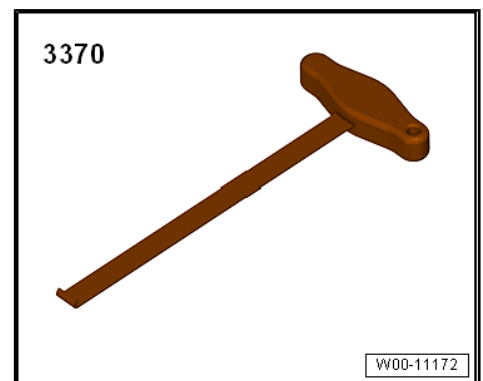
- Fit trim panel in installation position, and press it on until catches can be heard to engage.



## 3.5 Removing and installing dash panel insert trim

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Front end hook - 3370-

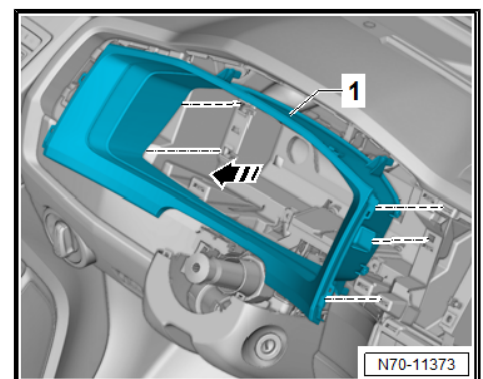


### Removing

- Remove mounting frame for radio/navigation system ⇒ [page 205](#) .
- Remove gap cover on dash panel insert ⇒ [page 29](#) .
- Remove dash panel vent on driver side ⇒ [page 213](#) .
- Using front end hook - 3370- , unclip trim -1- in -direction of arrow- on both sides.

### Installing

- Fit dash panel insert trim in installation position, and press it on until catches can be heard to engage.

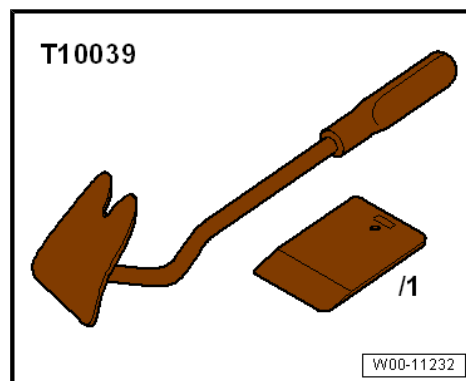


## 3.6 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

### Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Release lever - T10039-

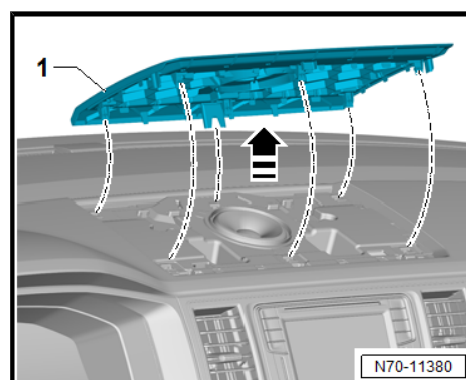


**Removing**

- Using wedge - T10039/1- , carefully unclip loudspeaker trim -1- in -direction of arrow- from catches.

**Installing**

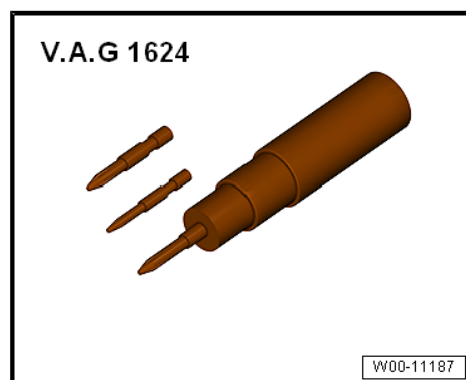
- Fit loudspeaker trim in installation position, and press it on until catches can be heard to engage.



### 3.7 Removing and installing light switch trim

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



**Removing**

- Remove rotary light switch - EX1- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing rotary light switch - EX1- .





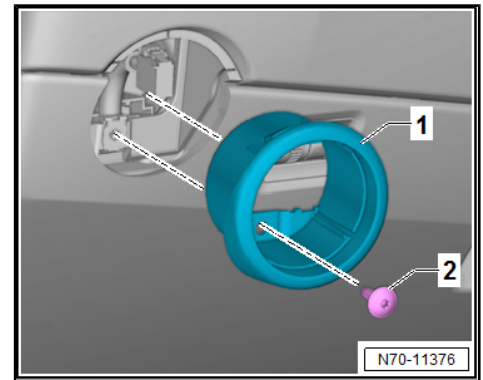
- Unscrew bolt -2-.
- Remove light switch trim -1- from dash panel cover.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

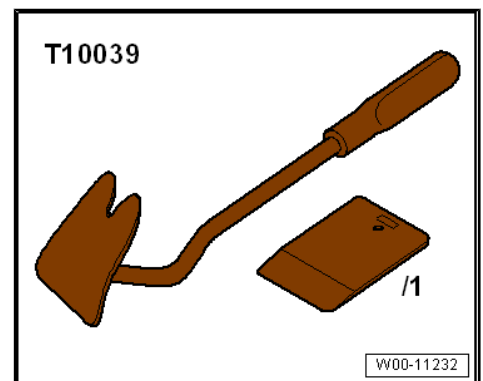
- ◆ ⇒ ["3.1 Assembly overview - dash panel", page 196](#)



### 3.8 Removing and installing radio/navigation system mounting frame

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-

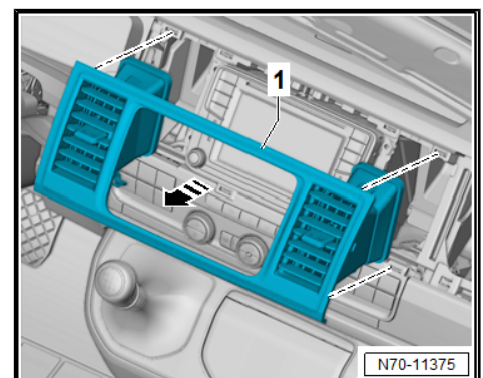


#### Removing

- Using wedge - T10039/1- , unclip mounting frame -1- in -direction of arrow- from catches.

#### Installing

- Fit radio/navigation system installation frame in installation position and press it on until catches can be heard to engage.

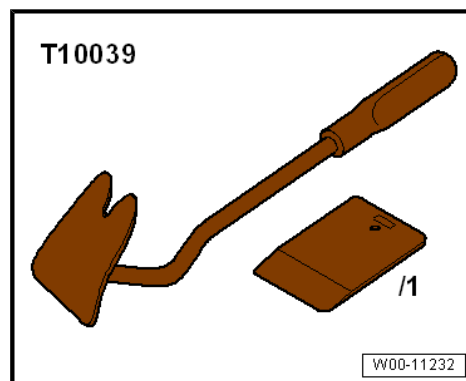


### 3.9 Removing and installing mounting frame of operating unit of heater and air conditioning unit

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Release lever - T10039-

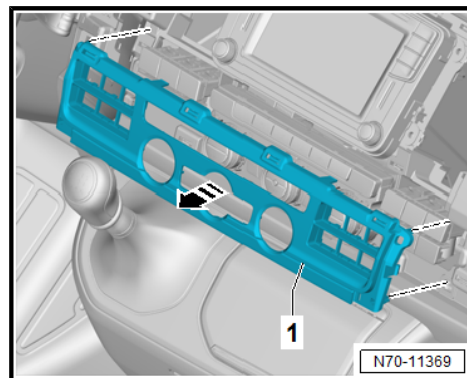


**Removing**

- Remove mounting frame for radio/navigation system  
⇒ [page 205](#) .
- Remove trim panels on right and left next to mounting frame of operating unit of heater and air conditioning unit  
⇒ [page 200](#) .
- Using release lever - T10039/1- , unclip mounting frame of operating unit of heater and air conditioning unit -1- in -direction of arrow-.
- Disconnect connectors on switches installed in mounting frame.

**Installing**

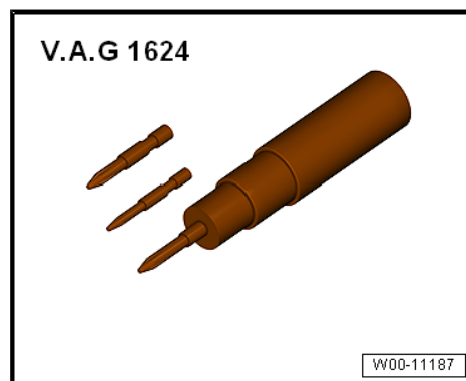
- Fit heater/air conditioner operating unit installation frame in installation position and press it on until catches can be heard to engage.



### 3.10 Removing and installing dash panel

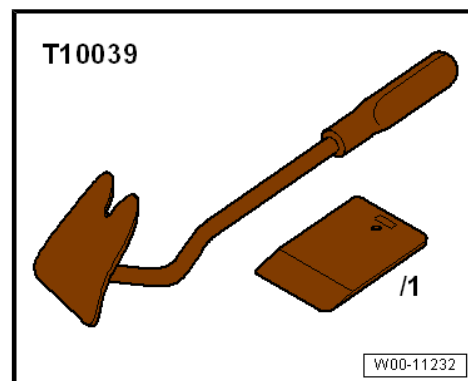
**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-





◆ Release lever - T10039-



### Removing

- Move front seats as far back as possible.
- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove driver side airbag ⇒ [page 149](#) .
- Remove steering wheel ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel .
- Remove steering column switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column switch module .
- Remove dash panel cover on driver side ⇒ [page 28](#) .
- Remove covers on both sides of dash panel ⇒ [page 199](#) .
- Remove dash panel vents ⇒ [page 213](#) .
- Remove dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Removing and installing dash panel insert - KX2- .
- Remove radio/radio navigation system ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Radio; Removing and installing radio or ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Navigation system; Removing and installing control unit for navigation system .
- If fitted, unclip sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Other control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- .



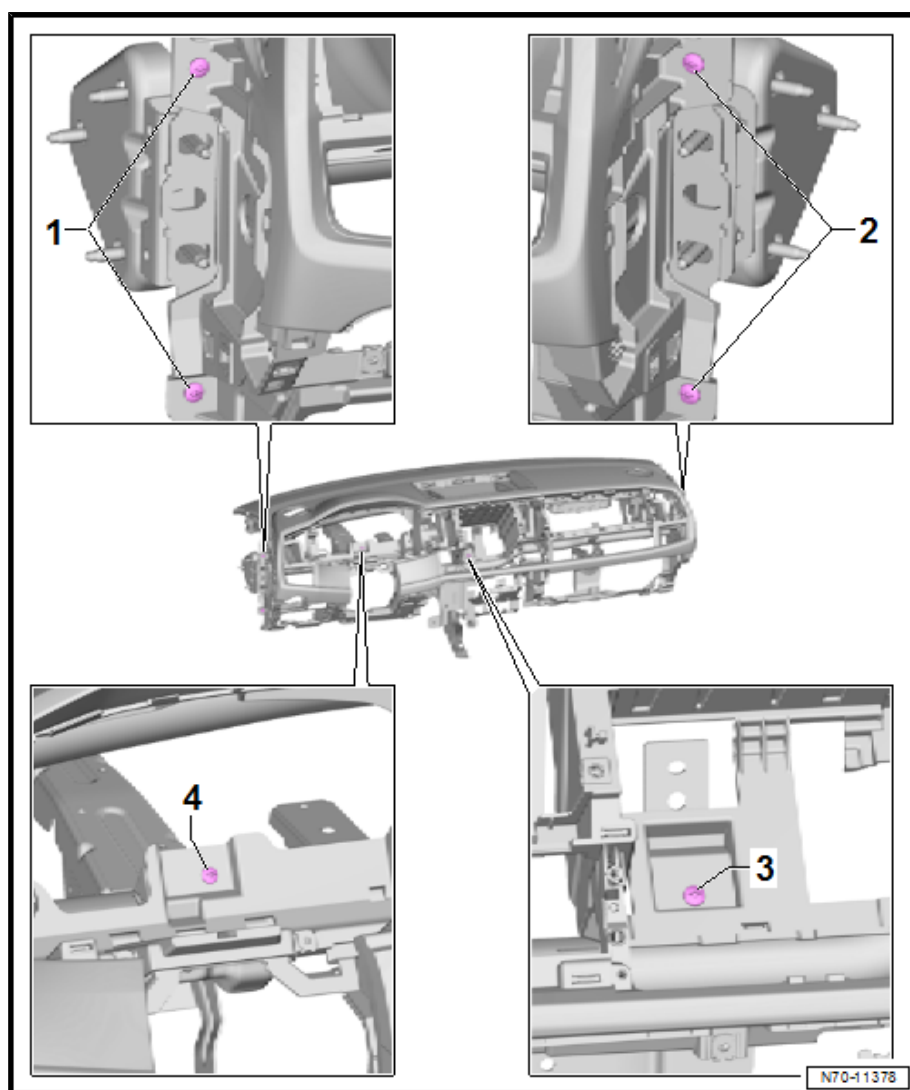
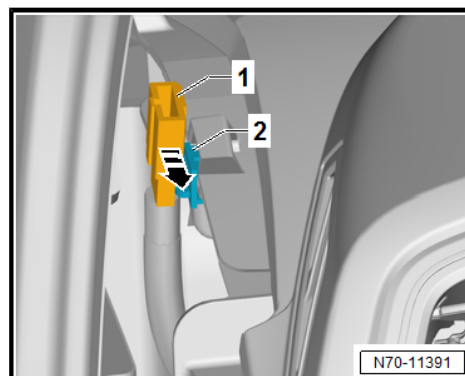
### Note

*Using wire or a cord, secure sunlight penetration photosensor - G107- in such a way that the connector can be guided through the assembly aperture for the sunlight penetration photosensor in the dash panel when installing the dash panel. Otherwise the connector for the sunlight penetration photosensor may be out of reach after the dash panel has been installed.*

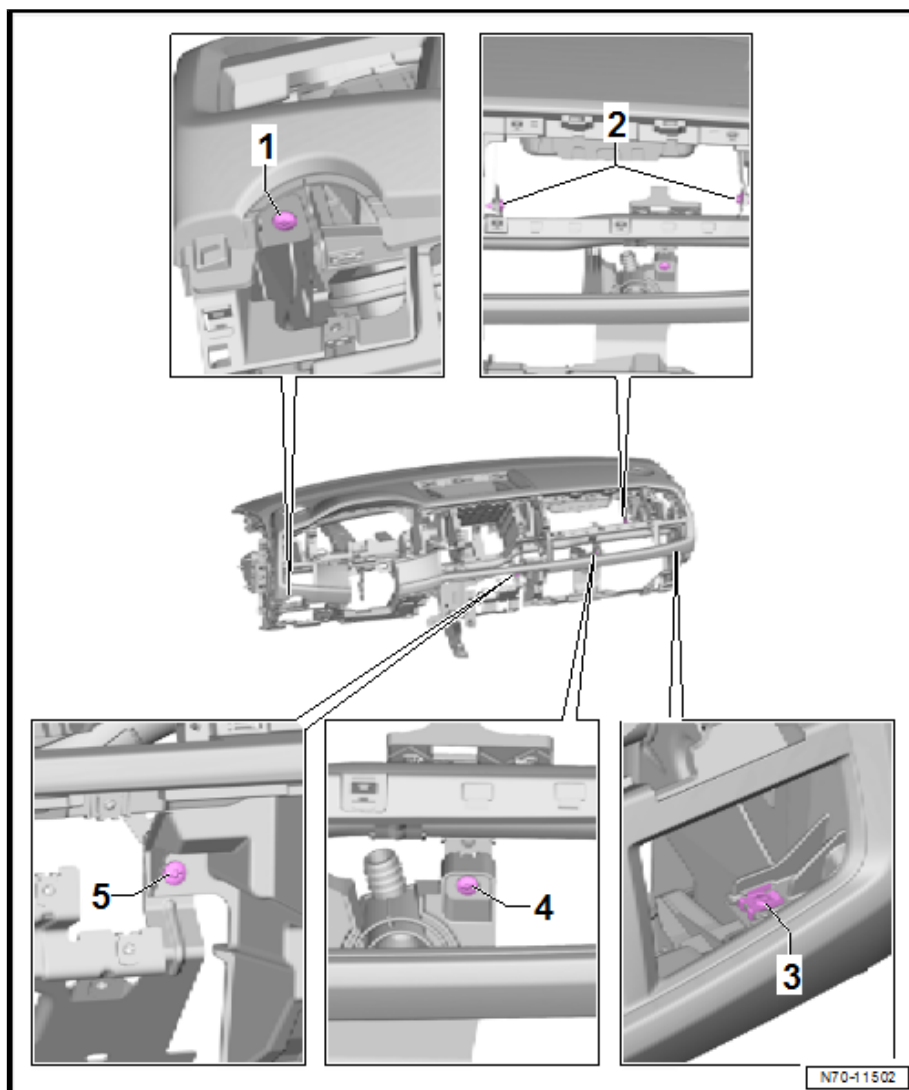
- Remove operating and display unit for heater and air conditioning system ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Operating and display unit; Removing and installing operating and display unit .
- Remove glove compartment ⇒ [page 32](#) .
- Disconnect connector for front passenger airbag ⇒ [page 154](#) .



- Remove A-pillar trim ➔ [page 229](#) .
- Press catches -2- on both connectors -1- of treble loudspeakers.
- Pull both connectors -1- in -direction of arrow- off dash panel.
- Remove centre console ➔ [page 63](#) .



- Unscrew bolts -1- to -4- securing dash panel to cross member.



- Unscrew bolts -1- to -5- securing dash panel to cross member.



**Note**

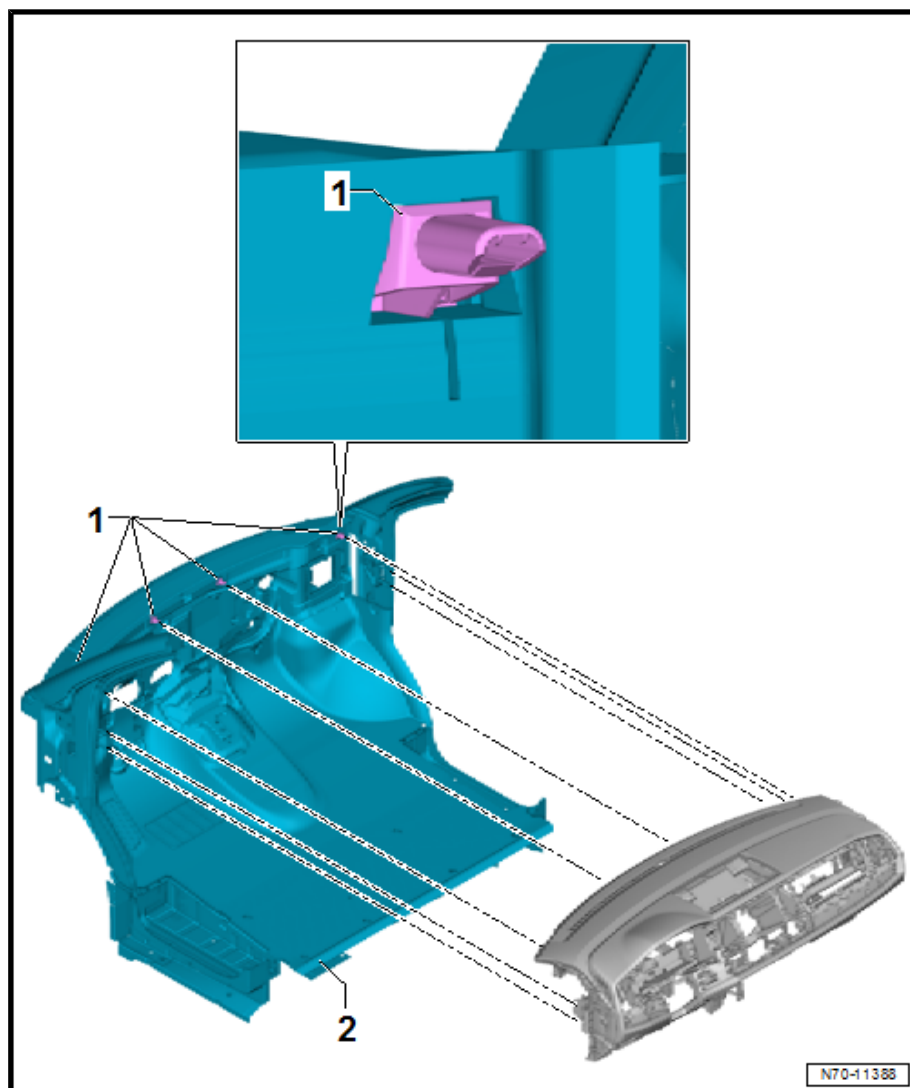
*Bolt at position -3- is unscrewed from dash panel from underneath of footwell.*



**Note**

*The help of a second mechanic is required to remove the dash panel.*

- Lift dash panel.
- Pull dash panel out of mountings in transitional area to wind-screen.
- Remove dash panel from dash panel cross member.
- Disconnect connectors and lay wiring harnesses on dash panel to one side.
- Carefully remove dash panel from vehicle interior and place it on a soft surface.



### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Before installing dash panel, check whether mountings -1- are firmly attached to body -2-.



#### Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- ◆ *If the dash panel is renewed, verify whether the vehicle is not equipped with a front passenger airbag. If so, install the respective "No Airbag" badge ➔ [page 217](#).*
- ◆ *When securing the dash panel, tighten bolts in reverse order of removal.*
- ◆ *When installing the dash panel, ensure that the dash panel seats precisely in the mountings in the transitional area to the windscreen.*
- ◆ *When installing the dash panel, guide the connector of the sunlight penetration photosensor, which has been secured with wire or a cord beforehand, from below through the assembly aperture in the dash panel. Otherwise the connector for the sunlight penetration photosensor may be out of reach after the dash panel has been fitted.*

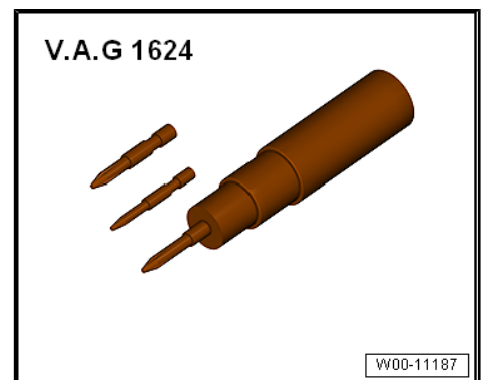
#### Specified torques

- ◆ ➔ ["3.1 Assembly overview - dash panel", page 196](#)
- ◆ ➔ ["3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system", page 144](#)
- ◆ ➔ ["1.4 Assembly overview - glove compartment", page 25](#)
- ◆ ➔ ["5.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim", page 229](#)
- ◆ ➔ ["3.1 Assembly overview - centre console", page 58](#)

### 3.11 Removing and installing loudspeaker mounting

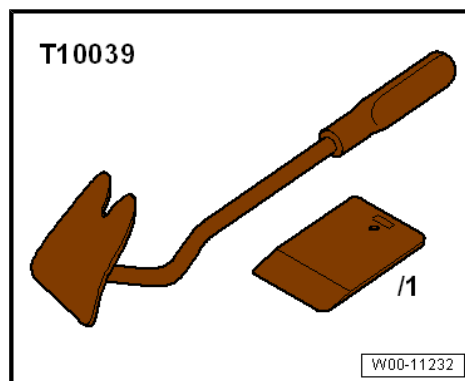
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



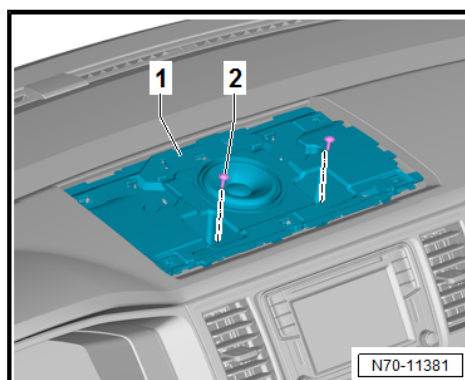


◆ Release lever - T10039-



### Removing

- Remove loudspeaker trim ⇒ [page 203](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -2- from loudspeaker mounting -1-.



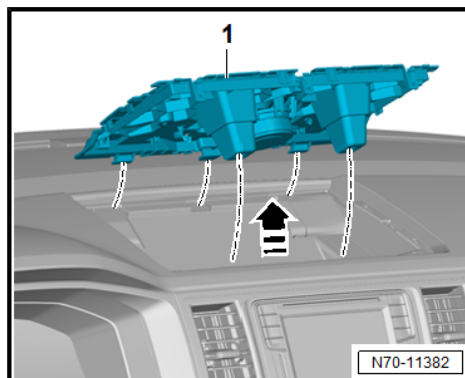
- Using wedge - T10039/1- , carefully unclip loudspeaker mounting -1- in -direction of arrow- from catches.
- Separate electrical connector on loudspeaker.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for loudspeaker mounting	1.5 Nm



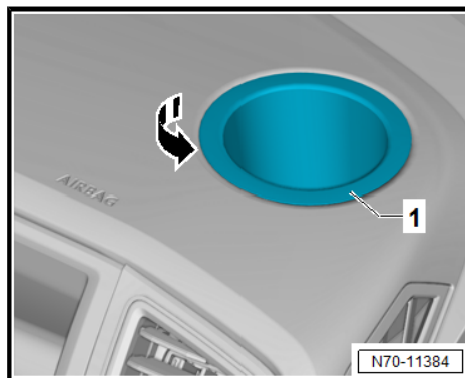
## 3.12 Removing and installing cup holder

### Removing

- Reach into cup holder from above and turn slightly in direction of -arrow-.
- Remove cup holder upwards from dash panel.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.







### 3.13 Removing and installing dash panel vents

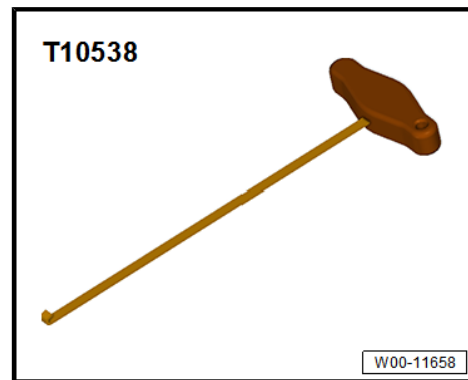
⇒ ["3.13.1 Removing and installing dash panel vents, centre", page 213](#)

⇒ ["3.13.2 Removing and installing dash panel vents, sides", page 214](#)

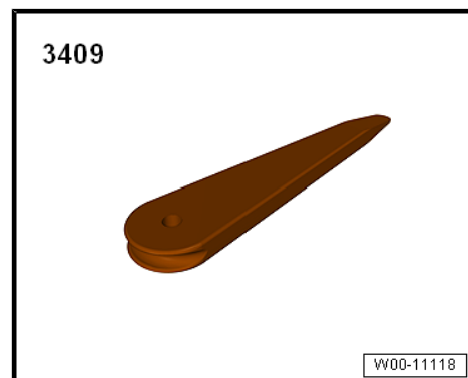
#### 3.13.1 Removing and installing dash panel vents, centre

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Hook - T10538-



◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



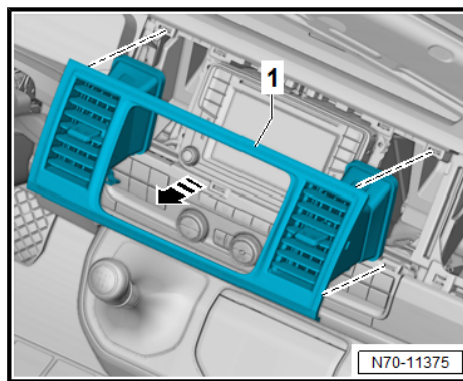


## Removing



### Note

- ◆ *The trim is permanently secured to the vents*
- ◆ *Before removing the components, protect them to avoid any damage caused by tools.*
- ◆ *During the following work, ensure that the tools are positioned in such a way that they cannot slip.*
- Open centre vent -1- completely.
- Insert hook - T10538- in fresh air duct.
- Engage hook - T10538- behind centre vent -1-.
- Hold centre vent -1- under tension slightly with hook - T10538- .
- Unclip centre vent -1- all around from fasteners with removal wedge - 3409- .
- Pull out trim along with centre vent -1- from installation opening in dash panel in direction of -arrow-.



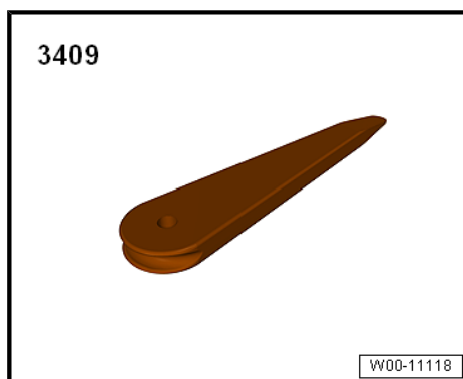
## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

### 3.13.2 Removing and installing dash panel vents, sides

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

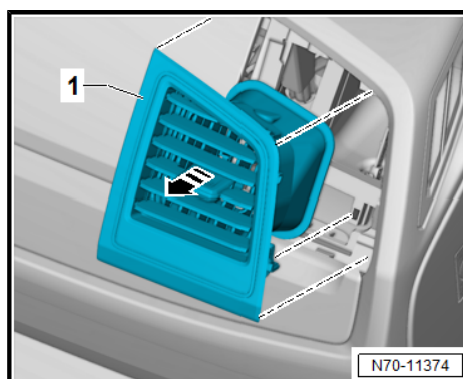


## Removing

- Insert removal wedge - 3409- on side.
- Remove dash panel vent -1- in direction of -arrow- with removal wedge - 3409- .

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

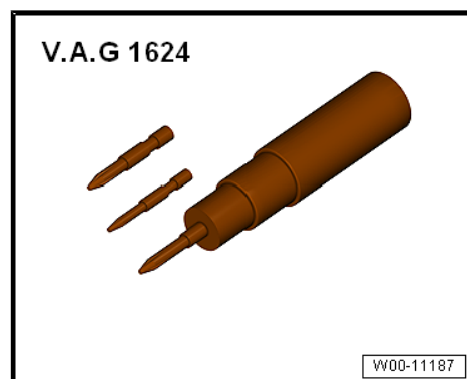




### 3.14 Removing and installing auxiliary console

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-

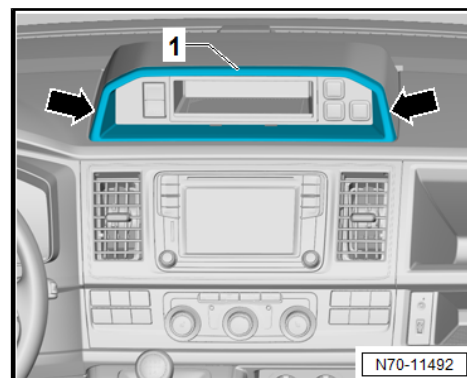


- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

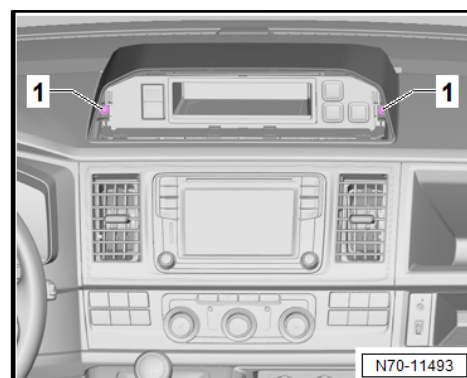


#### Removing

- Unclip frame -1- at positions marked with -arrows- using removal wedge - 3409- .

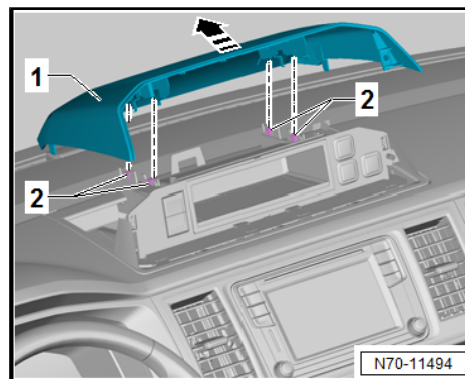


- Unscrew bolts -1-.

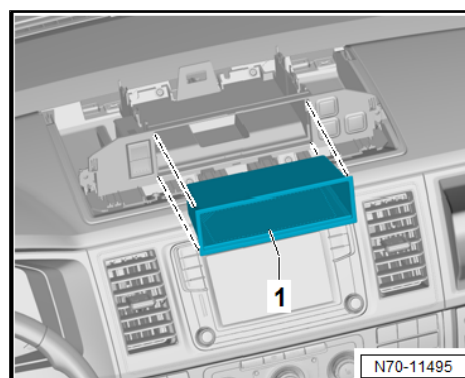




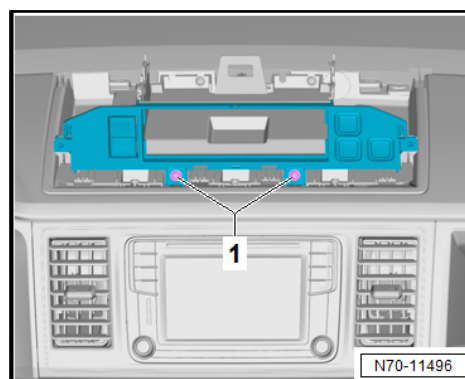
- Remove upper part -1- from fasteners -2- in direction of -arrow-.



- Pull out storage compartment -1-.

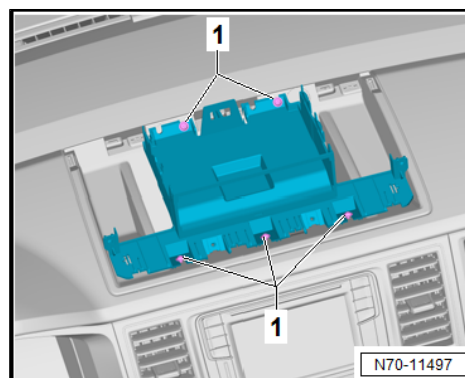


- Unscrew bolts -1-.



- Unscrew bolts -1-.
- Remove auxiliary console holder from dash panel.
- Disconnect electrical connectors.

#### Installing



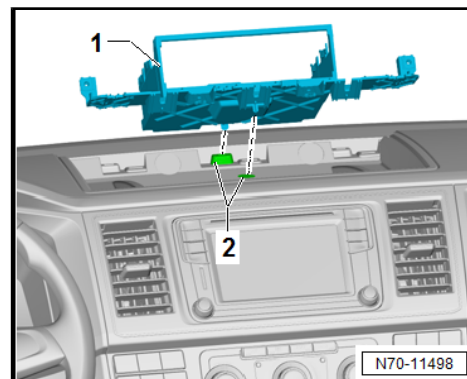


Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- When inserting auxiliary console holder -1-, insert locking mechanisms in dedicated apertures -2- in dash panel.

#### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“3.2 Assembly overview - auxiliary console”, page 199](#)



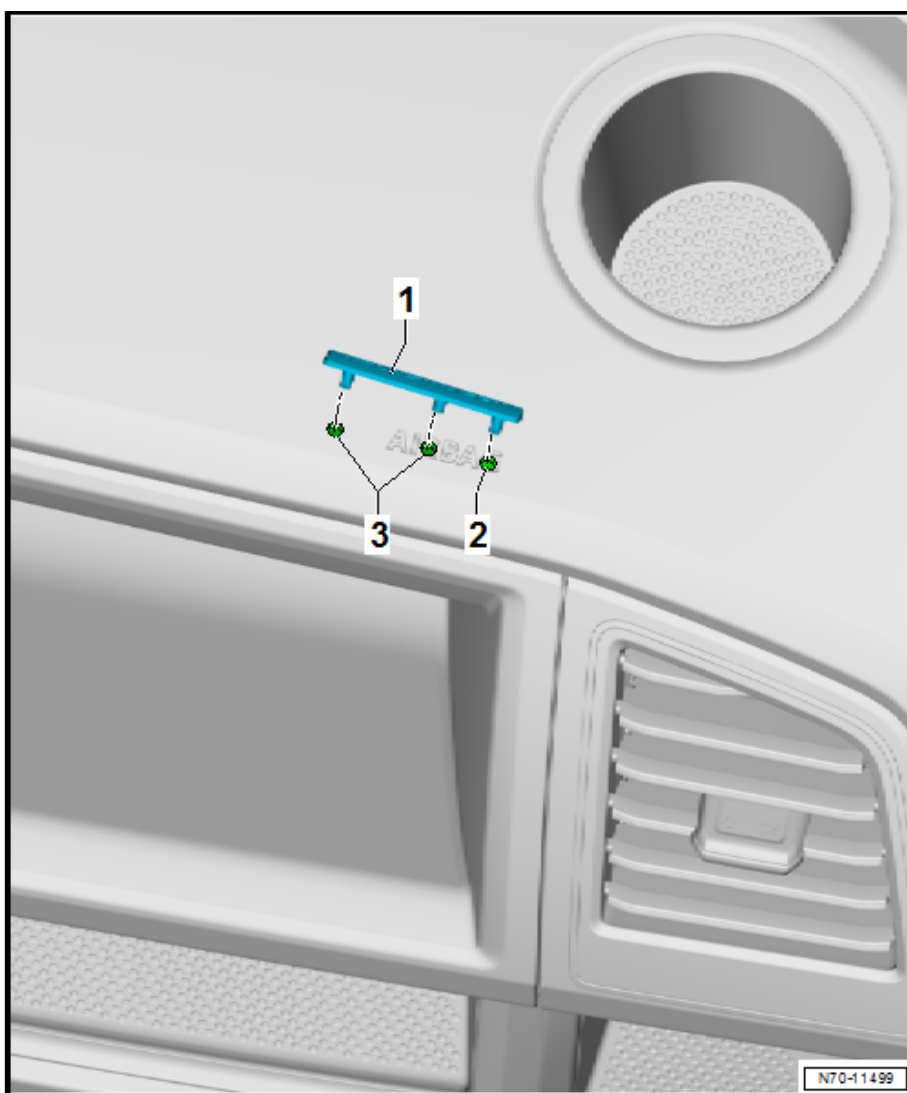
### 3.15 Installing “No Airbag” sign

“No Airbag” badge serves to cover “AIRBAG” lettering embossed in dash panel on front passenger side.

The “No Airbag” sign is only used on vehicles that are not equipped with a front passenger airbag.

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Hand drill
- ◆ 4 mm drill bit



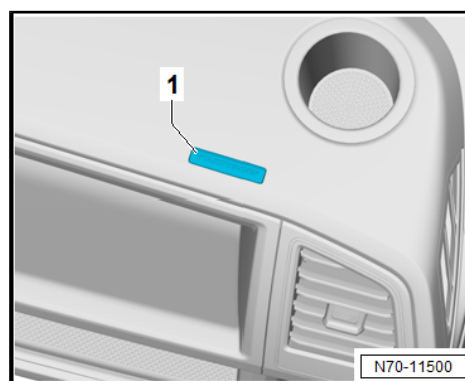


### Installing "No Airbag" sign

- Drill hole -2- in lower area of letter "G" of "AIRBAG" lettering on dash panel, as shown in diagram.
- Insert right plastic pin of badge -1- in hole -2- a little so that position of other two pins can be marked on dash panel.
- Align "No Airbag" badge -1- on "AIRBAG" lettering and align to front edge of dash panel, then mark positions of both holes -3- on dash panel surface.

It is important when installing the badge to ensure that the complete "AIRBAG" lettering is covered.

- Make holes -3-.
- Clip "No Airbag" placard -1- in 3 holes in dash panel.





## 4 Central tube for dash panel

⇒ [“4.1 Assembly overview - central tube for dash panel”, page 219](#)

⇒ [“4.2 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel”, page 220](#)

### 4.1 Assembly overview - central tube for dash panel

#### 1 - Bolt

- ☐ Can be reached when working from plenum chamber
- ☐ M8×50
- ☐ 20 Nm

#### 2 - Bracket for front passenger airbag

#### 3 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 8 Nm

#### 4 - Bracket for front passenger airbag

#### 5 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 8 Nm

#### 6 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 3
- ☐ 20 Nm

#### 7 - Lateral bracket securing cross member to dash panel

#### 8 - Nuts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 20 Nm

#### 9 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 3
- ☐ 4 Nm

#### 10 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 4

#### 11 - Nuts

- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 20 Nm

#### 12 - Bracket securing cross member to floor

#### 13 - Bolts

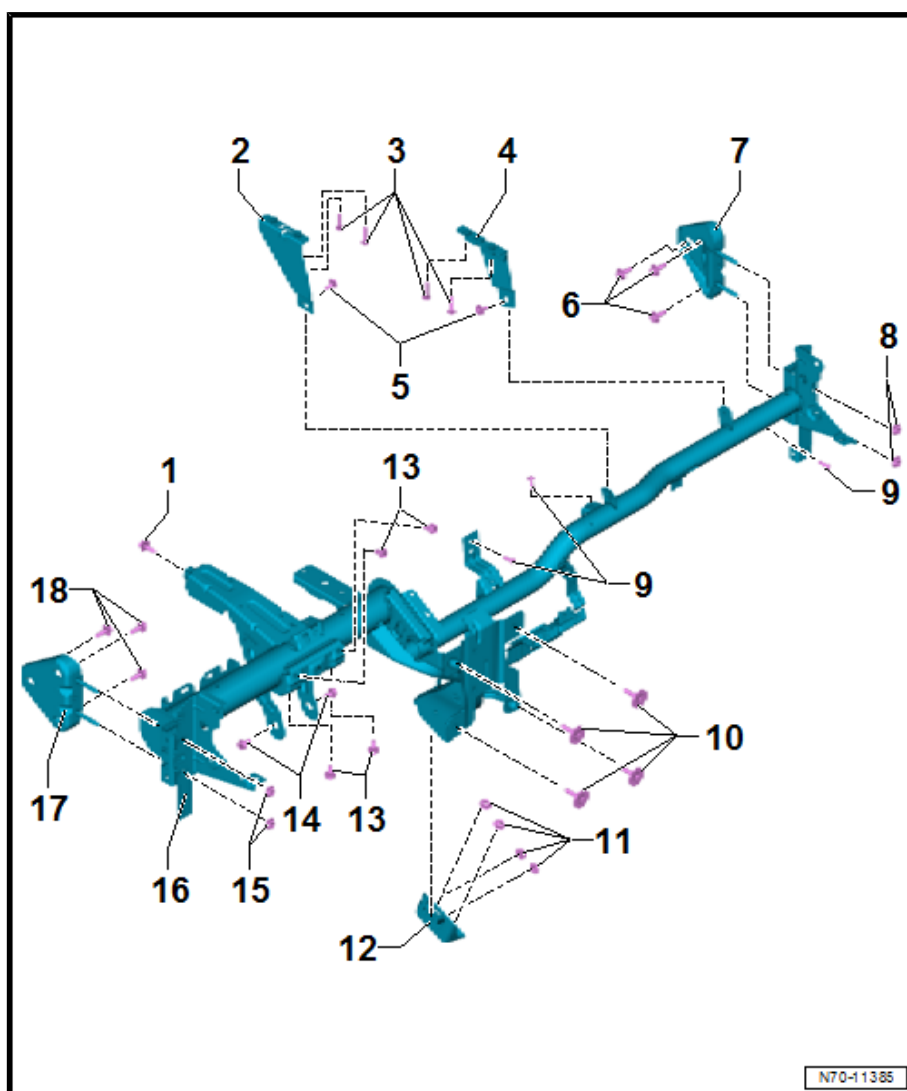
- ☐ Qty. 2

#### 14 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 4

#### 15 - Nuts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 20 Nm





#### 16 - Central tube for dash panel

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 220](#)

#### 17 - Lateral bracket securing dash panel cross member

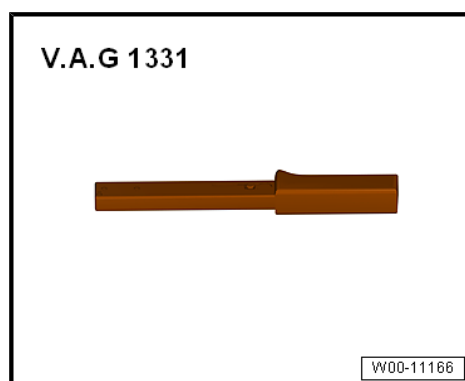
#### 18 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 3
- ☐ 20 Nm

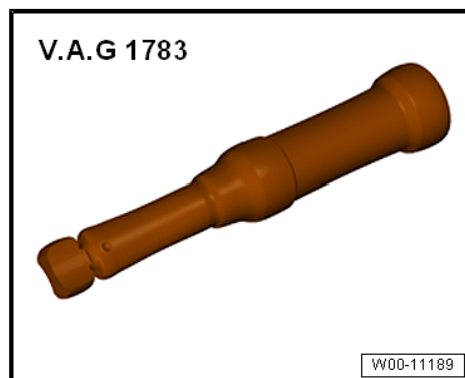
## 4.2 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



### Note

*If electrical wires are disconnected or removed and installed, it is useful to make corresponding drawings or photos. This guarantees that everything is re-installed in its original position.*

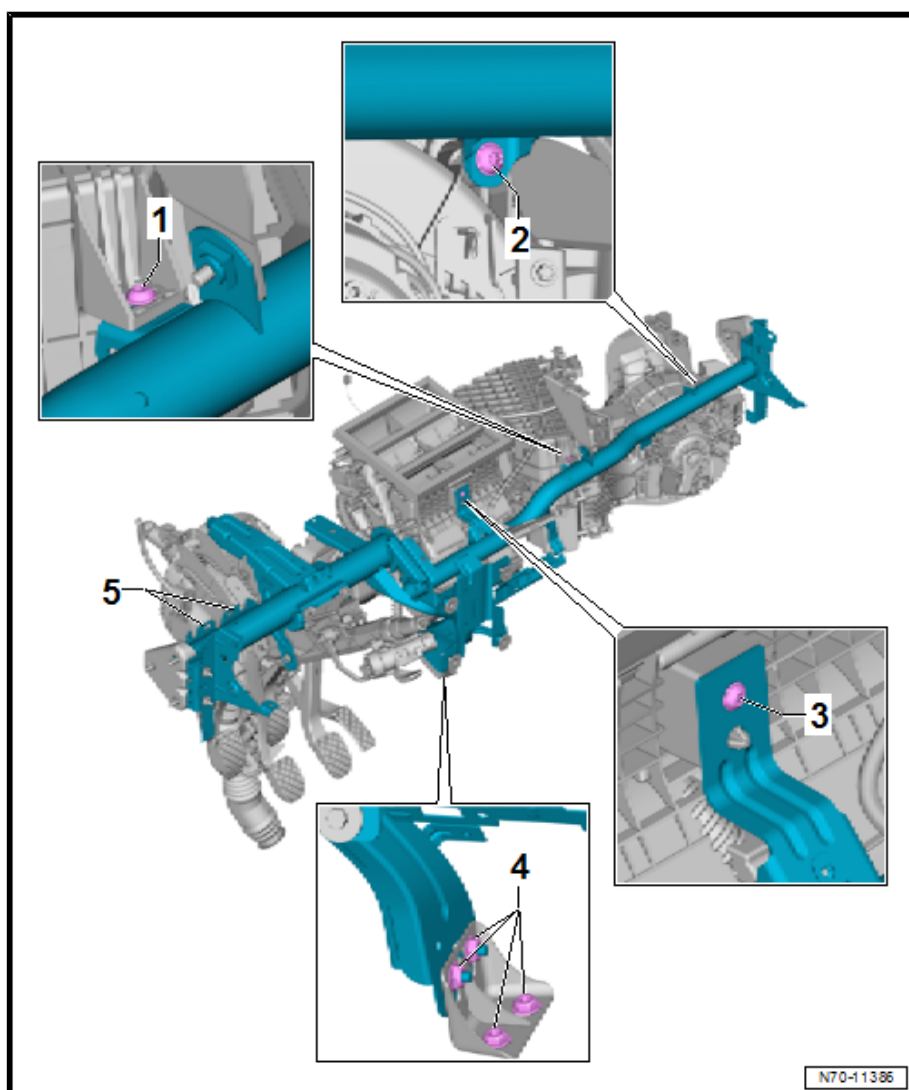
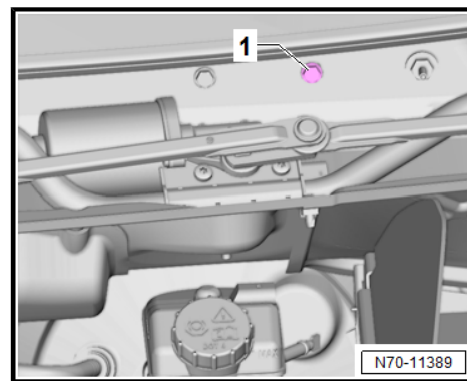
### Removing

- Remove left plenum chamber cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50 ; Bulkhead; Removing and installing plenum chamber cover .





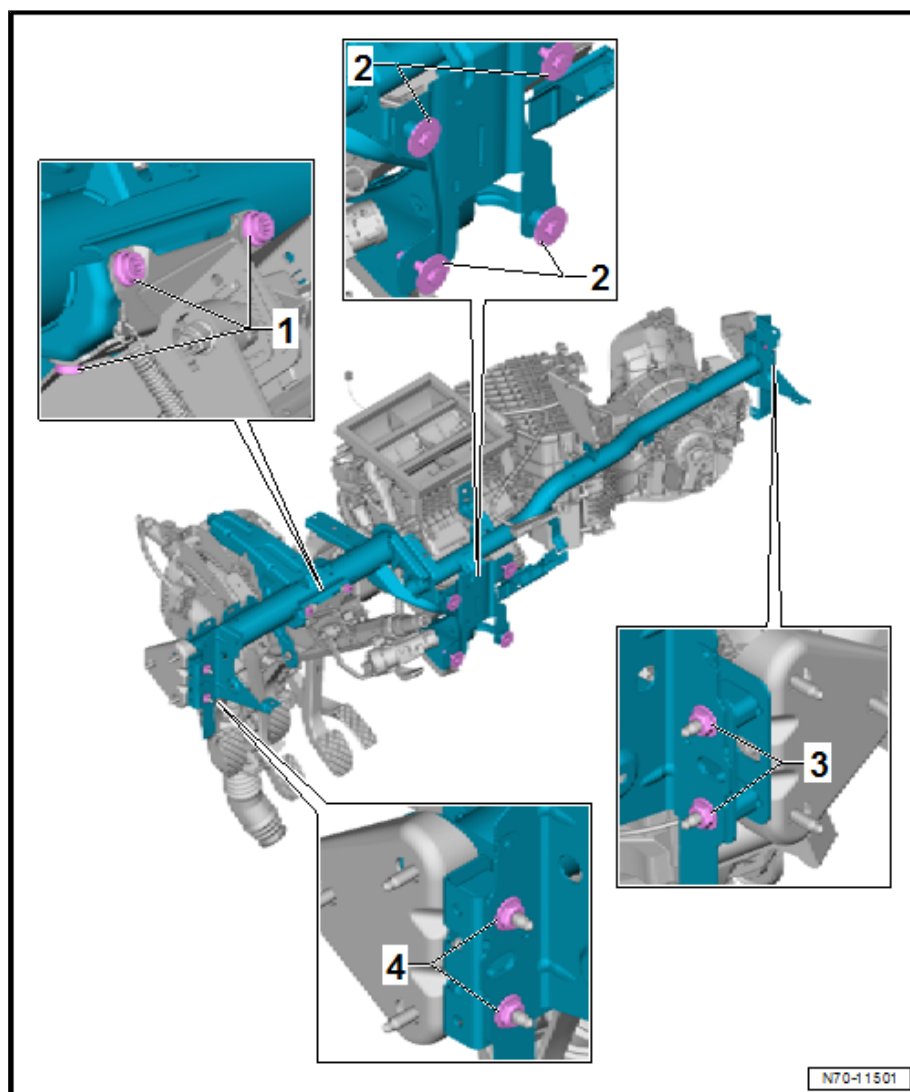
- Unscrew bolt -1- for crash bar to central tube on plenum chamber bulkhead.
- Remove dash panel ⇒ [page 206](#) .



- Detach bracket -5- of onboard supply control unit - J519- on cross member on driver side.
- Disconnect connectors on back of onboard supply control unit - J519- .
- Place bracket with onboard supply control unit - J519- and connected wired down on vehicle floor.
- Remove fuse holder B - SB- / fuse holder C - SC- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse holders, electronics

boxes; Overview of fitting locations – relay carriers, fuse holders, electronics boxes .

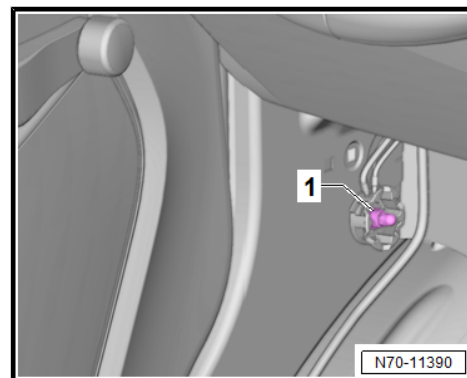
- Unscrew bolts -1- to -3- from heater and air conditioning unit.
- Unscrew nuts -4- from cross member bracket on vehicle floor.
- Remove cross member bracket.



- Unscrew threaded connections -1- of steering column from dash panel cross member ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48 ; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column .
- Unscrew bolts -2- from selector housing on dash panel cross member ⇒ 5-speed manual gearbox 02Z; Rep. gr. 34 ; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector mechanism .
- Unclip wires on dash panel central tube, detach them, and lay them to one side.
- Separate connectors from any control units which are fitted on cross member.
- Secure heater and air conditioning unit in footwell on front passenger side against slipping down.



- Unbolt bonnet release lever ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55 ; Bonnet; Removing and installing bonnet release lever .
- In area of nuts -3- and -4-, use a scribe to mark vertical and horizontal position on left and right of dash panel cross member in vehicle.
- Unscrew nuts -3- and -4- from brackets on sides of cross member.
- Unscrew nut of earth connection -1- from A-pillars on left and right in footwell.
- Detach central tube for dash panel and pull it slightly towards the rear.
- First, guide wiring harness on front passenger side over cross member so that it is free.
- With the aid of a second mechanic guide dash panel cross member through wiring harness on driver side, and remove it from vehicle towards front passenger side.



#### Installing

- Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:
- Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.
- Before bolting central tube for dash panel in place, align it using marks made during removal.

#### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“4.1 Assembly overview - central tube for dash panel”, page 219](#)
- ◆ ⇒ [“3.1 Assembly overview - dash panel”, page 196](#)



## 5 Interior trims

⇒ ["5.1 Removing and installing sill panel moulding", page 224](#)

⇒ ["5.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim", page 229](#)

⇒ ["5.3 Removing and installing B-pillar trim", page 231](#)

⇒ ["5.4 Removing and installing C-pillar trim", page 237](#)

⇒ ["5.5 Removing and installing D-pillar trim", page 240](#)

⇒ ["5.6 Removing and installing side trim", page 242](#)

⇒ ["5.7 Removing and installing floor covering", page 243](#)

### 5.1 Removing and installing sill panel moulding

⇒ ["5.1.1 Removing and installing sill panel moulding, front", page 224](#)

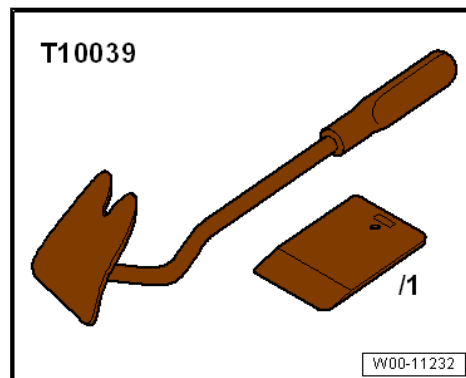
⇒ ["5.1.2 Removing and installing sill panel moulding, rear, Multi-van", page 226](#)

⇒ ["5.1.3 Removing and installing sill panel moulding, rear, double cab", page 227](#)

#### 5.1.1 Removing and installing sill panel moulding, front

Special tools and workshop equipment required

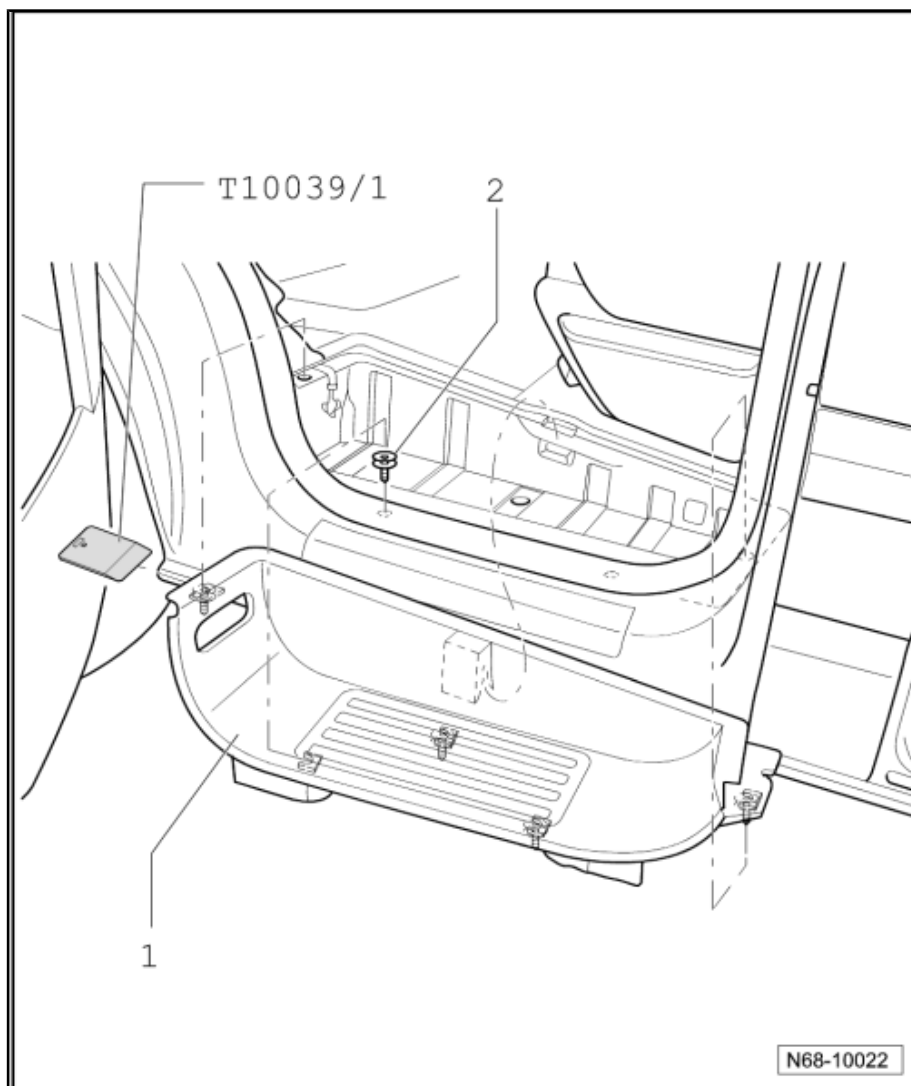
- ◆ Release lever - T10039-



#### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. The removal and installation of the right side of the vehicle is similar.*

#### Removing



- Remove front left entry light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing front entry light -W31-/-W32- .
- Remove upper B-pillar trim ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- Remove lower B-pillar trim ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- In case of vehicles without sliding door remove side trim panel ⇒ [page 242](#) .
- Using wedge - T10039/1- , lever sill panel moulding -1- out of mountings starting at front.
- Detach sill panel moulding -1- upwards on inside.
- Pull out sill panel moulding -1-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

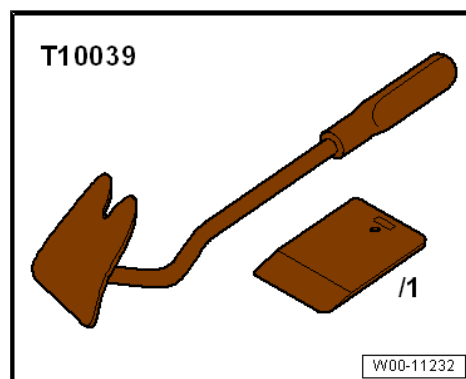
- Before installing, check retaining clips -2- for damage and renew if necessary.
- After installing, ensure door seals are seated correctly.



## 5.1.2 Removing and installing sill panel moulding, rear, Multivan

Special tools and workshop equipment required

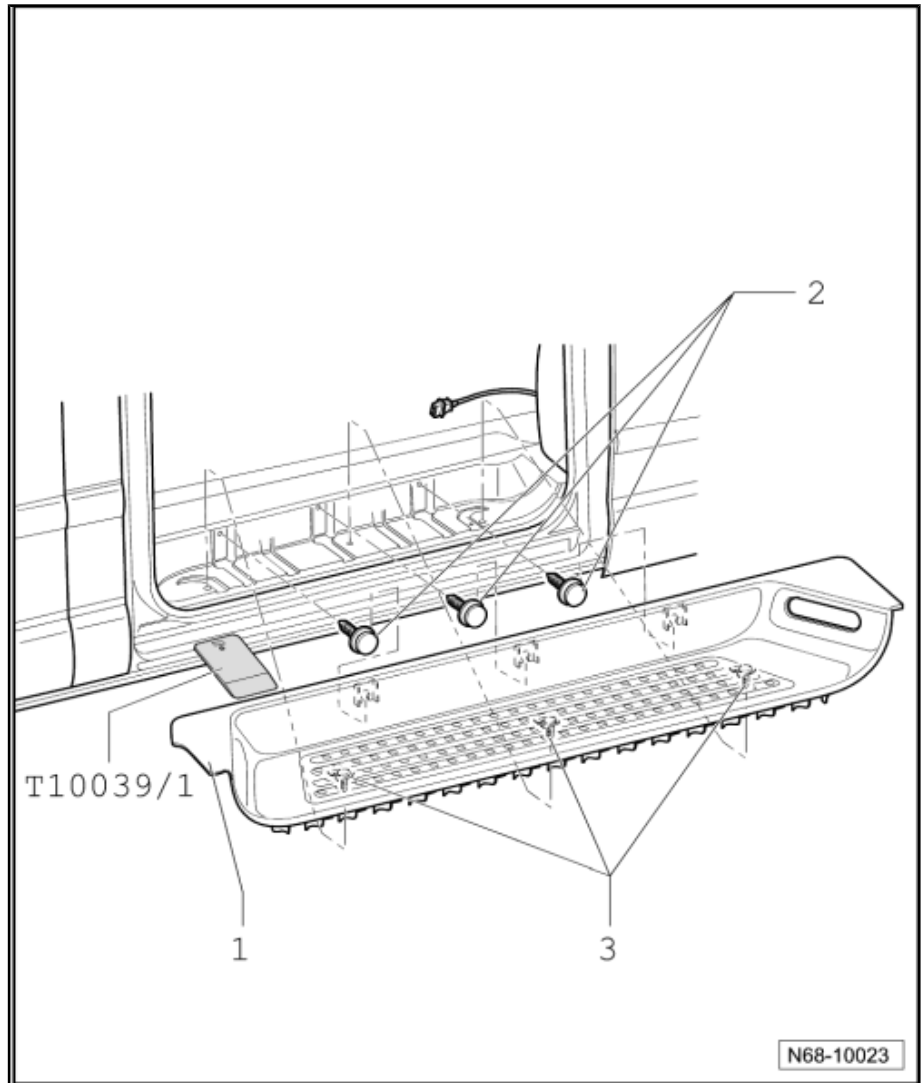
- ◆ Release lever - T10039-



### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. The removal and installation of the right side of the vehicle is similar.*

### Removing



- Remove left rear entry light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing front entry light -W33-/-W34- .
- Remove storage compartment on front seat frame.
- Remove lower B-pillar trim ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- Using wedge - T10039/1- , lever sill panel moulding -1- out of mountings starting at front.
- Remove sill panel moulding -1-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

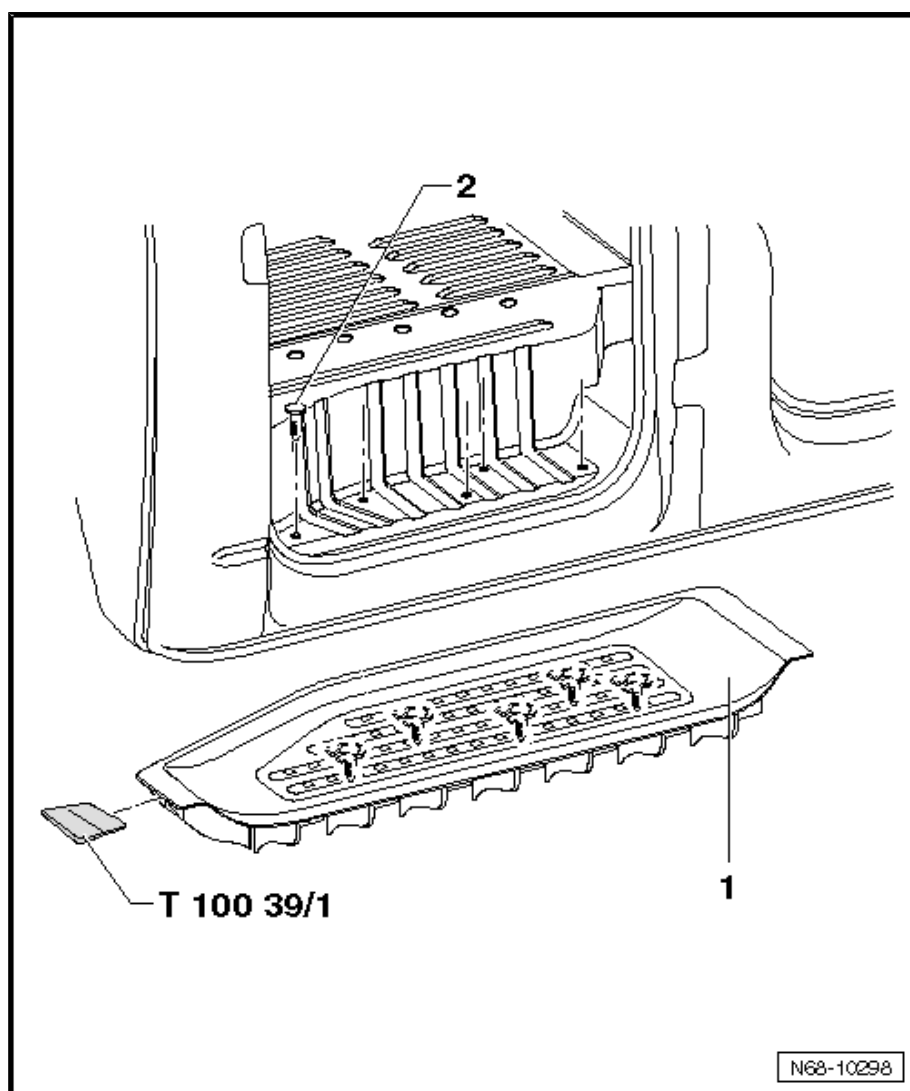
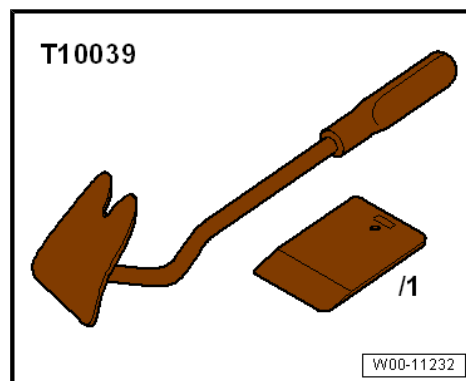
- Before installing, check retaining clips for damage and renew if necessary.
- During assembly, insert retaining clips -2- approx. half way into body. Retaining clips -3- are clipped into step trim -1-.
- After installing, ensure door seals are seated correctly.

### 5.1.3 Removing and installing sill panel moulding, rear, double cab

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Release lever - T10039-



### Removing

- Remove upper B-pillar trim ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- Remove lower B-pillar trim ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- Using wedge - T10039/1- , lever out step insert -1- from mountings, starting at front.
- Detach step insert -1- upwards on inside.





- Pull out step insert -1-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



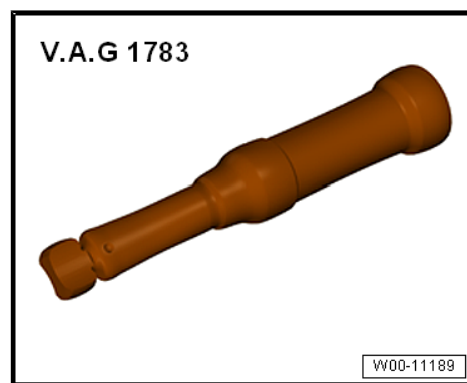
#### Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check retaining clips -2- for damage and renew if necessary.*
- ◆ *After installing, ensure door seals are seated correctly.*

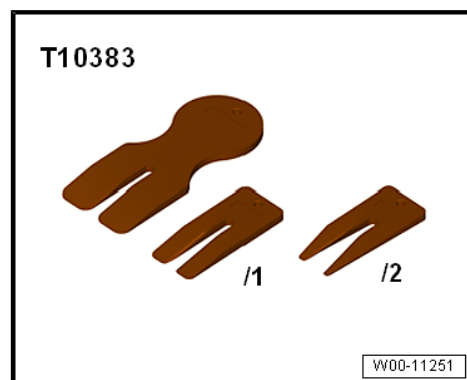
## 5.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

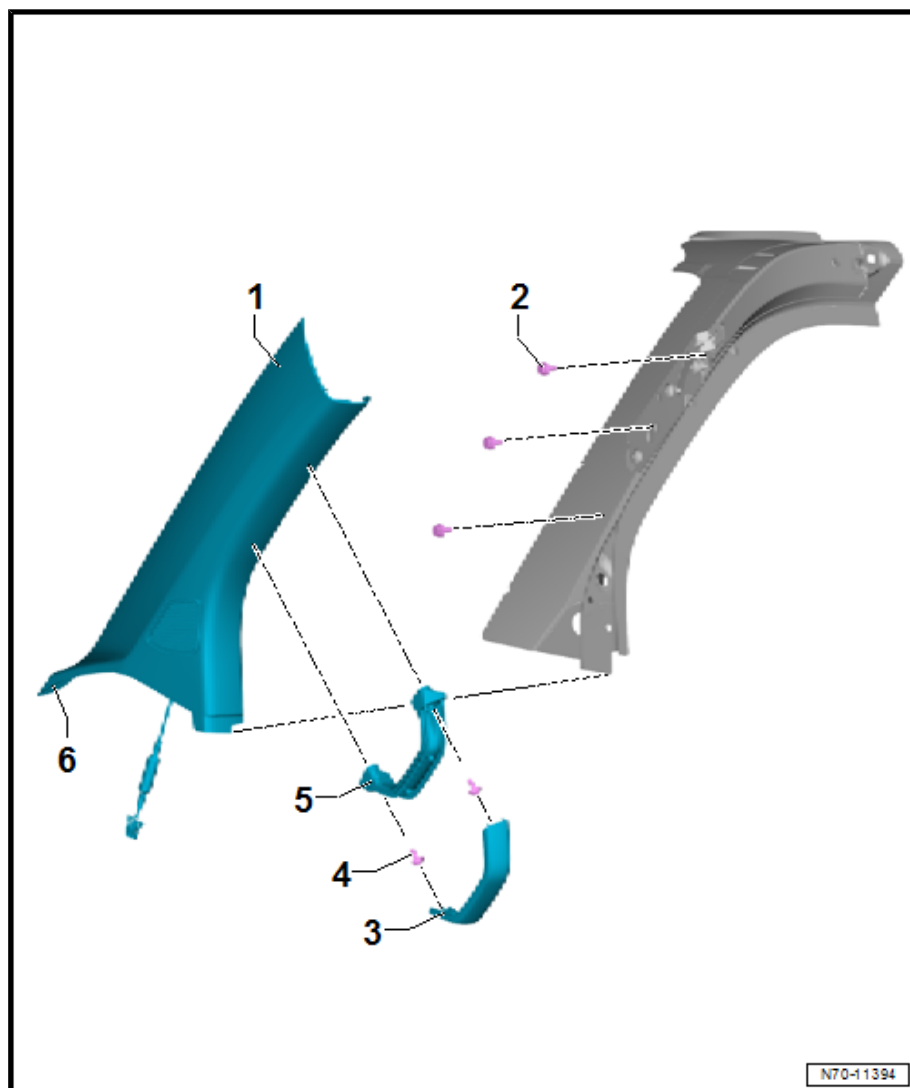


- ◆ Wedges - T10383-



#### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the front passenger side.  
Follow same instructions for the driver side as appropriate.*



### Removing

- Starting at bottom, lever upper part of handle -3- out of mounting using a small screwdriver.
- Unscrew bolts -4-.
- Remove bottom part of handle -5-.
- Unclip trim -1- from mounting points, starting at top.
- Unhook lower end -6- of trim -1- from dash panel.
- If fitted, disconnect connector from loudspeaker.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



## Note

- ◆ Before installing, check all fasteners -2- for damage and renew if necessary.
- ◆ Remove any clips left in bodywork mountings using removal tool - T40280- and fit them in trim for installation.
- ◆ Following installation, ensure that trim is positioned in door seal beading.

## Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for handle	6 Nm

## 5.3 Removing and installing B-pillar trim

⇒ [“5.3.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim, Multivan, top”, page 231](#)

⇒ [“5.3.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim, Multivan, bottom”, page 232](#)

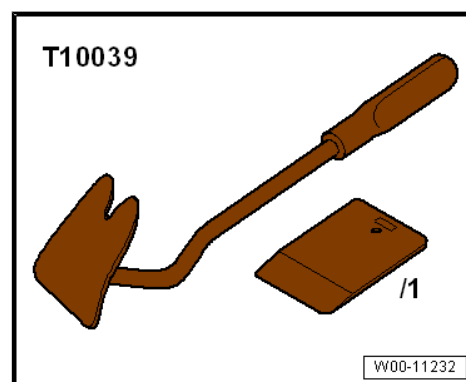
⇒ [“5.3.3 Removing and installing B-pillar trim, Transporter, top”, page 234](#)

⇒ [“5.3.4 Removing and installing B-pillar trim, Transporter, bottom”, page 236](#)

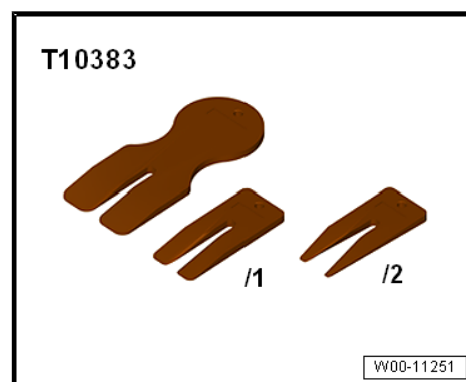
### 5.3.1 Removing and installing B-pillar trim, Multivan, top

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-



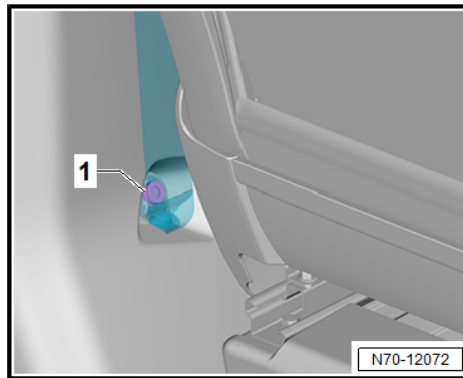
- ◆ Wedges - T10383-



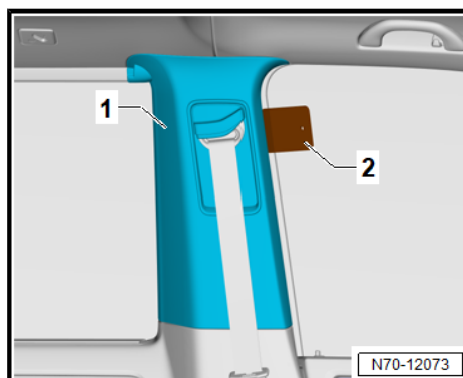


### Removing

- Remove grab handle on B-pillar ➔ [page 51](#) .
- Unscrew bolt -1-.



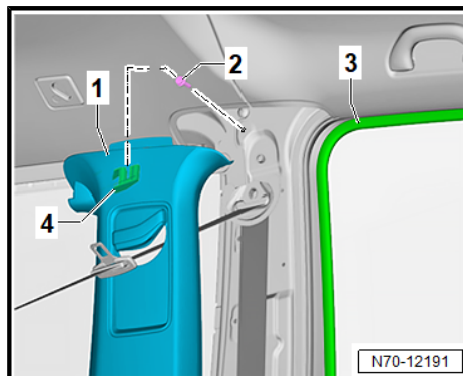
- Using wedge - T10039/1- -2-, lever trim -1- out of beading.
- Pull out seat belt through opening in trim.



### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

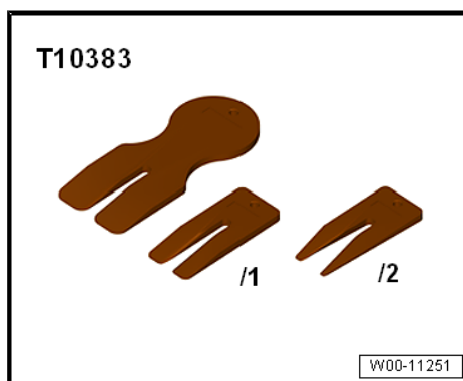
- Fit clip -2- in bracket -4-.
- Fit trim -1- with clip -2- on B-pillar.
- Apply pressure to trim and, in doing so, insert trim in beading -3- of door seal.

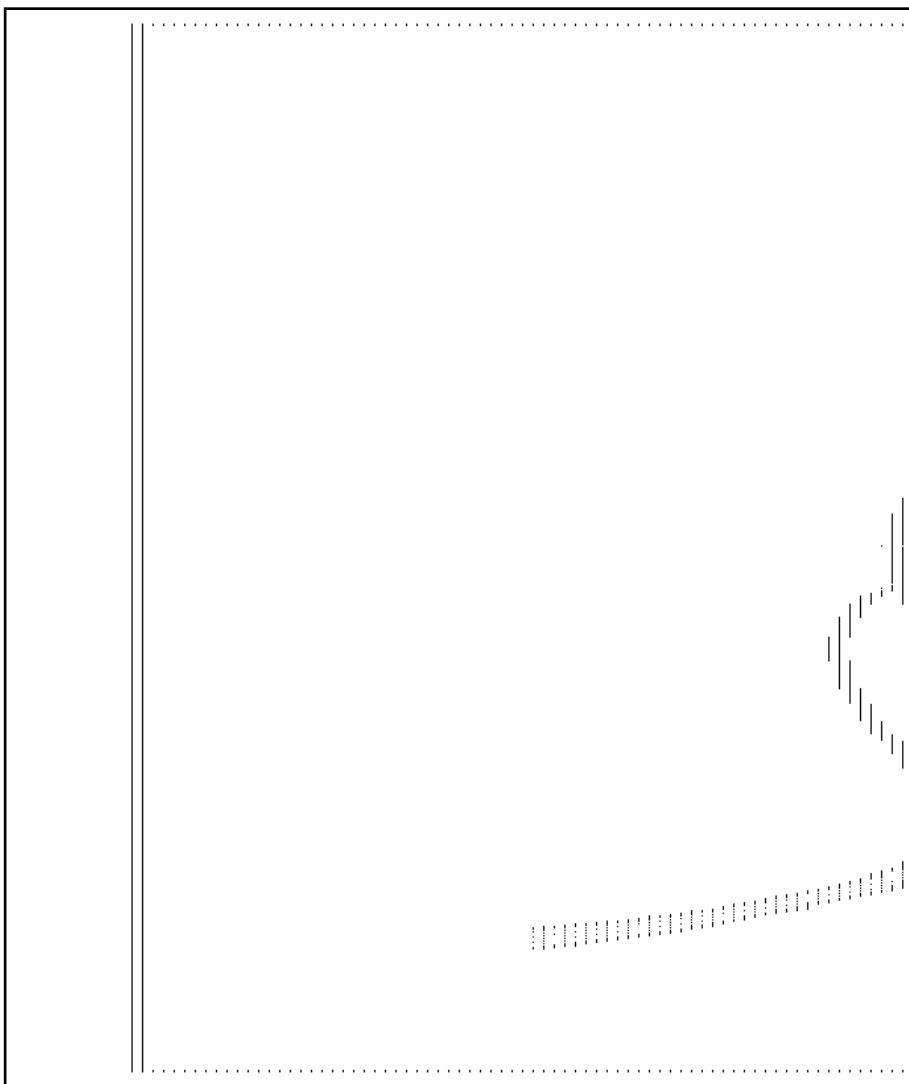


### 5.3.2 Removing and installing B-pillar trim, Multivan, bottom

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Wedges - T10383-





## Removing



### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the front passenger side. Follow same instructions for the driver side as appropriate.*

- Remove grab handle on B-pillar.
- Remove upper B-pillar trim on sliding door side ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- If fitted, remove interior monitoring deactivation switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Anti-theft alarm system; Assembly overview - interior monitoring .
- Starting at top, pull B-pillar trim -2- out of mountings and door seal beading.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.
- Remove any clips -1- left in body mountings using wedge - T10383- , and fit them in trim for installation.

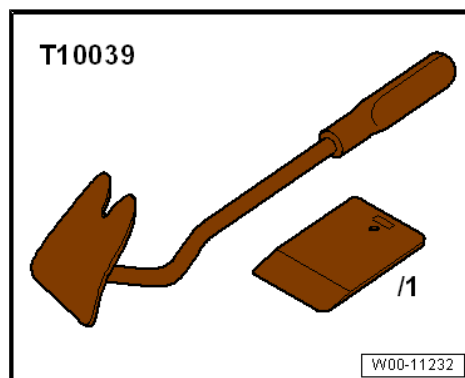


- Following installation, ensure that trim is positioned in door seal beading.

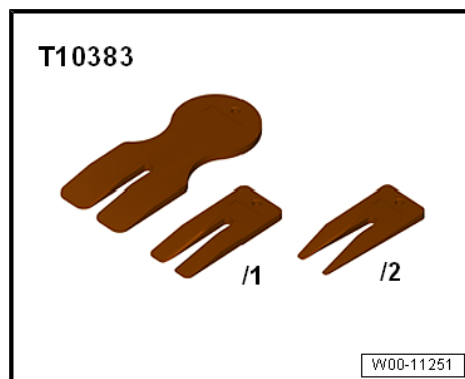
### 5.3.3 Removing and installing B-pillar trim, Transporter, top

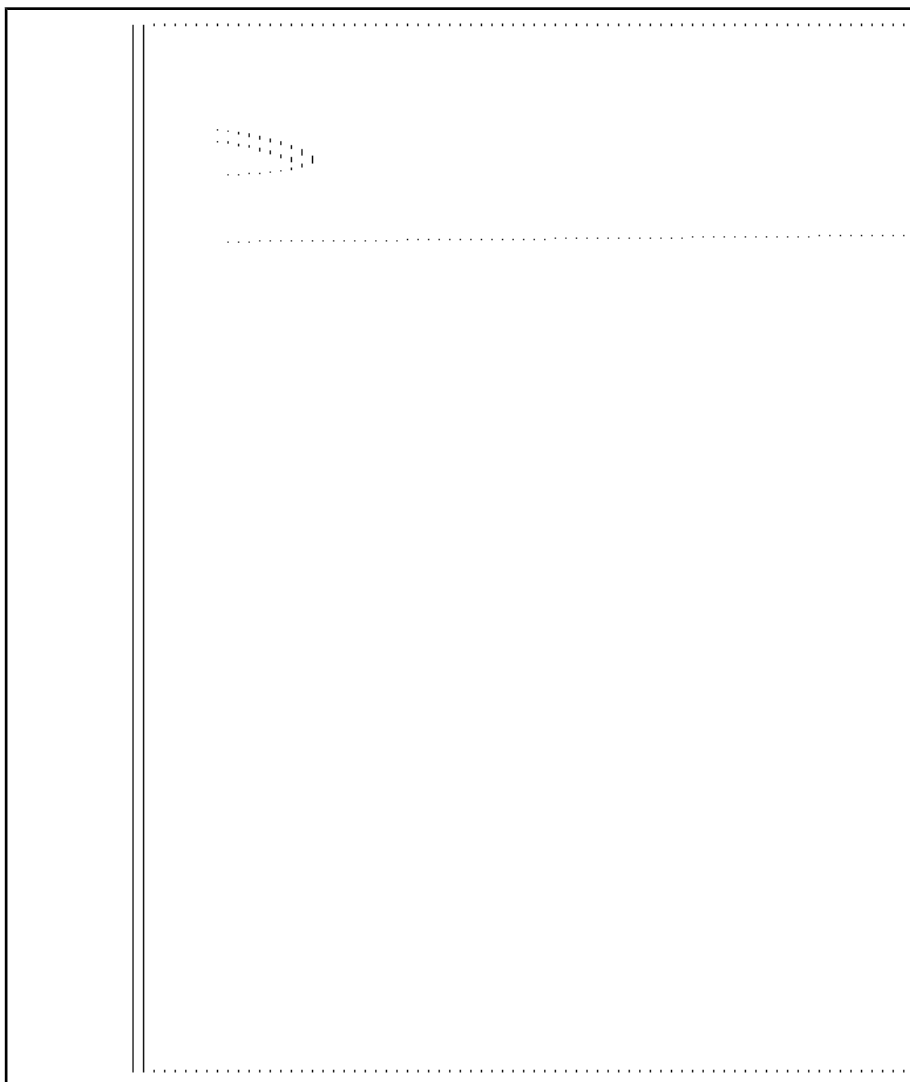
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-



- ◆ Wedges - T10383-





## Removing



### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the front passenger side. Follow same instructions for the driver side as appropriate.*

- If fitted, remove coat hook.
- Remove grab handle on B-pillar.
- Remove belt end fitting and belt guide fitting from front seat belt.
- Using wedge - T10039/1- , lever B-pillar trim -2- out of mounting in body, and pull out door seal beading.
- Pull seat belt through opening in B-pillar trim -2-.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.

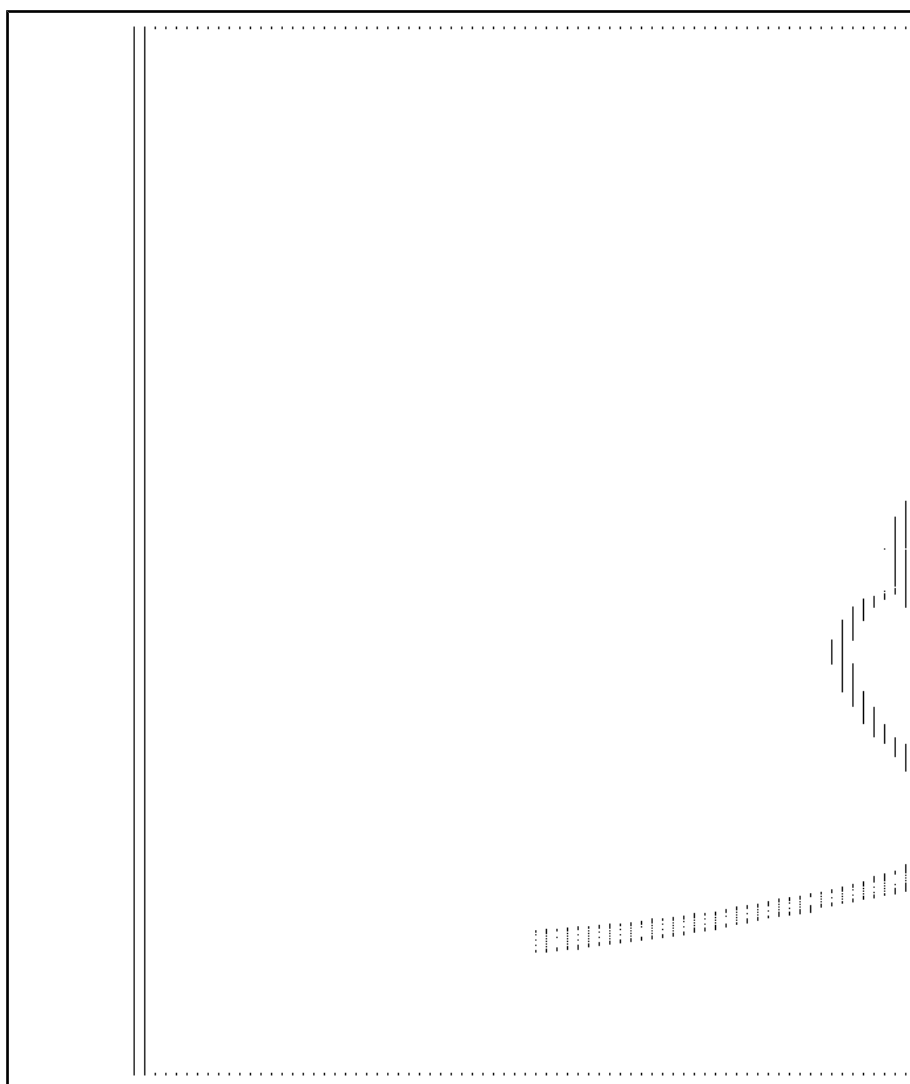
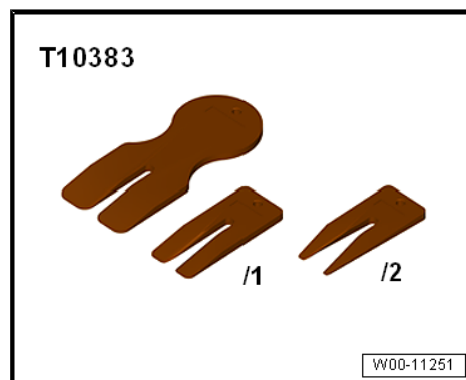


- Remove any clips -1- left in body mountings using wedge - T10383- / -T40280- and fit them in trim for installation.
- Following installation, ensure that trim is positioned in door seal beading.

### 5.3.4 Removing and installing B-pillar trim, Transporter, bottom

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges - T10383-







## Removing



### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the front passenger side. Follow same instructions for the driver side as appropriate.*

- Remove grab handle on B-pillar.
- Remove upper B-pillar trim on sliding door side ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- If fitted, remove interior monitoring deactivation switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Anti-theft alarm system; Assembly overview - interior monitoring .
- Starting at top, pull trim -2- out of mountings and door seal beading.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



### Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- ◆ *Remove any clips -1- left in body mountings using wedge - T10383- , and fit them in trim for installation.*
- ◆ *Following installation, ensure that trim is positioned in door seal beading.*

## 5.4 Removing and installing C-pillar trim

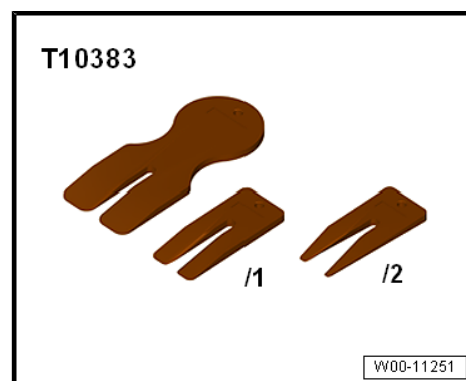
⇒ [“5.4.1 Removing and installing C-pillar trim, Multivan”, page 237](#)

⇒ [“5.4.2 Removing and installing C-pillar trim, Transporter”, page 238](#)

### 5.4.1 Removing and installing C-pillar trim, Multivan

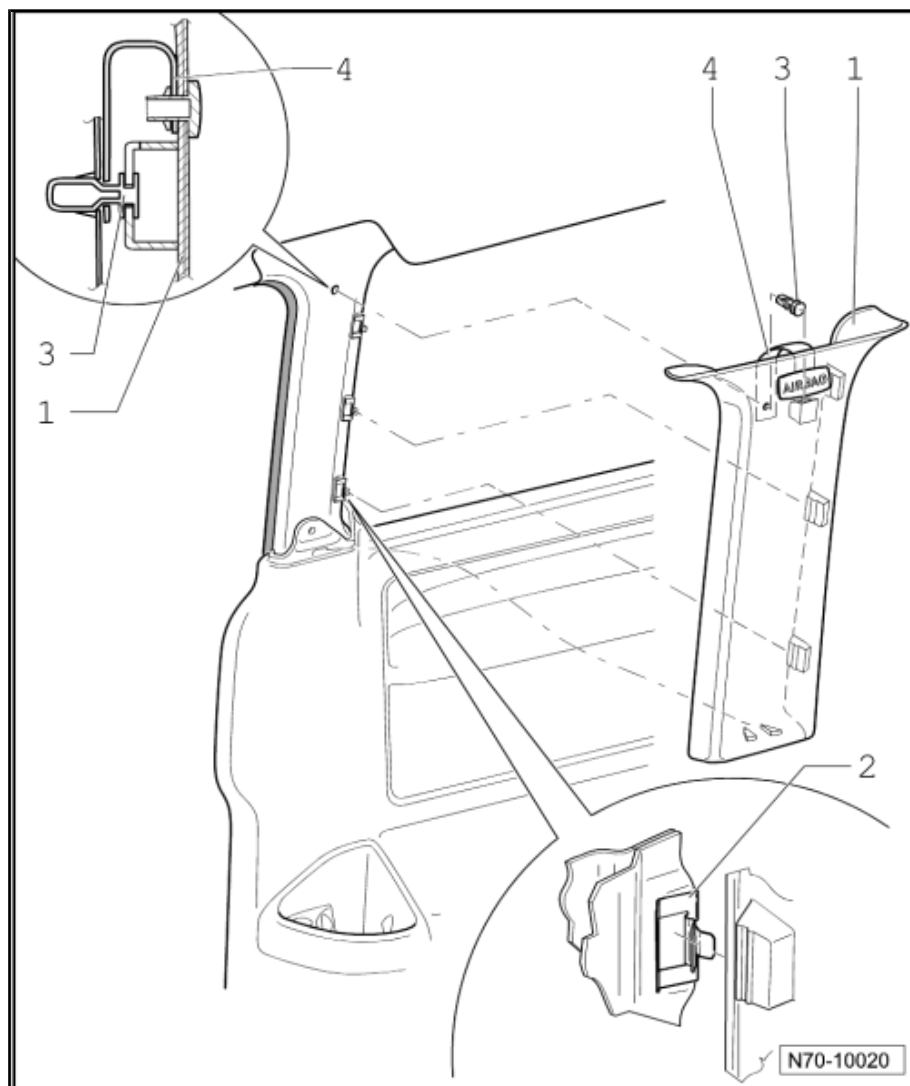
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges - T10383-



### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the front passenger side. Follow same instructions for the driver side as appropriate.*



### Removing

- Pull C-pillar trim -1- out of door seal beading and retaining clips -2-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check retaining clips -2- and retaining clip -3- for damage and renew if necessary.
- Remove any clips left in the body mountings using wedge -T10383- , and fit them in the trim for installation.
- Following installation, ensure that trim is positioned in door seal beading.

When installing, moving the retaining strap -4- from its correct position is not permissible.

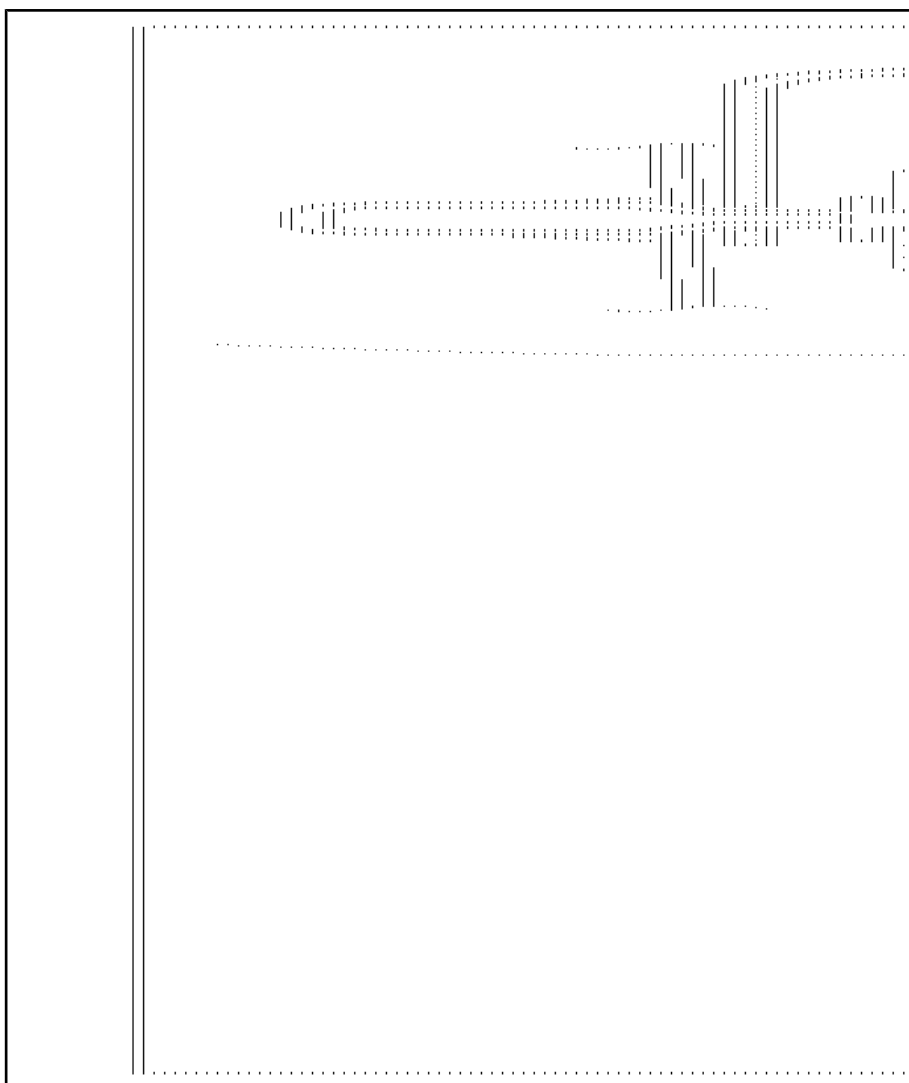
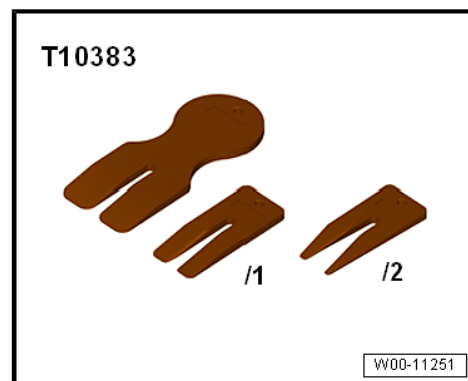
## 5.4.2 Removing and installing C-pillar trim, Transporter

Removal and installation is described for the front passenger side. Follow same instructions for the driver side as appropriate.

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**



◆ Wedges - T10383-



**Removing**

- Remove belt end fitting.
- Pull C-pillar trim -1- out of door seal beading and retaining clips -5-.
- Thread seat belt -4- through opening in trim.

**Installing**

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



- Before installing, check retaining clips -5- and retaining clip -2- for damage and renew if necessary.
- Remove any clips left in the body mountings using wedge - T10383- , and fit them in the trim for installation.
- Following installation, ensure that trim is positioned in door seal beading.

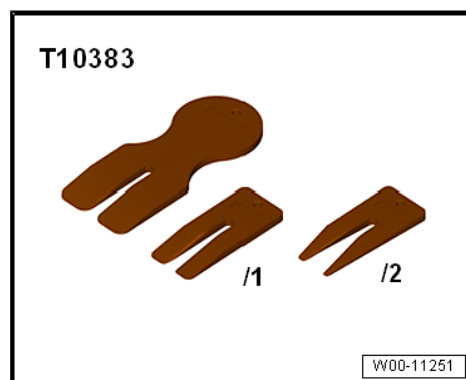
When installing, moving the retaining strap -3- from its correct position is not permissible.

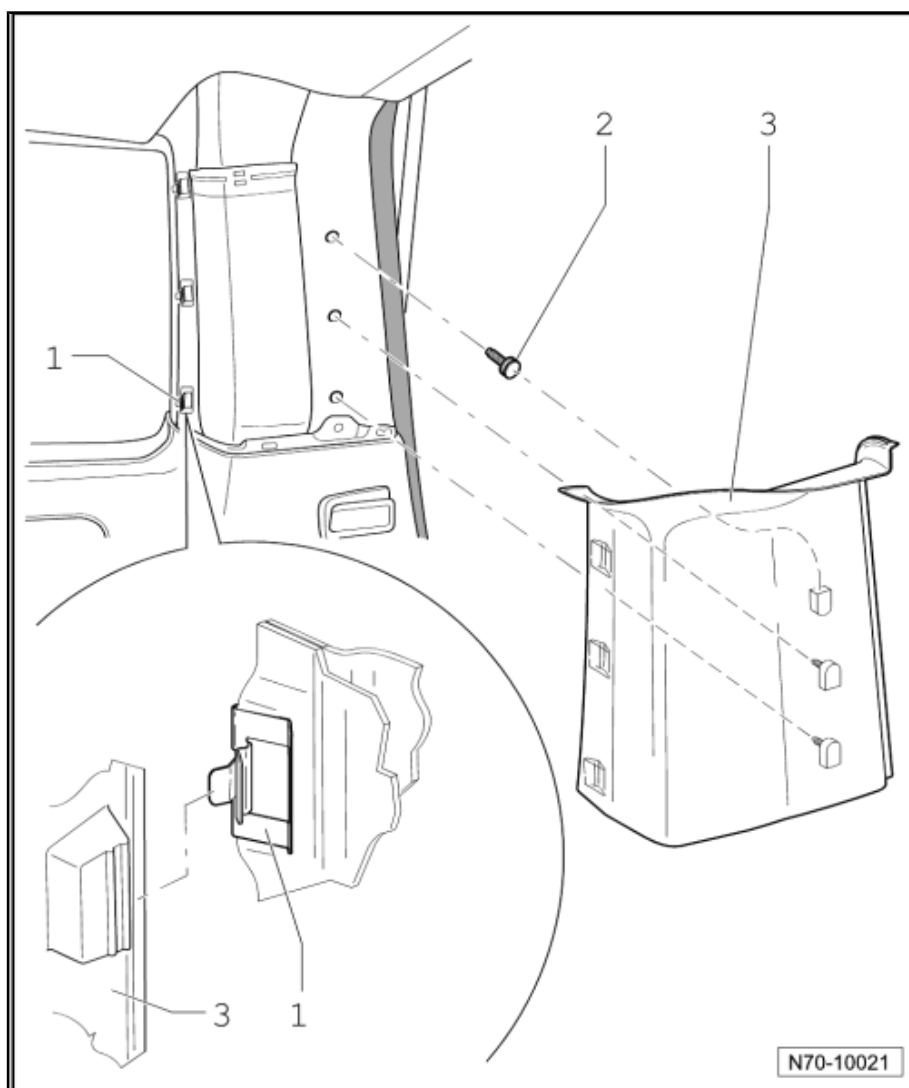
## 5.5 Removing and installing D-pillar trim

Removal and installation is described for the front passenger side. Follow same instructions for the driver side as appropriate.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges - T10383-





### Removing

- Pull D-pillar trim -3- out of mountings in body and out of beading of rear lid seal beading.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

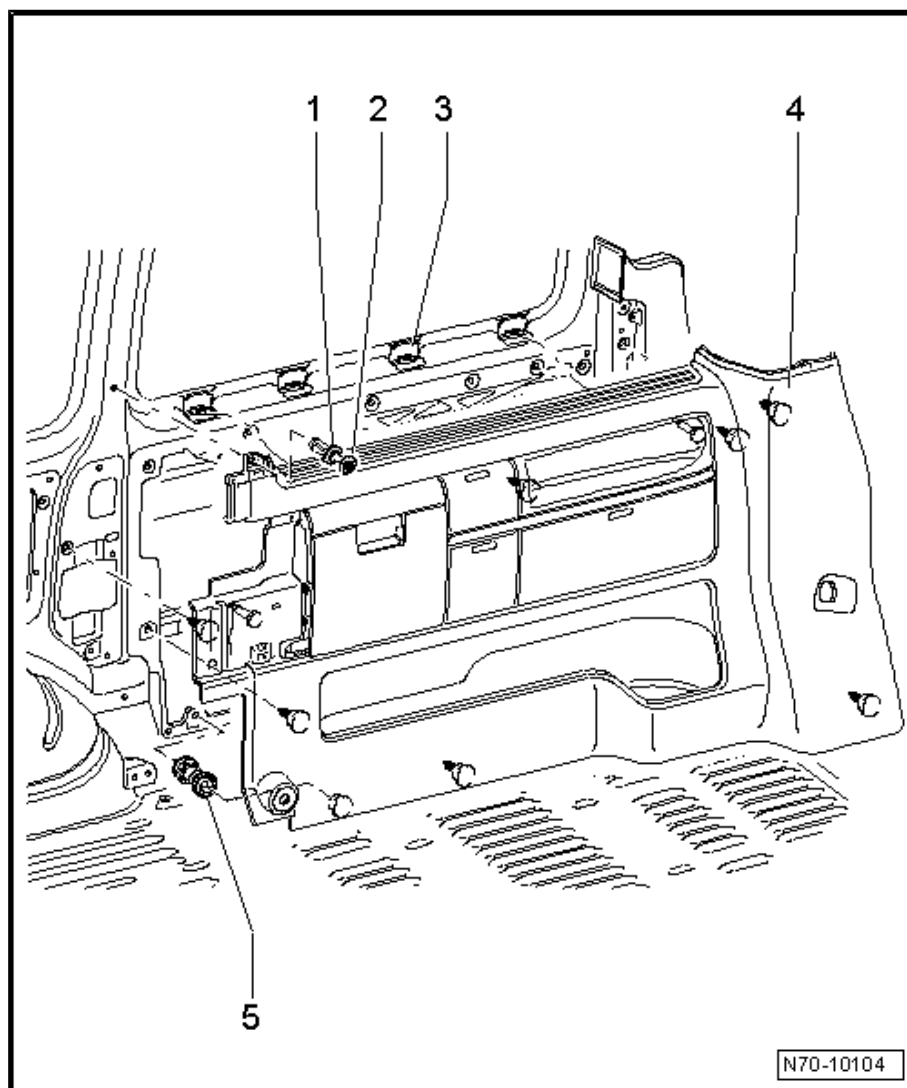
- Before installing, check retaining clips -1- and clips -2- for damage and renew if necessary.
- Remove any clips left in the body mountings using wedge - T10383- , and fit them in the trim for installation.
- Following installation, ensure that trim is positioned in door seal beading.



## 5.6 Removing and installing side trim

⇒ "5.6.1 Removing and installing side trim, Multivan, front, side of vehicle without sliding door", page 242

### 5.6.1 Removing and installing side trim, Multivan, front, side of vehicle without sliding door



#### Removing



#### Note

- ◆ Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. The removal and installation of the right side of the vehicle is similar.
- ◆ The removal and installation procedures may have to be modified slightly depending on variations in equipment.
- Switch off ignition.
- Remove upper B-pillar trim ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- Remove upper C-pillar trim ⇒ [page 237](#) .



- Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove trim panel of rear side trim.
- Remove rear ashtray together with mounting frame  
⇒ [page 55](#) .
- Remove rear side trim ⇒ [page 260](#) .
- Pull clamping pin -2- out spreader rivet -1-.
- Release side panel trim -4- from mounting brackets.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check retaining clips -3- and clips -5- for damage and renew if necessary.*
- ◆ *After installation, check that trim is completely behind beading of door seal.*

## 5.7 Removing and installing floor covering

⇒ [“5.7.1 Removing and installing floor covering, driver area”, page 243](#)

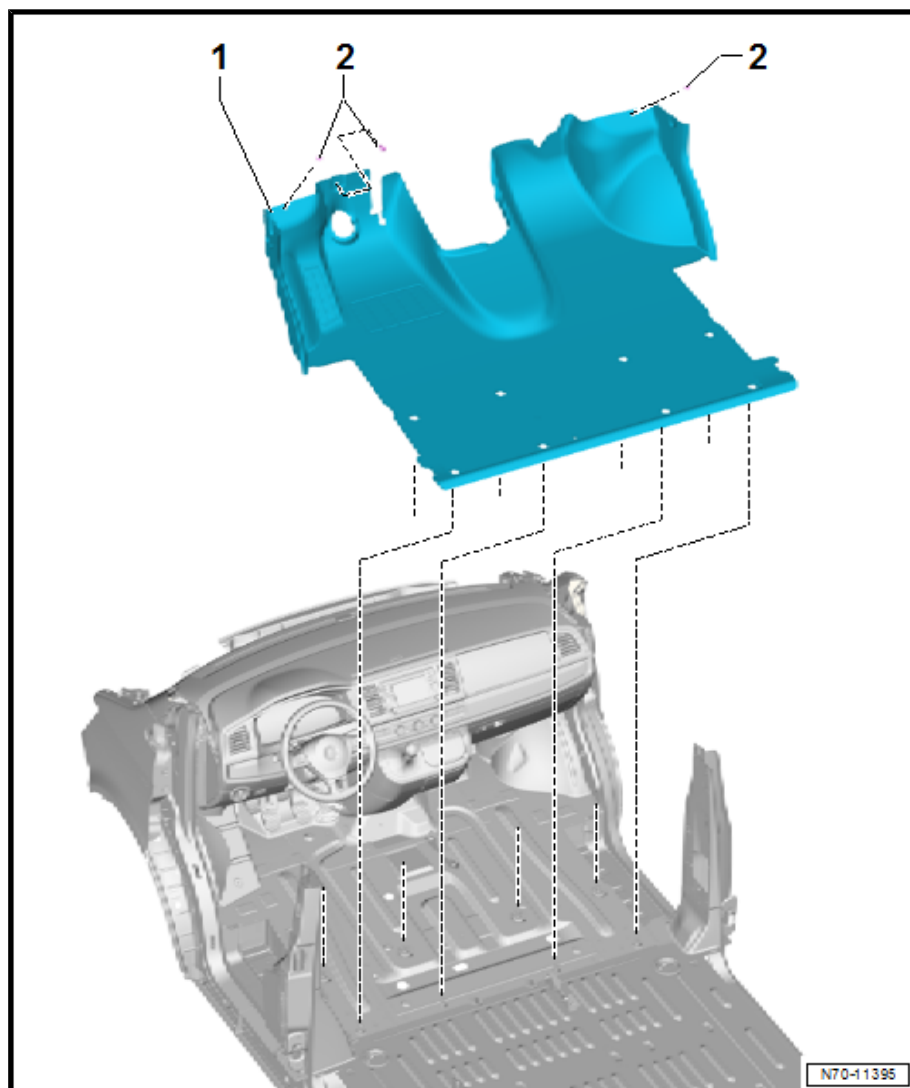
⇒ [“5.7.2 Removing and installing floor covering, Multivan, passenger compartment”, page 245](#)

⇒ [“5.7.3 Removing and installing floor covering, Transporter, passenger compartment”, page 247](#)

⇒ [“5.7.4 Removing and installing floor covering, Transporter, passenger compartment, wood-type floor covering”, page 249](#)

### 5.7.1 Removing and installing floor covering, driver area

#### Removing



- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove front seats ⇒ [page 300](#) .
- Remove second battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Removing and installing battery .
- Remove front seat frames ⇒ [page 300](#) .
- Remove grab handle on B-pillars.
- Remove front entry lights ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing front entry light -W31/-W32- .
- Remove upper B-pillar trims ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- Remove lower B-pillar trim on sliding door side ⇒ [page 231](#) .
- On side of vehicle without sliding door, remove front side panel trim ⇒ [page 242](#) .
- Remove front sill panel mouldings ⇒ [page 224](#) .
- Remove dash panel cover on driver side ⇒ [page 28](#) .
- Remove front passenger side footwell cover ⇒ [page 31](#) .
- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 63](#) .





- Remove glove compartment ➔ [page 32](#) .
- Detach snap fasteners -2- from body.
- Pull out floor covering in front seat area -1- from below dash panel, and pull it sideways out of vehicle.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### WARNING

*Ensure that nobody is in vehicle.*

- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ➔ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

### 5.7.2 Removing and installing floor covering, Multivan, passenger compartment

#### Removing



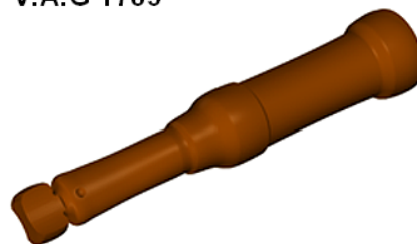
#### Note

*If a rubber floor covering is fitted in the passenger compartment, the respective replacement part is provided with the cut-outs for the seats or seat rails. However, no provision is made for cut-outs for additional installations, e.g. fastening rings. The potential cut-outs are marked on the underside of the rubber floor covering. Any cut-outs required for the specific vehicle must be cut using, for example, the electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- .*

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

V.A.G 1783



W00-11189

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

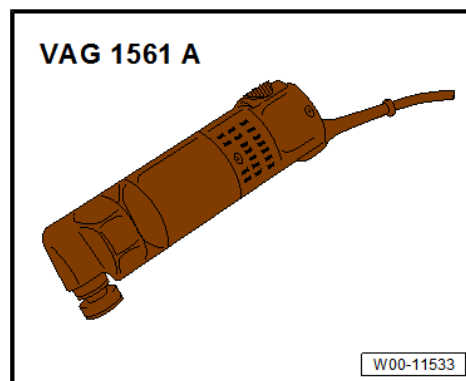
V.A.G 1331



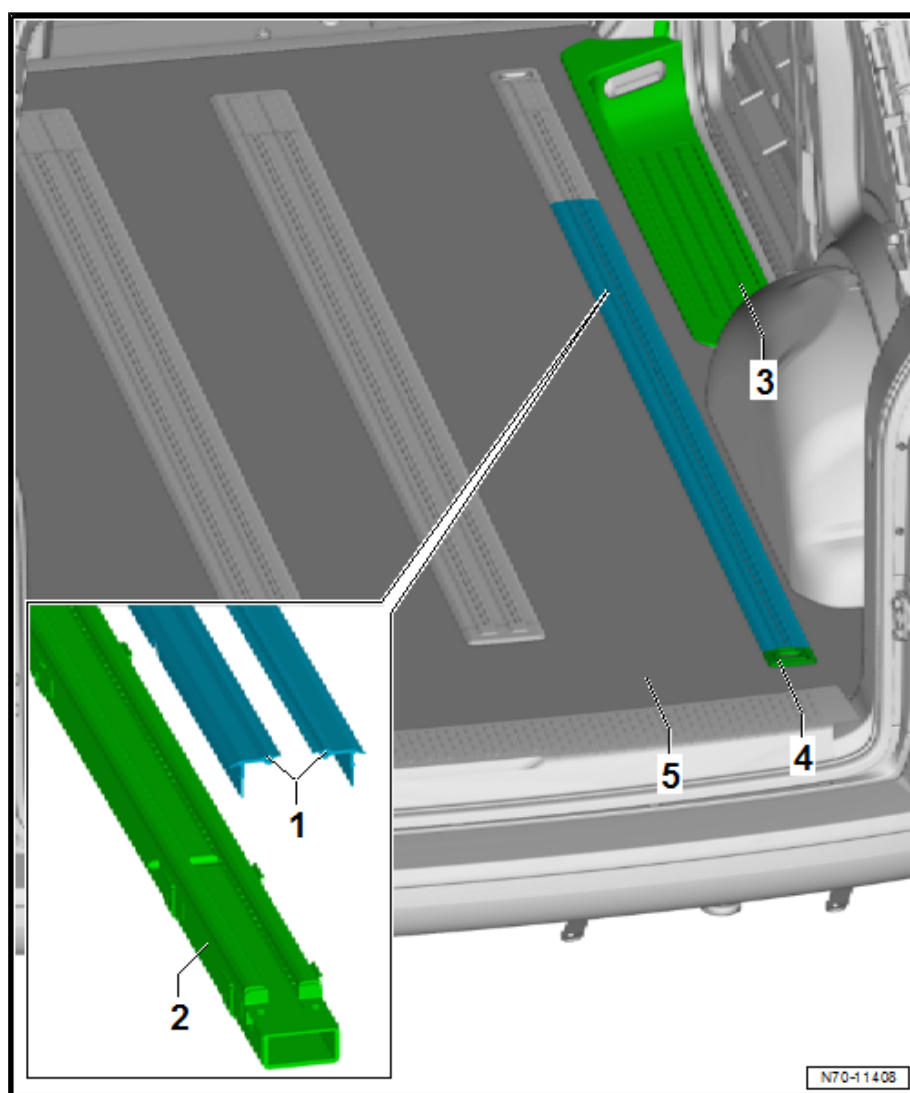
W00-11166



- ◆ Electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A-



## Removing



- Remove seats from 2nd row ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove seats from 3rd row ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove rear sill panel mouldings -3- ⇒ [page 224](#) .
- Unclip covers -1- from all seat rails -2- ⇒ [page 99](#) .
- Remove side trim panel ⇒ [page 242](#) .



- Remove all fastening rings -4- on seat rails ⇒ [page 270](#) .
- Pull out floor covering -5- from beneath rear lock carrier cover.
- Remove floor covering -5- backwards out of vehicle.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

### 5.7.3 Removing and installing floor covering, Transporter, passenger compartment

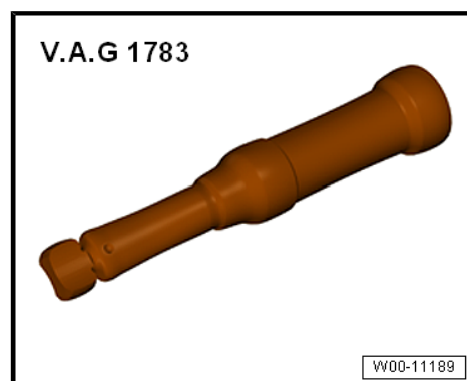


#### Note

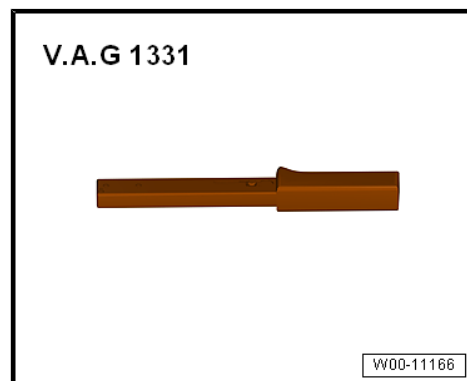
*If a rubber floor covering is fitted in the passenger compartment, the respective replacement part is provided with the cut-outs for the seats or seat rails. However, no provision is made for cut-outs for additional installations, e.g. fastening rings. The potential cut-outs are marked on the underside of the rubber floor covering. Any cut-outs required for the specific vehicle must be cut using, for example, the electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- .*

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

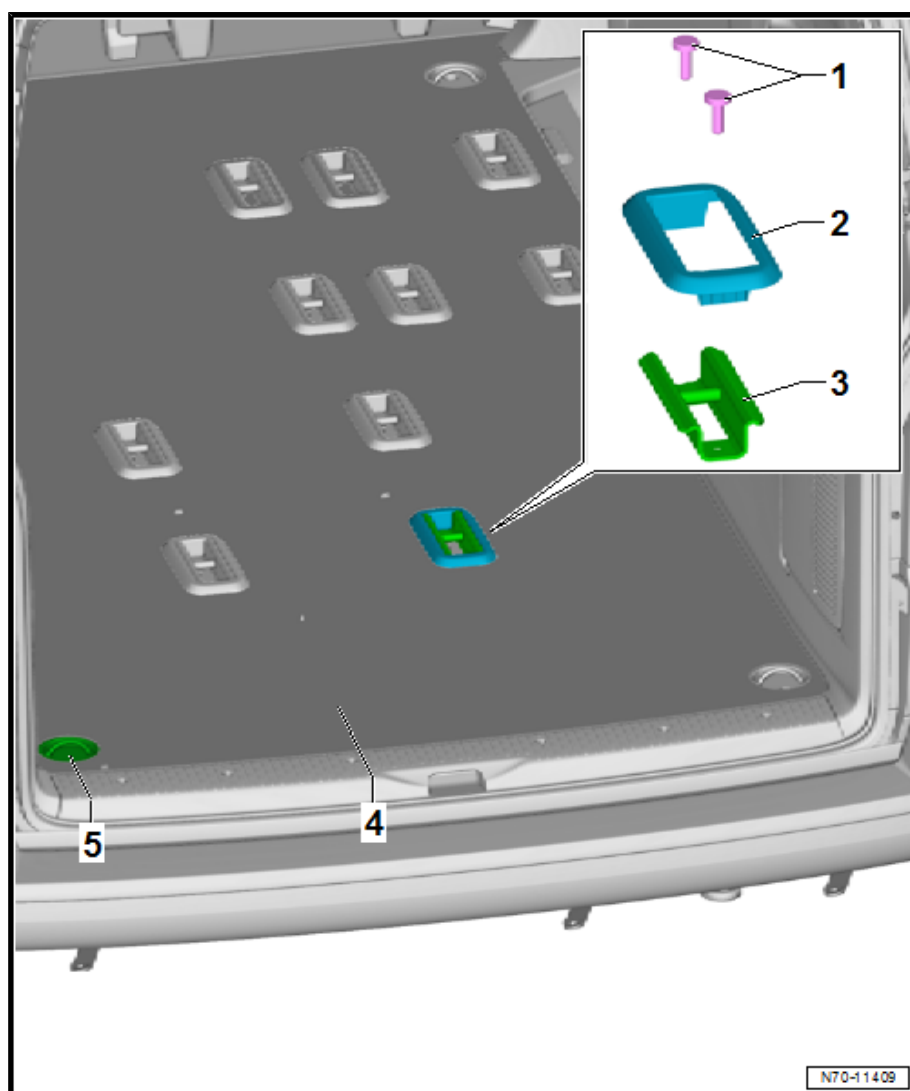
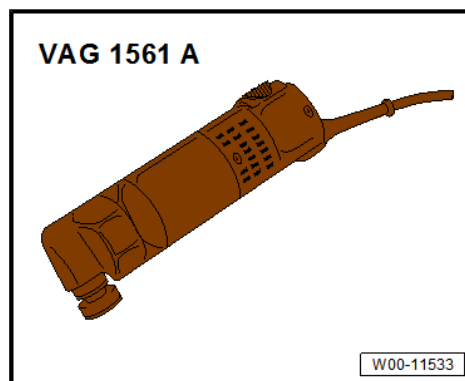


- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-





- ♦ Electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A-



### Removing

- Remove seats from 2nd row ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove seats from 3rd row ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove rear sill panel mouldings ⇒ [page 224](#) .
- Remove side trim panel ⇒ [page 242](#) .
- Remove all fastening rings -5- in floor covering ⇒ [page 270](#) .

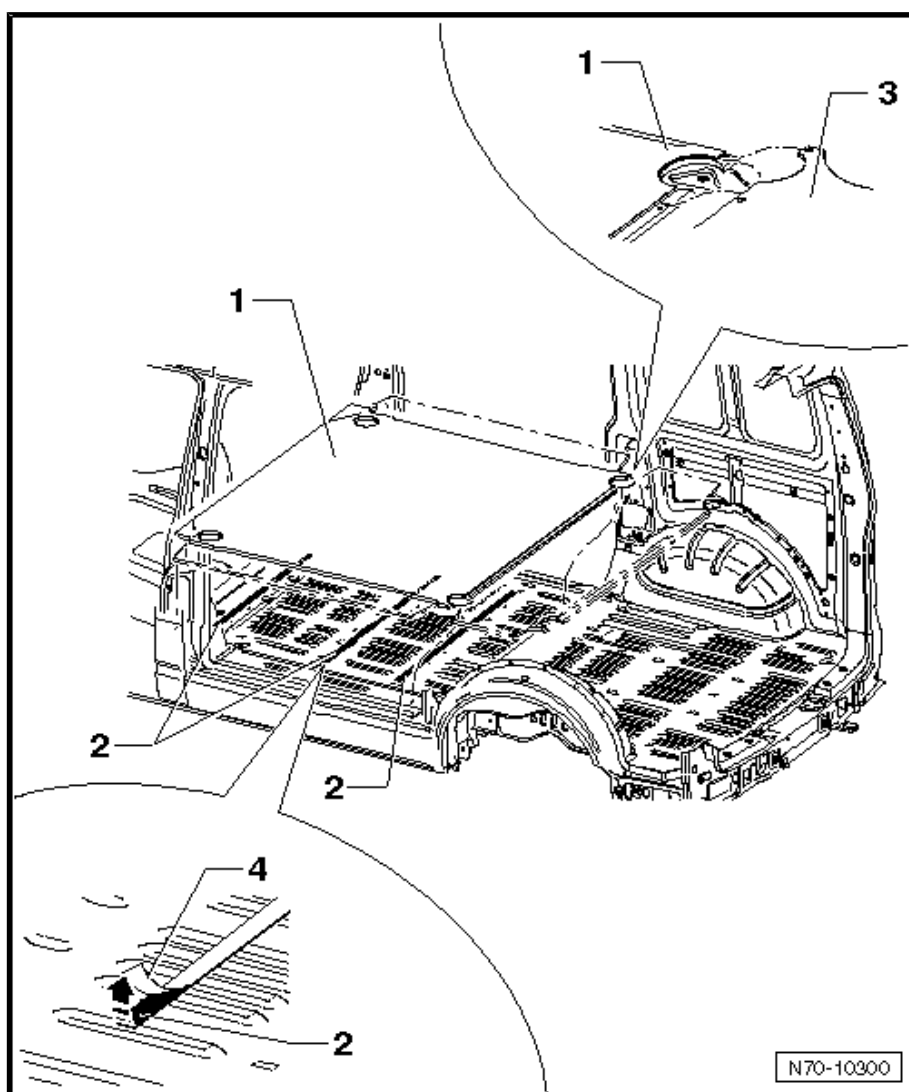


- Remove seat attachment rails -3- ⇒ [page 99](#) .
- Remove cover -2- from all seat rails.
- Pull out floor covering -4- from beneath rear lock carrier cover.
- Remove floor covering -4- backwards out of vehicle.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

### 5.7.4 Removing and installing floor covering, Transporter, passenger compartment, wood-type floor covering



#### Removing

- Remove rear floor covering -3- ⇒ [page 243](#) .
- Remove rear sill panel mouldings ⇒ [page 224](#) .
- Remove fastening rings ⇒ [page 270](#) .
- Detach front floor covering -1- upwards from butyl adhesive sealing cord - AKL 450 005 05- -2-.
- Remove front floor covering -1- towards rear from vehicle.



### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Bond butyl adhesive sealing cord - AKL 450 005 05- -2- onto floor panel in centre of beading (shorten if necessary).
- Pull off protective paper -4- upwards, and place front floor covering -1- into vehicle from rear.
- Install rear floor covering -3-.



## 6 Luggage compartment trims

⇒ [“6.1 Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim”, page 251](#)

⇒ [“6.2 Assembly overview - upper rear lid trim”, page 253](#)

⇒ [“6.3 Removing and installing lower rear lid trim”, page 253](#)

⇒ [“6.4 Removing and installing upper rear lid trim”, page 257](#)

⇒ [“6.5 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim”, page 259](#)

⇒ [“6.6 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor”, page 264](#)

⇒ [“6.7 Removing and installing lock carrier trim”, page 266](#)

⇒ [“6.8 Removing and installing fastening rings”, page 270](#)

### 6.1 Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim

⇒ [“6.1.1 Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim, Multivan”, page 251](#)

⇒ [“6.1.2 Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim, Transporter”, page 252](#)

#### 6.1.1 Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim, Multivan

##### 1 - Rear lid trim (bottom section)

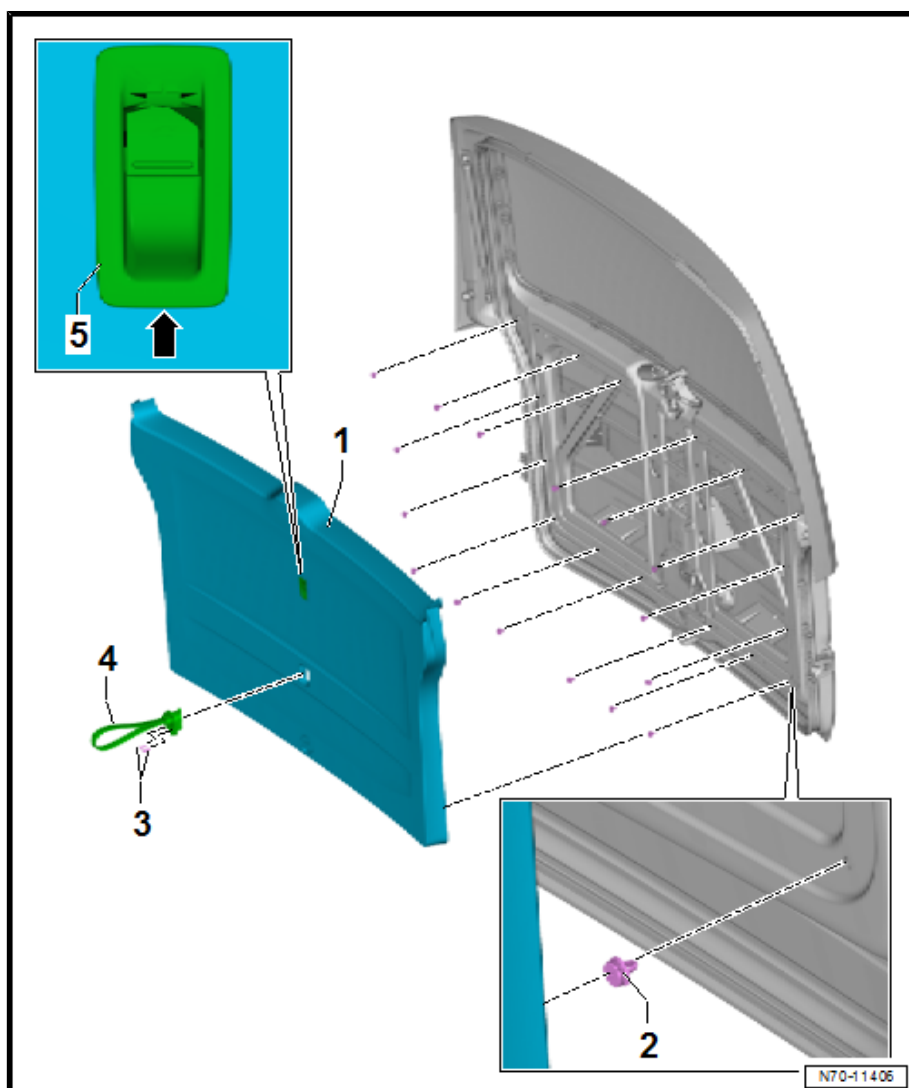
- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 253](#)

##### 2 - Clip

- ❑ Qty. 17

##### 3 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 3.5 Nm





4 - Pull loop

5 - Release button for rear lid  
lock cylinder - F248-

## 6.1.2 Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim, Transporter

1 - Rear lid

2 - Blind rivet nut

□ Qty. 2

□ Install using pop rivet  
nut pliers - V.A.G  
1765B-

3 - Lower rear lid trim, hard-  
board-type

□ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 253](#)

4 - Clip

□ Qty. 17

5 - Bolts

□ Qty. 2

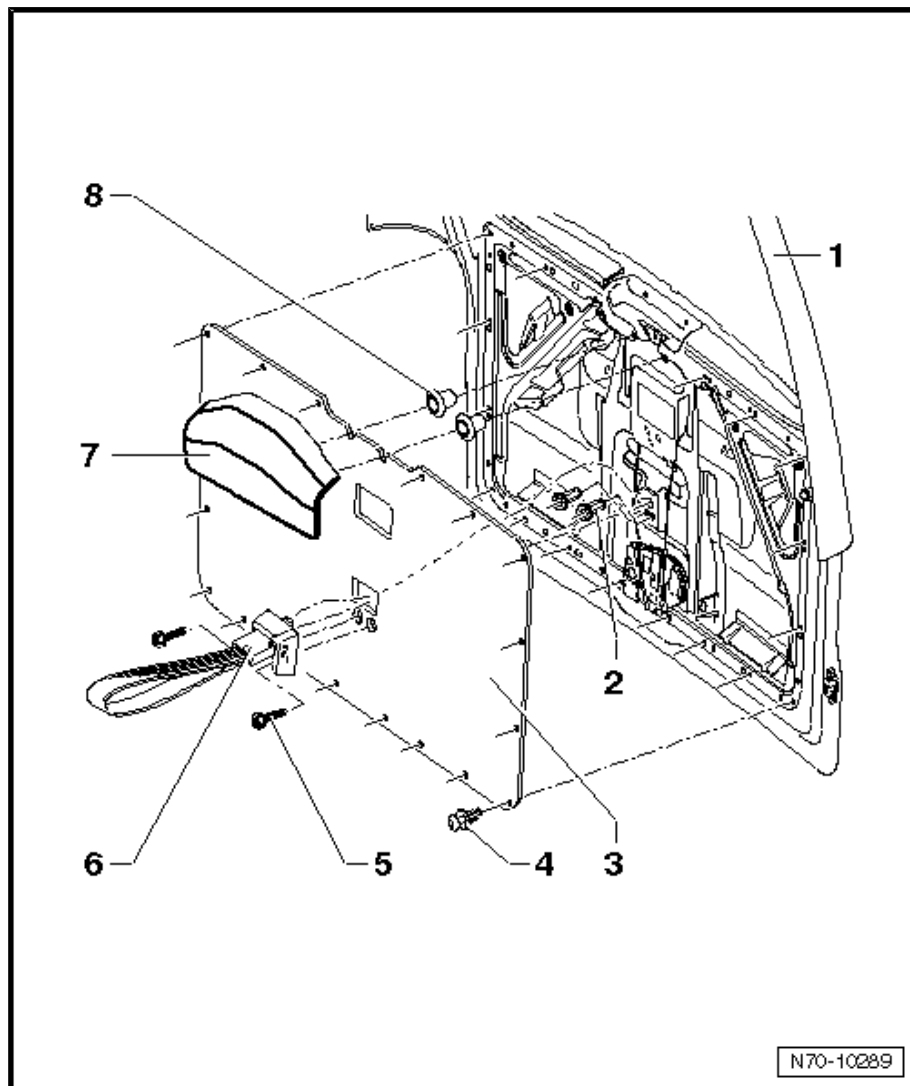
□ 3.5 Nm

6 - Pull loop

7 - Cover for wiper motor

8 - Grommet

□ Qty. 2







## 6.2 Assembly overview - upper rear lid trim

### 1 - Rear lid window frame trim

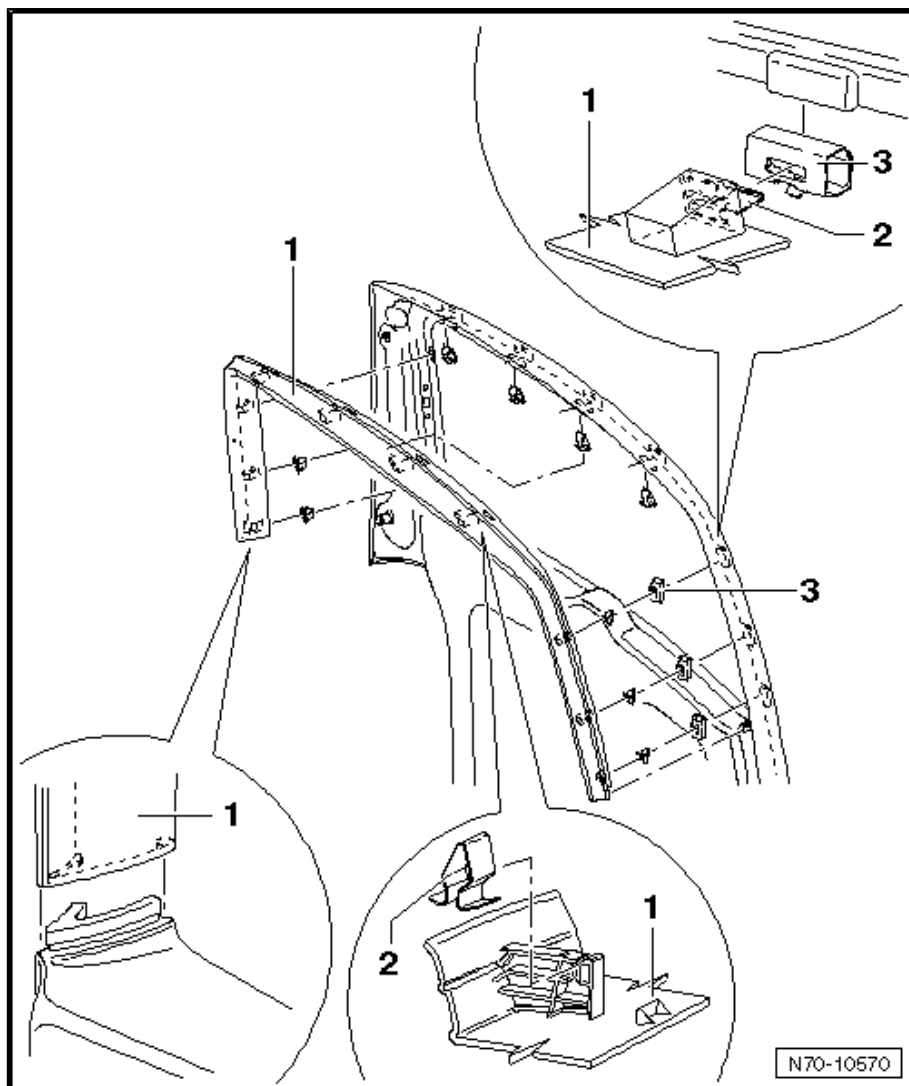
- Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 257](#)

### 2 - Clip

- Qty. 10

### 3 - Clip

- Qty. 3 on each side



## 6.3 Removing and installing lower rear lid trim

⇒ [“6.3.1 Removing and installing lower rear lid trim, Multivan”, page 253](#)

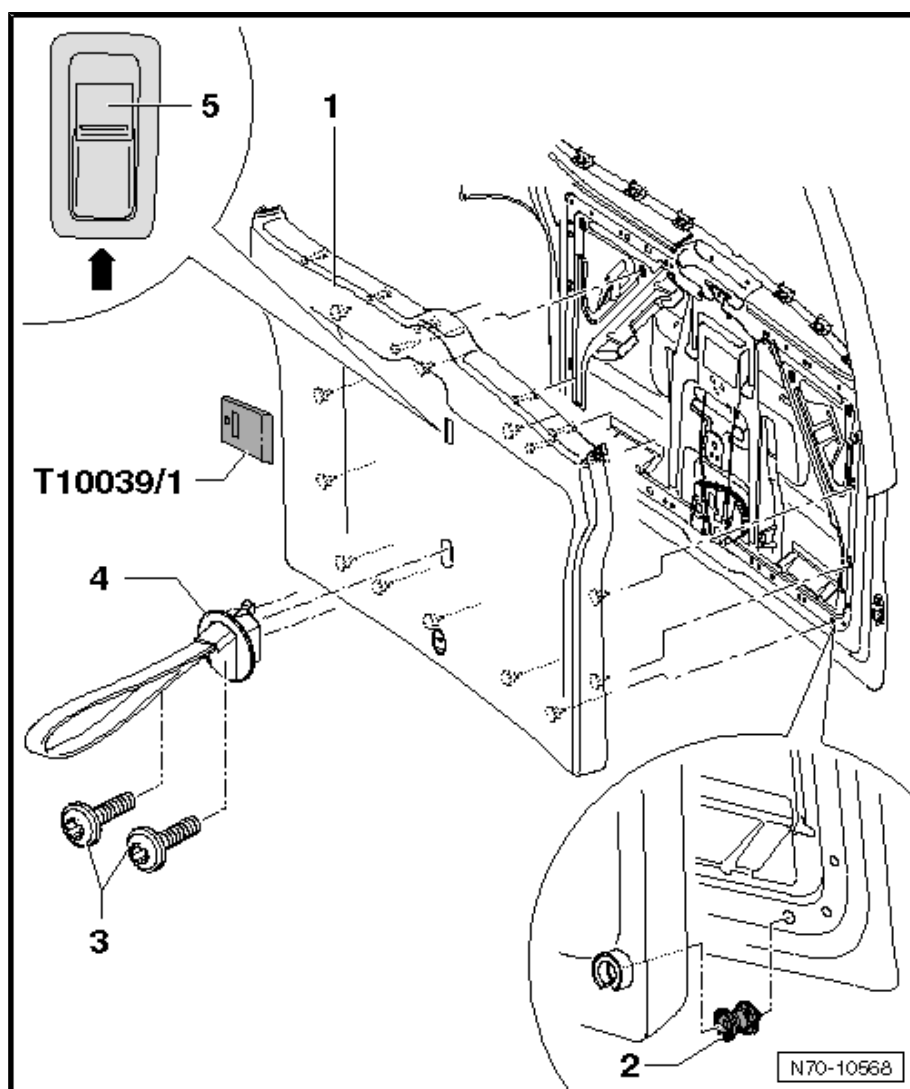
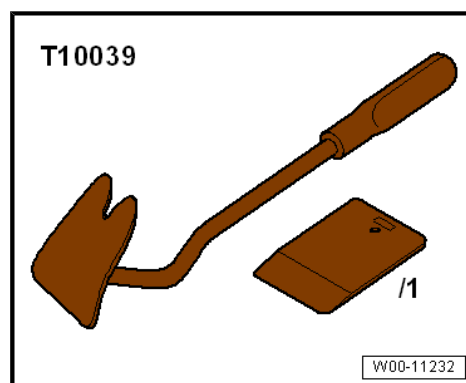
⇒ [“6.3.2 Removing and installing lower rear lid trim, Transporter”, page 255](#)

### 6.3.1 Removing and installing lower rear lid trim, Multivan

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Release lever - T10039-



### Removing

- Detach rear lid trim at lower left and right ends on window frame.
- Using screwdriver -arrow-, carefully lever switch -5- out of rear lid trim -1-.
- Separate electrical connector from switch -5-.



## Only vehicles with additional inner lock in rear lid



### Note

*With this level, the "lock cylinder cover of the childproof lock" and the "inner lock trim" must also be removed.*

- Carefully push inner lock trim panel upwards, and pull trim panel off trim.
- Insert two 1 mm drill bits 15 mm deep into apertures of lock cylinder cover of childproof lock. Push drill bits together, and pull cover out of mountings.



### Caution

***Damage to rear lid trim***

***Trim must be renewed in the event of non-observance.***

***Please carefully release trim around lid lock first!***

- Only loosen towards corners once trim has been released there.
- Do not simply pull trim down; instead, grip behind trim with fingers and press against rear lid with thumbs.
- If trim is loose from rear lid lock to corners, detach remainder of trim.
- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- Hold trim with one hand. Remove pull loop -4- with the other hand.
- Trim is now completely free and can be removed.
- Release clips -1- which have remained in rear lid using release lever - T10039- .

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



### Note

*Before installing, check clips -1- for damage and renew if necessary.*

## Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for loop	4 Nm

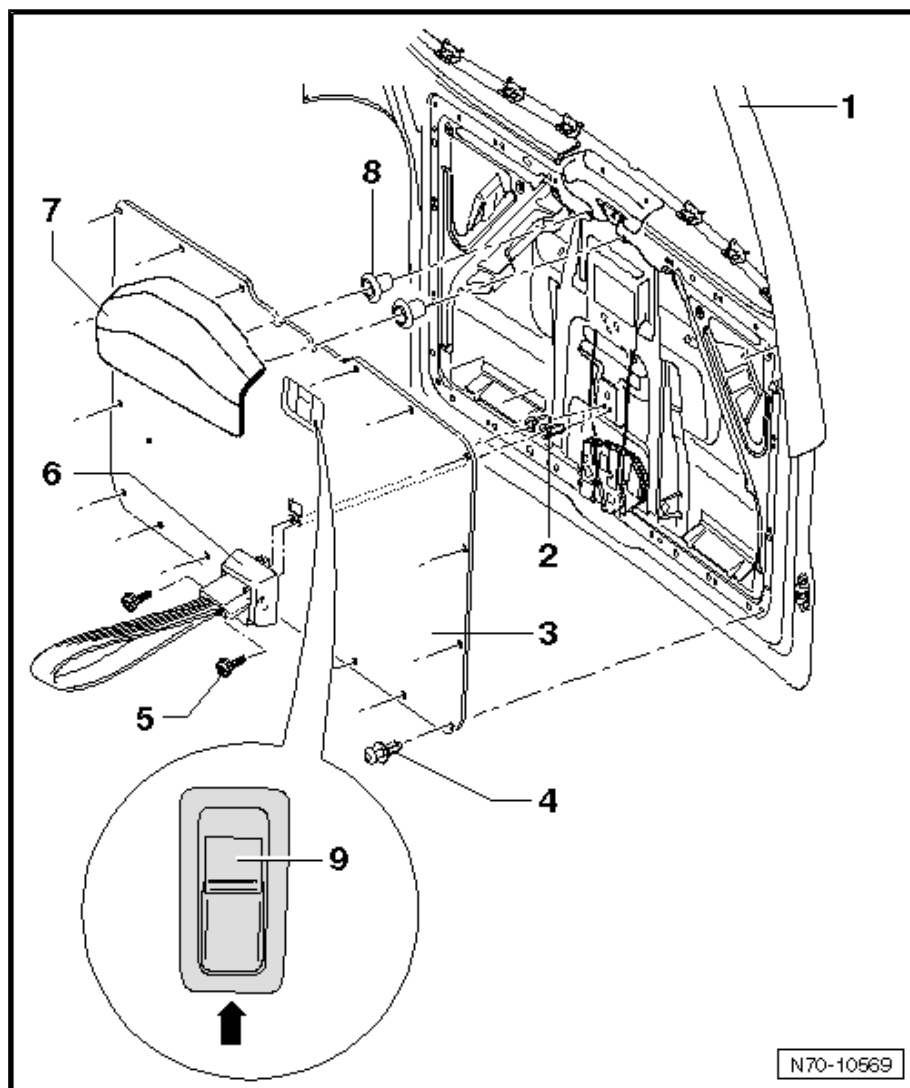
## 6.3.2 Removing and installing lower rear lid trim, Transporter



### Note

*The removal and installation procedures may have to be modified slightly depending on model variants.*

## Removing



- Using screwdriver -arrow-, carefully lever release button for rear lid lock cylinder - F248- -9- out of lower rear lid trim -3-.
- Separate electrical connector from switch -5-.
- Unclip cover of wiper motor -7- from rear lid.
- Unscrew bolts -5-.
- Remove pull loop -6-.
- Use a 3 mm hexagon socket to unscrew clamping pin, and pull out spreader rivets -4-.
- Remove lower rear lid trim -3- from rear lid -1-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

*Before installing, check retaining clips -4- for damage and renew if necessary.*



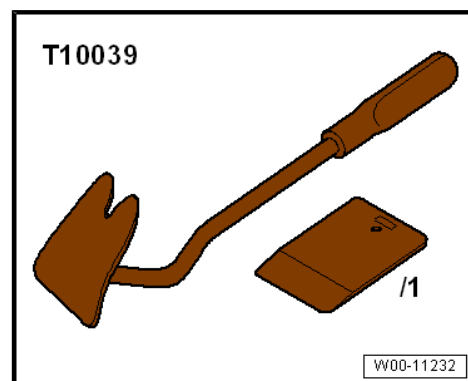
### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for loop	4 Nm

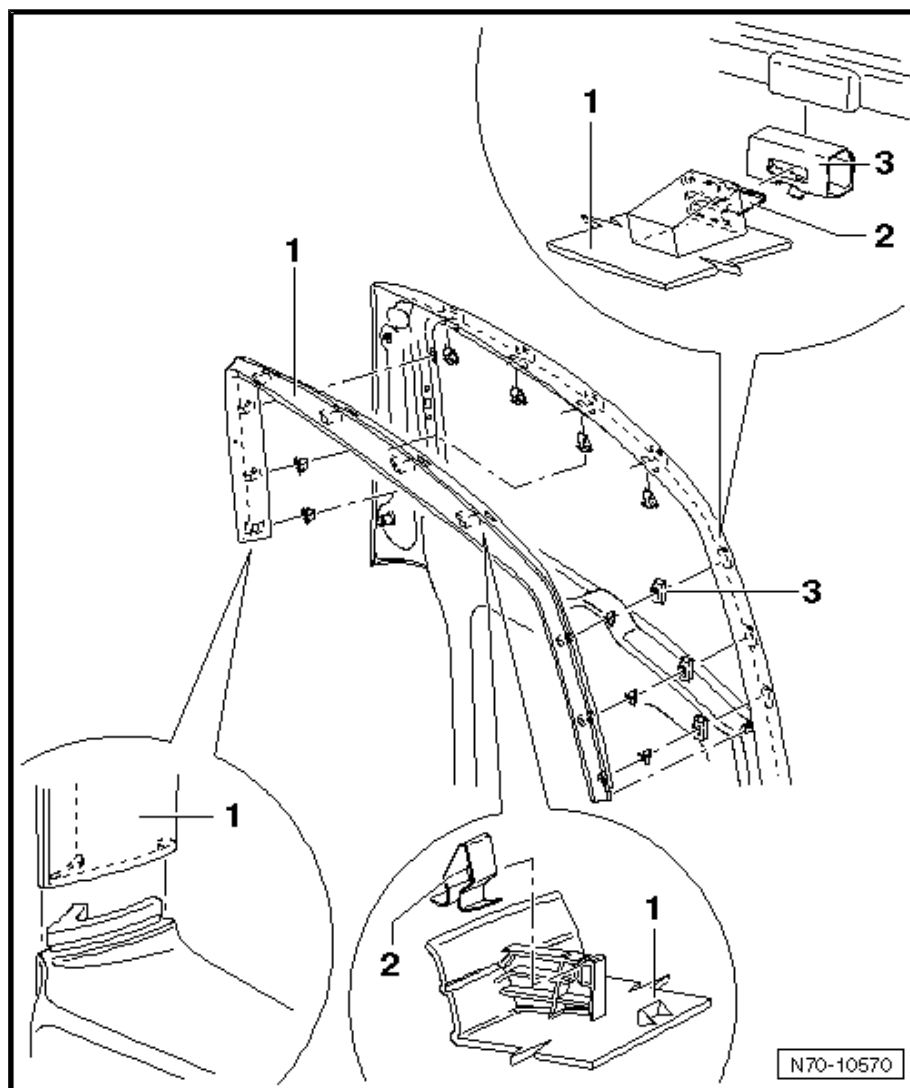
## 6.4 Removing and installing upper rear lid trim

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release lever - T10039-



### Removing



- Switch off ignition.
- Carefully pull window frame trim -1- off window frame, starting at middle of sides.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

*Before installing, check clips -3- and -2- for damage, and renew them as necessary.*



## 6.5 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

⇒ [“6.5.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim, Multivan, rear, side of vehicle with sliding door”, page 259](#)

⇒ [“6.5.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim, Multivan, rear, side of vehicle without sliding door”, page 260](#)

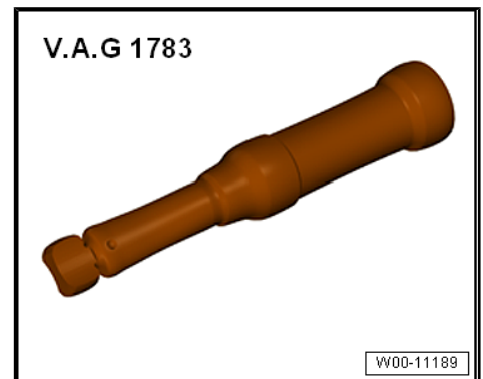
⇒ [“6.5.3 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim, Transporter, rear, side of vehicle with sliding door”, page 262](#)

⇒ [“6.5.4 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim, Transporter, rear, hardboard-type trim”, page 263](#)

### 6.5.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim, Multivan, rear, side of vehicle with sliding door

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



#### Note

*The removal and installation procedures may have to be modified slightly depending on model variants.*

#### Removing

- Switch off ignition.
- Remove 3rd seat row ⇒ [page 364](#) .
- Remove upper C-pillar trim ⇒ [page 237](#) .
- Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ [page 266](#) .



- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- Remove fastening ring -4-.
- Pull out clamping pins -2-.
- Release side panel trim -1- from mounting brackets.
- Detach wiring harnesses from side trim.
- Remove side trim -1- from vehicle.

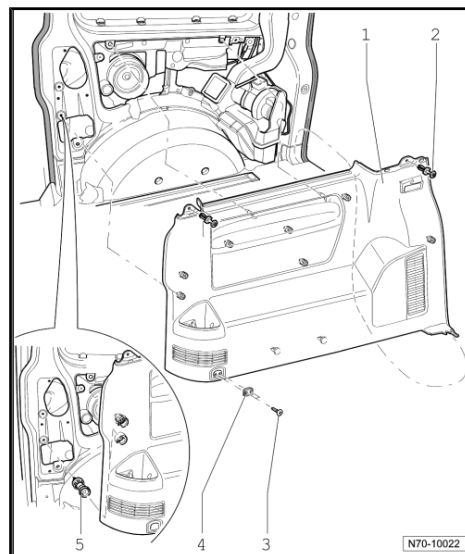
### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew as necessary.*
- ◆ *Following installation, ensure that trim is positioned in door seal beading.*



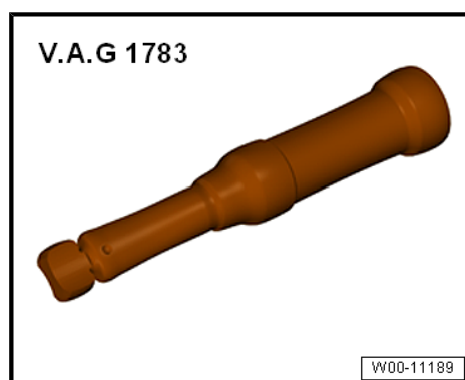
### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Fastening ring	7 Nm

## 6.5.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim, Multivan, rear, side of vehicle without sliding door

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



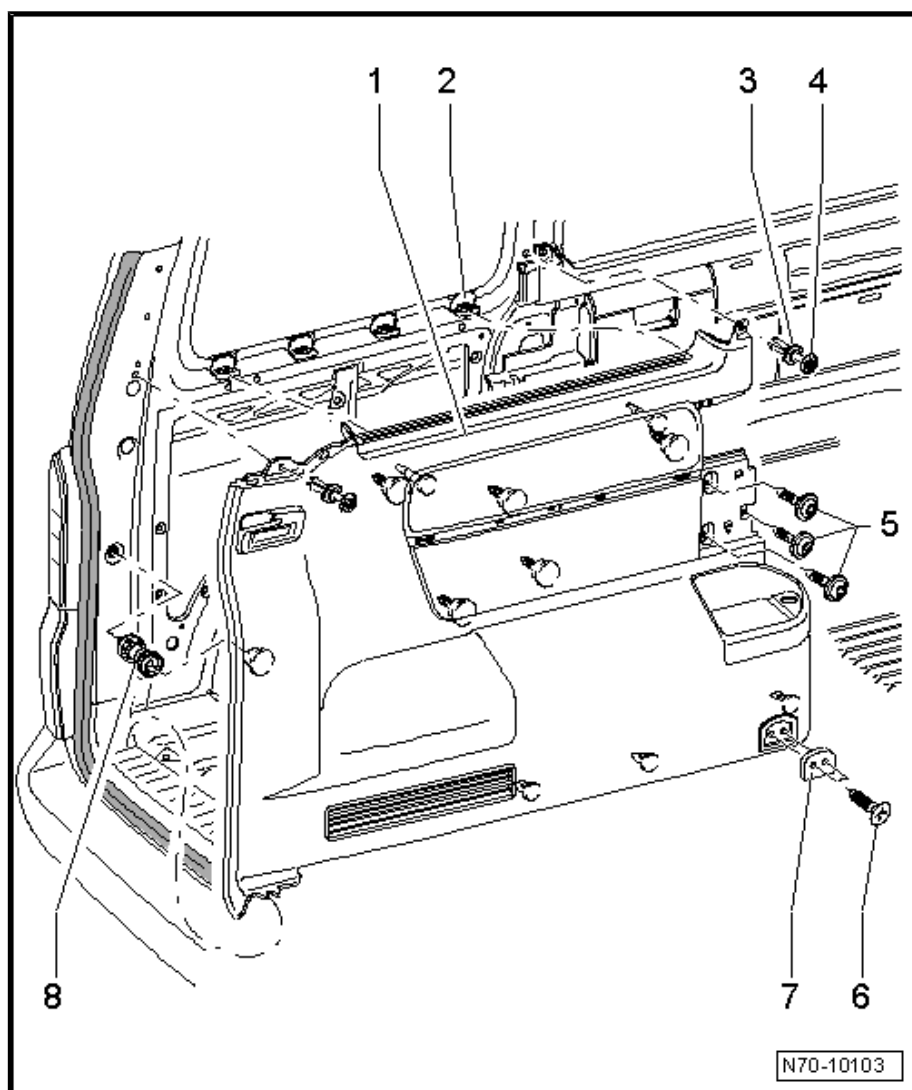
#### Note

*The removal and installation procedures may have to be modified slightly depending on model variants.*

### Removing

- Remove trim panel on luggage compartment side trim.
- Remove rear ashtray together with mounting frame.
- Unscrew bolts -6-.





- Remove fastening ring -7-.
- Pull clamping pins -4- out of both spreader rivets -3-.
- Unscrew bolts -5-.
- Release side panel trim -1- from mounting brackets.
- Detach wiring harnesses from side trim.
- Remove side trim -1- from vehicle.



#### Note

- ◆ Before installing, check retaining clips -2- and clips -8- for damage and renew if necessary.
- ◆ After installation, check that trim is completely behind beading of rear lid seal.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- ◆ *Following installation, ensure that trim is positioned in door seal beading.*

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Fastening ring	7 Nm
Bolts -5-	0.7 Nm

### 6.5.3 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim, Transporter, rear, side of vehicle with sliding door



#### Note

*The removal and installation procedures may have to be modified slightly depending on model variants.*

#### Removing

- Remove belt end fitting of seat belt for outer seat in 2nd row ⇒ [page 124](#) .
- Remove belt end fitting of seat belt for outer seat in 3rd row ⇒ [page 124](#) .
- Remove upper C-pillar trim ⇒ [page 238](#) .
- Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Detach side panel trim -1- from retainers and remove it from vehicle.

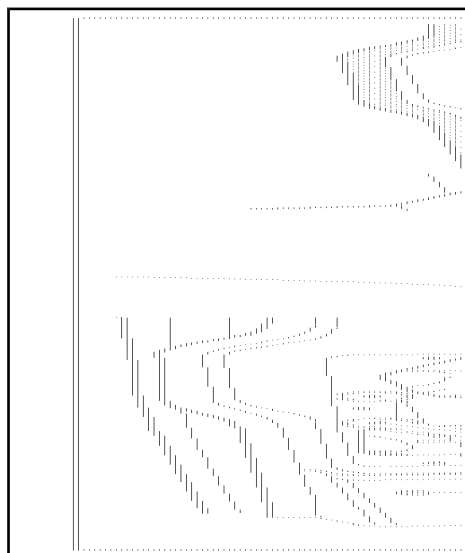
#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check retaining clips -2- for damage and renew as necessary.*
- ◆ *After installing, make sure that the trim is located completely in the door seal beading and in the rear lid seal beading.*





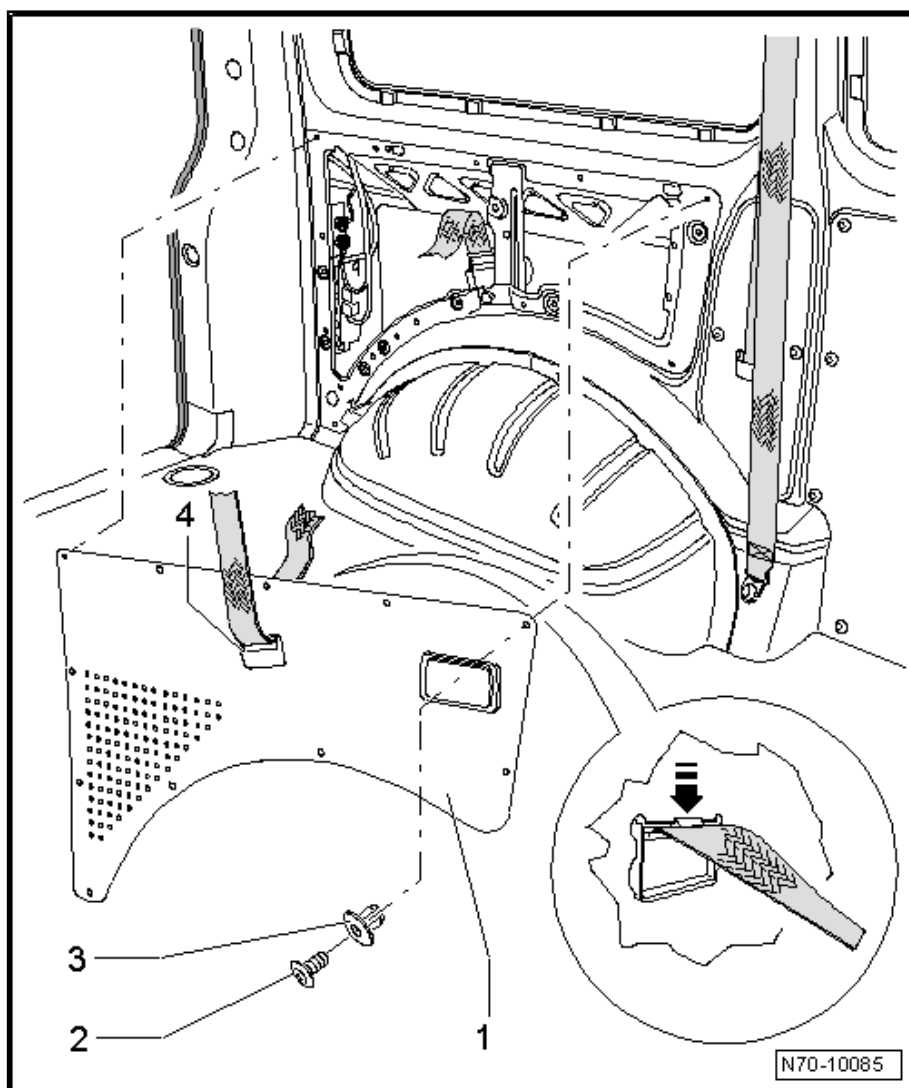
## 6.5.4 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim, Transporter, rear, hardboard-type trim



### Note

Removal and installation is described for the hardboard-type and rear left side trim. Removal and installation on the right-hand side of the vehicle and for all other hardboard trim panels can be derived from this, though minor differences may be encountered.

### Removing



- Remove seats from 2nd row ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove seats from 3rd row ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove belt end fitting of seat belt for seat in 3rd row ⇒ [page 124](#) .
- Remove belt guide fitting of seat belt for seat in 3rd row.
- Using a 3 mm hexagon socket, unscrew clamping pin -2- (qty. 11).



- Pull out spreader rivets -3- (qty. 11).
- Detach trim -1- in upper area.
- Press down retaining hooks of trim panel -arrow-, and remove trim panel from trim.
- Guide seat belt through trim.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

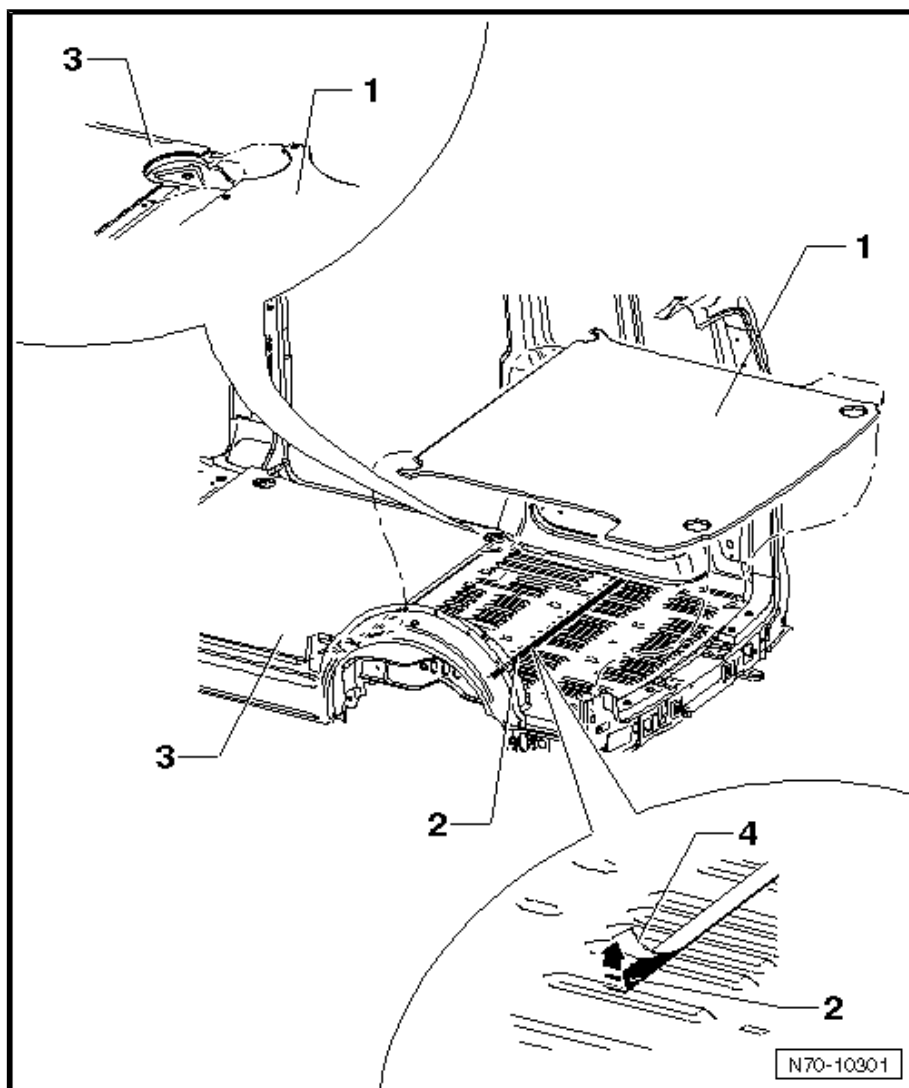
*Before installing, check spreader rivets -3- for damage and renew as necessary.*

## 6.6 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor

⇒ ["6.6.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor, wood-type, panel van", page 264](#)

### 6.6.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment floor, wood-type, panel van

#### Removing



- Remove side panel trims ⇒ [page 242](#) .
- Remove fastening rings ⇒ [page 270](#) .
- Remove rear lock carrier trim ⇒ [page 266](#) .
- Detach rear floor covering -1- upwards from butyl adhesive sealing cord - AKL 450 005 05- -2-.
- Pull out rear floor covering -1- towards rear from underneath front floor covering -3-.
- Remove rear floor covering -1- towards rear from vehicle.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Bond butyl adhesive sealing cord - AKL 450 005 05- -2- onto floor panel in centre of beading (shorten if necessary).
- Pull off protective paper -4- upwards, and slide rear floor covering -1- from rear into front floor covering -3-.



## 6.7 Removing and installing lock carrier trim

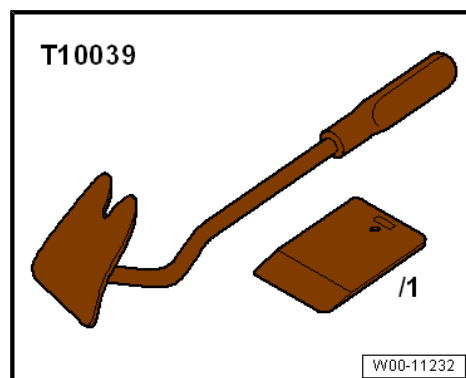
⇒ ["6.7.1 Removing and installing lock carrier trim, Multivan", page 266](#)

⇒ ["6.7.2 Removing and installing lock carrier trim, Transporter", page 268](#)

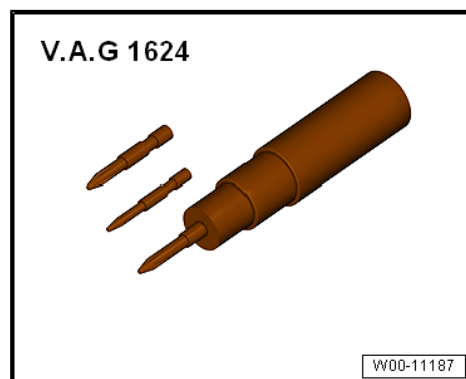
### 6.7.1 Removing and installing lock carrier trim, Multivan

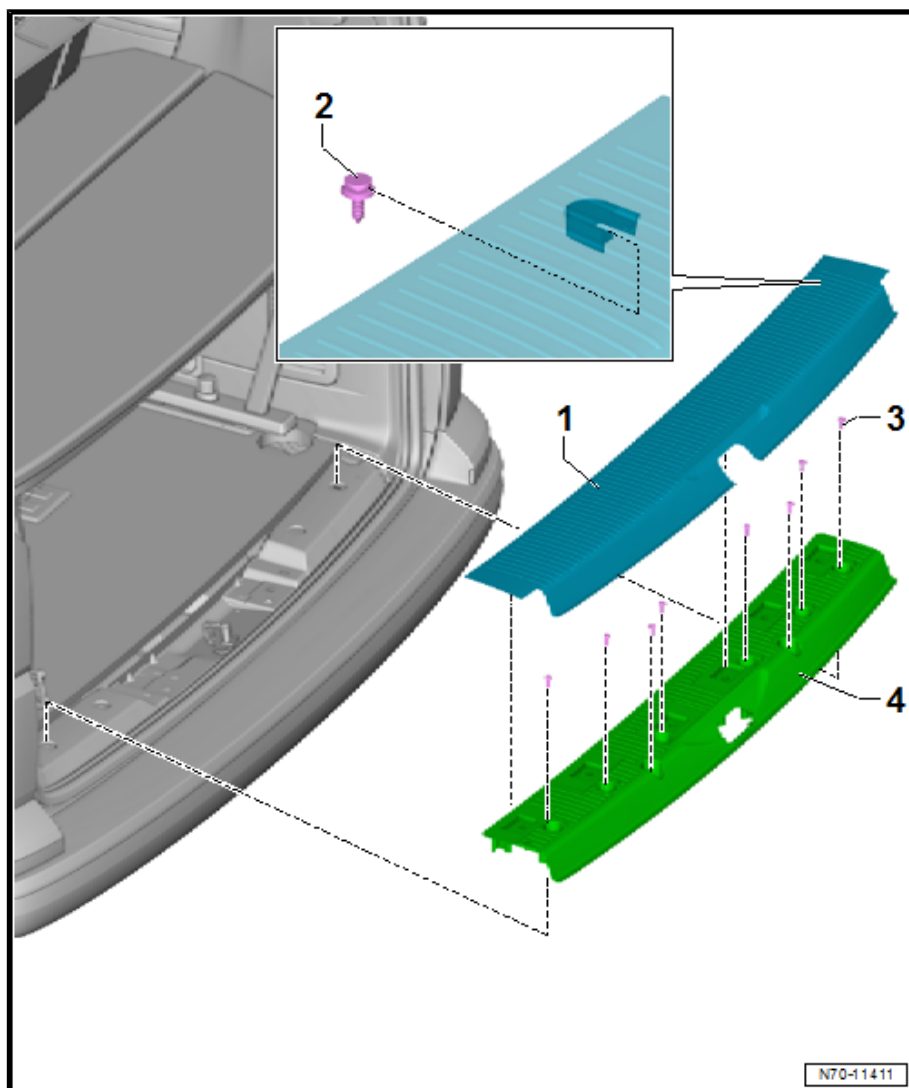
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Release lever - T10039-



◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-





### Removing

- Push wedge - T10039/1- between upper cover -1- and lower cover -4-.
- Using wedge - T10039/1- , lever upper cover -1- at mounting points out of mountings.
- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- Remove lower cover -4-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check retaining clips -2- for damage and renew if necessary.*
- ◆ *After installation, make sure that the cover is located completely in the rear lid seal beading.*



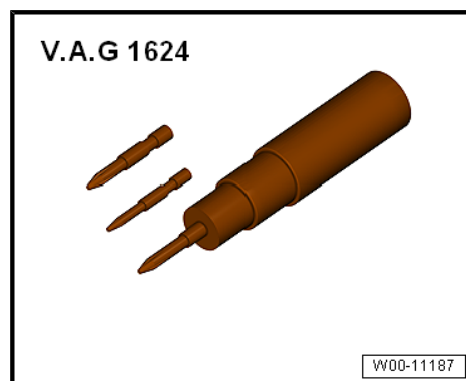
### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolt for cover	2 Nm

## 6.7.2 Removing and installing lock carrier trim, Transporter

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

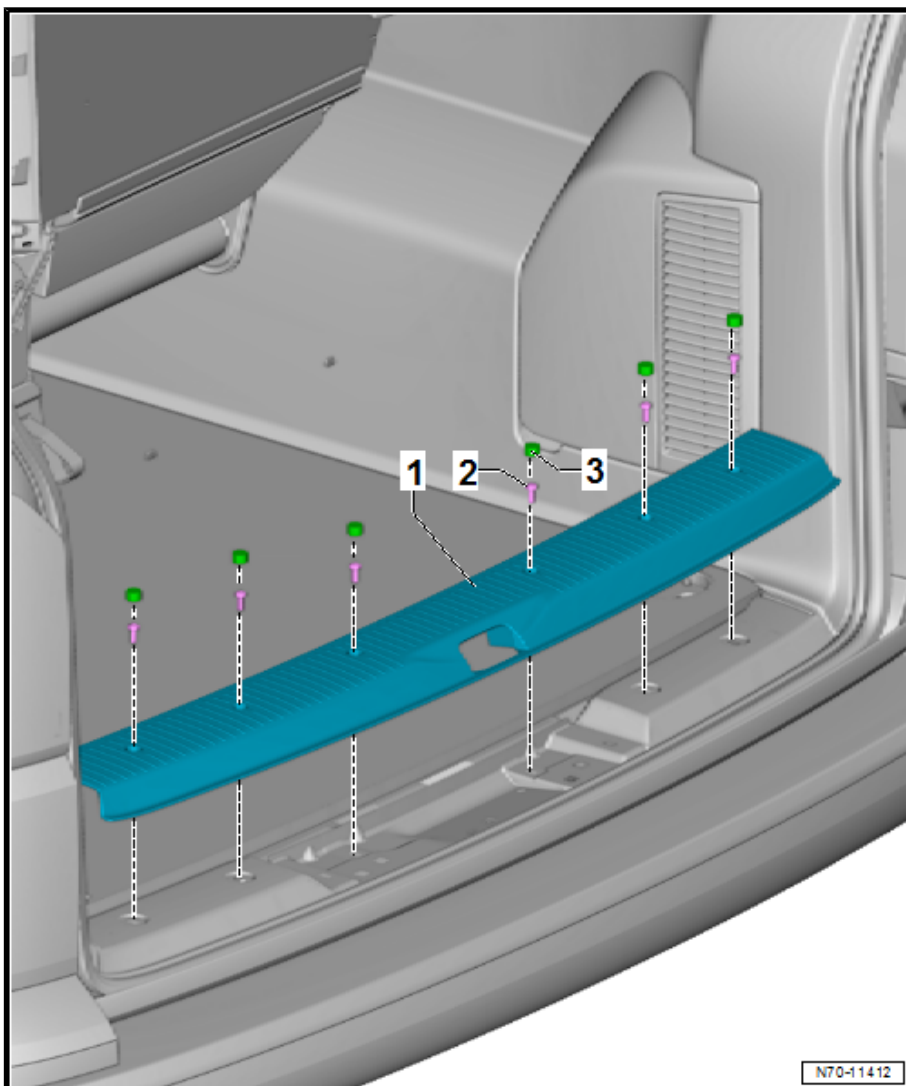
- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



### Note

*Removal and installation are described for vehicles with rear lid.  
Removal and installation on vehicles with rear wing doors are similar.*





## Removing



### Note

*When assembling make sure that the locating grooves of the caps align with the locating elements in the cover.*

- Use a small screwdriver to lever 6 caps -3- off cover -1-.
- Unscrew bolts -2-, and remove cover from vehicle.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



### Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check caps -3- for damage, and renew them as necessary.*
- ◆ *After installation, make sure that the cover is located completely in the rear lid seal beading.*



## Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolt for cover	1.8 Nm

## 6.8 Removing and installing fastening rings

⇒ [“6.8.1 Removing and installing fastening ring, Multivan, fastening ring in area of C-pillar”, page 270](#)

⇒ [“6.8.2 Removing and installing fastening ring, Multivan, fastening rings in seat rails”, page 272](#)

⇒ [“6.8.3 Removing and installing fastening ring, Transporter, fastening ring in area of C-pillar”, page 272](#)

⇒ [“6.8.4 Removing and installing fastening ring, Kombi and panel van with floor covering”, page 273](#)

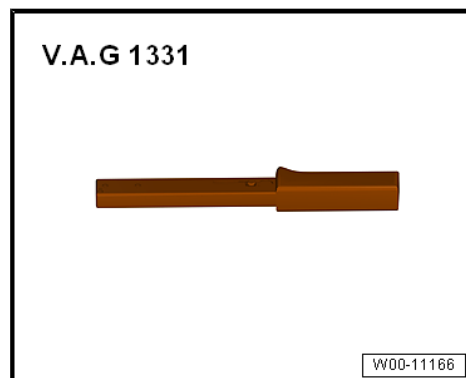
⇒ [“6.8.5 Removing and installing fastening ring, Kombi and panel van without floor covering”, page 275](#)

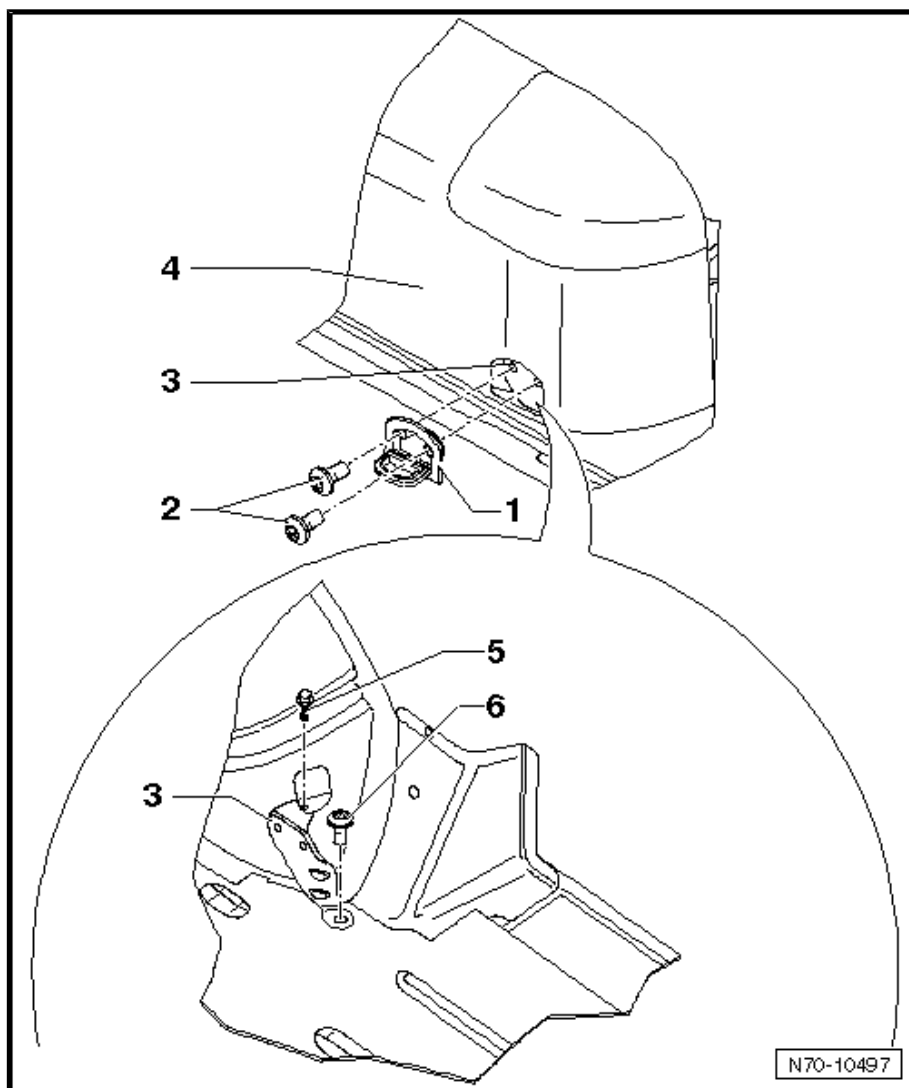
### 6.8.1 Removing and installing fastening ring, Multivan, fastening ring in area of C-pillar

Removal and installation is described for one fastening ring. Removal and installation of the remaining fastening rings of the same type is analogous.

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-





### Removing

- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Remove fastening ring -1- side trim -4-.

### Removing bracket

- Remove side trim -4- → [page 259](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -5- and -6-
- Remove bracket -3-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts -2-	7 Nm
Bolt -5-	6 Nm
Bolt -6-	40 Nm



## 6.8.2 Removing and installing fastening ring, Multivan, fastening rings in seat rails

Removal and installation is described for one fastening ring. Removal and installation of the remaining fastening rings of the same type is analogous.

### Removing

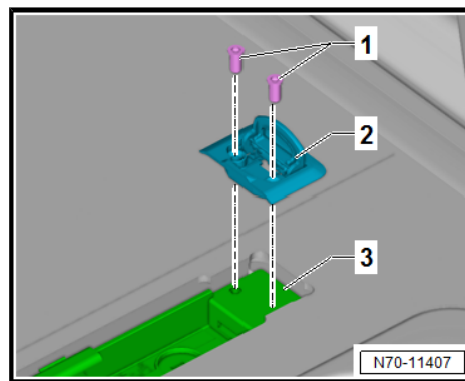
- Unscrew bolts -1-.
- Remove fastening ring -2- from seat rail -3-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts -1-	0.8 Nm

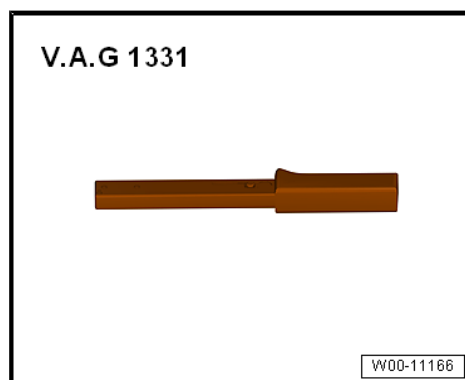


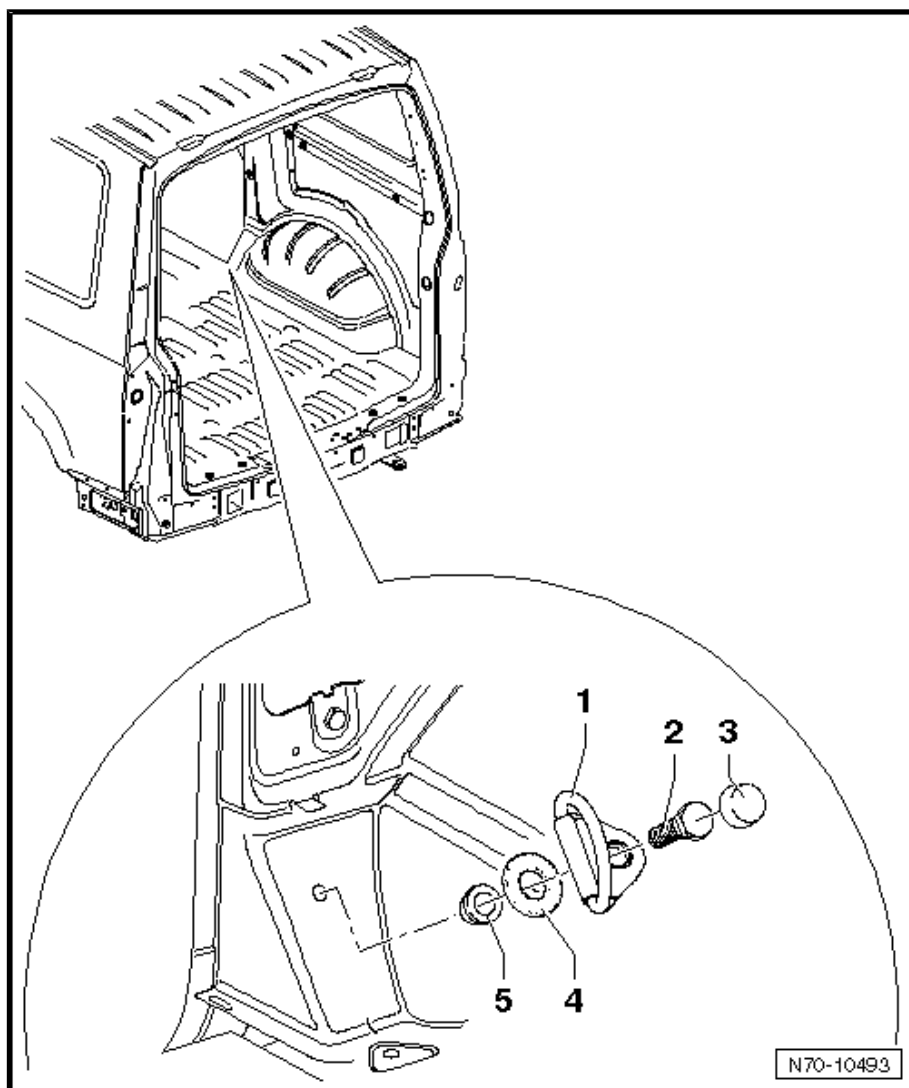
## 6.8.3 Removing and installing fastening ring, Transporter, fastening ring in area of C-pillar

Removal and installation is described for one fastening ring. Removal and installation of the remaining fastening rings of the same type is analogous.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-





#### Removing

- Lever off cap -3-.
- Unscrew bolt -2-.
- Remove fastening ring -1-, washer -4- and spacer bush -5-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolt -2-	40 Nm

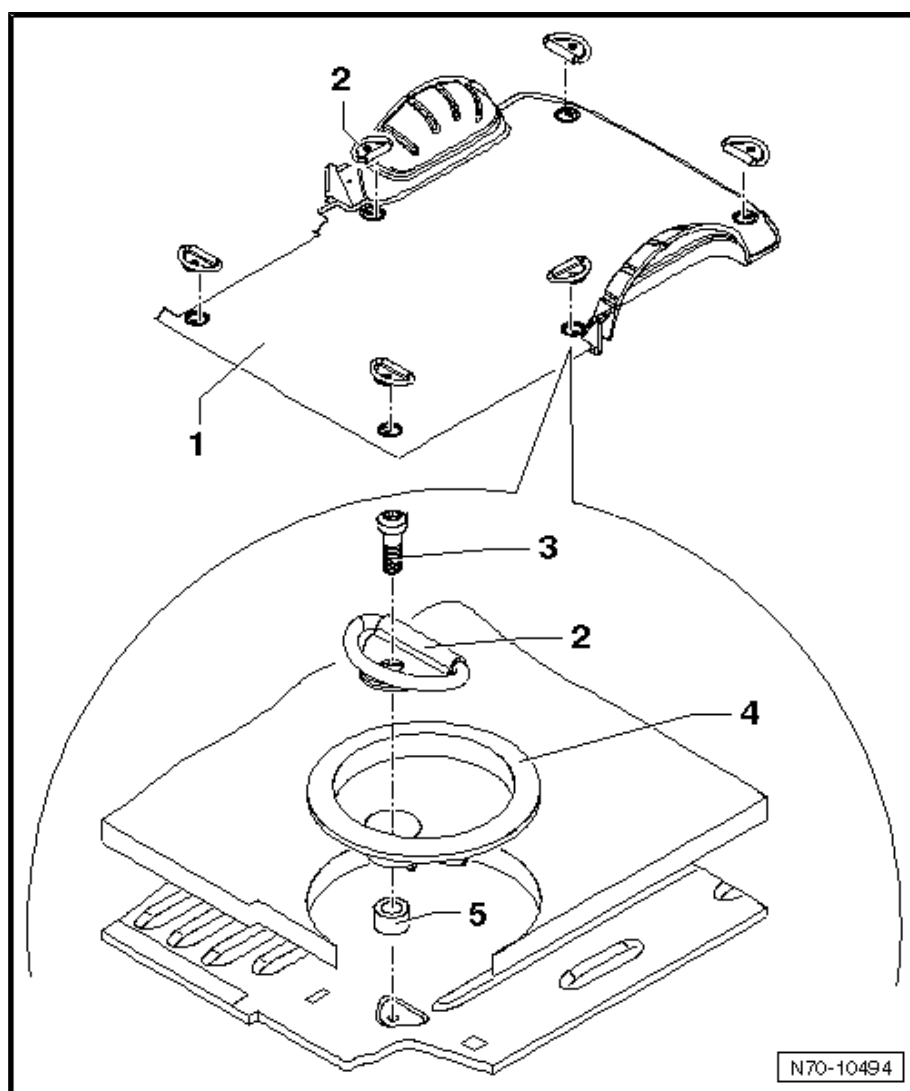
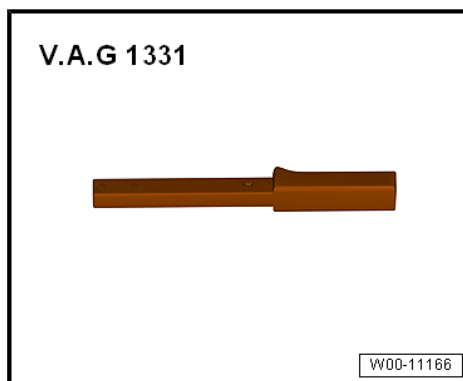
### 6.8.4 Removing and installing fastening ring, Kombi and panel van with floor covering

Removal and installation is described for one fastening ring. Removal and installation of the remaining fastening rings of the same type is analogous.

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**



- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



### Removing

- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Remove fastening ring -2-, mounting -4- and spacer bush -5- from floor covering -1-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



### Specified torques

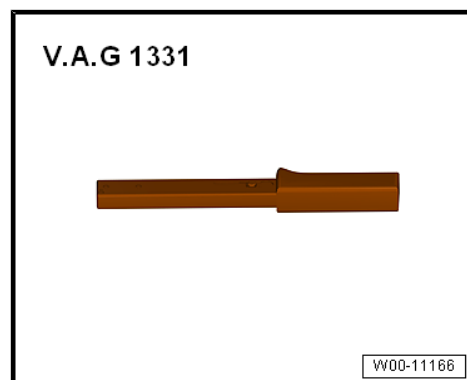
Component	Specified torque
Bolt -3-	40 Nm

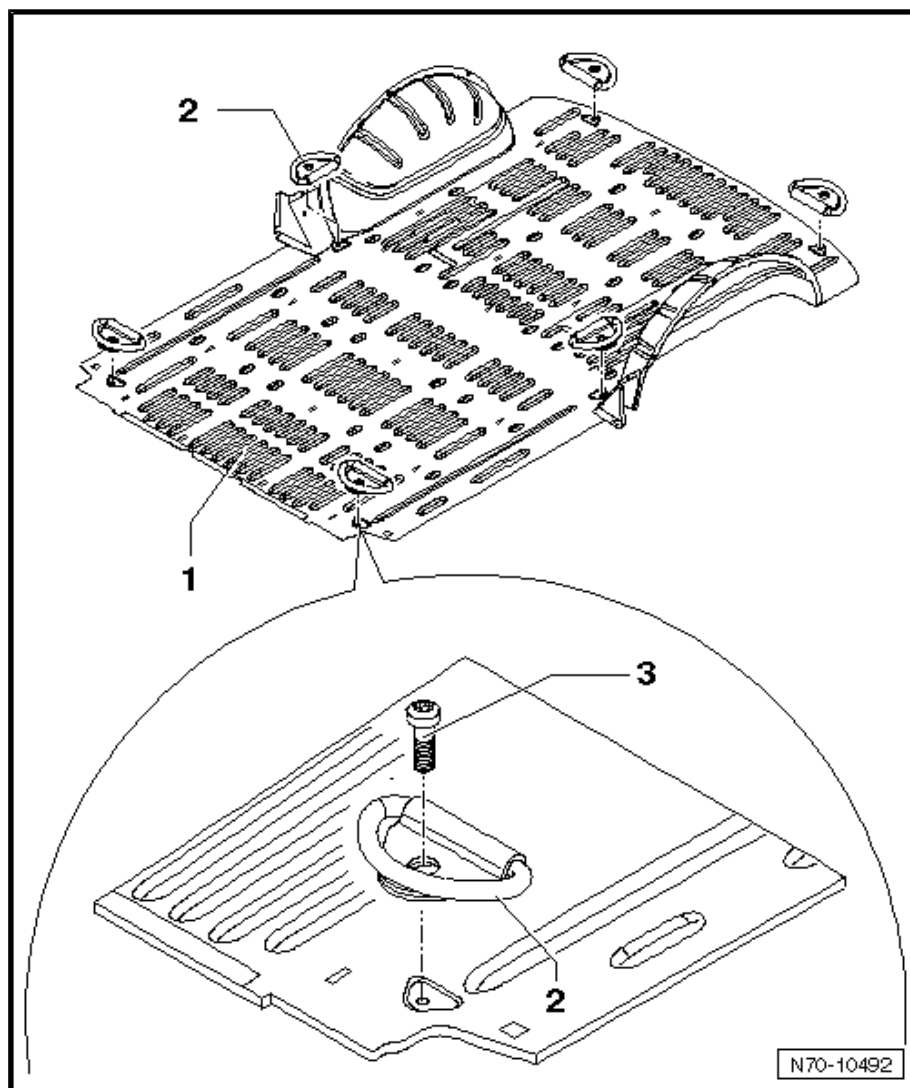
## 6.8.5 Removing and installing fastening ring, Kombi and panel van without floor covering

Removal and installation is described for one fastening ring. Removal and installation of the remaining fastening rings of the same type is analogous.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-





### Removing

- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Remove fastening ring -2- from floor section -1-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolt -3-	40 Nm





## 7 Roof trims

⇒ [“7.1 Assembly overview – moulded headliner”, page 277](#)

⇒ [“7.2 Removing and installing roof end strip”, page 279](#)

⇒ [“7.3 Removing and installing moulded headlining”, page 280](#)

### 7.1 Assembly overview – moulded headliner

⇒ [“7.1.1 Assembly overview - moulded headliner, roof frame trim”, page 277](#)

⇒ [“7.1.2 Assembly overview - moulded headliner, Multivan”, page 278](#)

#### 7.1.1 Assembly overview - moulded headliner, roof frame trim



##### Note

*Minor differences may be encountered during repair work, depending on vehicle model.*

##### 1 - Roof frame trim

- ☐ Without right and left sliding door.

##### 2 - Roof frame trim

- ☐ With right and left sliding door.

##### 3 - Channel

##### 4 - Fastener

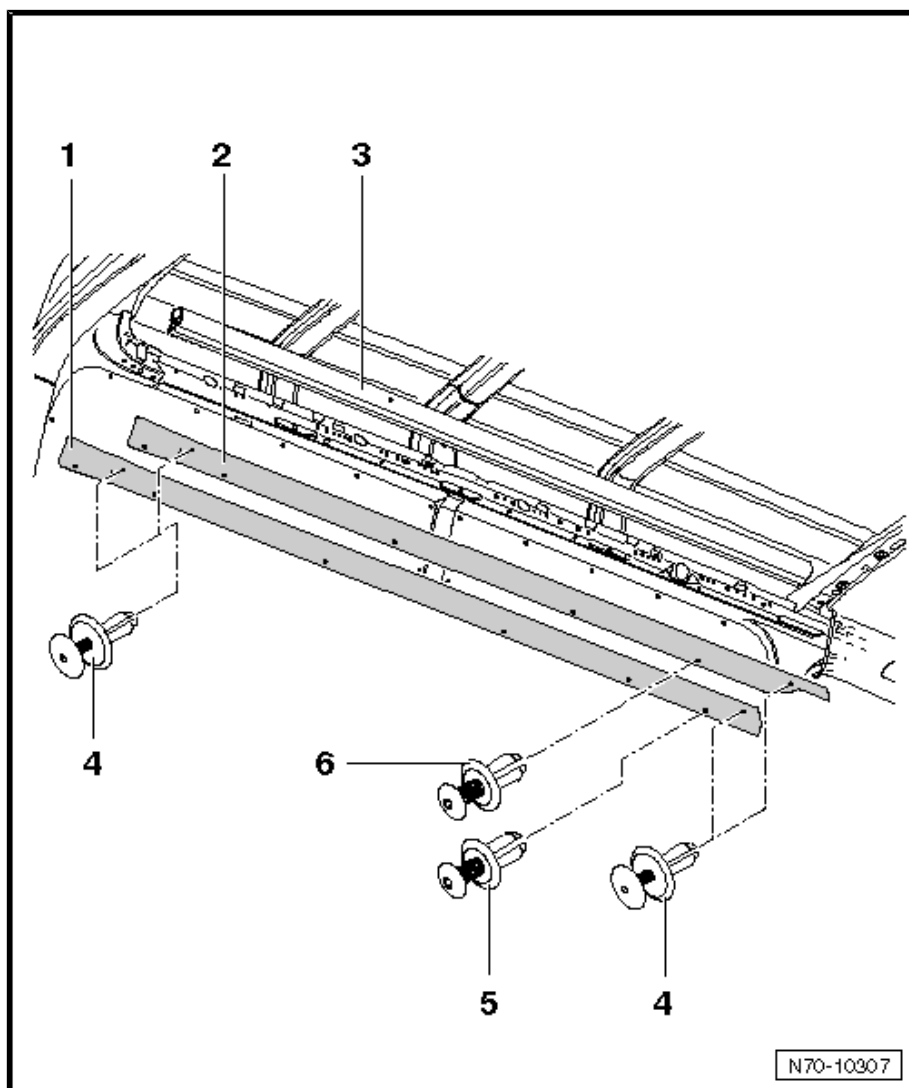
- ☐ At front and rear only.

##### 5 - Clip

- ☐ For roof frame trim without sliding door.
- ☐ Qty. 6

##### 6 - Clip

- ☐ For roof frame trim with sliding door.
- ☐ Qty. 5





## 7.1.2 Assembly overview - moulded headliner, Multivan

### 1 - Front seat area moulded headliner

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 280](#)

### 2 - Bolts

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 2 Nm

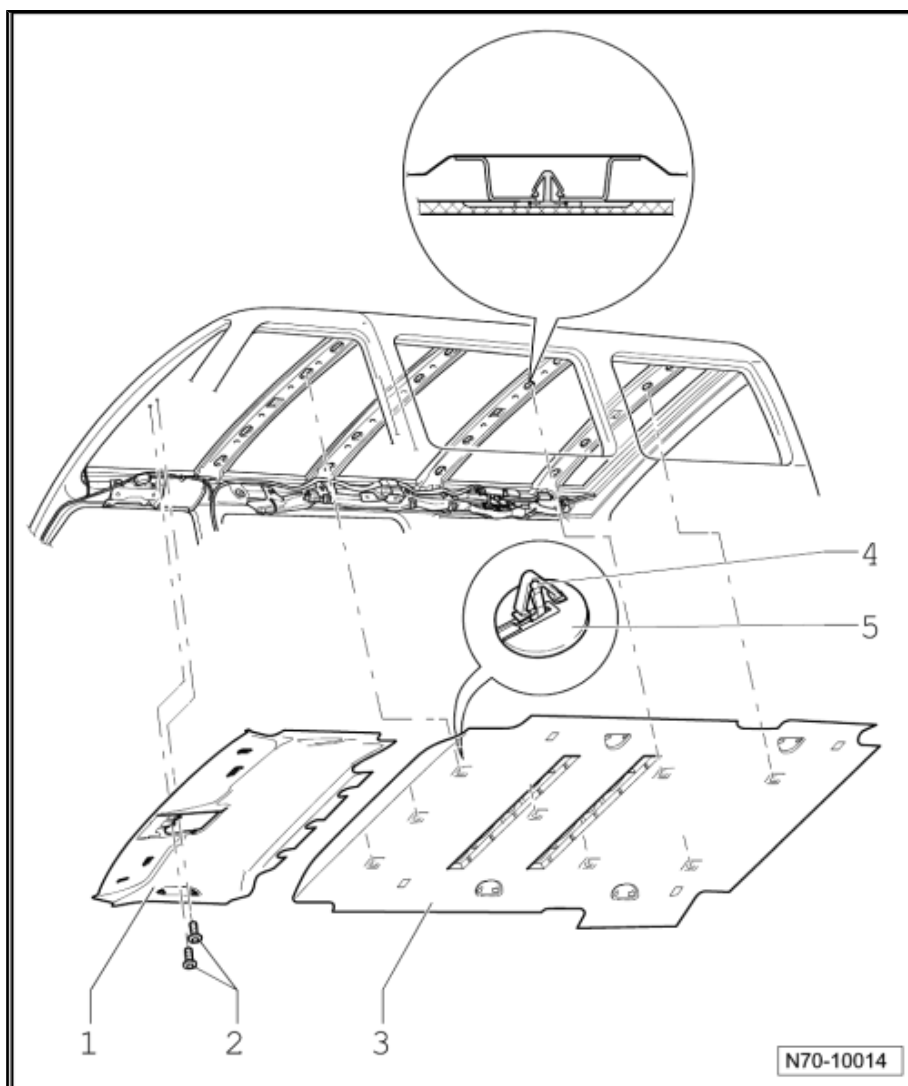
### 3 - Passenger compartment moulded headliner

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 280](#)

### 4 - Fastener

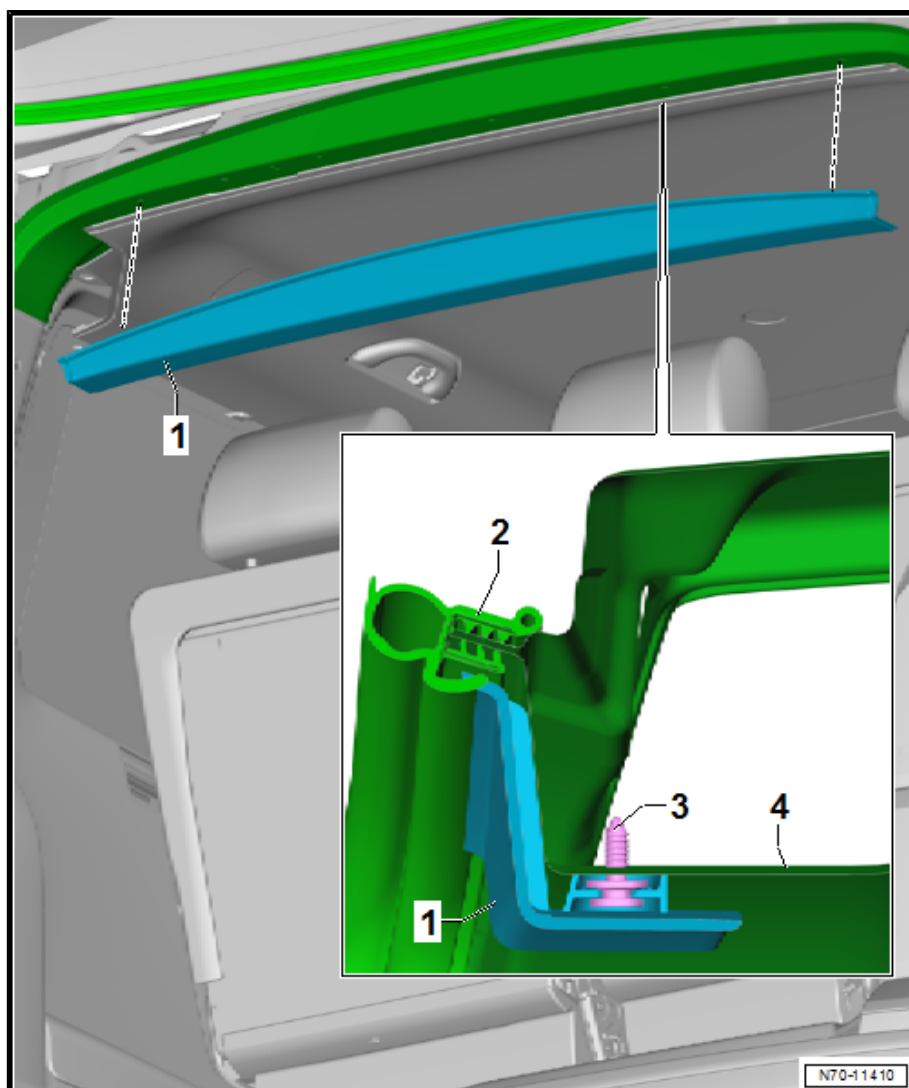
- ❑ Qty. 8

### 5 - Clip holder





## 7.2 Removing and installing roof end strip



### Removing

- Open rear lid.
- Remove D-pillar trims → [page 240](#).
- Pull roof end strip -1- downwards out of mountings in roof cross member -4- and out of rear lid seal beading -2-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check retaining clips -3- for damage and renew if necessary.
- After installation, make sure that the roof end strip -1- is located completely in rear lid seal beading -2-.



## 7.3 Removing and installing moulded headlining

⇒ [“7.3.1 Removing and installing moulded headliner, passenger compartment”, page 280](#)

⇒ [“7.3.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner, driver area”, page 281](#)

### 7.3.1 Removing and installing moulded headliner, passenger compartment

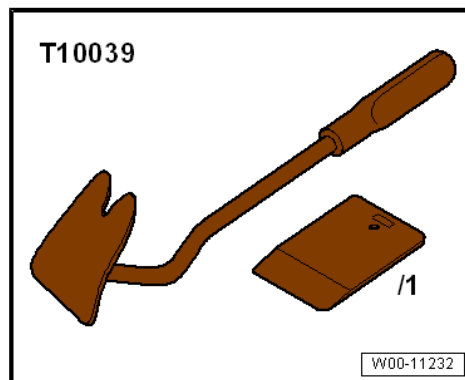


#### Note

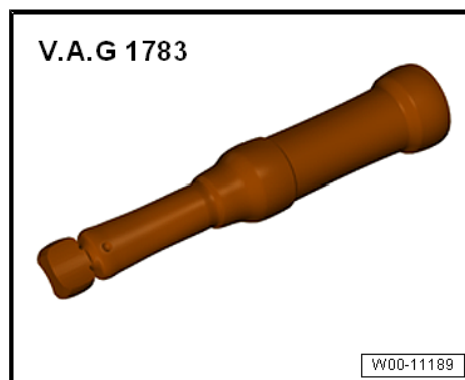
*The removal and installation procedures may have to be modified slightly depending on model variants.*

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Release lever - T10039-



◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



#### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the Multivan. Follow same instructions for the Transporter as appropriate.*

#### Removing

- Remove centre interior lights ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .
- Remove rear interior lights ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in roof trim .
- Remove grab handles on B-pillars.



- Remove upper B-pillar trims ⇒ [page 231](#) . The belt end fittings do not need to be removed.
- Remove retainers for net partition ⇒ [page 47](#) .
- Remove upper C-pillar trim ⇒ [page 237](#) .
- Remove D-pillar trims ⇒ [page 240](#) .
- Remove roof end strip ⇒ [page 279](#) .
- Remove grab handles (roof) in centre and at rear ⇒ [page 50](#) .
- Pull air intake hose -2- off air intake pipe -1- on moulded headliner -3- -arrow-.
- Unclip moulded headliner -3- in rear area, lower it slightly, and pull it backwards out of clips.
- Pull moulded headliner -3- towards rear out of vehicle.

### Installing

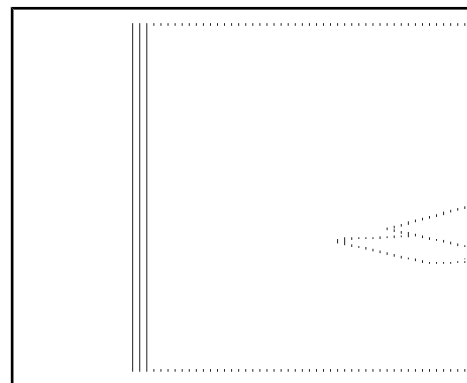
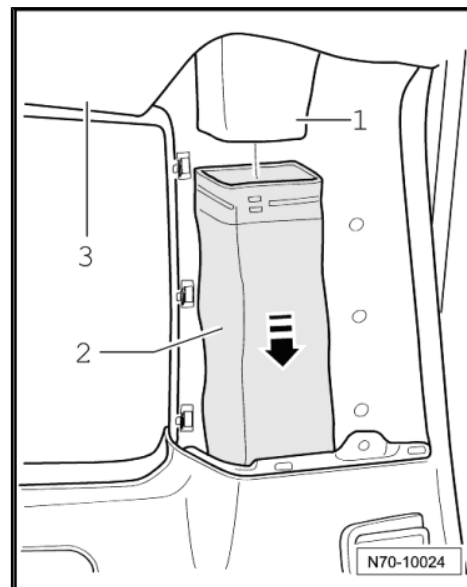
Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

*The replacement part is supplied with holes punched out for the standard equipment. However, no provision is made for cut-outs for vehicle-specific installations. Any cut-outs required for the specific vehicle must be cut using, for example, the electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- .*

- Remove 8 clips -1- from roof cross members.
- Insert them in clip holders -2- on back of moulded headliner.
- Move moulded headliner in passenger compartment to installation position and clip into roof.

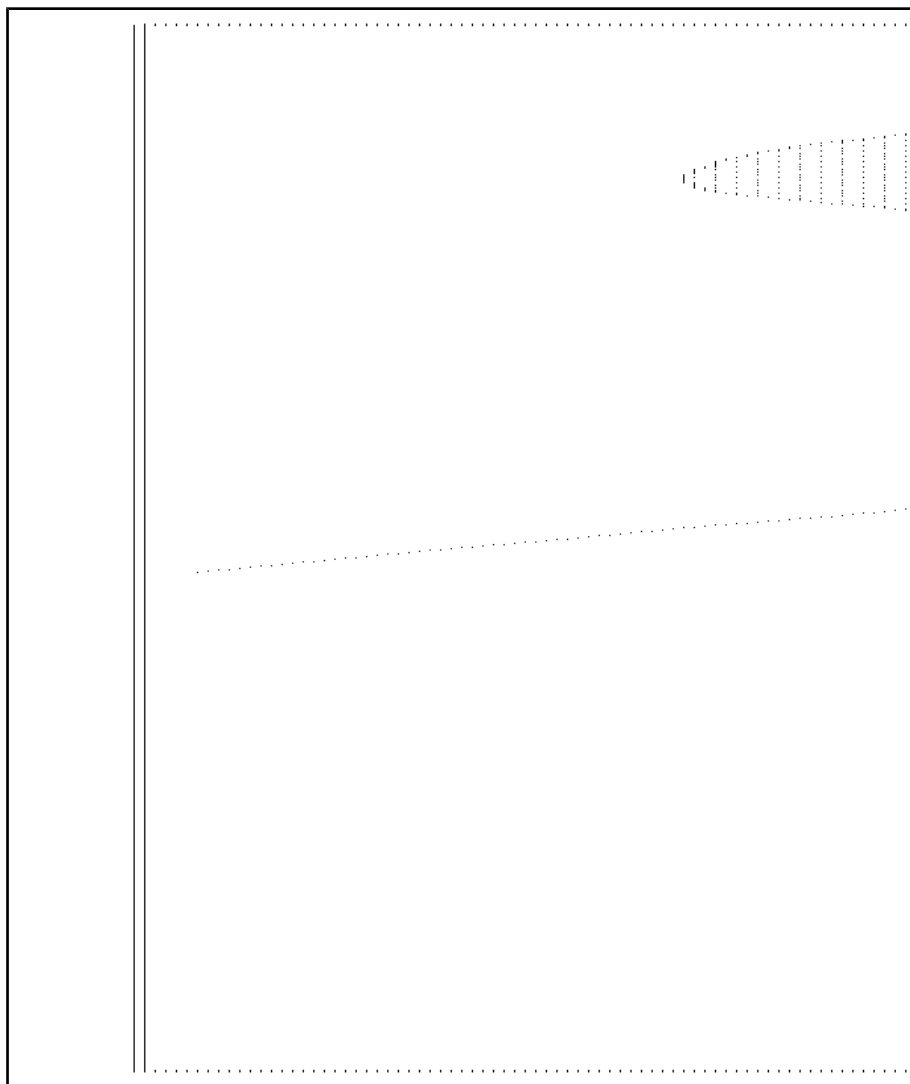


## 7.3.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner, driver area



#### Note

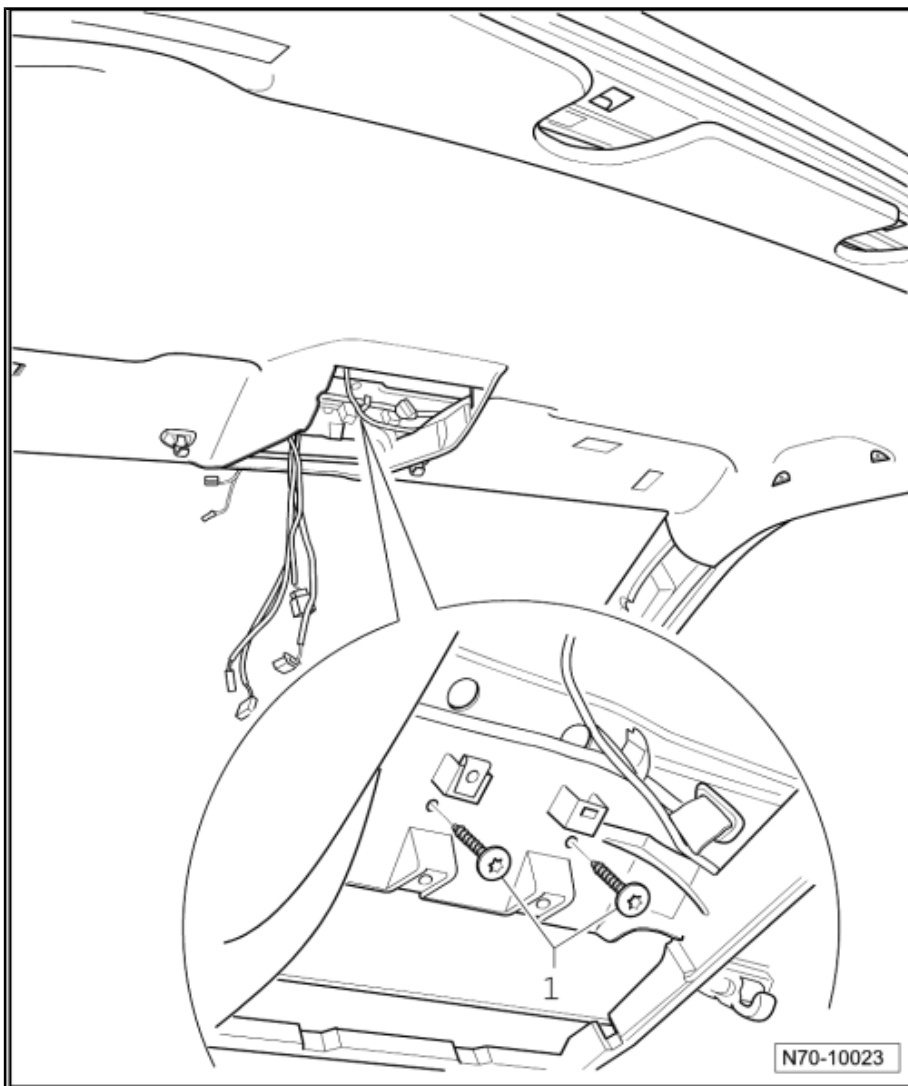
- ◆ *The removal and installation procedures may have to be modified slightly depending on model variants.*
- ◆ *Removal and installation is described for the Multivan. Follow same instructions for the Transporter as appropriate.*



## Removing

### Only vehicles with sliding/tilting sunroof

- Remove roof console ⇒ [page 36](#) .
- Remove sun visors ⇒ [page 48](#) .
- Remove light for vanity mirror ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lights; Removing and installing illuminated vanity mirror - W20- / -W14- .
- Remove A-pillar trims ⇒ [page 229](#) .
- Push wedge - T10039/1- between frame -1- and moulded headliner in front seat area -2-.
- Using release lever - T10039- , detach frame -arrow- all round from moulded headliner.



#### Continuation for all vehicles

- Unscrew bolts -1-.
- Remove grab handle (roof) at front ⇒ [page 50](#) .
- Pull moulded headliner in front seat area towards side out of vehicle.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

- ◆ *The replacement part is supplied with holes punched out for the standard equipment. However, no provision is made for cut-outs for vehicle-specific installations. Any cut-outs required for the specific vehicle must be cut using, for example, the electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- .*
- ◆ *Make cut-outs for microphone in new moulded headliner slightly smaller.*



### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolt for moulded headliner	2 Nm





## 72 – Seat frames

### 1 Overview of seat variants

⇒ [“1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat variants”, page 285](#)

#### 1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat variants

⇒ [“1.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat variants, Multivan, California, Business”, page 285](#)

⇒ [“1.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - seat variants, Transporter, drop-side, double cab, Kombi”, page 286](#)

##### 1.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat variants, Multivan, California, Business

###### 1 - Seat row 1

- ☐ 2 individual seats, front facing

###### 2 - Seat row 2

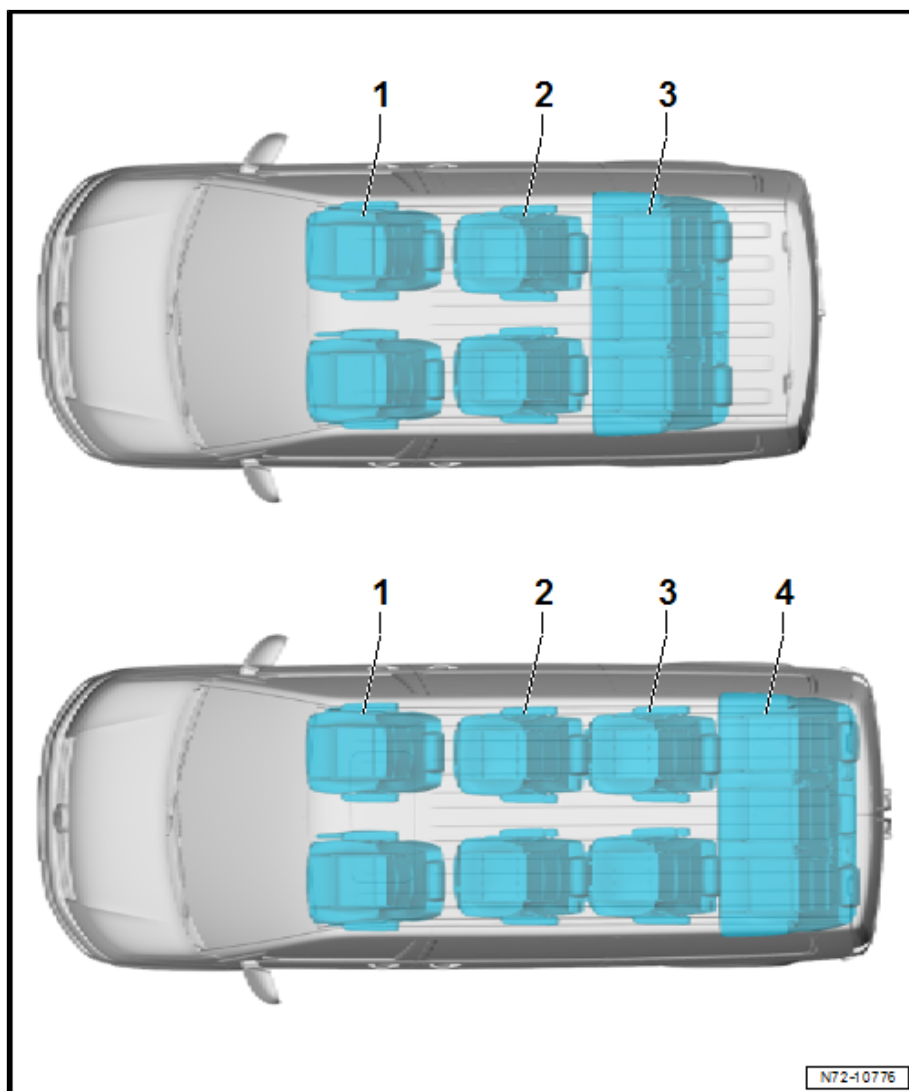
- ☐ 2 individual seats, front or rear facing

###### 3 - Seat row 3

- ☐ Vehicles with short wheelbase: 3-seater bench seat or 2 individual seats, front facing
- ☐ Vehicles with long wheelbase: 1 or 2 individual seats, front facing

###### 4 - Seat row 4

- ☐ Only models with long wheelbase
- ☐ 3-seater bench seat or 2 individual seats, front facing





## 1.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - seat variants, Transporter, drop-side, double cab, Kombi

### 1 - Seat row 1

- ☐ 2 individual seats or front double bench seat
- ☐ Drop-side/panel van with single cab or double cab: 2 individual seats or front double bench seat

### 2 - Seat row 2

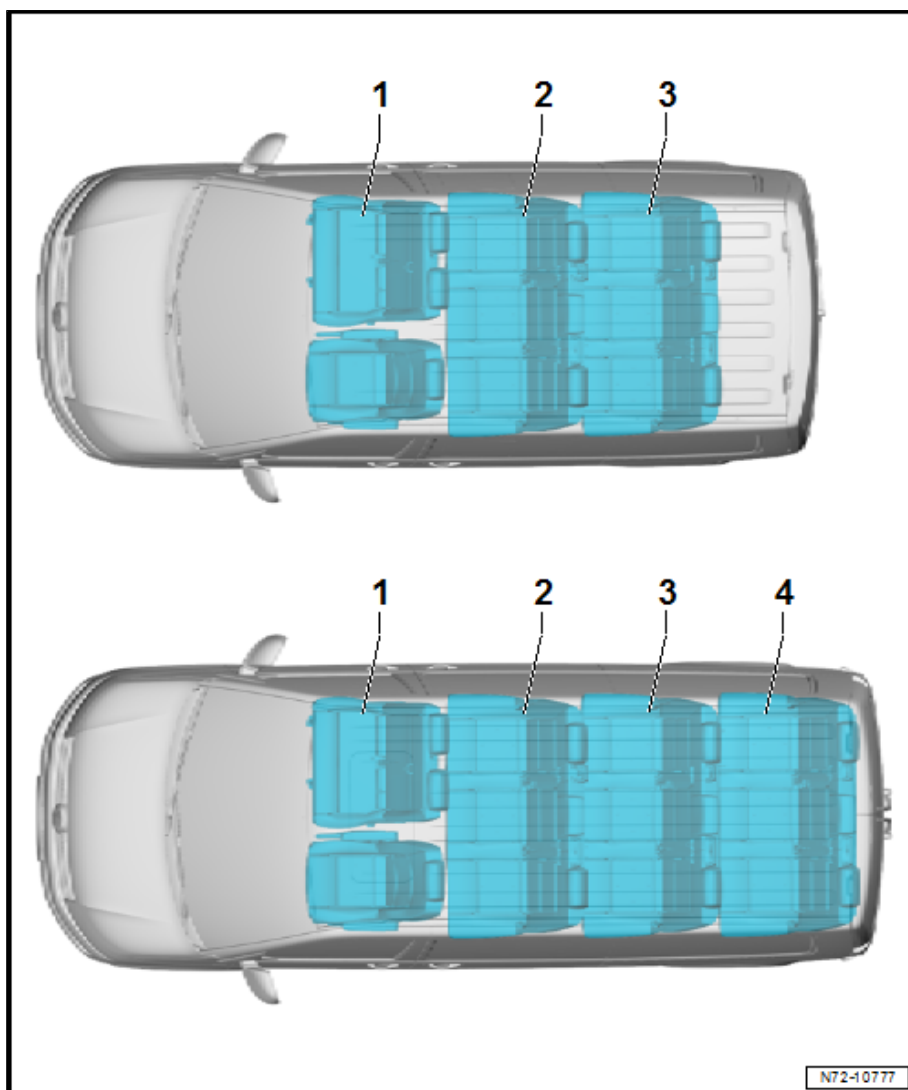
- ☐ 3 individual seats (outer seats with entry assistance) or double bench seat or 3-seater bench seat
- ☐ Drop-side/panel van with double cab: 3-seater bench seat

### 3 - Seat row 3

- ☐ Vehicles with short wheelbase: 3-seater bench seat
- ☐ Vehicles with long wheelbase: double bench seat or 3-seater bench seat

### 4 - Seat row 4

- ☐ Only models with long wheelbase
- ☐ 3-seater bench seat





## 2 Front seats

⇒ "2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components", page 287

⇒ "2.2 Assembly overview - front seat", page 288

⇒ "2.3 Assembly overview – front backrest", page 292

⇒ "2.4 Assembly overview - head restraint", page 296

⇒ "2.5 Assembly overview - seat pan", page 296

⇒ "2.6 Removing and installing front seat", page 300

⇒ "2.7 Retrofitting double bench seat", page 314

⇒ "2.8 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter", page 317

⇒ "2.9 Removing and installing handle for seat height adjustment", page 318

⇒ "2.10 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit", page 319

⇒ "2.11 Removing and installing trim, front seat", page 319

⇒ "2.12 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit", page 331

⇒ "2.13 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 ", page 333

⇒ "2.14 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit", page 335

⇒ "2.15 Removing and handle for installing backrest adjustment", page 335

⇒ "2.16 Removing and installing front backrest", page 336

⇒ "2.17 Removing and installing head restraint guide", page 344

⇒ "2.18 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit, memory setting, lumbar support", page 344

⇒ "2.19 Removing and installing seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory J136 ", page 345

### 2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components

**1 - Seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory - J136-**

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 345](#)

**2 - Seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8-**

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 452](#)

**3 - Backrest adjustment motor - V45- / -V46-**

**4 - Backrest heating element - Z7- / -Z9-**

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 455](#)

**5 - Lumbar support frame**

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 331](#)

**6 - Lumbar support motor - V125- / -V126- / -V129- / -V130-**

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 333](#)

**7 - Backrest bolster adjuster - E470- / -E471-**

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 344](#)

**8 - Seat adjustment operating unit - E470- / -E471-**

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 344](#)

**9 - Operating unit for memory setting - E464- / -E465-**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 344](#)

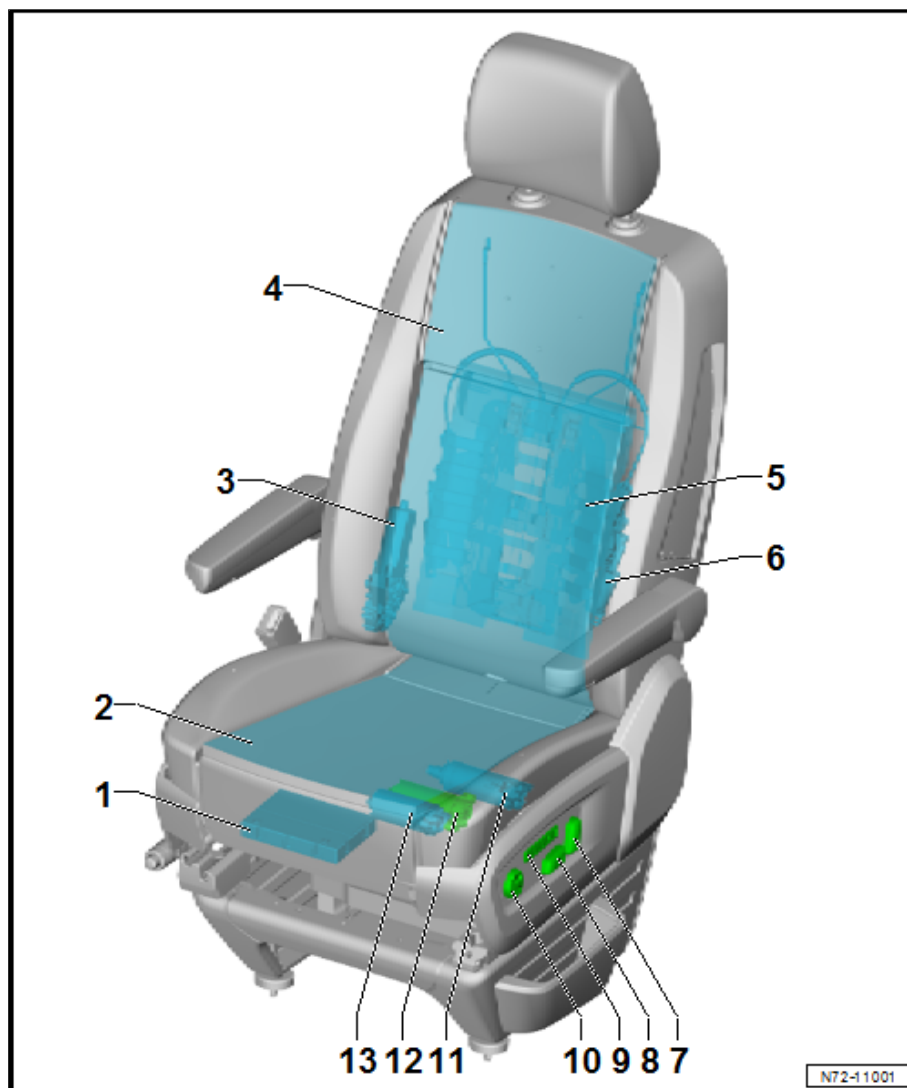
**10 - Lumbar support adjustment switch - E176- / -E177-**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 344](#)

**11 - Seat height adjustment motor - V138- / -V246-**

**12 - Seat longitudinal adjustment motor - V28- / -V31-**

**13 - Seat rake adjustment motor - V243- / -V244-**



## 2.2 Assembly overview - front seat

Assembly overview - front seat, manual adjustment ⇒ [page 288](#)

Assembly overview - front seat, electric adjustment ⇒ [page 289](#)

Assembly overview - front seat, double bench seat ⇒ [page 291](#)

Assembly overview - front seat, manual adjustment



## 1 - Front seat

- ☐ Assembly overview - front backrest  
⇒ [page 292](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 300](#)

## 2 - Head restraint

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 344](#)

## 3 - Bolts

- ☐ Renew after removal
- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 20 Nm

## 4 - Seat armrests

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 66](#)

## 5 - Seat trim

- ☐ Assembly overview - seat pan ⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 319](#)

## 6 - Handle for seat height adjustment

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 318](#)

## 7 - Storage compartment

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 319](#)

## 8 - Seat box

- ☐ Assembly overview - seat pan ⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 300](#)

## 9 - Nuts

- ☐ Renew after removal
- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 20 Nm

## 10 - Handbrake lever trim

## 11 - Seat trim

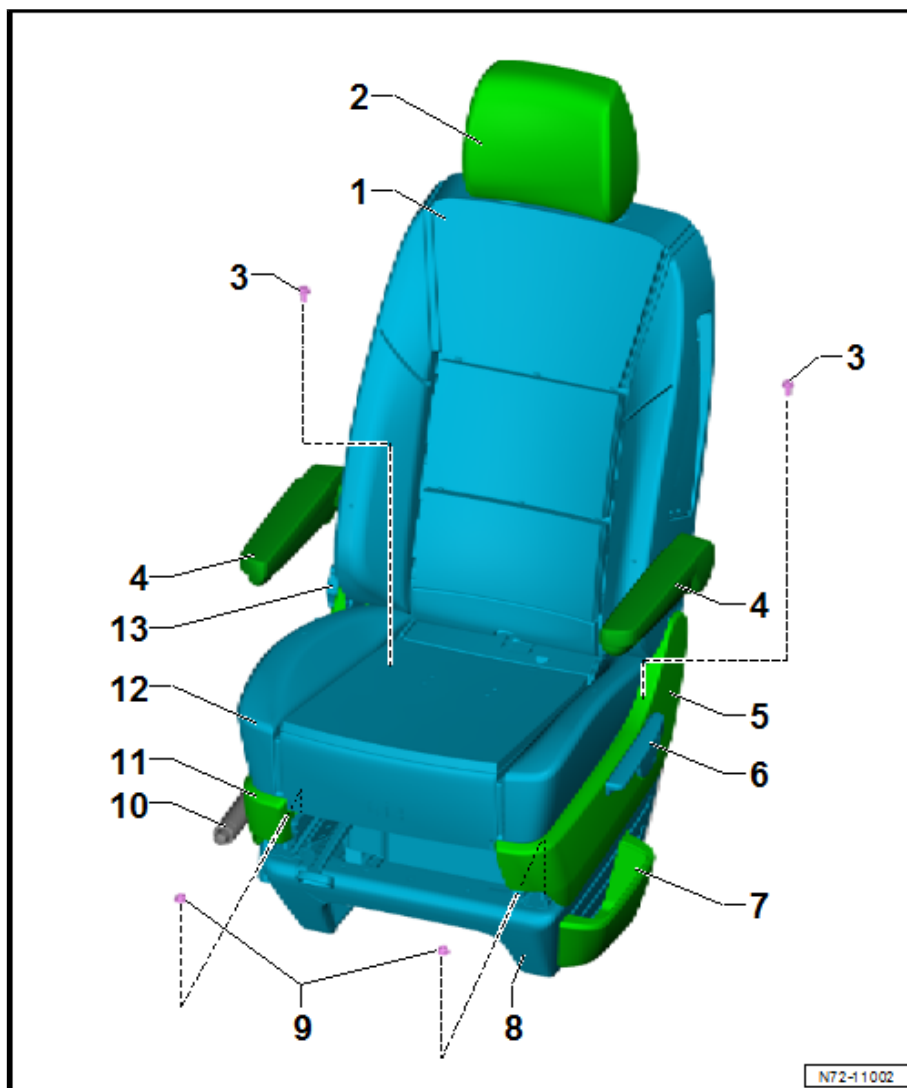
- ☐ Assembly overview - seat pan ⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 319](#)

## 12 - Seat pan

- ☐ Assembly overview ⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing cover and padding on seat pan ⇒ [page 436](#)

## 13 - Backrest adjustment handle

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 335](#)



Assembly overview - front seat, electric adjustment



## 1 - Front seat

- ☐ Assembly overview - front backrest  
⇒ [page 292](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 300](#)

## 2 - Head restraint

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 344](#)

## 3 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ Specified torque  
⇒ [Item 3 \(page 289\)](#)

## 4 - Seat armrests

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 66](#)

## 5 - Trim

- ☐ For seat trim
- ☐ Assembly overview - seat pan ⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 319](#)

## 6 - Seat trim

- ☐ Assembly overview - seat pan ⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 319](#)

## 7 - Operating unit for memory setting - E464- / -E465-

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 344](#)

## 8 - Backrest bolster adjuster - E470- / -E471-

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 344](#)

## 9 - Seat adjustment operating unit - E470- / -E471-

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 344](#)

## 10 - Lumbar support adjustment switch - E176- / -E177-

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 344](#)

## 11 - Storage compartment

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 319](#)

## 12 - Trim

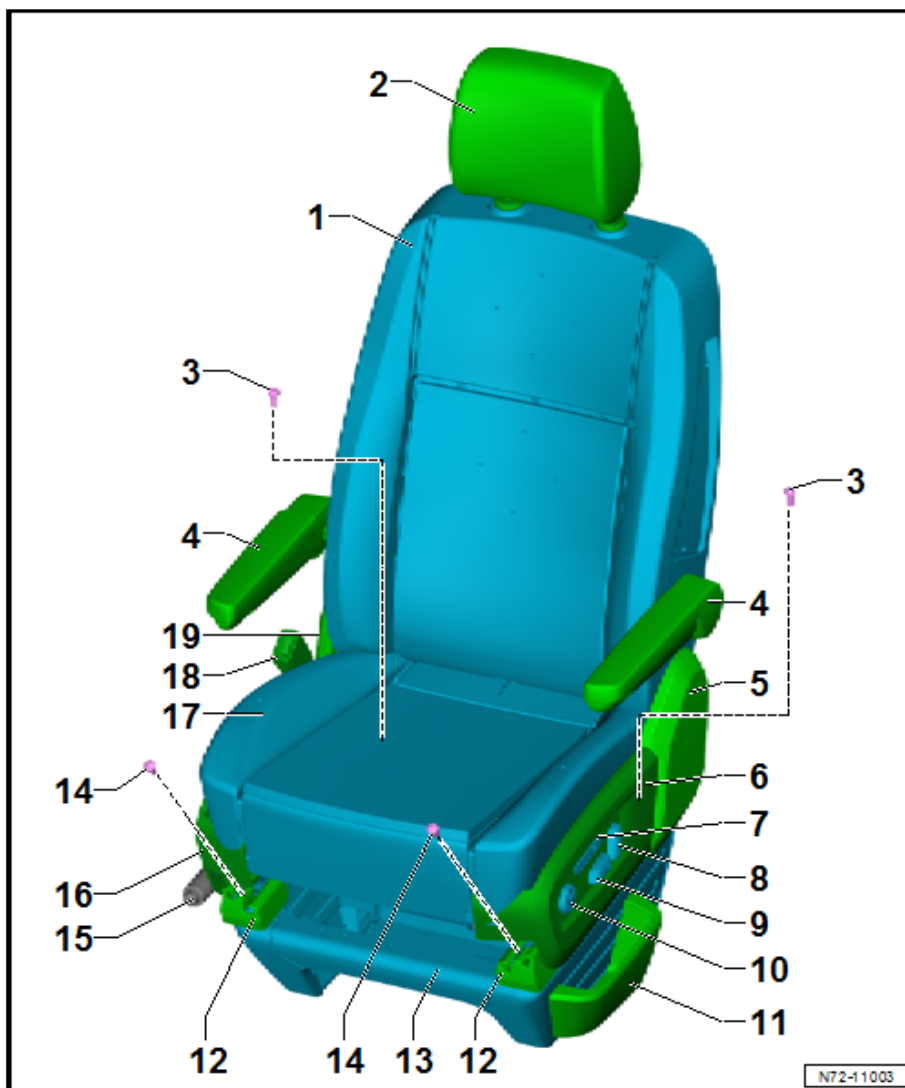
- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 300](#)

## 13 - Seat box

- ☐ Assembly overview - seat pan ⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 300](#)

## 14 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ Specified torque ⇒ [Item 3 \(page 289\)](#)





## 15 - Handbrake lever trim

## 16 - Seat trim

- ☐ Assembly overview - seat pan ⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 319](#)

## 17 - Seat pan

- ☐ Assembly overview ⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing cover and padding on seat pan ⇒ [page 436](#)

## 18 - Front belt buckle

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 130](#)

## 19 - Trim

- ☐ For seat trim
- ☐ Assembly overview - seat pan ⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 319](#)

## Assembly overview - front seat, double bench seat

### 1 - Backrest padding

- ☐ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 444](#)

### 2 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 9 Nm

### 3 - Edge protector

- ☐ For side airbag
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 160](#)

### 4 - Side airbag

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 160](#)

### 5 - Bracket

- ☐ For side airbag

### 6 - Bolt

- ☐ 9 Nm

### 7 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ Adjustable
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 344](#)

### 8 - Head restraint guide

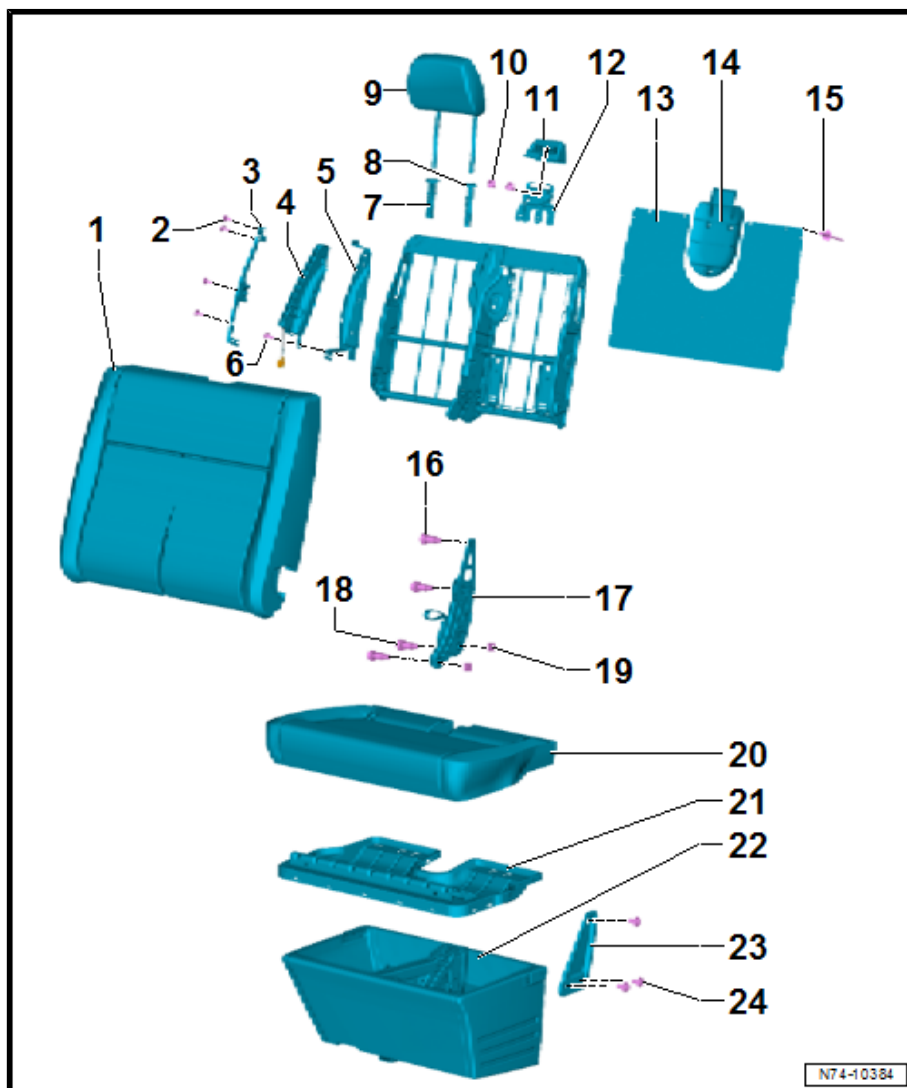
- ☐ With push button for head restraint, adjustable
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 344](#)

### 9 - Head restraint

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 344](#)

### 10 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2







- ☐ 2 Nm

#### 11 - Cover

- ☐ For belt guide

#### 12 - Belt guide

- ☐ Secured with 4 pop rivets

#### 13 - Rear panel board

#### 14 - Cover

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 114](#)

#### 15 - Pop rivet

- ☐ Qty. 11

#### 16 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 65 Nm

#### 17 - Adjustment fitting

#### 18 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2

#### 19 - Nuts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 65 Nm

#### 20 - Seat padding

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 436](#)

#### 21 - Seat pan

#### 22 - Seat box

#### 23 - Fitting

#### 24 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 3
- ☐ 55 Nm

## 2.3 Assembly overview – front backrest

Assembly overview - front backrest, fixed ⇒ [page 292](#)

Assembly overview - front backrest, manual lumbar support  
⇒ [page 293](#)

Assembly overview - front backrest, centre armrest, electronic  
lumbar support ⇒ [page 294](#)

Assembly overview - front backrest, fixed



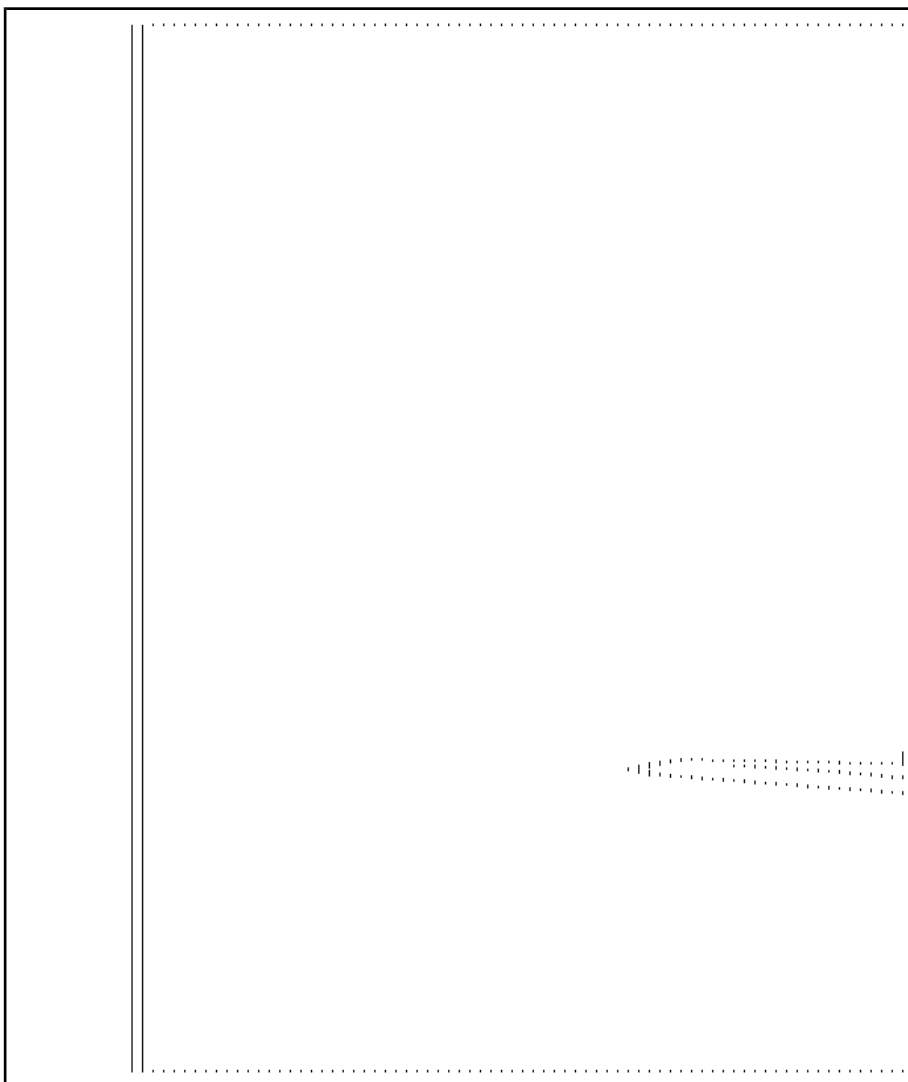


## 1 - Nuts

- ☐ Renew after removal
- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 20 Nm

## 2 - Seat frame

- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing  
seat padding  
⇒ [page 436](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing  
front backrest  
⇒ [page 336](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 300](#)



Assembly overview - front backrest, manual lumbar support



### 1 - Front backrest

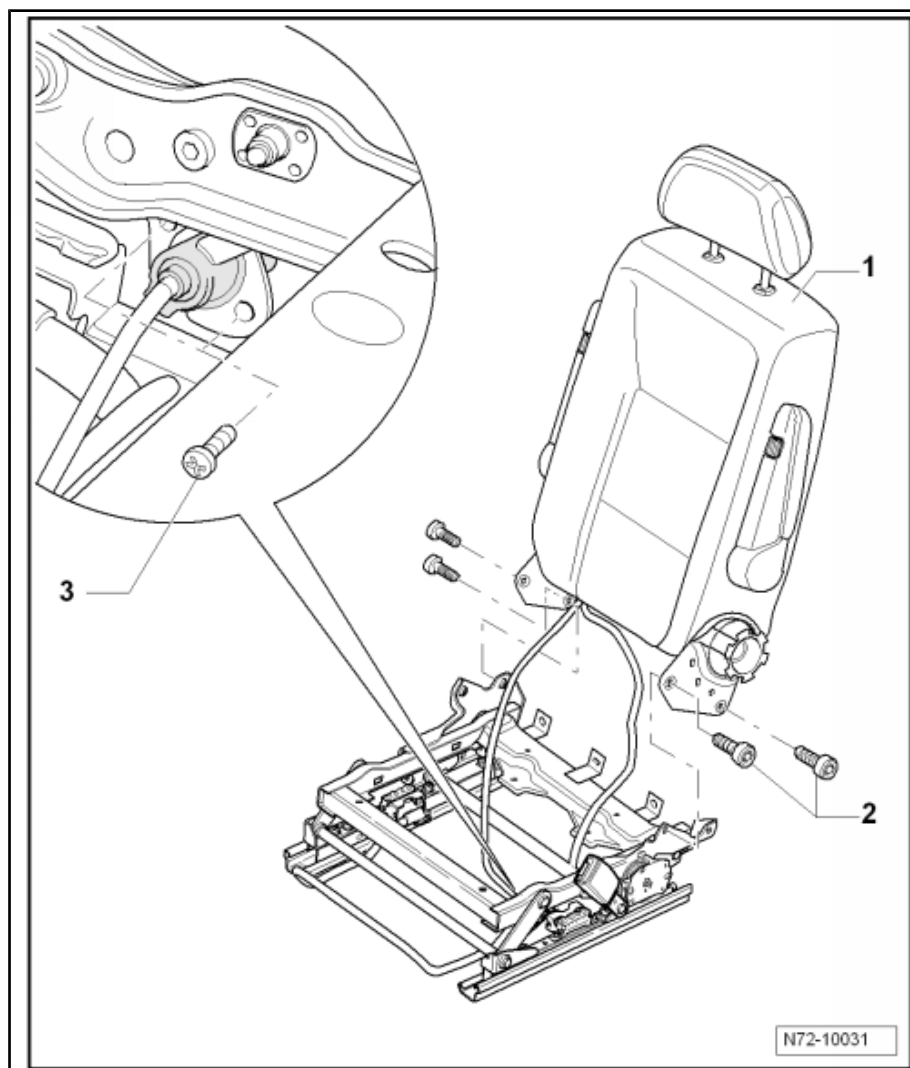
- ☐ Assembly overview - seat frame ➔ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing seat padding ➔ [page 436](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing ➔ [page 336](#)

### 2 - Bolts

- ☐ Renew after removal
- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 20 Nm

### 3 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 8 Nm



Assembly overview - front backrest, centre armrest, electronic lumbar support



## 1 - Head restraint

- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 296](#)

## 2 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ Right
- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 344](#)

## 3 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ Left
- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 344](#)

## 4 - Backrest

- ☐ Removing and installing  
backrest padding  
⇒ [page 444](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 336](#)

## 5 - Front centre armrest

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 66](#)

## 6 - Bolt

- ☐ 20 Nm

## 7 - Cover

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 66](#)

## 8 - Bolts

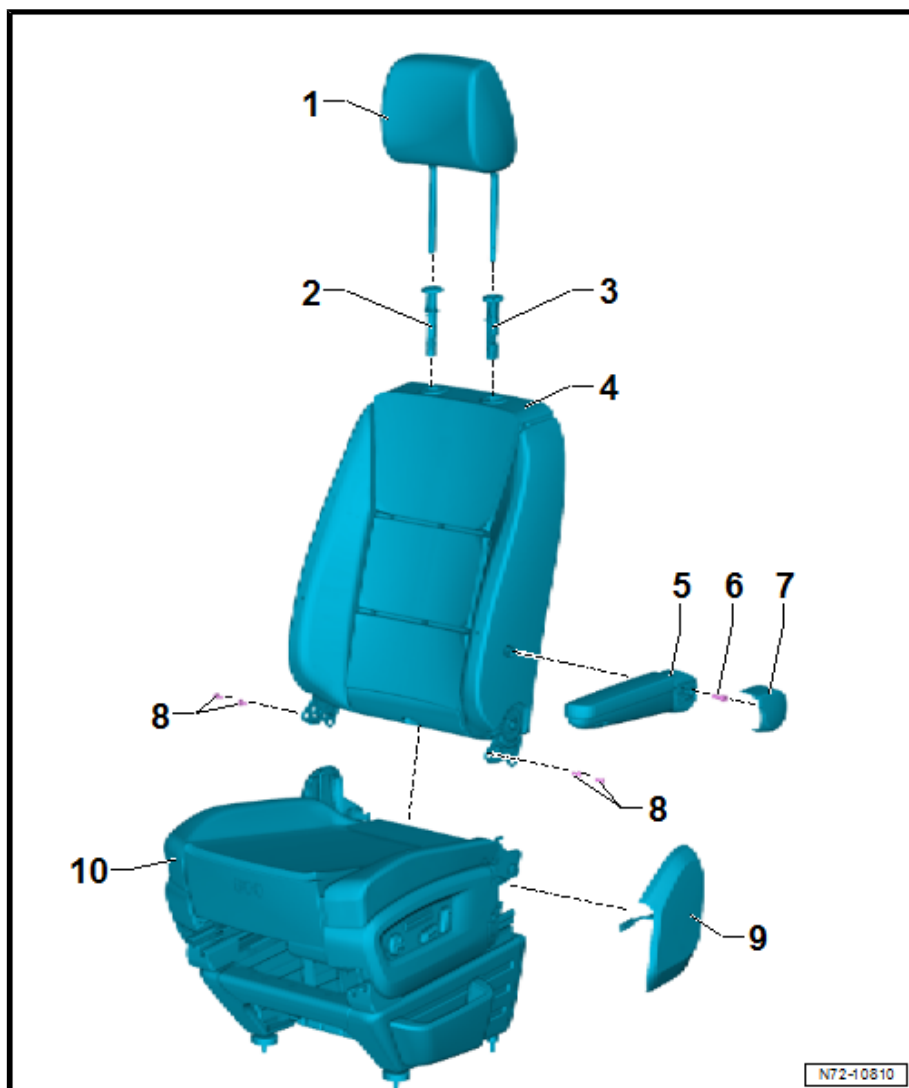
- ☐ Renew after removal
- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ Observe tightening sequence ⇒ [page 341](#)
- ☐ 35 Nm

## 9 - Front seat trim

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 325](#)

## 10 - Seat pan

- ☐ Assembly overview ⇒ [page 296](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing seat padding ⇒ [page 436](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 300](#)



N72-10810



## 2.4 Assembly overview - head restraint



### Note

Different versions, for allocation refer to ⇒ *Electronic Parts Catalogue (ETKA)*

#### 1 - Backrest frame

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 336](#)

#### 2 - Head restraint guide

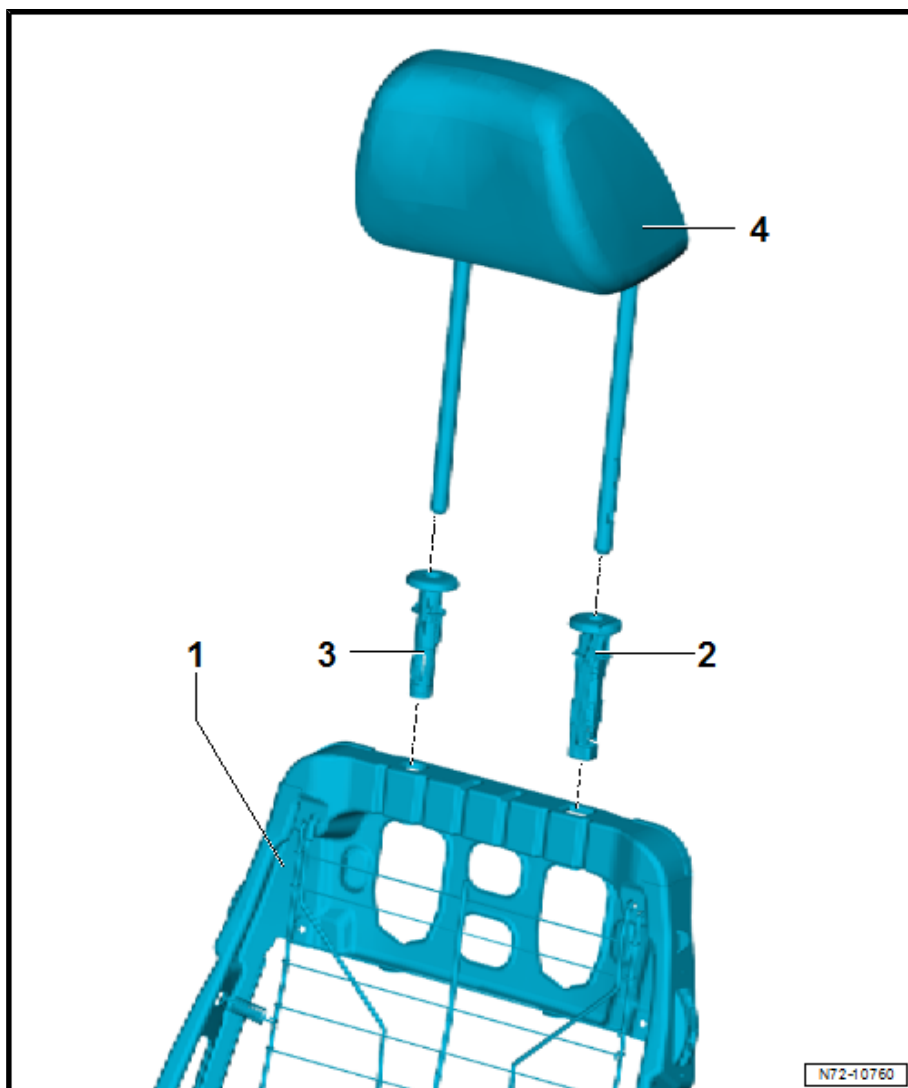
- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 344](#)

#### 3 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With push button for head restraint, adjustable
- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 344](#)

#### 4 - Head restraint

- ❑ Must be properly engaged in head restraint guides.



## 2.5 Assembly overview - seat pan

Assembly overview - seat pan, manual adjustment ⇒ [page 296](#)

Assembly overview - seat pan, electric adjustment ⇒ [page 298](#)

Assembly overview - seat pan, manual adjustment



# **1 - Seat pan**

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 300](#)

# **2 - Clip**

# **3 - Seat trim**

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 319](#)

# **4 - Adjusting knob**

- ☐ For lumbar support
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 331](#)

# **5 - Handle**

- ☐ For backrest adjustment
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 335](#)

# **6 - Spacer ring**

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 335](#)

# **7 - Bolt**

- ☐ Specified torque  
⇒ [page 130](#)

# **8 - Belt buckle**

- ☐ Front
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 130](#)

# **9 - Seat padding**

- ☐ With cover
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 436](#)

# **10 - Seat trim**

- ☐ Seat box

# **11 - Seat trim**

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 319](#)

# **12 - Handle**

- ☐ For seat height adjustment
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 318](#)

# **13 - Caps**

- ☐ Renew after removal
- ☐ Qty. 2

# **14 - Bolts**

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 5.5 Nm

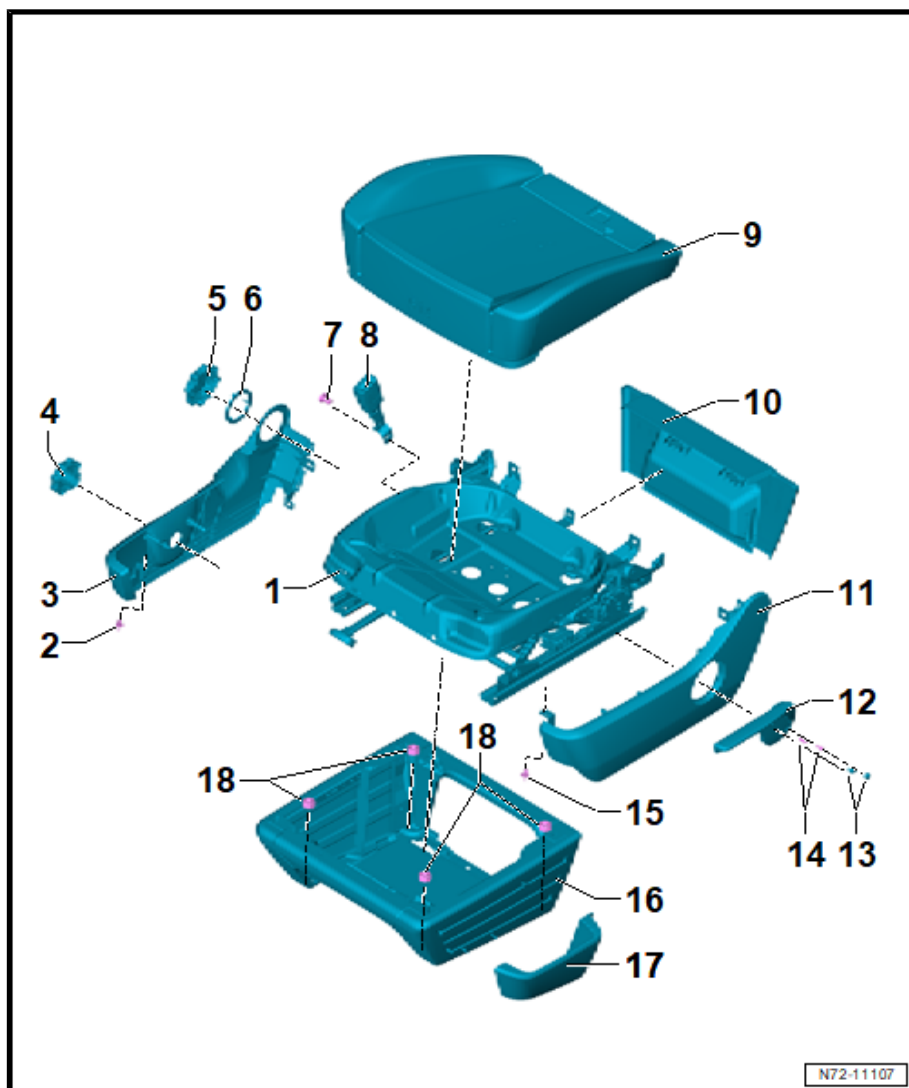
# **15 - Clip**

# **16 - Seat box**

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 300](#)

# **17 - Storage compartment**

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 319](#)





## 18 - Nuts

- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 40 Nm

## Assembly overview - seat pan, electric adjustment

### 1 - Seat pan

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 300](#)

### 2 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 2 Nm

### 3 - Seat padding

- ☐ With cover
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 436](#)

### 4 - Seat trim

- ☐ Rear
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 319](#)

### 5 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 35 Nm

### 6 - Adapter

- ☐ For backrest frame
- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 319](#)

### 7 - Bracket

- ☐ For adapter trim
- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 319](#)

### 8 - Pop rivet

- ☐ Qty. 2

### 9 - Bracket

- ☐ For front seat trim
- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 319](#)

### 10 - Trim

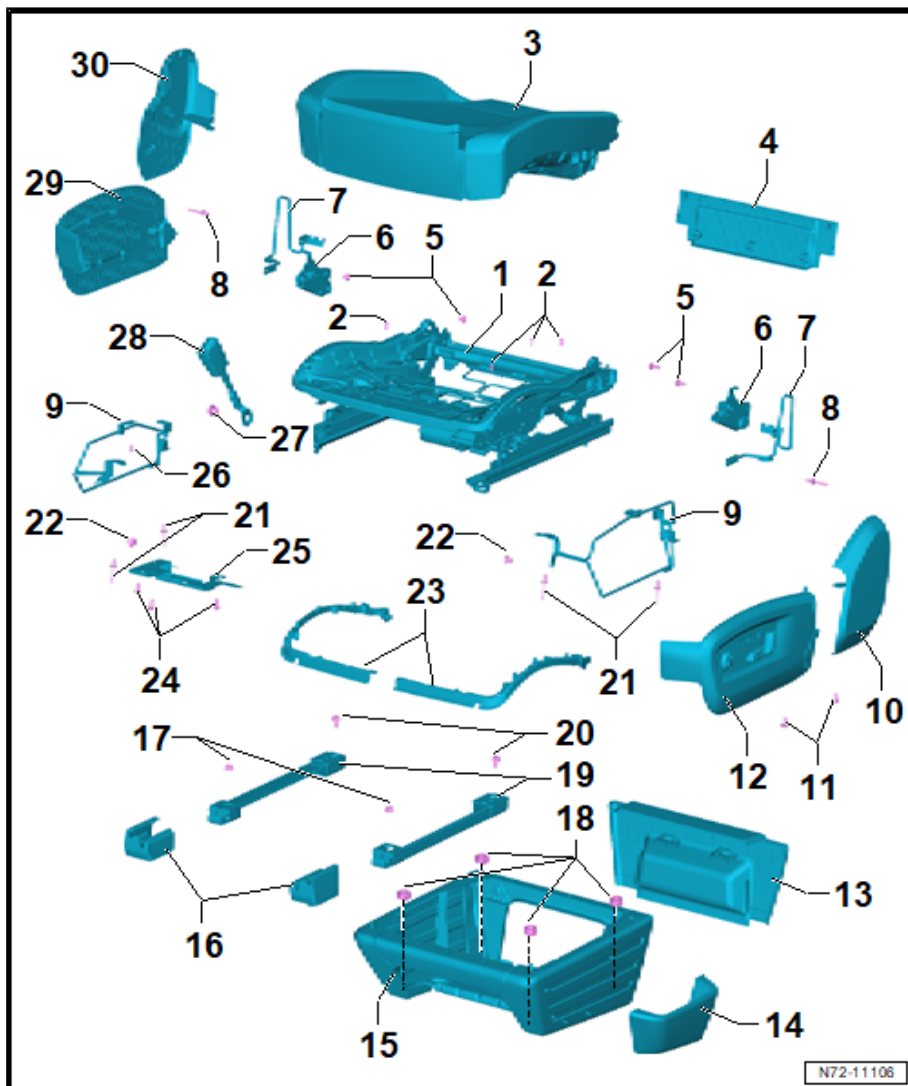
- ☐ For seat trim
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 319](#)

### 11 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 2 Nm

### 12 - Seat trim

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 319](#)





### 13 - Seat trim

- ☐ Seat box

### 14 - Storage compartment

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 319](#)

### 15 - Seat box

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 300](#)

### 16 - Trim

- ☐ Front
- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 300](#)

### 17 - Nuts

- ☐ If removal was carried out due to an accident, renew bolts
- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 20 Nm

### 18 - Nuts

- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 40 Nm

### 19 - Adapter

- ☐ For seat frame
- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 300](#)

### 20 - Bolts

- ☐ If removal was carried out due to an accident, renew bolts
- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 20 Nm

### 21 - Pop rivet

- ☐ Qty. 2

### 22 - Clip

### 23 - Bracket

- ☐ For cover and padding on seat pan
- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 319](#)

### 24 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 3
- ☐ 2 Nm

### 25 - Adapter

- ☐ For control unit holder

### 26 - Bolt

- ☐ 2 Nm

### 27 - Bolt

- ☐ Specified torque ⇒ [page 130](#)

### 28 - Belt buckle

- ☐ Front
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 130](#)

### 29 - Seat trim

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 319](#)



## 30 - Trim

- ☐ For seat trim
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 319](#)

## 2.6 Removing and installing front seat

⇒ [“2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat, adjustable and fixed”, page 300](#)

⇒ [“2.6.2 Removing and installing front swivel seat”, page 303](#)

⇒ [“2.6.3 Removing and installing front trim”, page 306](#)

⇒ [“2.6.4 Removing and installing seat frame adapter”, page 306](#)

⇒ [“2.6.5 Removing and installing adapter for front swivel seat”, page 307](#)

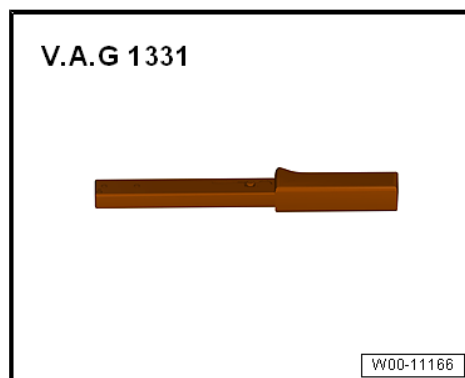
⇒ [“2.6.6 Removing and installing swivel frame for front swivel seat”, page 310](#)

⇒ [“2.6.7 Removing and installing front seat, double bench seat”, page 311](#)

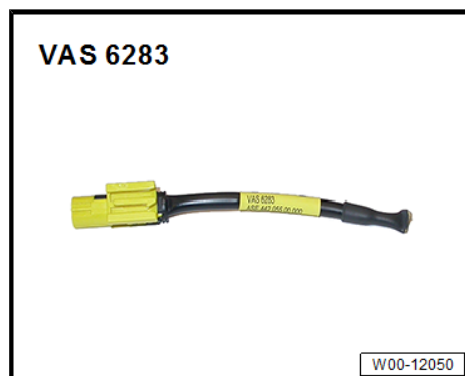
### 2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat, adjustable and fixed

Special tools and workshop equipment required

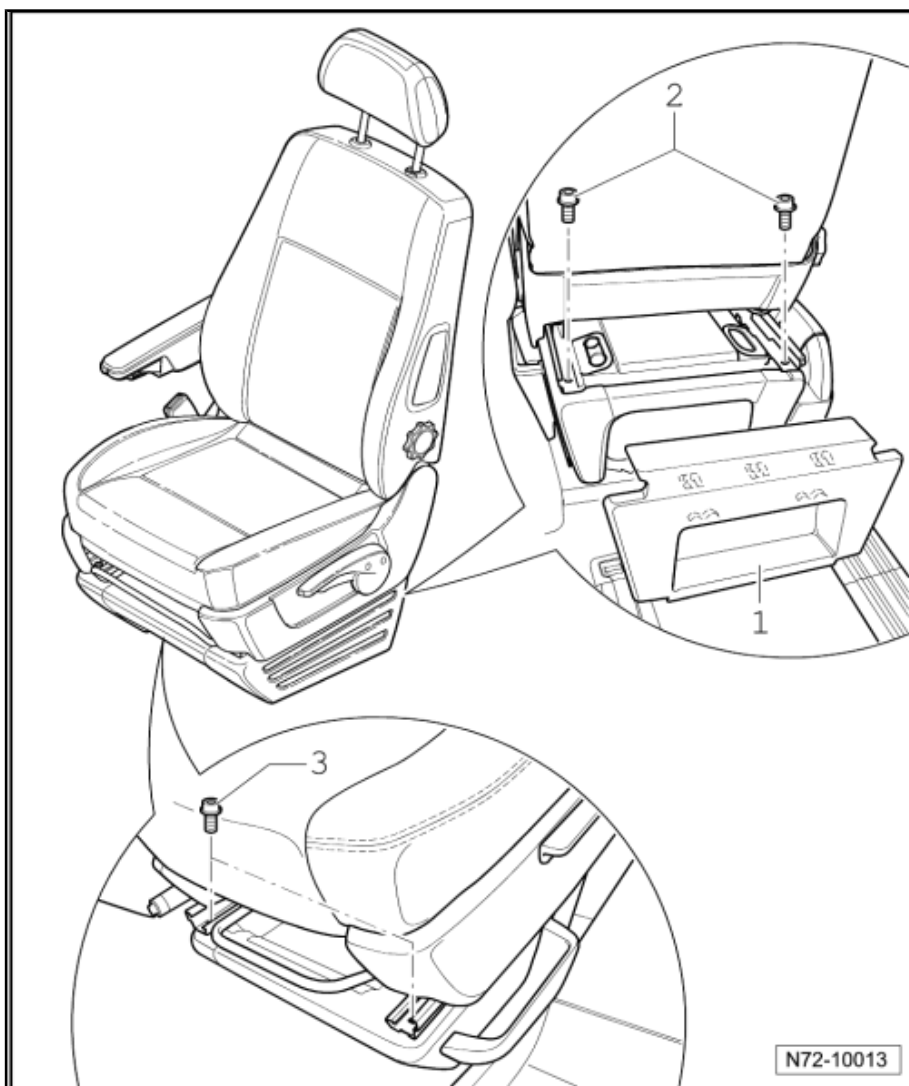
- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



- ◆ Airbag adapter - VAS 6283-







## Removing



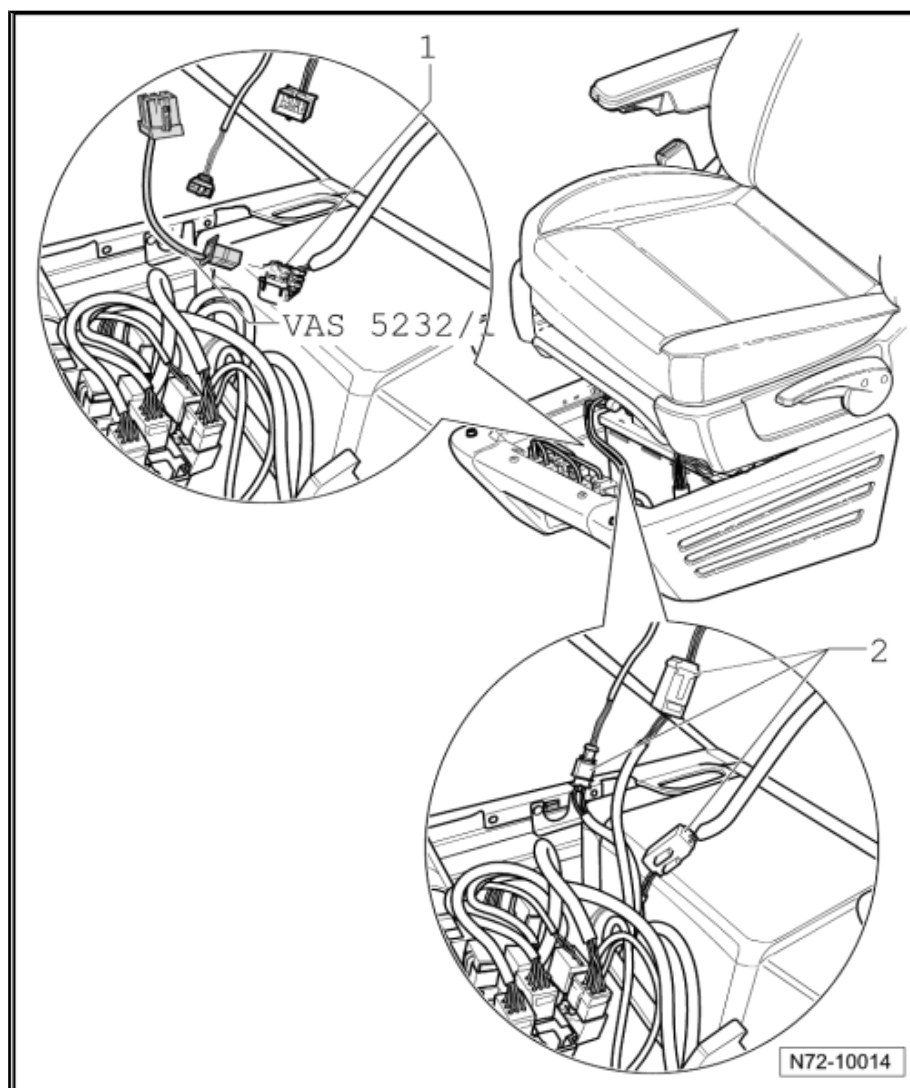
### Note

- ◆ *Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. The removal and installation of the right side of the vehicle is similar.*
- ◆ *Removal and installation is described for the height-adjustable front seat. The removal and installation procedure for the fixed or electric adjusting front seat is similar.*
- Switch off ignition.
- If fitted, remove front trim ⇒ [page 306](#) .
- If front seat has electric adjustment, remove rear trim of front seat ⇒ [page 325](#) .
- Move driver seat as far forwards as possible.
- Pull off battery trim -1- towards rear.
- Unscrew rear bolts -2- from seat rails.
- Move driver seat to rearmost position.
- Unscrew front bolts -3- from seat rails.



## Note

- ◆ Instead of the front bolts -3- nuts may be installed as well.
- ◆ Recutting damaged threads in the seat frame is not permissible. The whole seat frame has to be renewed.



## WARNING

*Electrostatic discharges may result in unintentional triggering of airbag. Therefore, the mechanic must electrostatically discharge him/herself before disconnecting the igniter and earth wires. This can be done by briefly touching the body or striker plate of the door.*

- Disconnect battery ➔ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Pull out fuse -S171-.
- Lift up front of seat until wiring harnesses -2- are accessible.
- Separate any wiring harnesses -2-, depending on equipment.



- Fit airbag adapter - VAS 6283- onto plug-in connector of side airbag -1-.
- Remove seat from vehicle.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Switch on ignition.



### WARNING

*Ensure that nobody is in vehicle.*

- Connect batteries ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ ["2.2 Assembly overview - front seat", page 288](#)

## 2.6.2 Removing and installing front swivel seat

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

V.A.G 1331



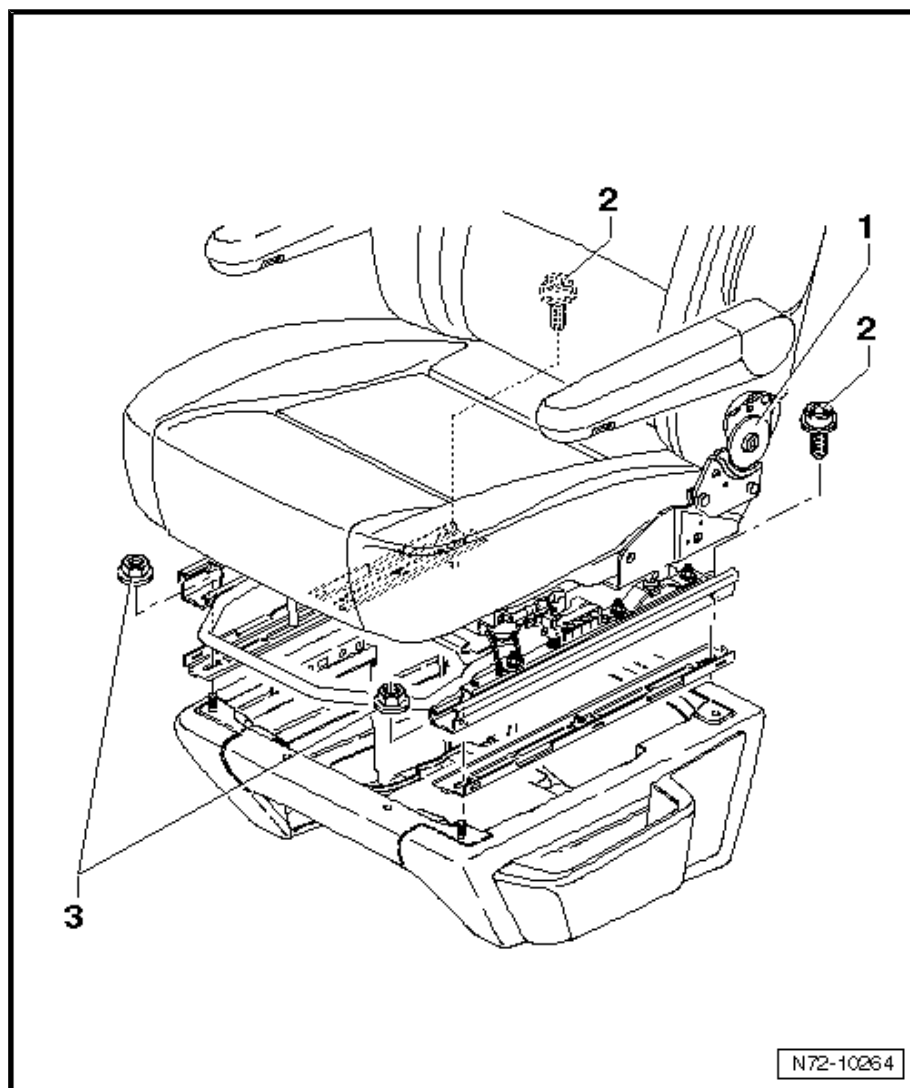
W00-11166

- ◆ Airbag adapter - VAS 6283-

VAS 6283



W00-12050



## Removing



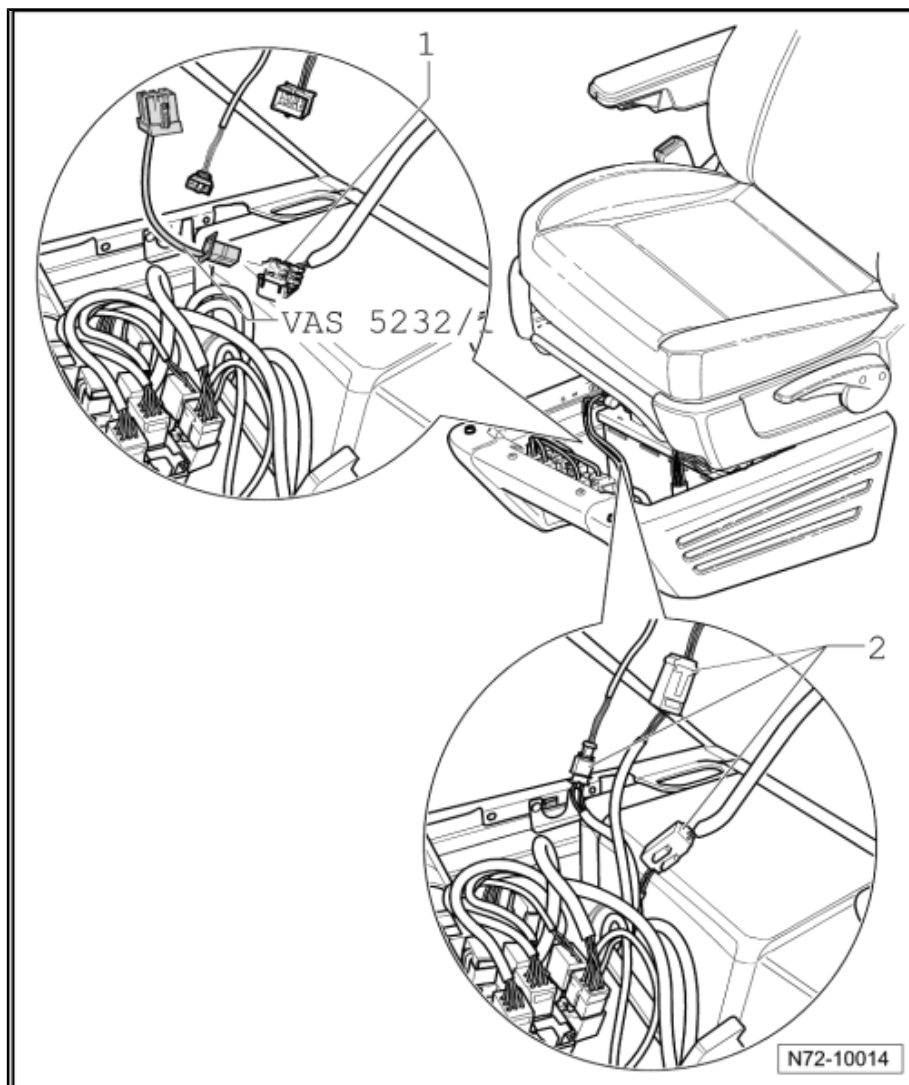
### Note

- ◆ *Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. The removal and installation of the right side of the vehicle is similar.*
- ◆ *For reasons of clarity, the trim has been removed from the seat.*
- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Move driver seat -1- as far forwards as possible.
- Pull off battery trim towards rear.
- Unscrew rear bolts -2- from seat rails.
- Move driver seat -1- to rearmost position.
- Unscrew front nuts -3- from seat rails.



Note

*Recutting damaged threads in the seat frame is not permissible. The whole seat frame has to be renewed.*



- Lift up front of seat until wiring harnesses -2- are accessible.



**WARNING**

*Electrostatic discharges may result in unintentional triggering of airbag. Therefore, the mechanic must electrostatically discharge him/herself before disconnecting the igniter and earth wires. This can be done by briefly touching the body or striker plate of the door.*

- Separate any wiring harnesses -2-, depending on equipment.
- Fit airbag adapter - VAS 6283- onto plug-in connector of side airbag -1-.
- Remove seat from vehicle.



## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Switch on ignition.



### WARNING

*Ensure that nobody is in vehicle.*

- Connect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

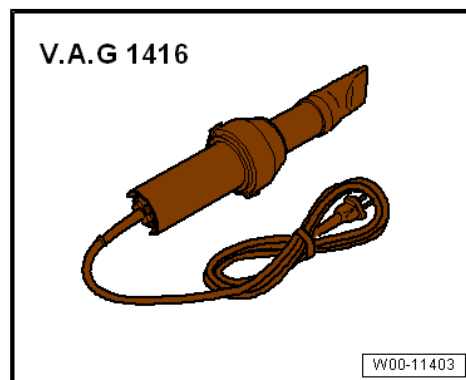
## Specified torques

- ♦ ⇒ [“2.5 Assembly overview - seat pan”, page 296](#)

## 2.6.3 Removing and installing front trim

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Hot-air blower - V.A.G 1416-



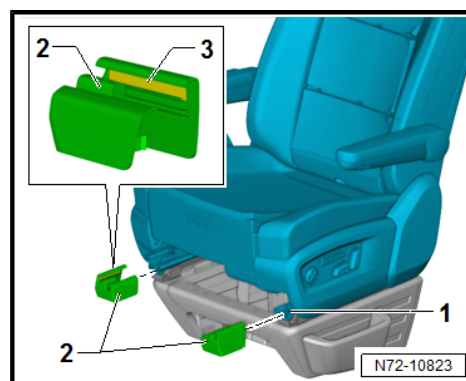
## Removing

- Heat up trims -2- lightly on front left and right using a hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .
- Pull off trims -2- forwards out of seat rails -1-.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Renew double-sided adhesive tape -3-.



## 2.6.4 Removing and installing seat frame adapter

### Special tools and workshop equipment required



- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

V.A.G 1331



W00-11166

### Removing

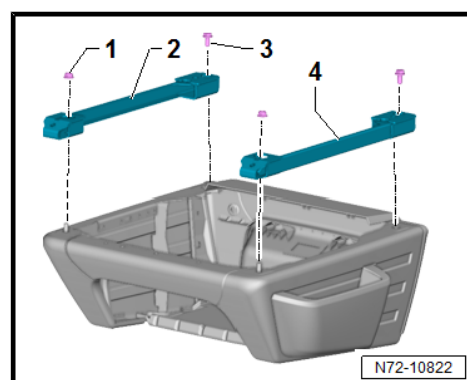
- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 300](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -3- on left and right.
- Unscrew nuts -1- on left and right.
- Remove seat rails -2- and -4- from seat box.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“2.5 Assembly overview - seat pan”, page 296](#)



N72-10822

## 2.6.5 Removing and installing adapter for front swivel seat

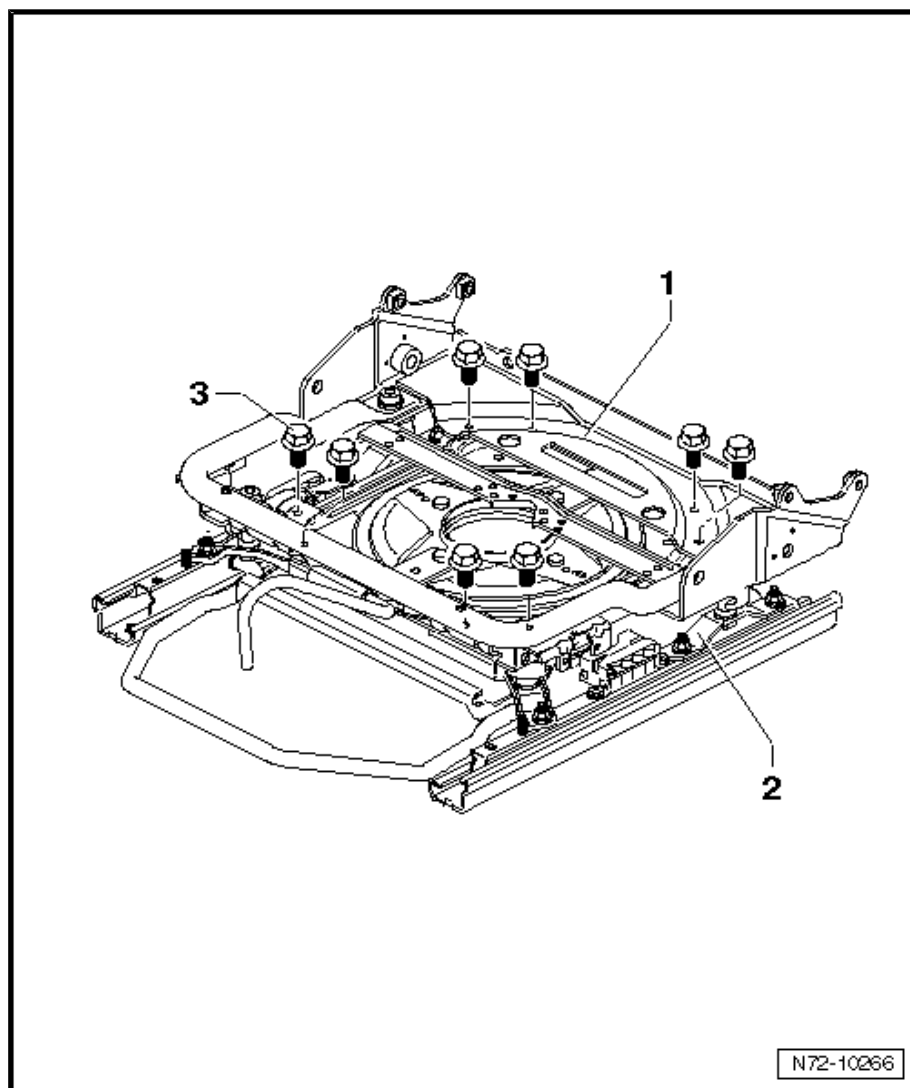
### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

V.A.G 1331



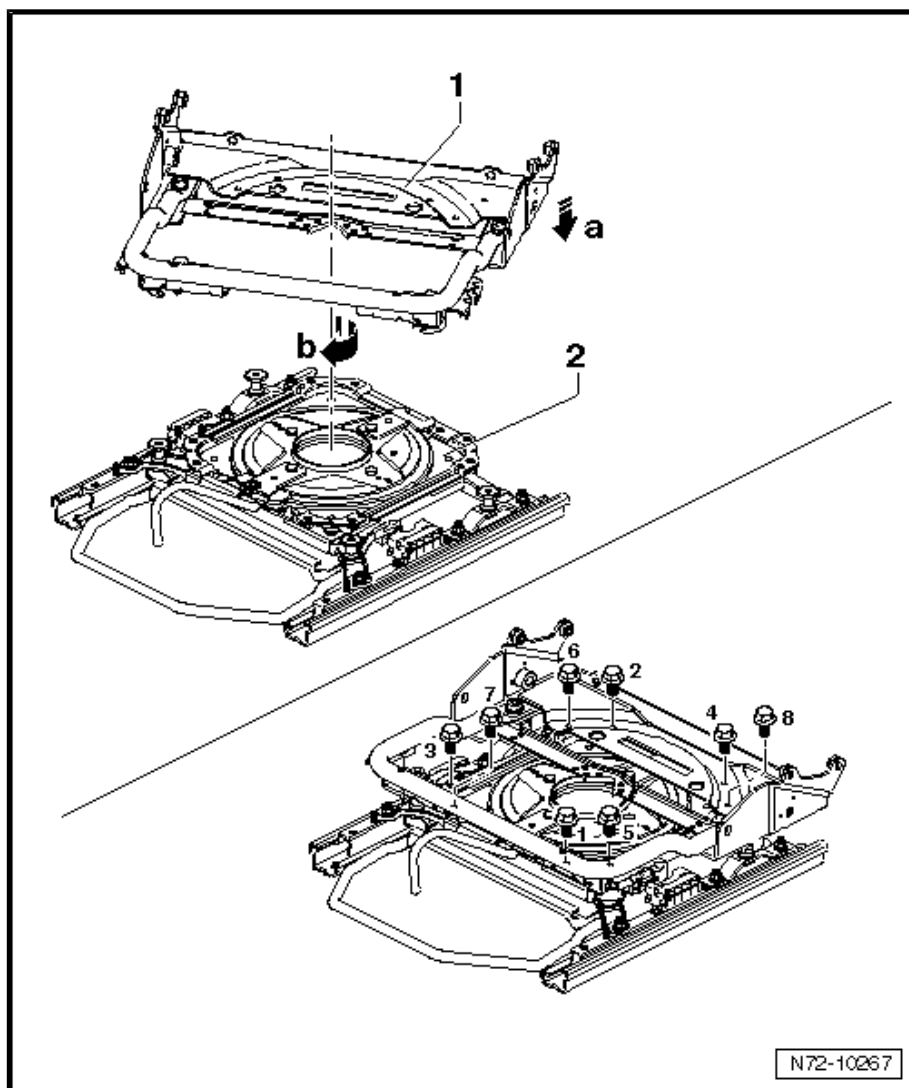
W00-11166



### Removing

- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 336](#) .
- Remove front seat cushion of front swivel seat ⇒ [page 436](#) .
- Remove front seat backrest ⇒ [page 336](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- Remove adapter -1- from swivel frame -2-.





## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



### Note

*The tightening sequence -1 to 8- must be strictly adhered to.*

- Fit front swivel seat adapter -1- (offset 30°) in -direction of arrow a- onto swivel frame -2-.
- Turn front swivel seat adapter -1- back in -direction of arrow b-.
- Start all eight bolts.
- Tighten bolts in the sequence -1- to -8-.

## Specified torques

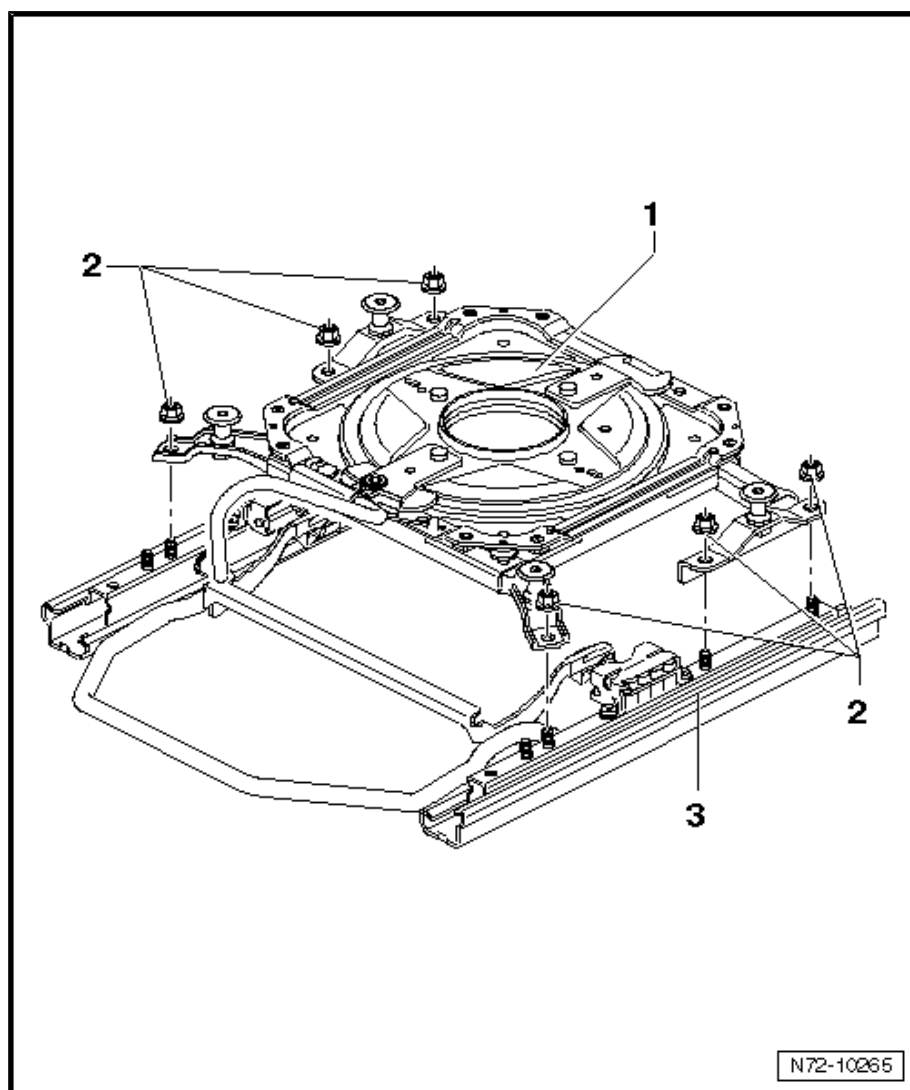
Component	Specified torque
Bolts for adapter	8 Nm



## 2.6.6 Removing and installing swivel frame for front swivel seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



### Removing

- Remove front swivel seat adapter.
- Unscrew nuts -2-.



- Remove swivel frame -1- from seat frame -3-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

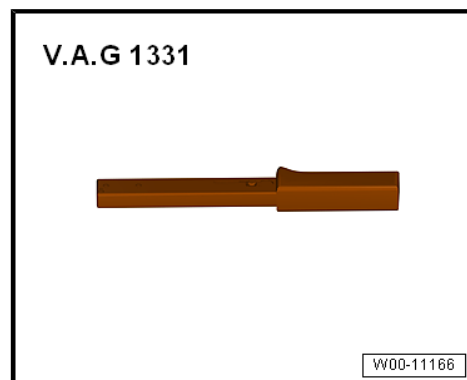
### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Nuts on swivel frame	20 Nm

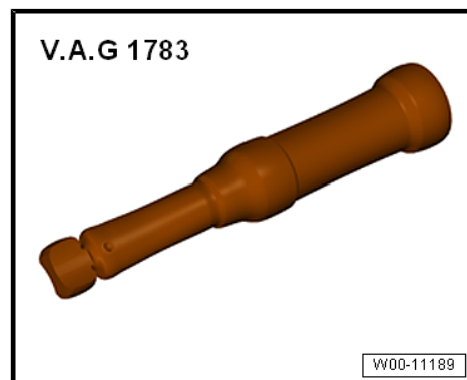
## 2.6.7 Removing and installing front seat, double bench seat

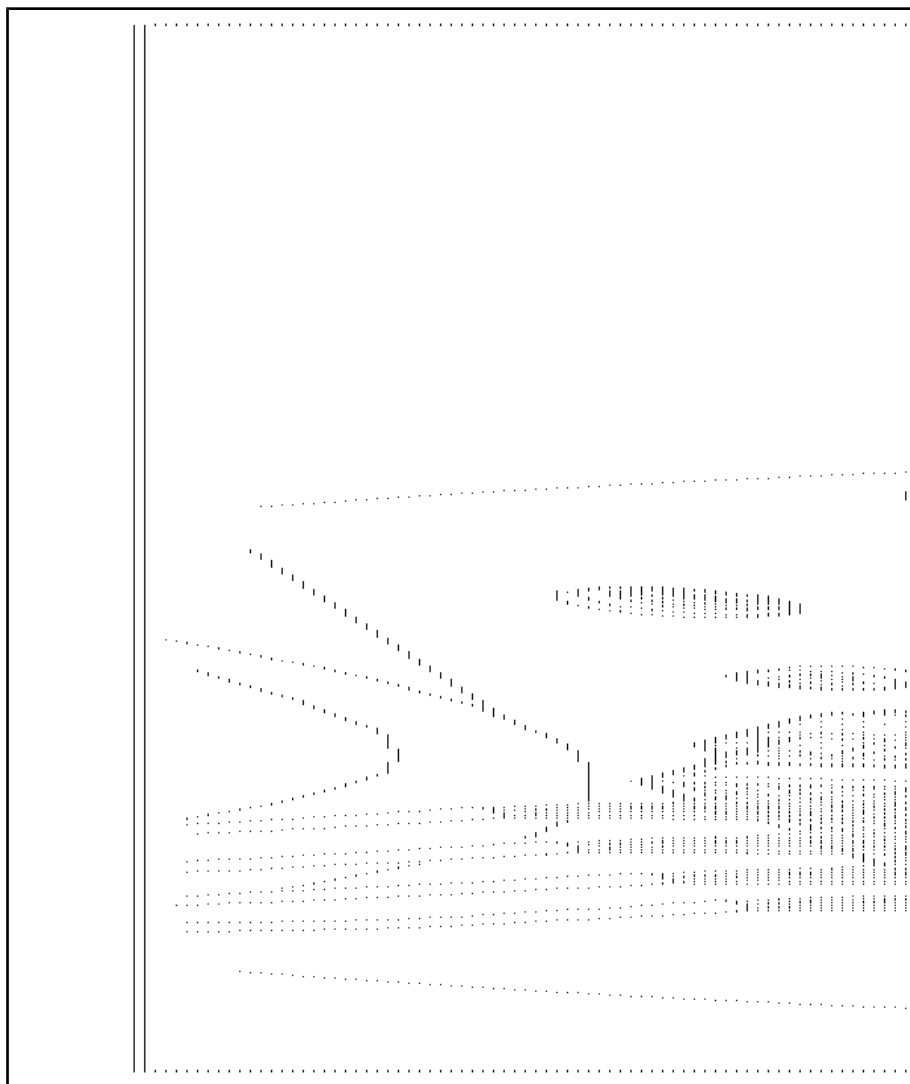
### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



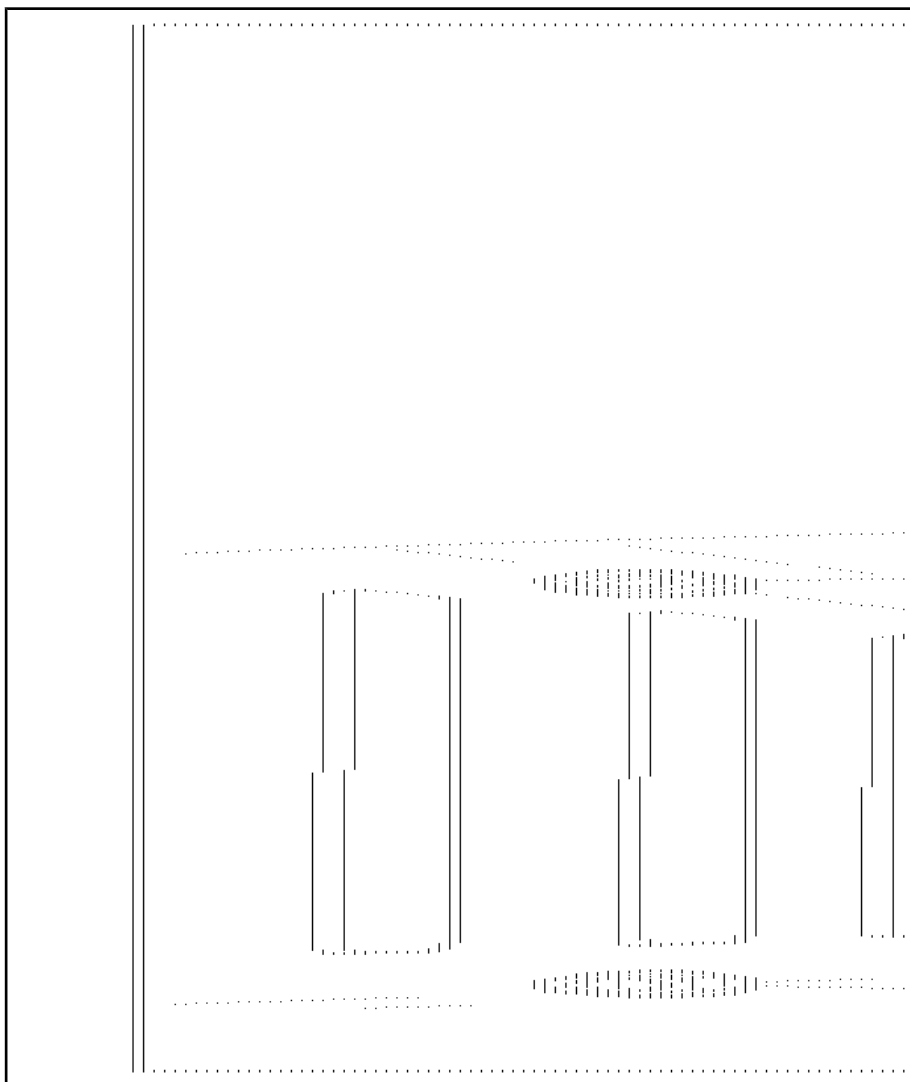
- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-





### Removing

- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Fold seat padding forwards.
- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- Remove coupling station -4-.
- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Remove control unit -1- from bracket.



- Unscrew nuts -2-.
- If fitted, disconnect connectors.
- Lift bench seat -1- out of vehicle.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Connect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for coupling station and control unit	3 Nm
Nuts on double bench seat	40 Nm



## 2.7 Retrofitting double bench seat

⇒ [“2.7.1 Notes”, page 314](#)

⇒ [“2.7.2 Retrofitting airbag unit on front passenger side”, page 314](#)

⇒ [“2.7.3 Retrofitting from individual seat to double bench seat”, page 314](#)

### 2.7.1 Notes

To retrofit a double bench seat at the front passenger side, the vehicle must satisfy the following conditions:

- Body designs: panel van, Kombi, Caravelle
- Individual seat fitted on front passenger side

The following parts are required; see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA) for the up-to-date part numbers.

Designation	Quantity
Double bench seat assembly	1
Seat mounting holders	4
Pop rivet	4
Hexagon drive double stud	4
Spacer sleeve	2
Hexagon flange nut	4
Airbag unit on front passenger side	1

### 2.7.2 Retrofitting airbag unit on front passenger side



#### Note

*Use the front passenger side airbag unit for the double bench seat.*

#### Removing

- Remove airbag unit on front passenger side  
⇒ [“6.1 Removing and installing front passenger side airbag unit with igniter”, page 154](#).

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### 2.7.3 Retrofitting from individual seat to double bench seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required



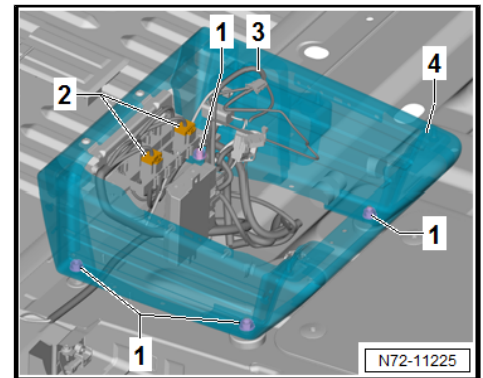
- ◆ Torque wrench - VAG 1332-



- ◆ Punch
- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic tester

### Removing

- Remove front passenger seat  
⇒ ["2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat, adjustable and fixed", page 300](#) .
- Loosen wiring harness retainers -3-.
- Disconnect wiring harness connectors -2-.
- Loosen nuts -1- of seat box -4-.
- Lift out seat box.
- Remove front silencer ⇒ Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Removing and installing front silencer .
- Remove front right underbody cladding ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Underbody cladding; Assembly overview – underbody cladding; Assembly overview – front right underbody cladding .
- Remove front left underbody cladding ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Underbody cladding; Assembly overview – underbody cladding; Assembly overview – front left underbody cladding .
- Detach exhaust system, and remove sensors if fitted.
- Remove heat shield at front ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Mouldings/trim/ extensions; Removing and installing underbody heat shield; Removing and installing underbody heat shield, front tunnel, converter .
- Remove heat shield in centre ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66 ; Mouldings/trim/ extensions; Removing and installing underbody heat shield; Removing and installing underbody heat shield, centre tunnel .



### Note

*The floor panel is equipped with four additional drillings to secure the double bench seat. The drillings are covered with foil.*

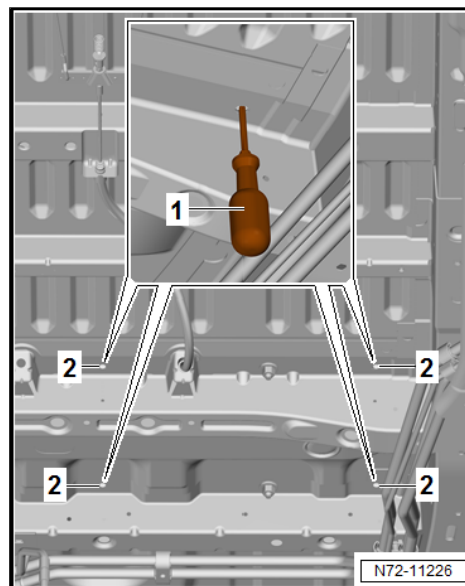


- Punch through drillings in floor panel -2- centrally from below using suitable tool -1-.

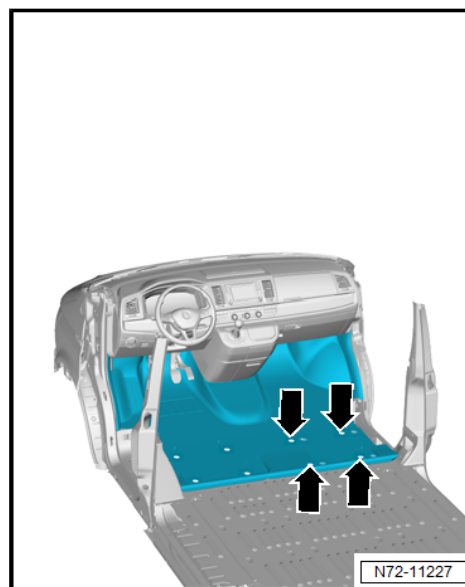


#### Note

*Punch through the drillings deeply enough so that the floor covering is also pierced.*



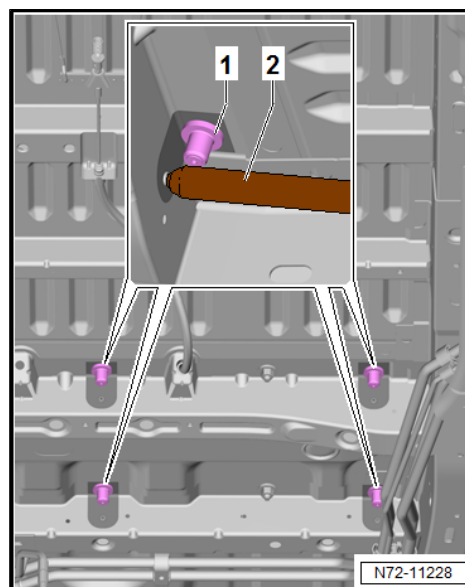
- Cut out the pierced floor covering -1- approx. 30 mm in a circle -arrow-, e.g. with a punch.



- Secure seat mounting holders -1- with pop rivets to floor panel using suitable tool -2-.
- Screw hexagon drive double studs into seat mounting holders, and tighten them.
- Fit spacer sleeves over hexagon drive double studs between floor panel and floor covering.

Component	Specified torque
Hexagon drive double studs	55 Nm

- Installation is carried out in reverse order.
- Install double bench seat  
⇒ ["2.6.7 Removing and installing front seat, double bench seat", page 311](#) .
- Read event memory, and erase any recorded entries.



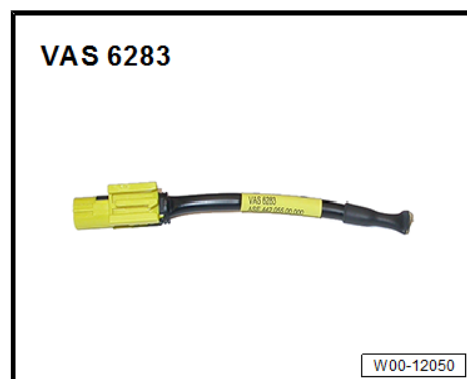




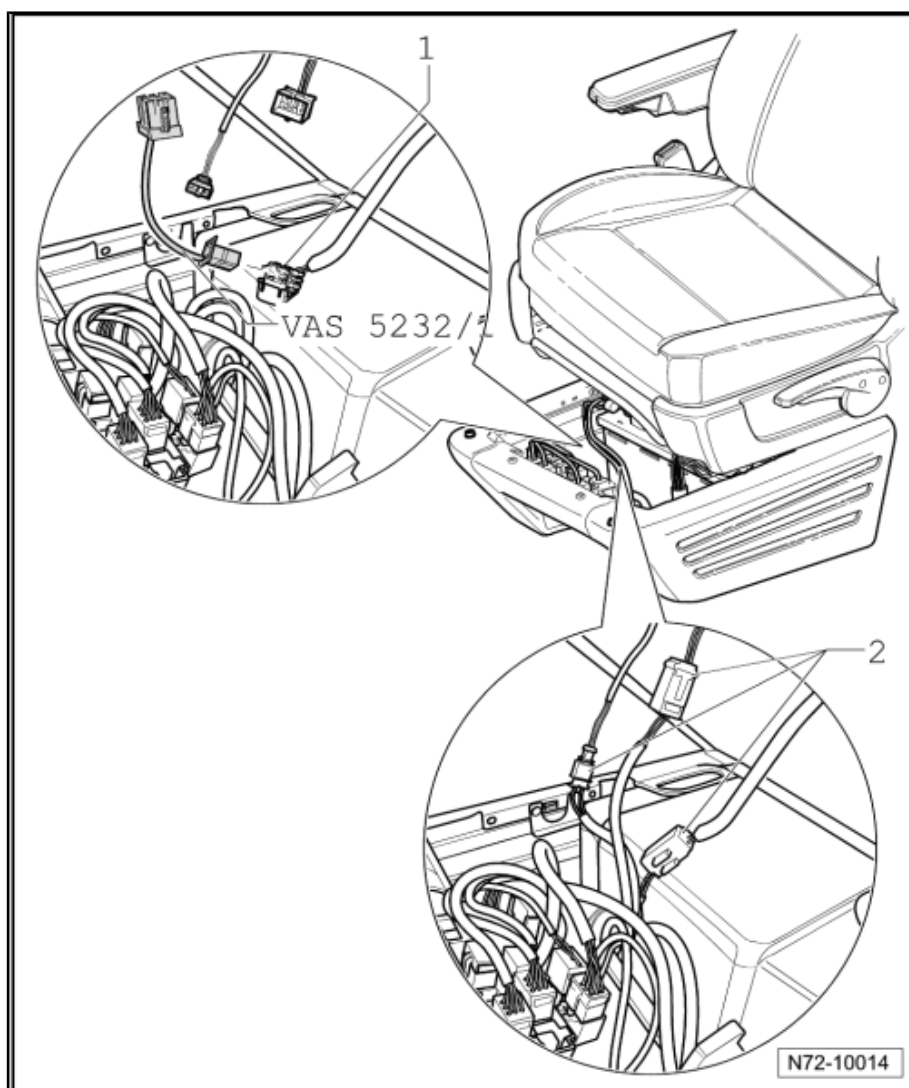
## 2.8 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Airbag adapter - VAS 6283-



### Procedure



- Switch on ignition.



- Disconnect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Disconnect second battery -A1- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Pull out fuse -S171-.



#### WARNING

*Electrostatic discharges may result in unintentional triggering of airbag. Therefore, the mechanic must electrostatically discharge him/herself before disconnecting the igniter and earth wires. This can be done by briefly touching the body or striker plate of the door.*

- Lay wiring harnesses -2- aside.
- Fit airbag adapter - VAS 6283- on wiring harness -1- for side airbag.



#### Note

*The airbag adapter - VAS 6283- must remain connected to the wiring harness -1- until the seat is installed again.*

## 2.9 Removing and installing handle for seat height adjustment

### Removing



#### Note

*The caps -2- cannot be removed without becoming damaged.*

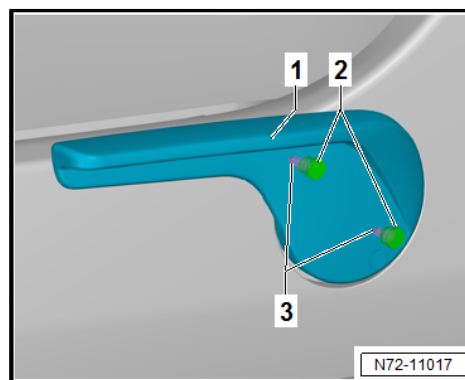
- Front seat must be positioned in foremost and highest position.
- Remove caps -2-.
- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- Remove handle for seat height adjustment -1-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

- ♦ ⇒ ["2.5 Assembly overview - seat pan", page 296](#)





## 2.10 Removing and installing seat height adjustment unit

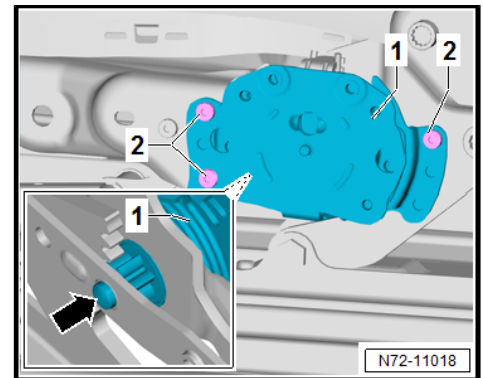
### Removing

- Remove trim on sill side ⇒ [page 319](#) .
- Secure seat frame to prevent possible sagging.
- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Remove seat height adjustment unit -1-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Make sure that teeth on seat height adjustment -1- align with shaft splines -arrow-.



### Specified torques

- ♦ ⇒ [“2.5 Assembly overview - seat pan”, page 296](#)

## 2.11 Removing and installing trim, front seat

⇒ [“2.11.1 Removing and installing trim, front seat, height adjustable”, page 319](#)

⇒ [“2.11.2 Removing and installing trim, front seat, fixed”, page 321](#)

⇒ [“2.11.3 Removing and installing trim, front seat, swivel-type”, page 323](#)

⇒ [“2.11.4 Removing and installing seat trim on sill side, electrically adjustable seat”, page 325](#)

⇒ [“2.11.5 Removing and installing rear seat trim”, page 326](#)

⇒ [“2.11.6 Removing and installing bracket”, page 326](#)

⇒ [“2.11.7 Removing and installing adapter trim bracket”, page 326](#)

⇒ [“2.11.8 Removing and installing backrest frame adapter”, page 327](#)

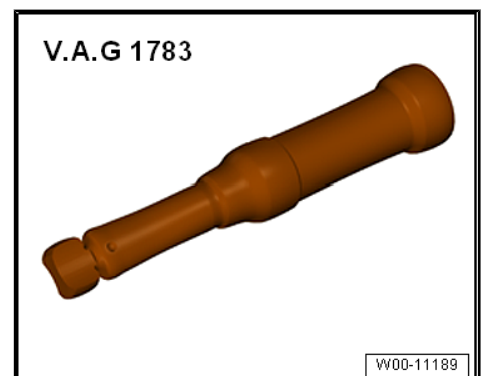
⇒ [“2.11.9 Removing and installing trim bracket on front seat”, page 328](#)

⇒ [“2.11.10 Removing and installing storage compartment, front seat”, page 329](#)

### 2.11.1 Removing and installing trim, front seat, height adjustable

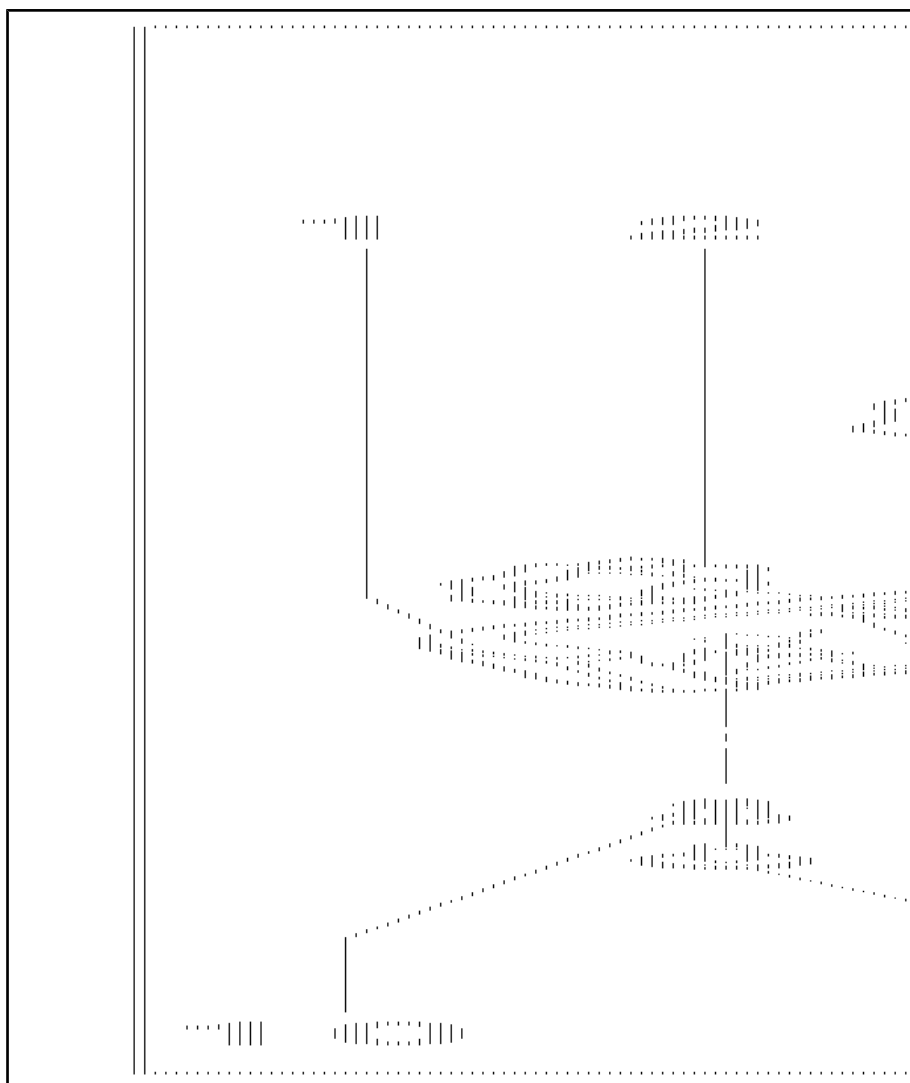
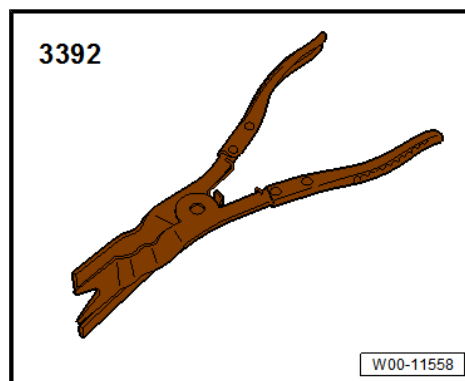
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-





◆ Removal pliers - 3392-



Removing



Note

*Removal and installation is described for the left front seat. Removal and installation for the right front seat is similar.*

- Move seat as far forwards as possible.



- Pull out rear trim -5- from mountings.
- Press off adjuster knob for backrest adjustment -3- using removal pliers - 3392- .



**Note**

*Before installing, push spacer ring -4- into adjuster knob for backrest adjustment.*

- Press off adjuster knob for lumbar support -2- using removal pliers - 3392- .
- Pull out 2 clamping pins -9-.
- Pull out 2 spreader rivets -10- from mountings in seat pan.
- Pull out right trim -1- from mountings in seat frame.



**Note**

*Follow instructions to prevent damage to adjuster handle.*

- Drill a hole, approx. 2 mm in size, in the middle of each of the 2 cover caps -8-.
- Pull both cover caps off the adjuster handle, e.g. with the tip of a curved wire.



**Note**

*When installing both cover caps -8- must be replaced.*

- Unscrew the 2 bolts -7-.
- Remove adjuster handle.
- Pull out left trim -6- from mountings in seat frame.

**Installing**

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

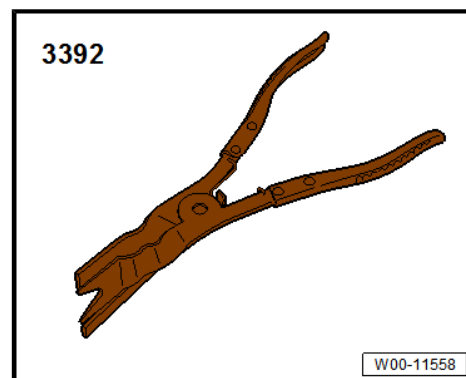
**Specified torques**

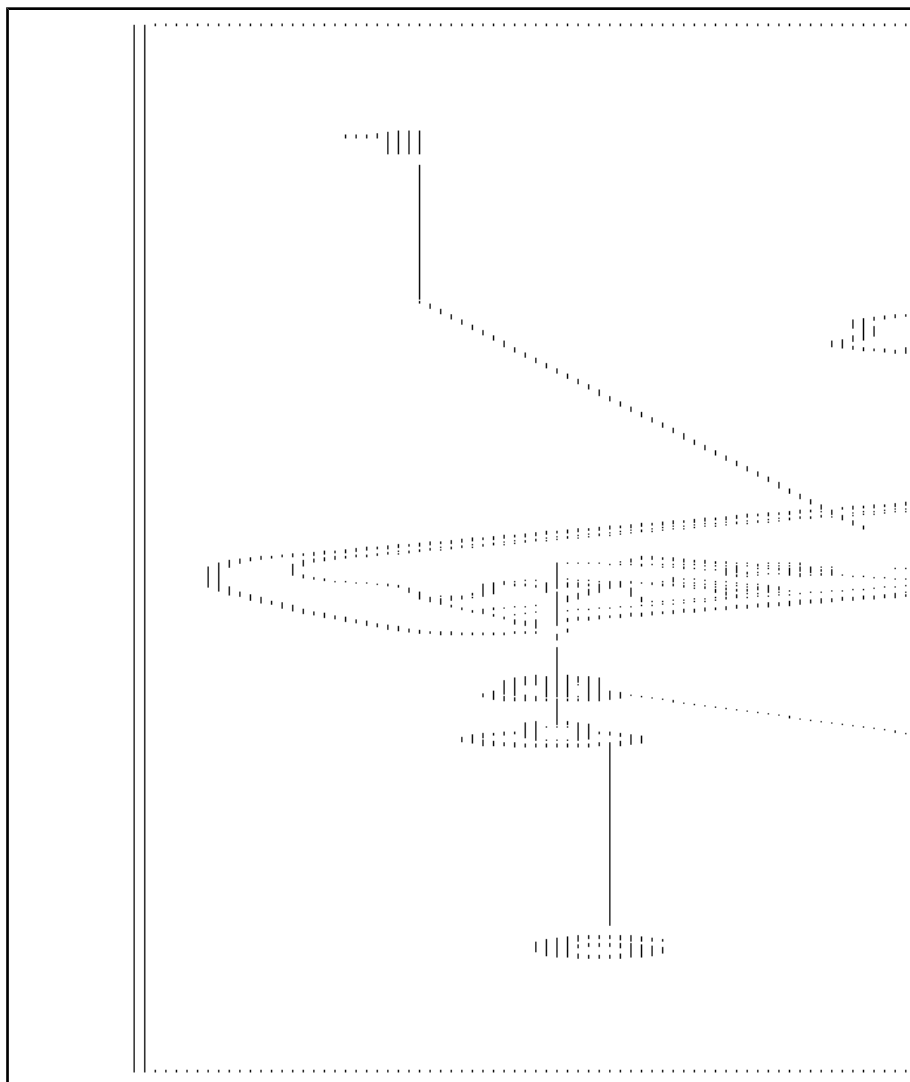
- ♦ ⇒ [“2.5 Assembly overview - seat pan”, page 296](#)

## 2.11.2 Removing and installing trim, front seat, fixed

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ♦ Removal pliers - 3392-





## Removing



### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the left front seat. Removal and installation for the right front seat is similar.*

- Move seat as far forwards as possible.
- Press off adjuster knob for backrest adjustment -2- using removal pliers - 3392- .



### Note

*Before installing, push spacer ring -3- into adjuster knob for backrest adjustment.*

- Pull out 2 clamping pins -6-.
- Pull out 2 spreader rivets -5- from mountings in seat pan.
- Pull out right trim -1- from mountings in seat frame.
- Pull out left trim -4- from mountings in seat frame.



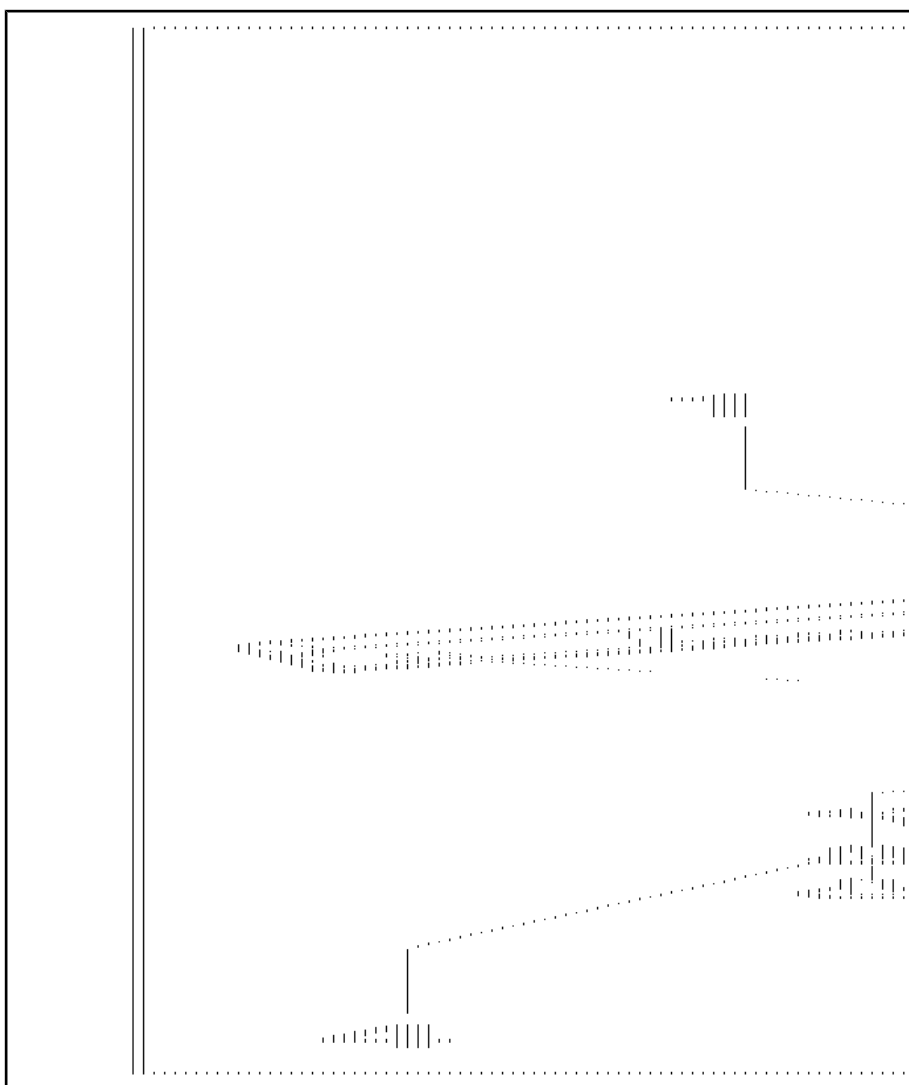
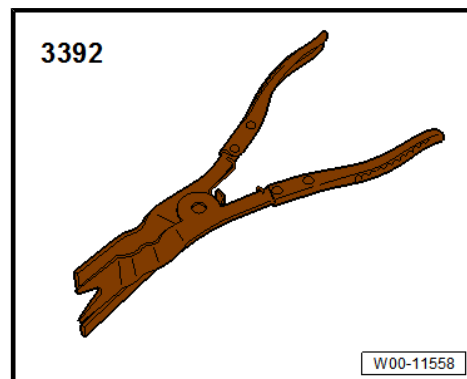
## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

### 2.11.3 Removing and installing trim, front seat, swivel-type

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal pliers - 3392-





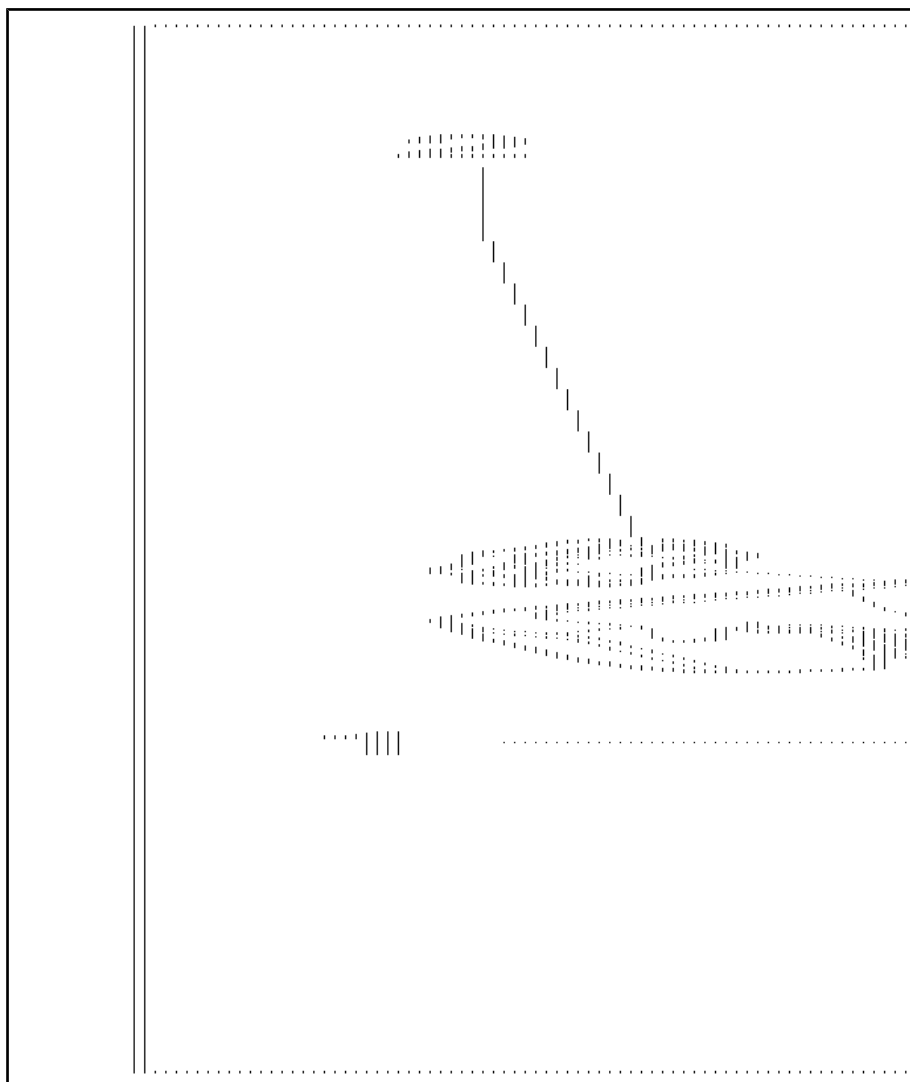
## Removing



### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the left front seat. Removal and installation for the right front seat is similar.*

- Move seat as far forwards as possible.
- Pull out rear trim -2- from mountings.
- Pull out 2 clamping pins -5-.
- Pull out 2 spreader rivets -4- from mountings in seat pan.
- Remove front trim -6-.
- Remove right guide rail trim -1- and left guide rail trim -3- from mountings.



- Press off adjuster knob for backrest adjustment -3- using removal pliers - 3392- .





**i** Note

*Before installing, push spacer ring -4- in adjuster knob for backrest adjustment.*

- Press off adjuster knob for lumbar support -2- using removal pliers - 3392- .
- Pull out right trim -1- from mountings in seat frame.
- Pull out left trim -5- from mountings in seat frame.

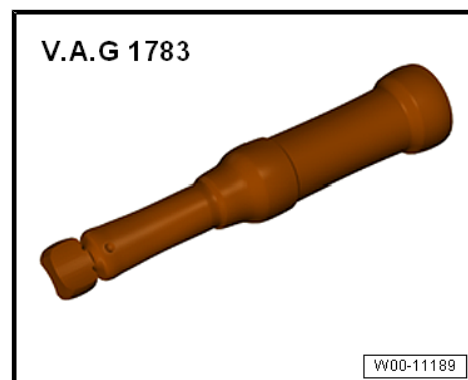
**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

## 2.11.4 Removing and installing seat trim on sill side, electrically adjustable seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



**Removing**

**i** Note

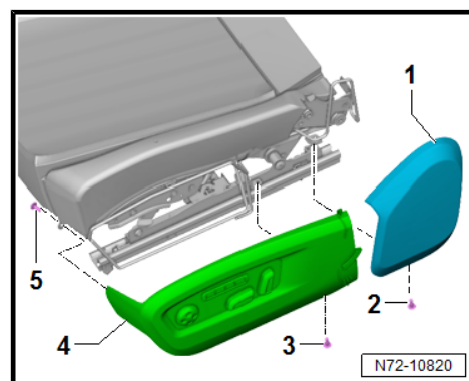
*Removal and installation is described for the left vehicle side. Follow same instructions for the right side as appropriate.*

- Adjust seat to fully upright position.
- Unscrew bolt -2-.
- Remove front seat trim -1- from bracket.
- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Unclip clip -5-.
- Remove seat trim -4- from bracket.
- Disconnect electrical connectors.

**Installing**

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- ◆ ⇒ [“2.5 Assembly overview - seat pan”, page 296](#)





## 2.11.5 Removing and installing rear seat trim

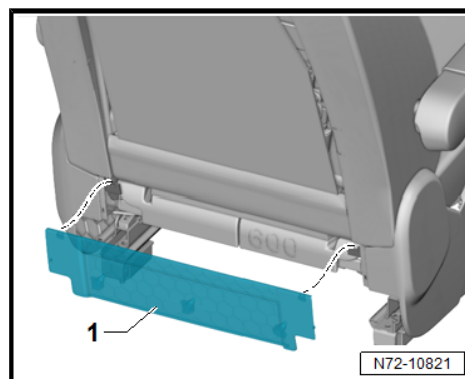
### Removing

- Unclip rear seat trim -1- from mountings.
- If present, remove screws on left and right from rear seat trim -1-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

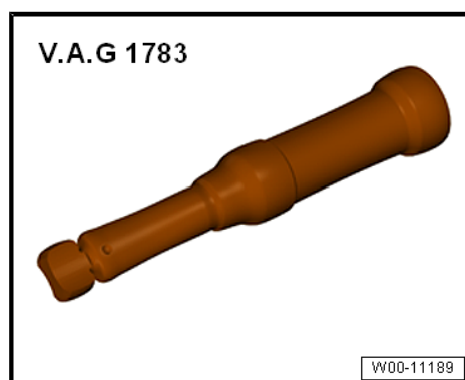
- Before installing, check clips for damage and renew if necessary.



## 2.11.6 Removing and installing bracket

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



### Removing



#### Note

*Removal and installation are described for the left brackets. Removal and installation for the right holder are similar.*

- Remove seat cover and padding from seat pan ⇒ [page 436](#).
- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Remove bracket -1- from seat frame.

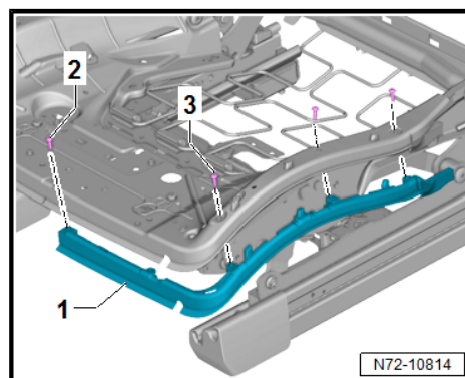
### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Once both sides are installed, start middle bolt and tighten.

### Specified torques

- ♦ ⇒ [“2.5 Assembly overview - seat pan”, page 296](#)

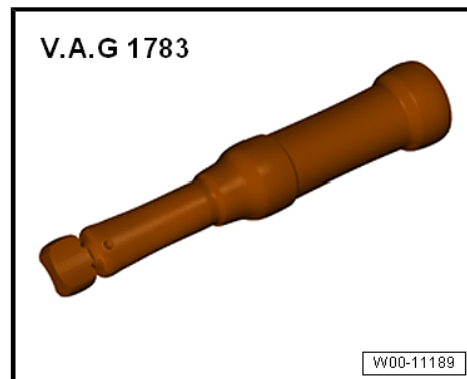


## 2.11.7 Removing and installing adapter trim bracket

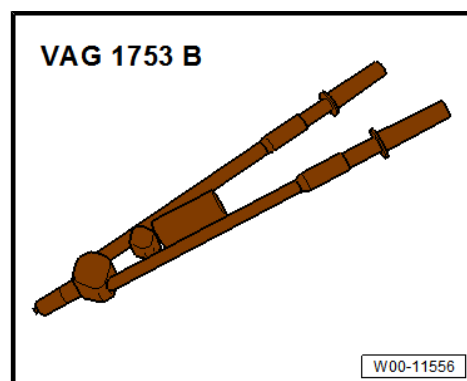
### Special tools and workshop equipment required



- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



#### Removing

- Remove front backrest ⇒ [page 336](#) .
- Unscrew bolt -2-.
- Drill open and remove pop rivet -4-.
- Remove adapter trim bracket -1- from adapter -3-.

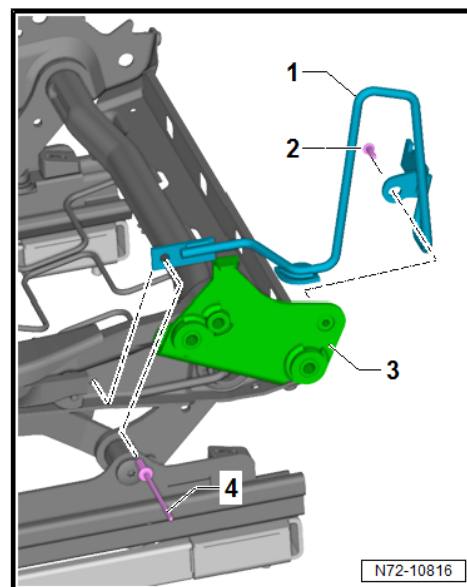
#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Insert new pop rivet -1- and rivet using special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B- .

#### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“2.5 Assembly overview - seat pan”, page 296](#)

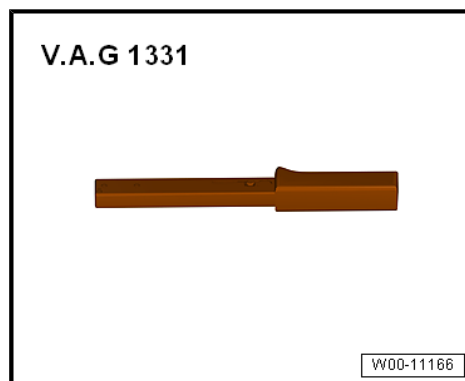


## 2.11.8 Removing and installing backrest frame adapter

Special tools and workshop equipment required



- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



### Removing

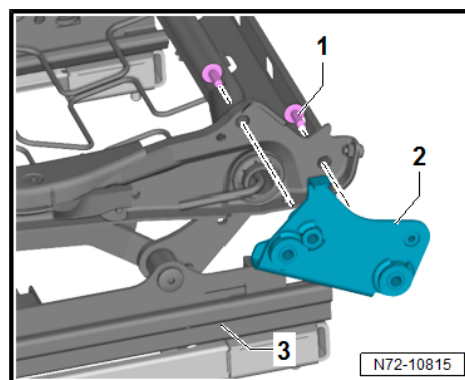
- Remove front backrest ⇒ [page 336](#) .
- Remove adapter trim bracket ⇒ [page 319](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -1-.
- Remove adapter -2- from seat frame -3-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

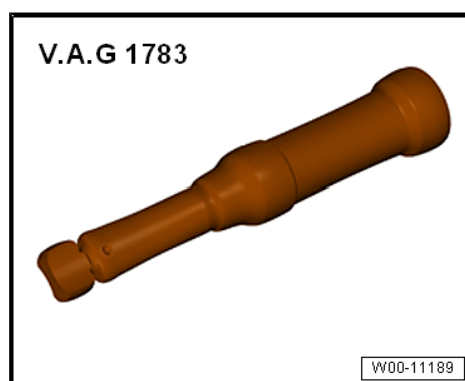
- ◆ ⇒ ["2.5 Assembly overview - seat pan"](#), [page 296](#)



## 2.11.9 Removing and installing trim bracket on front seat

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 300](#) .
- Remove trim for front seat ⇒ [page 319](#) .



- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Drill open and remove pop rivet -3-.
- Remove front seat trim bracket -1- from seat frame.

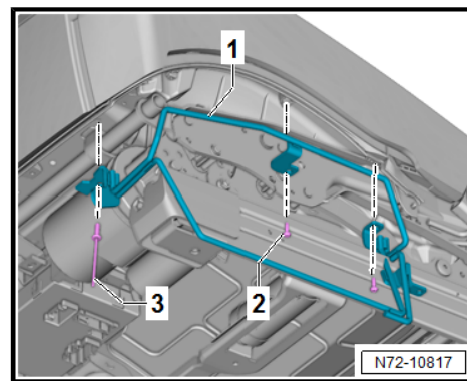
#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Insert new pop rivet -1- and rivet using special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B- .

#### Specified torques

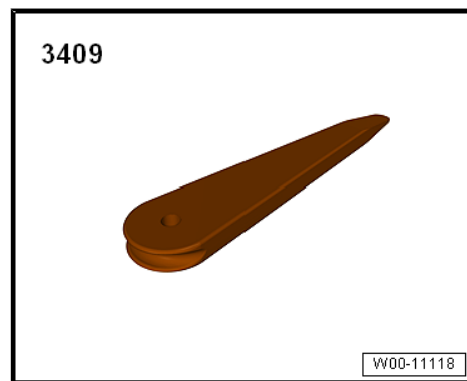
- ◆ ⇒ ["2.5 Assembly overview - seat pan", page 296](#)



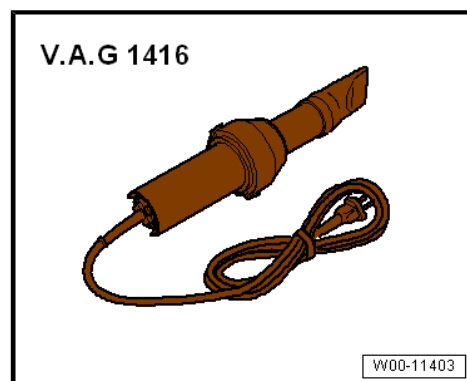
### 2.11.10 Removing and installing storage compartment, front seat

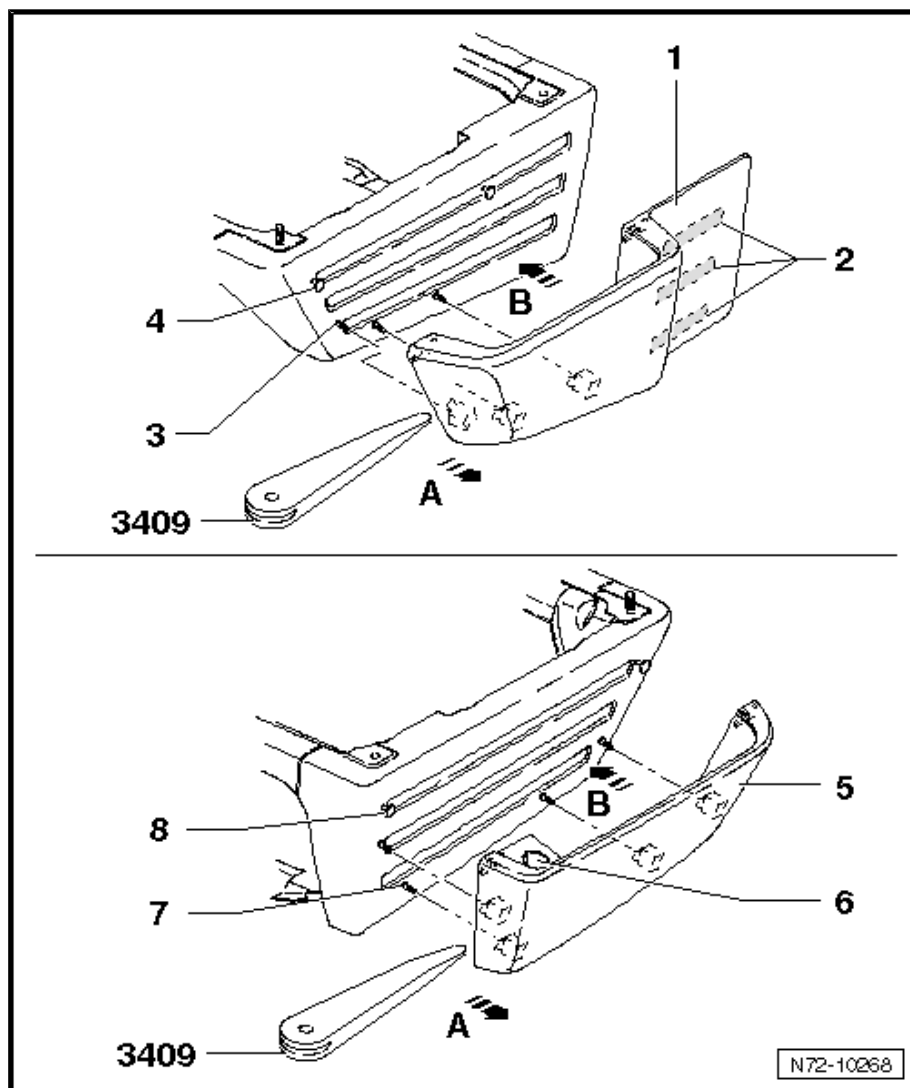
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



- ◆ Hot-air blower - V.A.G 1416-





## Removing

### Left storage compartment

- Warm bonding surfaces -2- using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .
- Using removal wedge - 3409- , lever off storage compartment of seat frame -1- from studs -3- in direction of -arrow A- and fastener.
- Pull off storage compartment on seat frame -1- from guide pins -4- on seat frame in direction of -arrow B-.

### Right storage compartment

- Using removal wedge - 3409- , lever off storage compartment of seat frame -5- from studs -7- in direction of -arrow A- and fastener.
- Pull off storage compartment on seat frame -5- from guide pins -8- on seat frame in direction of -arrow B-.
- If fitted, separate connector -6-.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

Left storage compartment on seat frame is factory-fitted with double-sided adhesive tape.



- Remove any adhesive residue on storage compartment.
- Thoroughly clean seat frame in assembly area of all dirt, grease, wax and other contaminants using adhesive remover.
- Do not apply double-sided adhesive tape on storage compartment until immediately prior to installing.

**i Note**

*The part numbers of the double-sided adhesive tape can be found in the ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue \(ETKA\)](#) .*

- Do not touch adhesive surfaces once backing film has been removed.

## 2.12 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit

⇒ [“2.12.1 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit, adjusting knob”, page 331](#)

⇒ [“2.12.2 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit, Bowden cable”, page 332](#)

⇒ [“2.12.3 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit, support frame”, page 332](#)

### 2.12.1 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit, adjusting knob

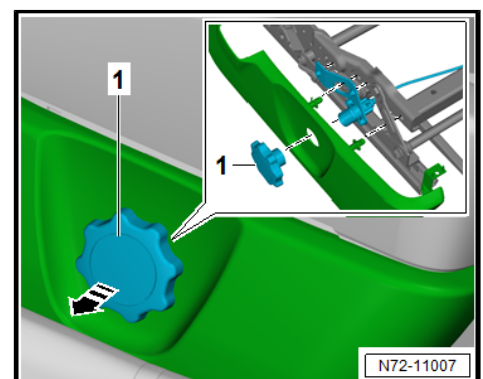
#### Removing

- Pull off lumbar support adjustment knob -1- in direction of -arrow-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Make sure that teeth on lumbar support adjusting knob -1- align with shaft splines.

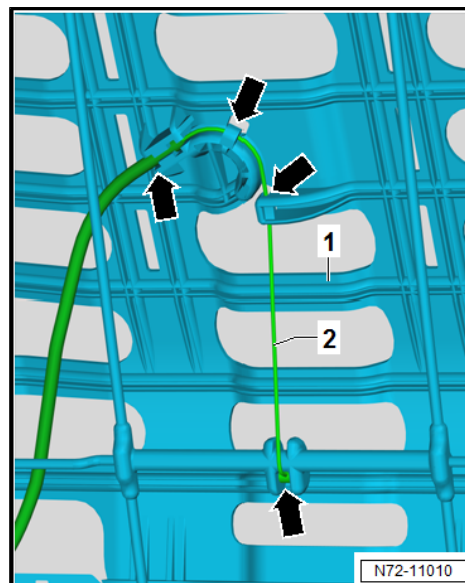




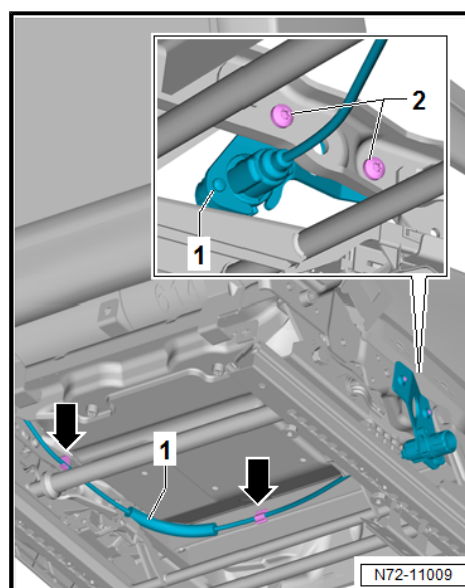
## 2.12.2 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit, Bowden cable

### Removing

- Remove backrest cover and cushion ⇒ [page 444](#) .
- Detach Bowden cable -2- from lumbar support -1- -arrows-.
- Guide out Bowden cable -2- from backrest frame.



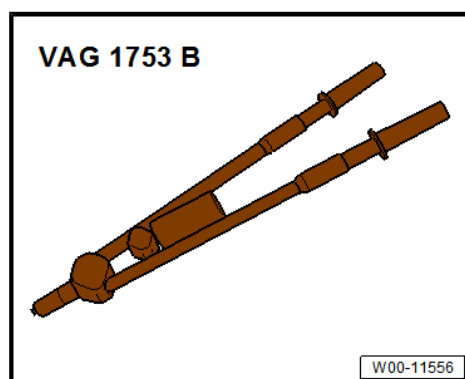
- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Disengage Bowden cable -1- from seat frame -arrows-.
- Remove Bowden cable -1- along with adjustment unit.



## 2.12.3 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment unit, support frame

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-







- ◆ Hand drill
- ◆ Drill bit with diameter smaller than 4.5 mm
- ◆ Safety goggles
- ◆ Roll pin drift

## Removing



### Note

Vehicles with electrically adjustable lumbar support  
⇒ [page 333](#).

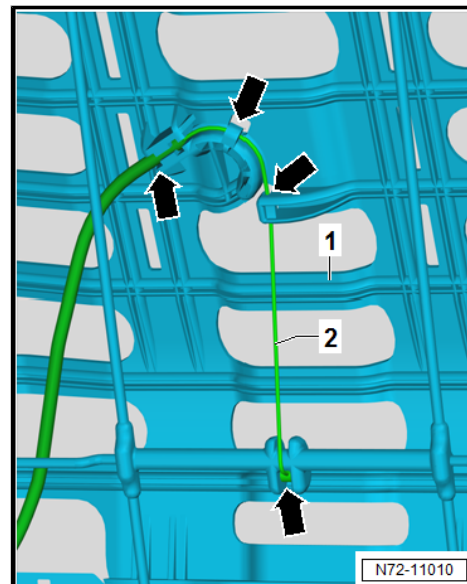
- Remove backrest cover and cushion ⇒ [page 444](#).
- Detach Bowden cable -2- from lumbar support -1- -arrows-.



### WARNING

*Risk of injury from swarf being flung into air.  
Irritation and injury to skin and eyes possible.*

- Wear protective goggles.
- Wear protective gloves!

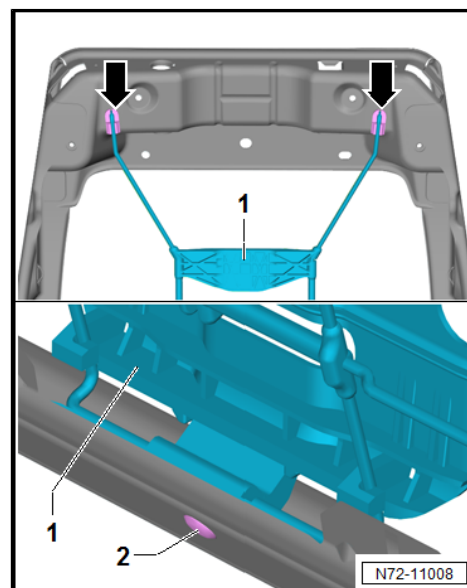


- Drill off rivet head -2- from backrest frame using drill and spiral drill bit with diameter less than 4.5 mm.
- Drive out rivet shank -2- with drift.
- Remove swarf.
- Swing lumbar support -1- towards front.
- Detach lumbar support -1- in area of -arrows- from backrest frame.
- Remove lumbar support -1-.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Use rivet pliers - VAS 5072A- to install new pop rivet.

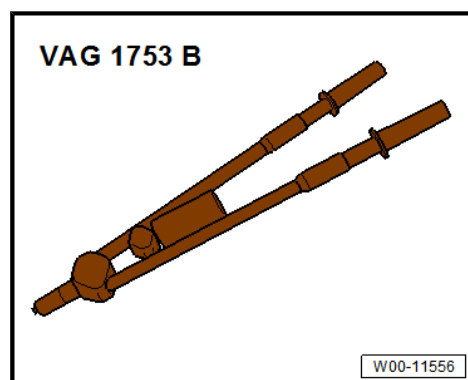


## 2.13 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor -V125- / -V126- / -V129- / -V130-

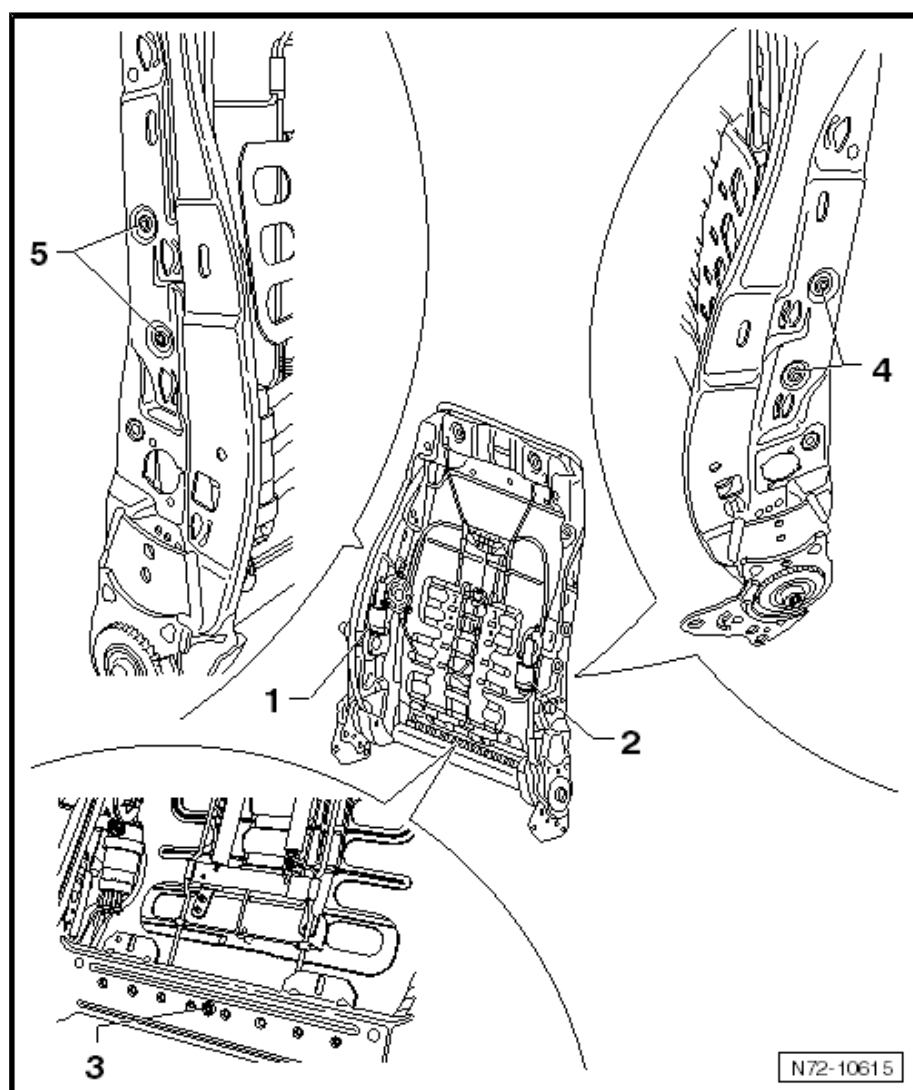
Special tools and workshop equipment required



- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B-



- ◆ Hand drill
- ◆ Drill bit with diameter smaller than 4.5 mm
- ◆ Safety goggles
- ◆ Roll pin drift



## Removing

- Remove front seat trims ➔ [page 319](#) .



- Remove front seat backrest cover and padding ⇒ [page 444](#) .
- Remove side airbag on driver/front passenger side  
⇒ [page 158](#) .
- Disconnect wiring harnesses from drive motors -1- and -2-.



#### WARNING

*Risk of injury from swarf being flung into air.  
Irritation and injury to skin and eyes possible.*

- *Wear protective goggles.*
- *Wear protective gloves!*

- Drill out pop rivet -3- in lower area on backside.
- Drill out the two pop rivets -4- on left side.
- Drill out the two pop rivets -5- on right side.
- Detach lumbar support from mountings in backrest frame.
- Release lumbar support components from backrest frame.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

To install pop rivets -3-, -4- and -5-, use pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072- .

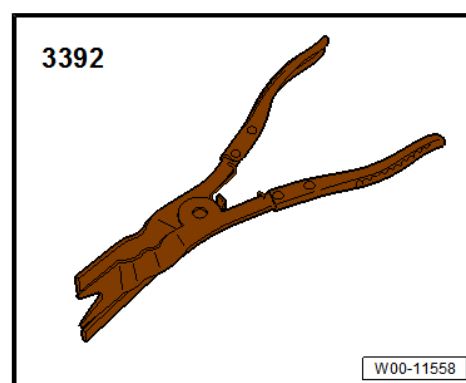
### 2.14 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit

In event of defective backrest adjustment drive, backrest frame must be renewed ⇒ [page 336](#) .

### 2.15 Removing and handle for installing backrest adjustment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal pliers - 3392-





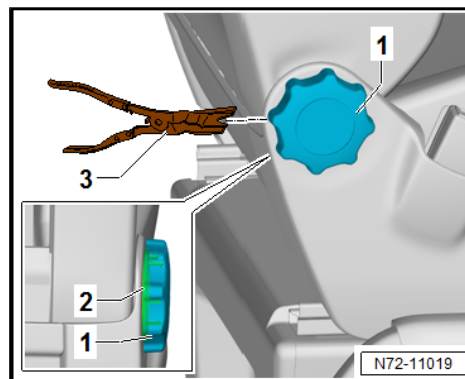
## Removing

- Move seat as far forwards as possible.
- Insert removal pliers - 3392- -3- and release backrest adjustment handle -1-.
- Turn backrest adjustment handle -1- 120° further.
- Insert removal pliers - 3392- -3- and lever off backrest adjustment handle -1-.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, press spacer ring -2- into backrest adjustment handle -1-.



## 2.16 Removing and installing front backrest

⇒ [“2.16.1 Removing and installing front backrest, rigid single seat”, page 336](#)

⇒ [“2.16.2 Removing and installing front backrest, manual adjustment”, page 338](#)

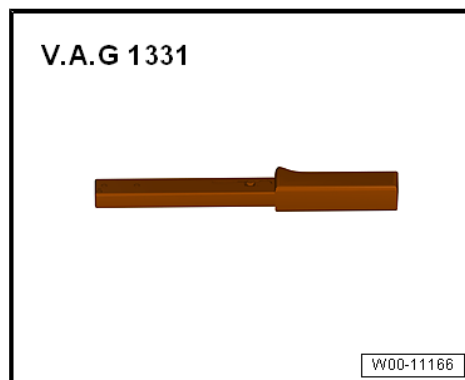
⇒ [“2.16.3 Removing and installing front backrest, individual seat, electric adjustment”, page 340](#)

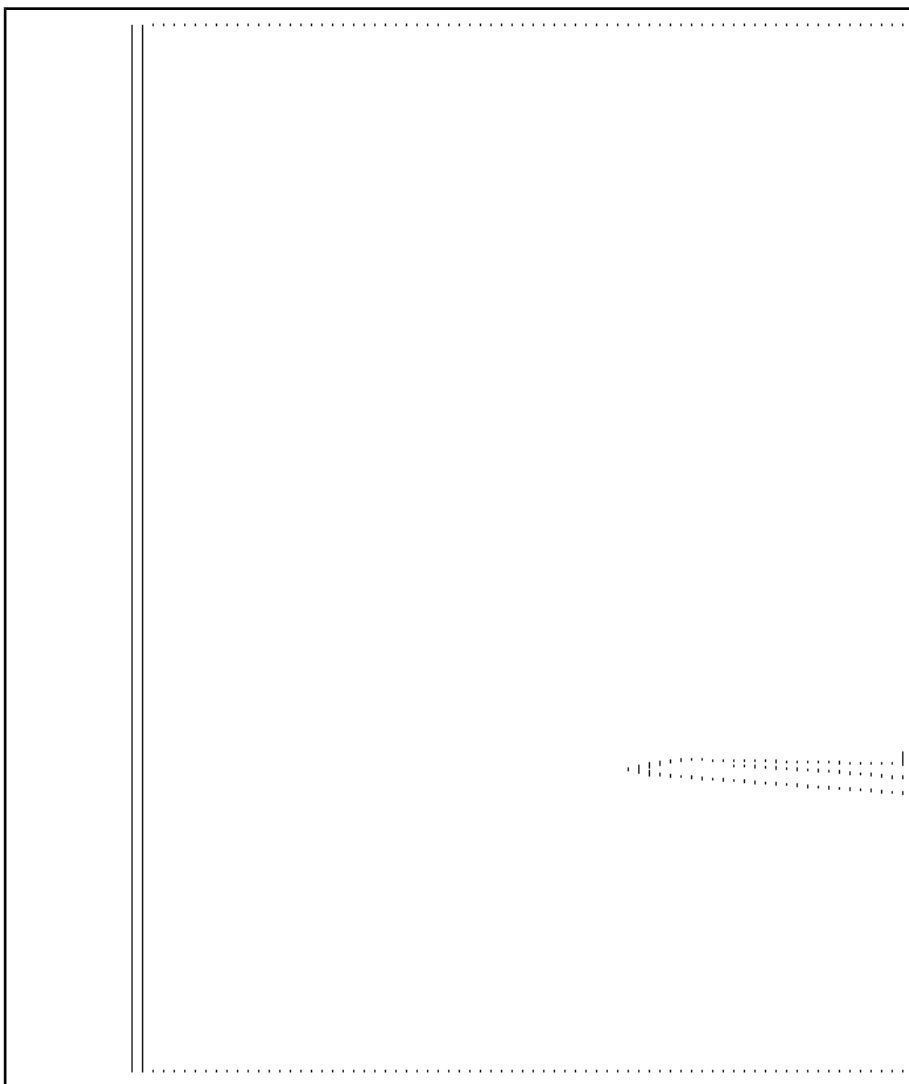
⇒ [“2.16.4 Removing and installing front backrest, double bench seat”, page 342](#)

### 2.16.1 Removing and installing front backrest, rigid single seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-





### Removing

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 300](#) .
- Remove front seat cushion ⇒ [page 436](#) .
- Adjust seat to highest position.
- Remove front seat trims ⇒ [page 319](#) .
- Unscrew nuts -1-.



### Note

- ◆ *Nuts -1- are micro-encapsulated. They must be renewed each time after loosening.*
- ◆ *Before new nuts are installed, the threads must be cleaned.*
- Remove front backrest from seat frame -2-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

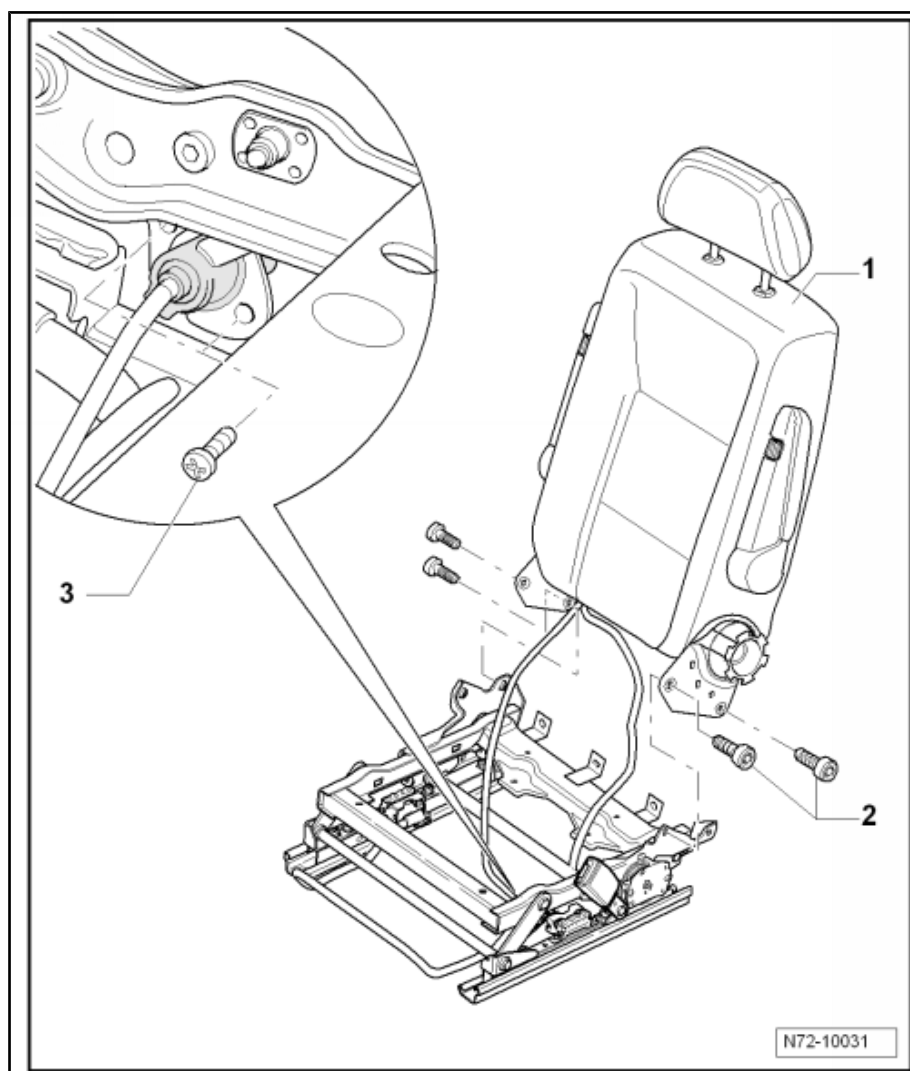
- ◆ ⇒ ["2.3 Assembly overview – front backrest", page 292](#)



## 2.16.2 Removing and installing front backrest, manual adjustment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-





## Removing



### Note

- ◆ *Removal and installation is described for the right front seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of the left front seat as appropriate.*
- ◆ *The removal and installation procedure is described for the height-adjustable front seat. Removal and installation for the front swivel seat are similar.*
- Front seat must be positioned in foremost and highest position.
- Backrest must be positioned in foremost position.

### Vehicles with side airbag

- Connect airbag adapter ⇒ [page 317](#) .

### Continued for all vehicles

- Switch off ignition and all electrical consumers.
- Withdraw ignition key.
- Remove front seat cushion ⇒ [page 436](#) .
- Remove front seat trims ⇒ [page 319](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- If fitted, disconnect connectors.
- Detach wiring harnesses from seat frame.
- Unscrew bolts -2-.



### Note

- ◆ *Bolts -2- are micro-encapsulated. They must be renewed each time after loosening.*
- ◆ *Before new bolts are installed, the threads must be cleaned.*
- Remove backrest -1- from seat frame.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Vehicles with side airbag



### Note

*Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they could be accidentally triggered. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.*

- Switch on ignition.
- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



#### Note

*If the ignition is not switched on after reconnecting the battery, the ignition may only be switched on (key/button) from the driver's seat with the seat set in the rearmost position.*

- Use ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester to read event memory, clear event memory as necessary, and then read it again.

#### Specified torques

- ♦ ⇒ [“2.3 Assembly overview – front backrest”, page 292](#)

### 2.16.3 Removing and installing front backrest, individual seat, electric adjustment

#### Removing

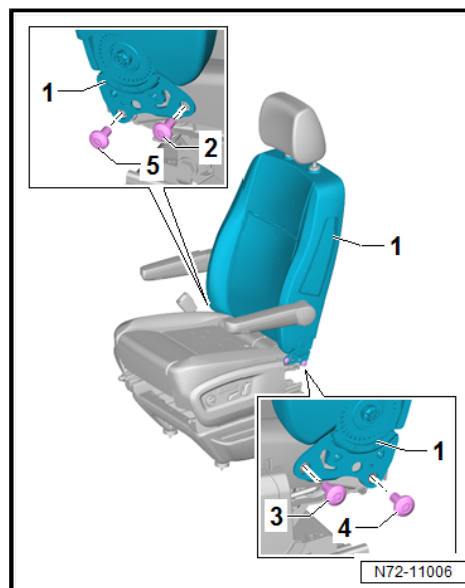
- Front seat must be positioned in foremost and highest position.
- Backrest must be positioned in foremost position.

#### Vehicles with side airbag

- Connect airbag adapter ⇒ [page 317](#) .

#### Continued for all vehicles

- Remove seat panel trim on side member side ⇒ [page 319](#) .
- Remove seat panel trim on tunnel side ⇒ [page 319](#) .
- If fitted, remove rear seat trim ⇒ [page 319](#) .
- Switch off ignition and all electrical consumers.
- Withdraw ignition key.
- Unscrew bolts -2 ... 5-.
- Fold backrest -1- forwards onto seat pan.







### Vehicles with side airbag and/or massage function and/or electronic lumbar support and/or backrest heating

- Push backrest padding -1- aside in area of side airbag -2-.
- Disconnect connector -3-.
- Unclip clips -4-.
- Expose wiring harness for side airbag -2-.
- Seat connector -5- under seat.
- Lay wiring harness aside.

### Continued for all vehicles

- Remove backrest -1- together with cover and padding, and place it on a clean surface.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Check threads in mounting plate for damage, and renew them if necessary.
- Position backrest -1- on seat pan.

### Tightening sequence for backrest

- Tighten bolts in the sequence shown:

Se- quenc e	Bolts	Specified torque
1	-2 ... 5-	Screw onto stop by hand
2	-2 ... 5-	⇒ <a href="#">Item 8 (page 295)</a>

### Vehicles with side airbag



#### Note

*Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they could be accidentally triggered. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.*

- Switch on ignition.
- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



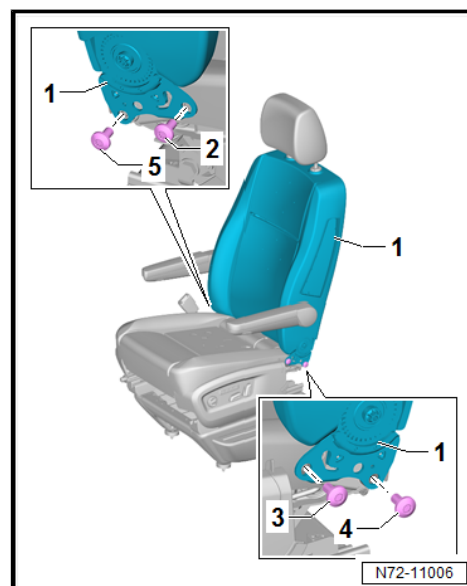
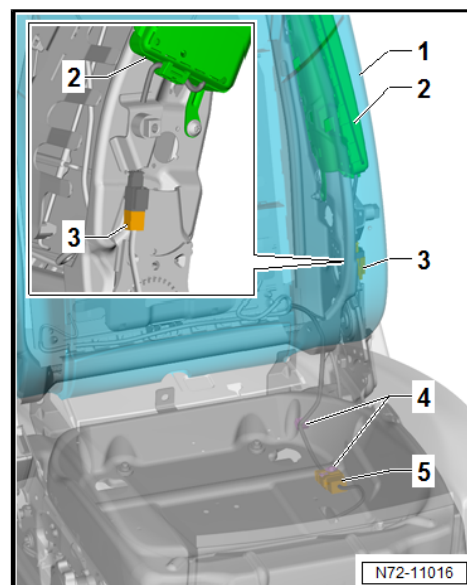
#### Note

*If the ignition is not switched on after reconnecting the battery, the ignition may only be switched on (key/button) from the driver's seat with the seat set in the rearmost position.*

- Use ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester to read event memory, clear event memory as necessary, and then read it again.

### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“2.3 Assembly overview – front backrest”, page 292](#)





## 2.16.4 Removing and installing front backrest, double bench seat

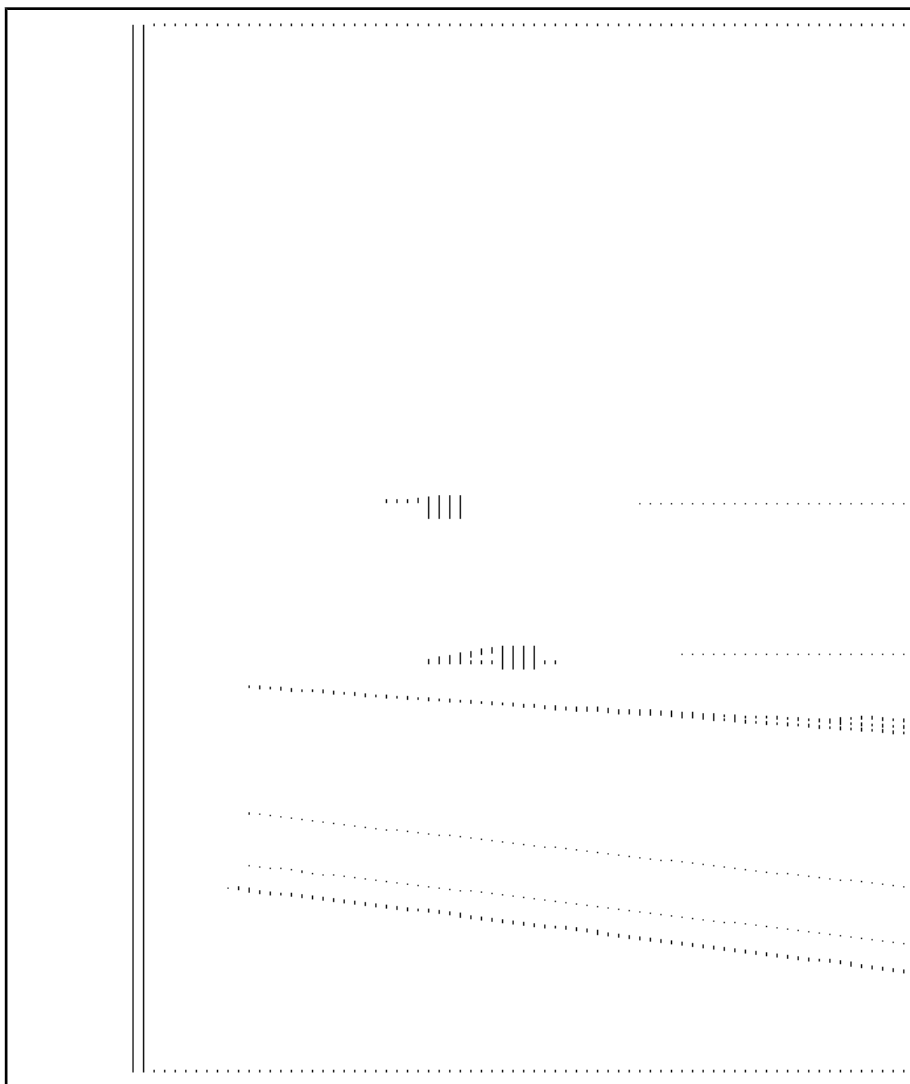
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-





### Removing

- Remove double bench seat ⇒ [page 300](#) .
- Fold seat padding forwards.
- Remove centre belt buckle ⇒ [page 130](#) .
- If fitted, disconnect connectors.
- Unscrew bolts -1- and -2-
- Unscrew nuts -3-.



### Note

*The nuts -3- are self-locking. They must be renewed each time after loosening.*

- Pull bolts -4- out of backrest frame, and remove backrest upwards.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“2.2 Assembly overview - front seat”, page 288](#)



## 2.17 Removing and installing head restraint guide



### Note

*No other parts must be removed in order to remove head restraint guides.*

### Removing

- Head restraint already removed.
- Press down padding in area of head restraint guide.
- Actuate catch of head restraint guide using a screwdriver.
- Pull respective head restraint guide out of backrest.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



### Note

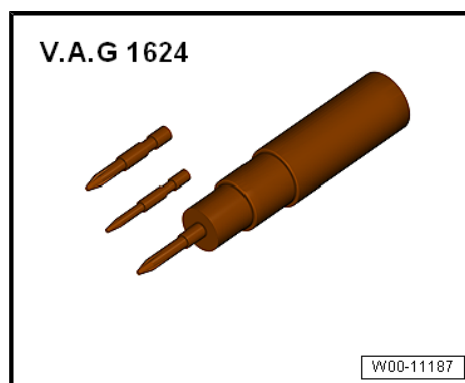
- ◆ *Head restraint guide without locking mechanism must be pressed towards rear of vehicle.*
- ◆ *Head restraint guide with locking mechanism must be pressed in direction of -arrow A-.*
- ◆ *The locking lug must properly engage in backrest frame.*



## 2.18 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit, memory setting, lumbar support

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque screwdriver - V.A.G 1624-



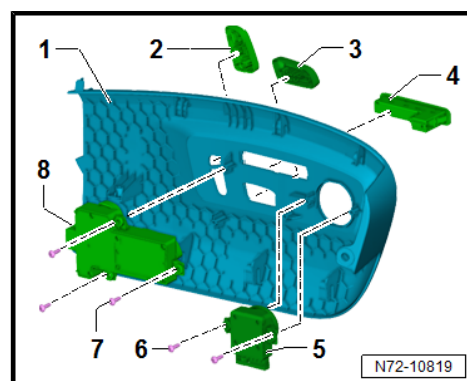


- ◆ Release tool - T10236-



### Removing

- Remove seat trim on sill side -1- ⇒ [page 319](#) .
- Lever off buttons -2- and -3- with release tool - T10236- .
- Remove operating unit for memory setting - E464- / -E465- -4-.
- Unscrew bolts -7-.
- Remove seat adjustment operating unit - E470- / -E471- -8-.
- Unscrew bolts -6-.
- Remove lumbar support adjustment switch - E176- / -E177- -5-.



### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

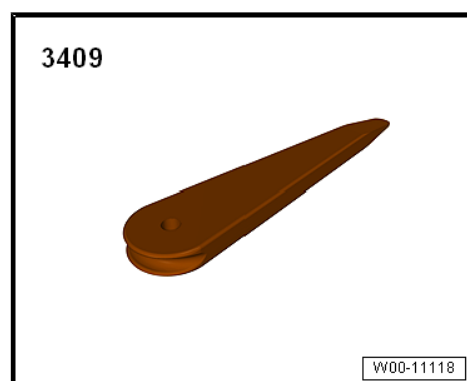
#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts -7- and -6-	1 Nm

## 2.19 Removing and installing seat and steering column adjustment control unit with memory - J136-

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



### Removing

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 300](#) .
- Unclip wiring harness from retainer.

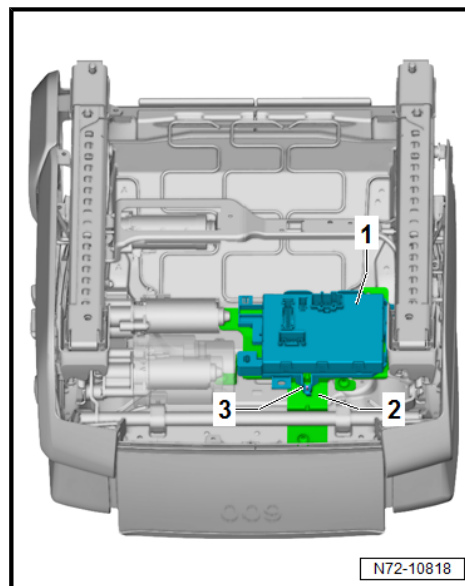


- Release electrical connectors and pull off from control unit -1-.
- Remove spreader rivet -3- from control unit bracket.
- To do this, press clamping pin in spreader rivet inwards.
- Lever off spreader rivet using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Remove control unit -1- from mountings on adapter for control unit bracket -2-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Renew any damaged cable ties and clips.
- Insert spreader rivet -3- and press in clamping pin.
- Route electrical wiring so that original wiring layout is restored.





## 3 Rear seats

⇒ [“3.1 Assembly overview - bench seat/individual seats”, page 347](#)

⇒ [“3.2 Assembly overview - head restraint, Multivan/Business”, page 360](#)

⇒ [“3.3 Removing and installing bench seat/individual seats”, page 361](#)

⇒ [“3.4 Removing and installing rear seat backrest”, page 369](#)

⇒ [“3.5 Removing and installing centre armrest”, page 380](#)

⇒ [“3.6 Trims of individual seat in 2nd row, Multivan/Business”, page 384](#)

### 3.1 Assembly overview - bench seat/individual seats

⇒ [“3.1.1 Assembly overview - individual seats, Multivan/Business, swivel seat”, page 347](#)

⇒ [“3.1.2 Assembly overview - individual seats, Multivan/Business, trim of individual seat in 2nd row”, page 349](#)

⇒ [“3.1.3 Assembly overview - individual seats, Easy Entry”, page 350](#)

⇒ [“3.1.4 Assembly overview - bench seat / Multivan, 3-seat bench seat”, page 352](#)

⇒ [“3.1.5 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats, Multivan/Business, guide rail”, page 354](#)

⇒ [“3.1.6 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats, Multivan/Business, drawer”, page 355](#)

⇒ [“3.1.7 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats, Transporter, 2nd row”, page 356](#)

⇒ [“3.1.8 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats, Transporter, 3-seater bench seat in 3rd row”, page 357](#)

⇒ [“3.1.9 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats, double cab, 2nd row”, page 359](#)

#### 3.1.1 Assembly overview - individual seats, Multivan/Business, swivel seat



**1 - Backrest padding**

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 444](#)

**2 - Wire mat**

**3 - Backrest of individual seat**

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 369](#)

**4 - Head restraint guide**

- ❑ Adjustable
- ❑ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 352](#)

**5 - Head restraint guide**

- ❑ With push button for head restraint, adjustable
- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 352](#)

**6 - Head restraint**

- ❑ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 360](#)

**7 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2 Nm

**8 - Front cover cap**

- ❑ For belt guide

**9 - Belt guide**

- ❑ Secured with 4 pop rivets

**10 - Bolt**

- ❑ 2 Nm

**11 - Rear cover cap**

- ❑ For belt guide

**12 - Backrest rear panel**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 369](#)

**13 - Bolts**

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 3 Nm

**14 - Bolt**

- ❑ 20 Nm

**15 - Relay lever**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 369](#)

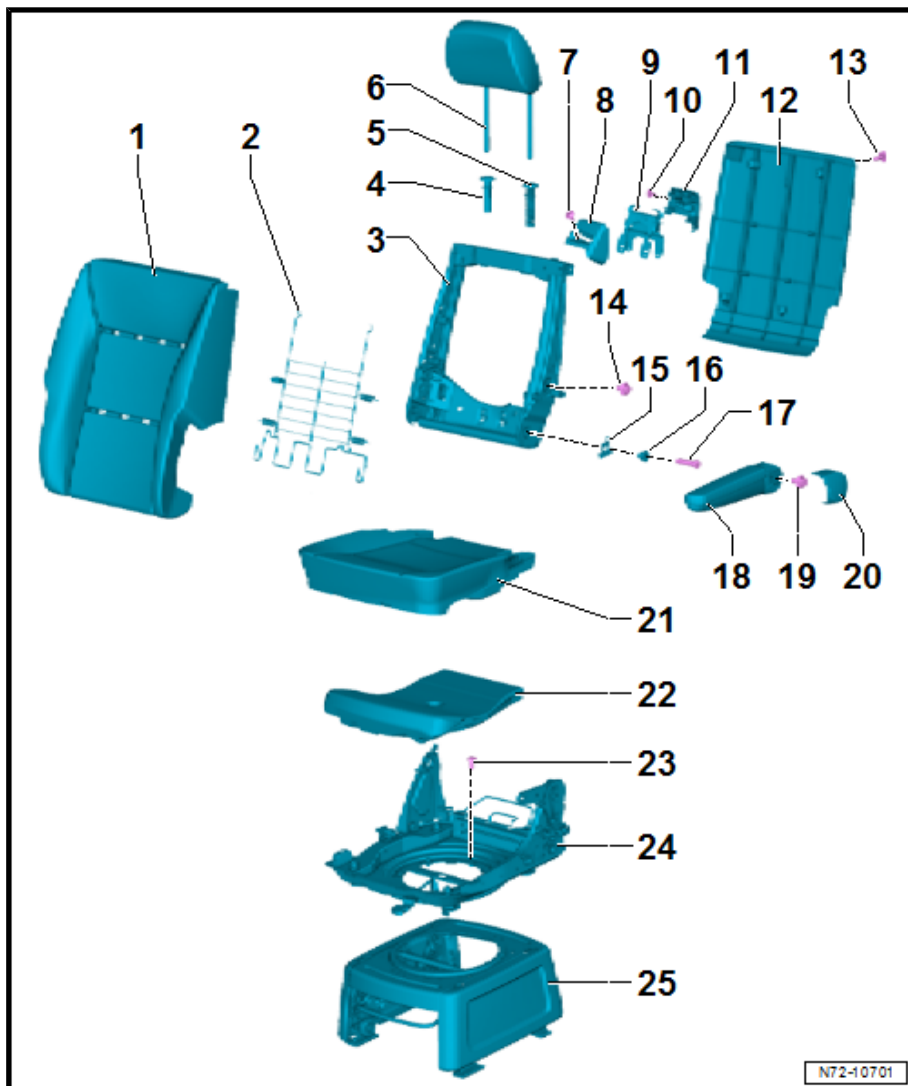
**16 - Speed nut**

**17 - Bolt**

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 55 Nm

**18 - Armrest**

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 392](#)







#### 19 - Bolt

- ☐ 20 Nm

#### 20 - Cover

- ☐ For armrest

#### 21 - Seat padding

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 436](#)

#### 22 - Padding

#### 23 - Bolt

- ☐ 8 Nm

#### 24 - Seat frame

#### 25 - Seat box

### 3.1.2 Assembly overview - individual seats, Multivan/Business, trim of individual seat in 2nd row

#### 1 - Head restraint

- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 360](#)

#### 2 - Belt guide cover

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 444](#)

#### 3 - Backrest rear panel

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 369](#)

#### 4 - Armrest

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 392](#)

#### 5 - Anchor fitting

- ☐ Top tether
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 142](#)

#### 6 - Left seat frame trim

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 384](#)

#### 7 - Rear seat frame trim

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 384](#)

#### 8 - Drawer

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 352](#)

#### 9 - Front seat frame trim

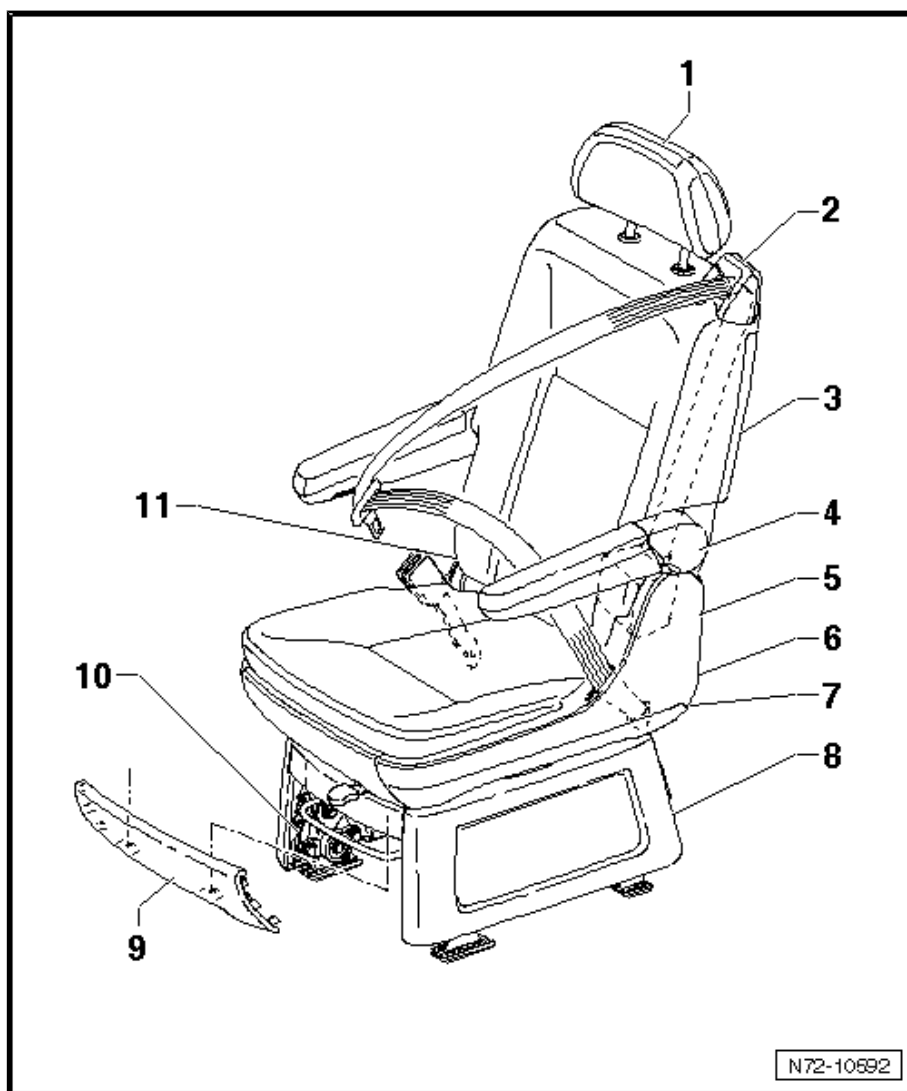
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 384](#)

#### 10 - Guide rail

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 354](#)

#### 11 - Right seat frame trim

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 384](#)





### 3.1.3 Assembly overview - individual seats, Easy Entry

Assembly overview - front backrest ➔ [page 350](#)

Assembly overview - seat pan ➔ [page 350](#)

Assembly overview – front backrest

#### 1 - Head restraint

- ☐ Assembly overview  
➔ [page 360](#)

#### 2 - Right head restraint guide

- ☐ Removing and installing  
➔ [page 360](#)

#### 3 - Left head restraint guide

- ☐ Removing and installing  
➔ [page 360](#)

#### 4 - Rear panel board

#### 5 - Pop rivet

- ☐ Qty. 10

#### 6 - Backrest frame

- ☐ Removing and installing  
➔ [page 369](#)

#### 7 - Support

#### 8 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 55 Nm

#### 9 - Backrest trim

#### 10 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 4.5 Nm

#### 11 - Seat padding

- ☐ Removing and installing  
➔ [page 436](#)

#### 12 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 65 Nm

#### 13 - Spreader rivet

#### 14 - Handle

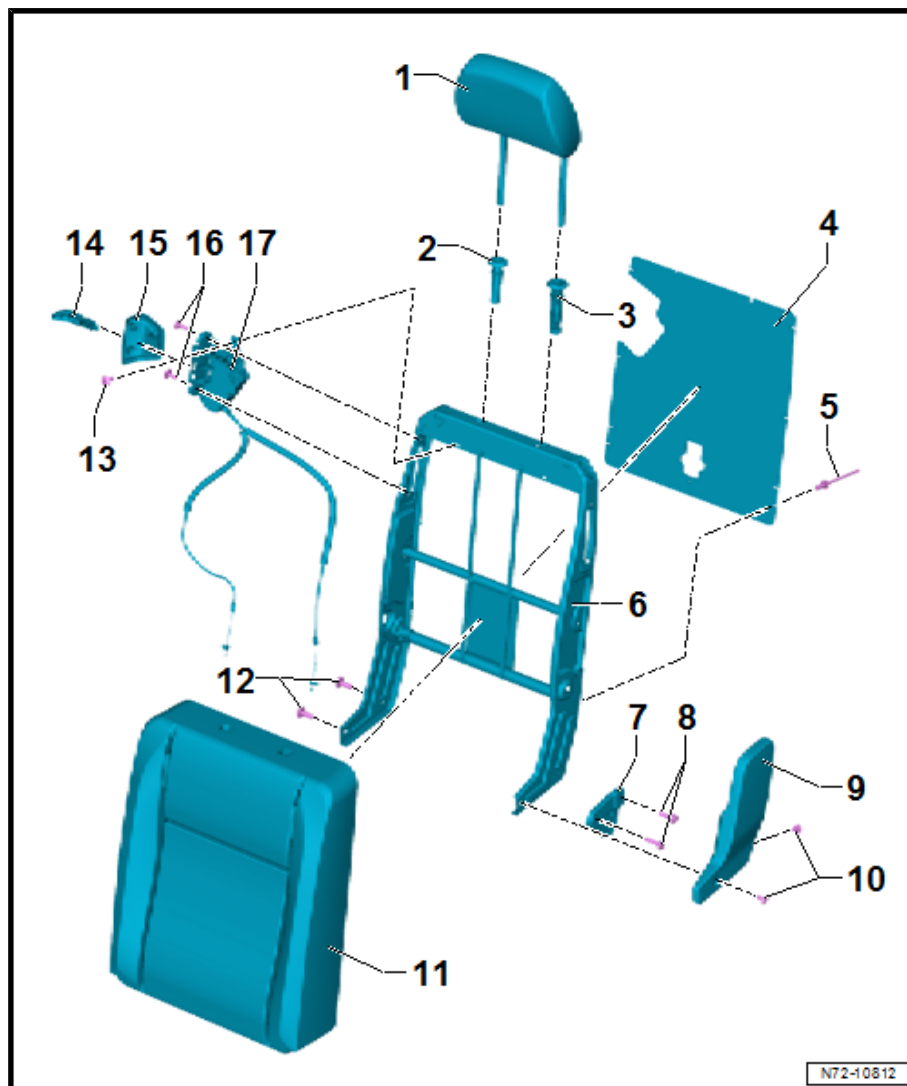
#### 15 - Trim

#### 16 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 4 Nm

#### 17 - Release mechanism

- ☐ With Bowden cable
- ☐ Renew after removal ➔ [page 374](#)



Assembly overview - seat pan



**1 - Seat padding**

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 436](#)

**2 - Seat pan**

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 436](#)

**3 - Seat frame**

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 369](#)

**4 - Release lever**

- ❑ Renew after removal  
⇒ [page 374](#)

**5 - Seat frame trim**

**6 - Bolts**

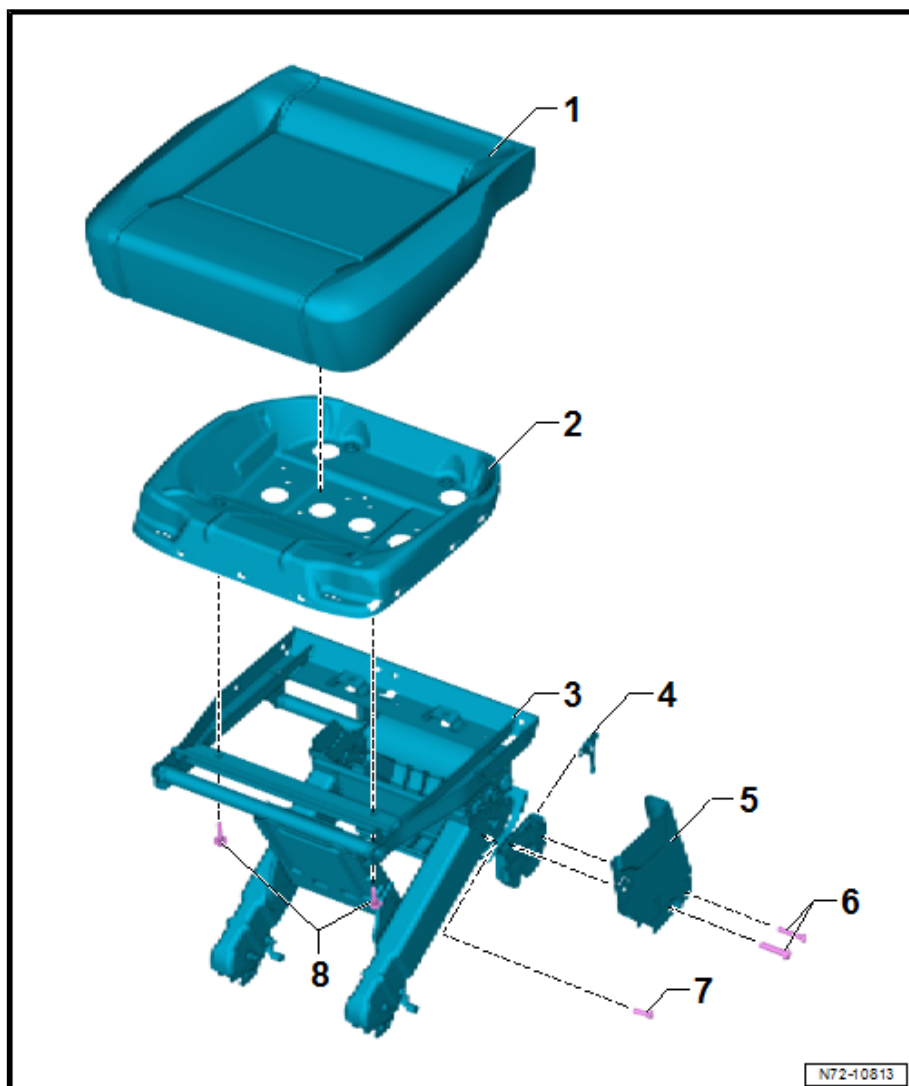
- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 55 Nm

**7 - Bolt**

- ❑ 4.5 Nm

**8 - Bolts**

- ❑ Qty. 2
- ❑ 20 Nm



### 3.1.4 Assembly overview - bench seat / Multivan, 3-seat bench seat

**1 - Clip**

- ☐ Qty. 4

**2 - Centre armrest**

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 380](#)

**3 - Spreader rivet**

- ☐ Qty. 2

**4 - Head restraint guide**

- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 352](#)

**5 - Head restraint**

- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 360](#)

**6 - Belt guide**

- ☐ Secured to backrest frame with 4 pop rivets

**7 - Bolts**

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 2 Nm

**8 - Cover**

- ☐ For belt guide

**9 - Pop rivet**

- ☐ Qty. 4

**10 - Bolts**

- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 2 Nm

**11 - Cover**

- ☐ For belt guide

**12 - Belt guide**

- ☐ Secured to backrest frame with 8 pop rivets

**13 - Pop rivet**

- ☐ Qty. 8

**14 - Bracket**

- ☐ Qty. 3

**15 - Rear wall**

- ☐ Secured to backrest frame

**16 - Backrest frame**

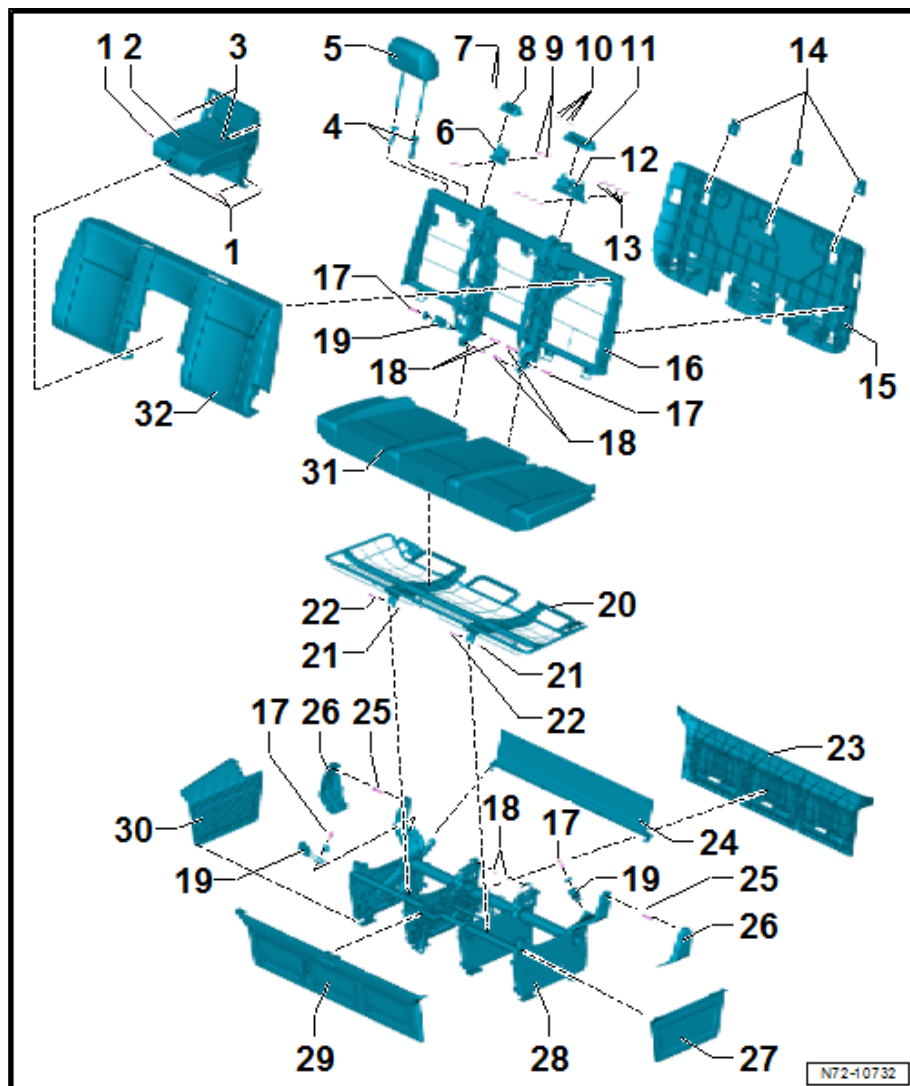
- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 369](#)

**17 - Bolts**

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 40 Nm

**18 - Bolts for securing backrest**

- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 95 Nm





**19 - Belt buckle**

- ☐ Qty. 3

**20 - Rear seat frame**

**21 - Speed nuts**

- ☐ Qty. 2

**22 - Studs for rear seat frame**

- ☐ Qty. 2

**23 - Rear bench seat trim**

**24 - Roller blind**

**25 - Bolts for seat frame**

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 55 Nm

**26 - Cover**

- ☐ Qty. 2

**27 - Left trim on bench seat**

**28 - Seat frame**

**29 - Front trim on bench seat**

**30 - Right trim on bench seat**

**31 - Seat padding**

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 477](#)

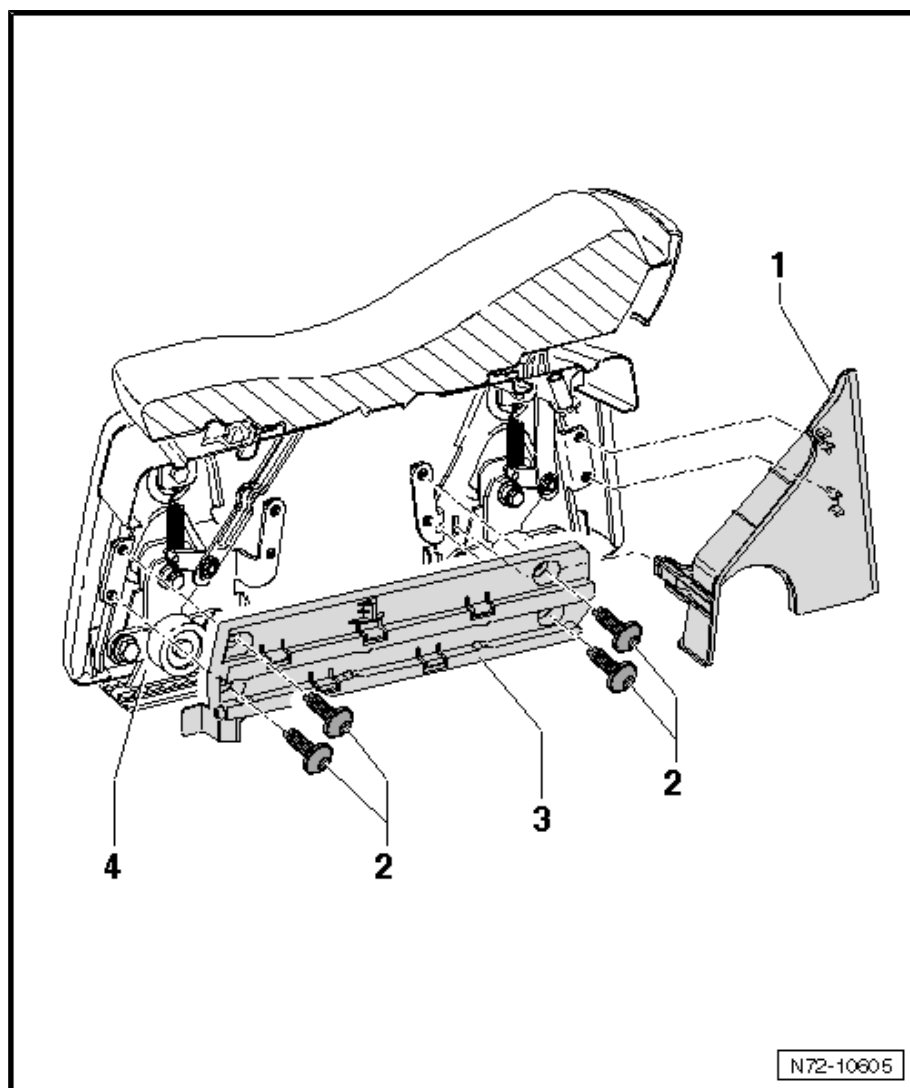
**32 - Backrest padding**

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 444](#)



### 3.1.5 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats, Multivan/Business, guide rail

- 1 - Guide rail trim
  - Clipped into seat frame
- 2 - Bolts
  - Qty. 4
  - 8 Nm
- 3 - Guide rail
  - Right
- 4 - Seat supporting frame





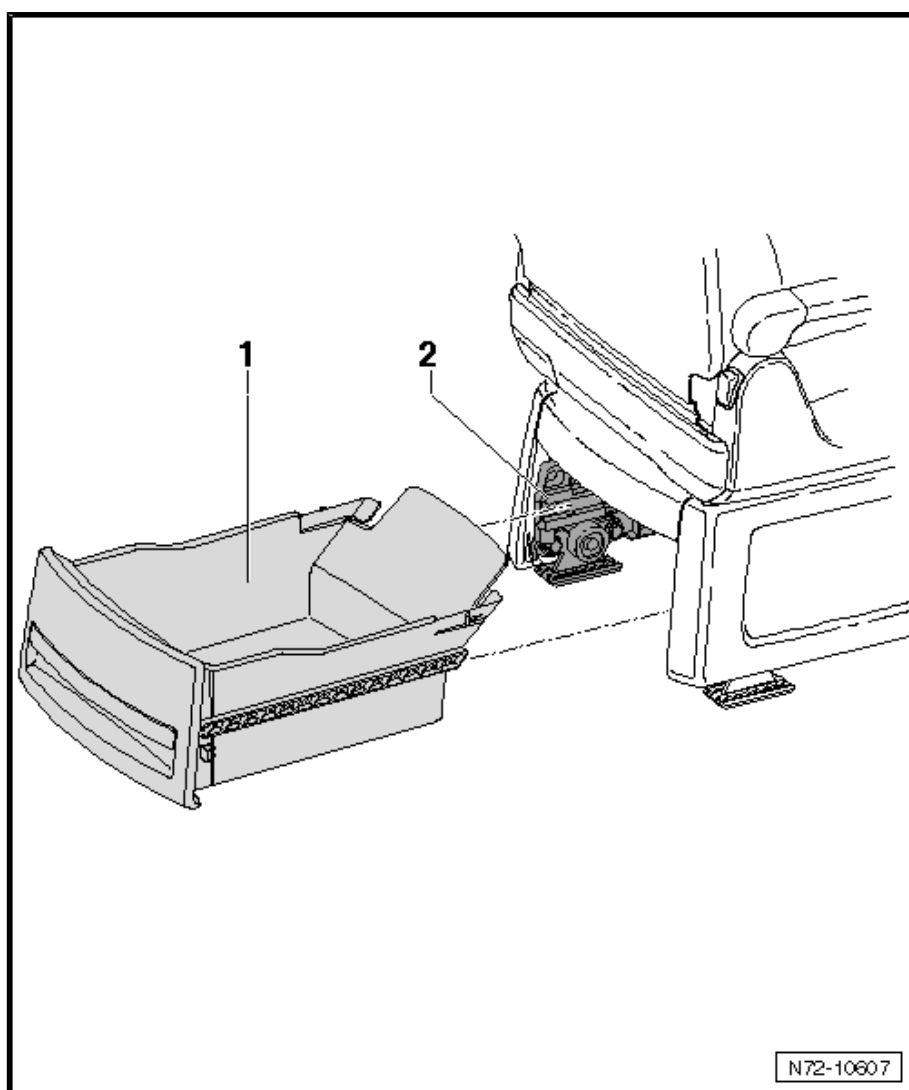
### 3.1.6 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats, Multivan/Business, drawer

#### 1 - Drawer

- ☐ Fitted into seat box

#### 2 - Guide rail

- ☐ Left and right



### 3.1.7 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats, Transporter, 2nd row

#### 1 - Backrest padding

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 444](#)

#### 2 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ With push button for head restraint, adjustable
- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 352](#)

#### 3 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ Adjustable
- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 352](#)

#### 4 - Head restraint

- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 360](#)

#### 5 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2

#### 6 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 65 Nm

#### 7 - Backrest frame

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 369](#)

#### 8 - Belt guide

- ☐ Secured to backrest frame with 4 pop rivets

#### 9 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 2 Nm

#### 10 - Cover

- ☐ For belt guide

#### 11 - Rear panel board

- ☐ Secured to backrest frame with 7 pop rivets

#### 12 - Cover

#### 13 - Pop rivet

- ☐ Qty. 7

#### 14 - Adjustment fitting

#### 15 - Nuts

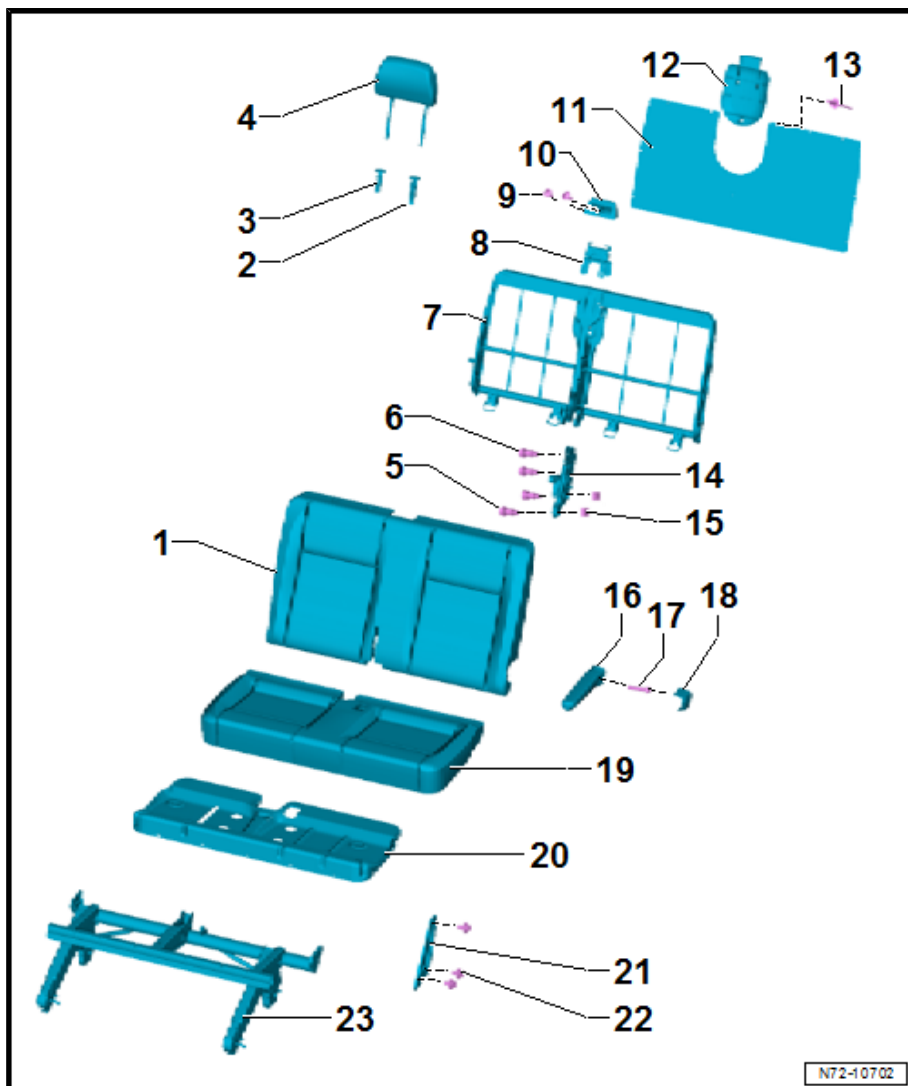
- ☐ Renew after removal
- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 65 Nm

#### 16 - Armrest

- ☐ Left and right

#### 17 - Bolt

- ☐ 20 Nm







## 18 - Cover

- ☐ For armrest

## 19 - Seat padding

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 460](#)

## 20 - Seat pan

## 21 - Fitting

## 22 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 3
- ☐ 55 Nm

## 23 - Seat frame

### 3.1.8 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats, Transporter, 3-seater bench seat in 3rd row

#### 1 - Backrest padding

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 444](#)

#### 2 - Backrest frame

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 369](#)

#### 3 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ Adjustable
- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 352](#)

#### 4 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ With push button for head restraint, adjustable
- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 352](#)

#### 5 - Head restraint

- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 360](#)

#### 6 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 2
- ☐ 2 Nm

#### 7 - Cover

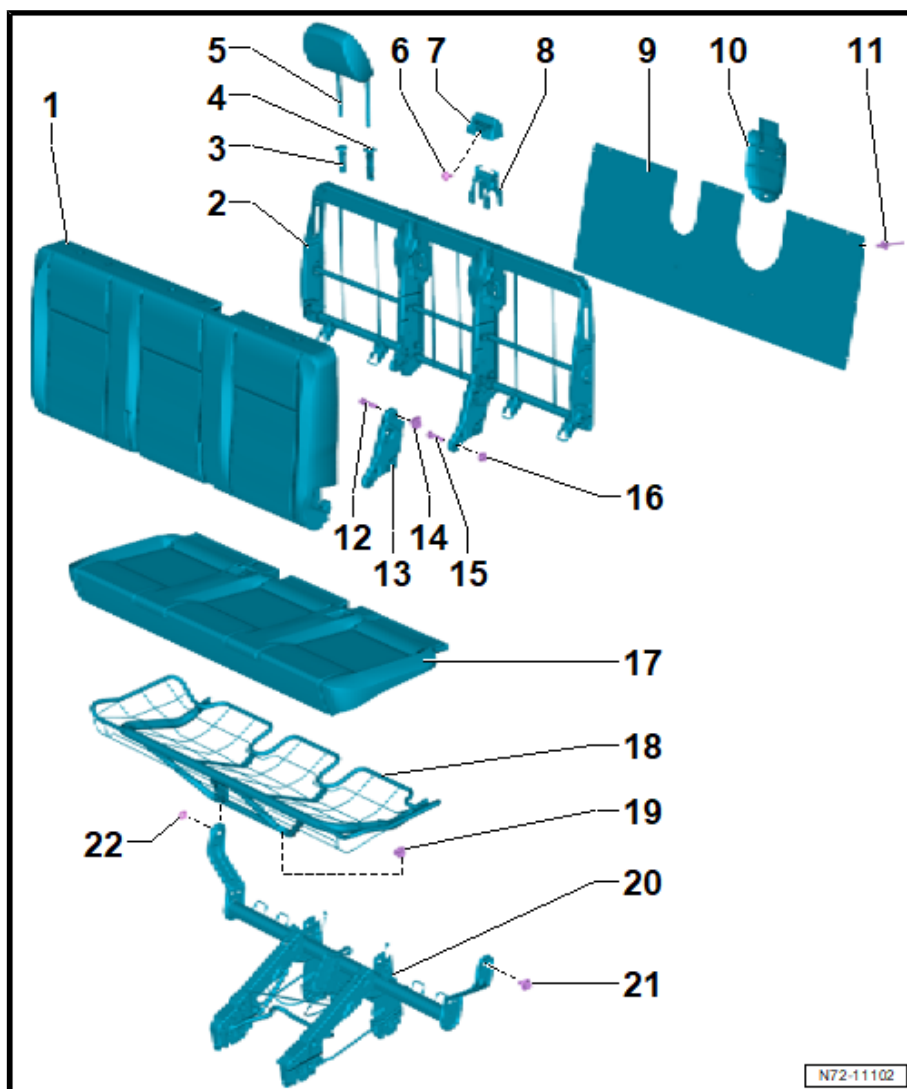
- ☐ For belt guide

#### 8 - Belt guide

- ☐ Secured to backrest frame with pop rivets

#### 9 - Rear panel board

- ☐ Secured to backrest frame with pop rivets



N72-11102



**10 - Cover**

**11 - Pop rivets**

**12 - Bolts**

**13 - Adjustment fitting**

**14 - Tensioning element**

**15 - Bolt**

**16 - Nuts**

- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 55 Nm

**17 - Seat padding**

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 436](#)

**18 - Rear seat frame**

**19 - Nuts**

- ☐ Renew after removal
- ☐ Qty. 4
- ☐ 30 Nm

**20 - Seat frame**

**21 - Bolts**

- ☐ Left and right
- ☐ 65 Nm

**22 - Slide bearing**



### 3.1.9 Assembly overview - bench seat / individual seats, double cab, 2nd row

#### 1 - Backrest padding

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 444](#)

#### 2 - Head restraint

- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 360](#)

#### 3 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ With push button for head restraint, adjustable
- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 352](#)

#### 4 - Head restraint guide

- ☐ Adjustable
- ☐ Assembly overview  
⇒ [page 352](#)

#### 5 - Bolt

- ☐ 2 Nm

#### 6 - Front cover cap

- ☐ For belt guide

#### 7 - Belt guide

- ☐ Secured with 4 pop rivets

#### 8 - Rear cover cap

- ☐ For belt guide

#### 9 - Backrest frame

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 369](#)

#### 10 - Bolt

- ☐ Left and right
- ☐ 20 Nm

#### 11 - Nuts

- ☐ Left and right
- ☐ 20 Nm

#### 12 - Seat padding

- ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 436](#)

#### 13 - Bolts

- ☐ Qty. 3

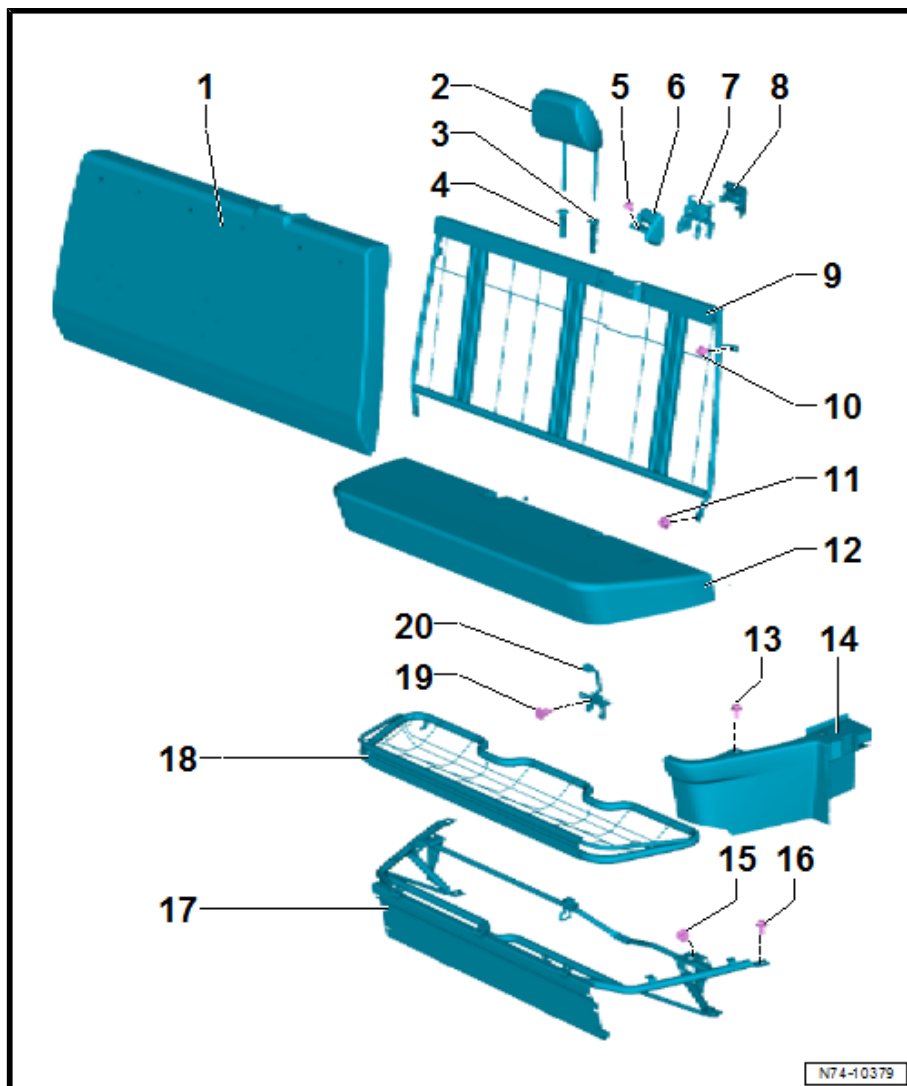
#### 14 - Trim

#### 15 - Nut

- ☐ 20 Nm

#### 16 - Bolt

- ☐ 20 Nm





17 - Seat frame

18 - Rear seat frame

19 - Bolt

□ 5 Nm

20 - Pull strap

### 3.2 Assembly overview - head restraint, Multivan/Business

1 - Head restraint

□ Must be properly engaged in head restraint guides.

2 - Backrest padding

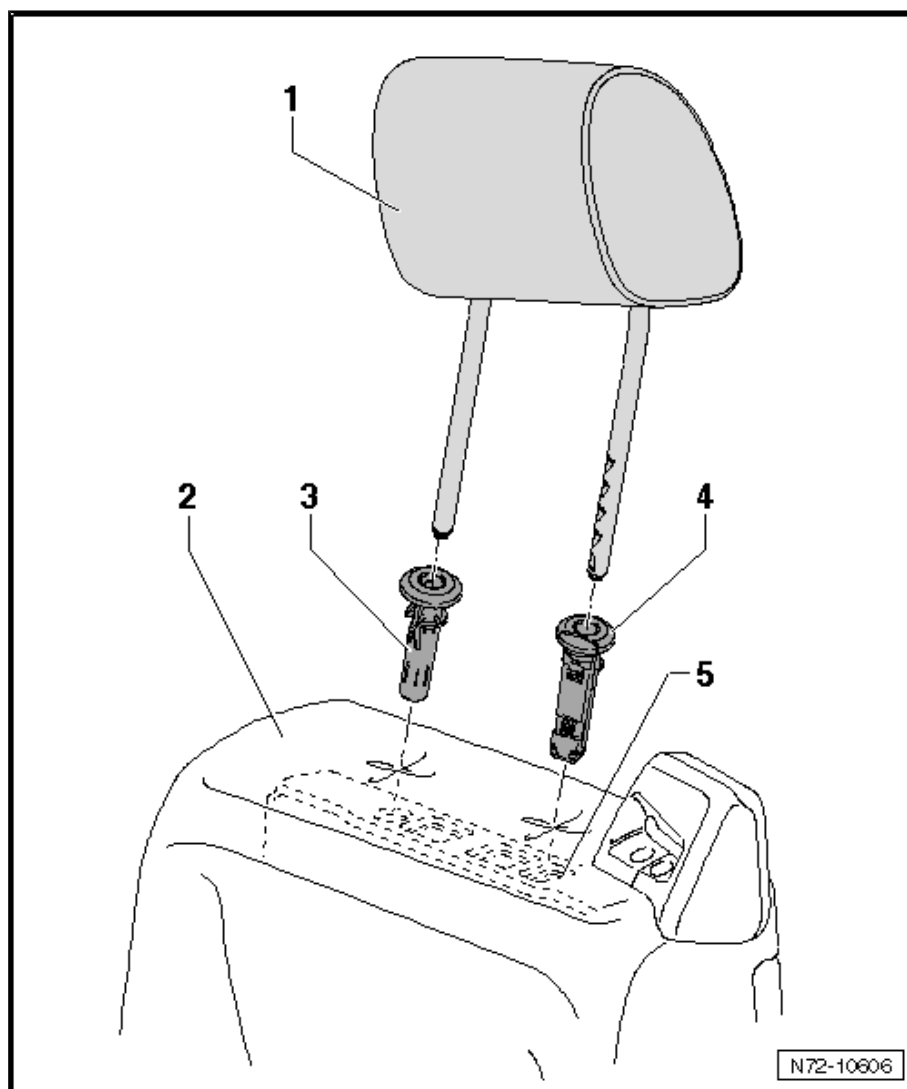
3 - Head restraint guide

□ Adjustable

4 - Head restraint guide

□ With push button for head restraint, adjustable

5 - Backrest frame





### 3.3 Removing and installing bench seat/individual seats

⇒ [“3.3.1 Removing and installing bench seat / individual seats, swivel seat with seat frame in 2nd row, Multivan/Business”, page 361](#)

⇒ [“3.3.2 Removing and installing bench seat/individual seats, 3-seater bench seat, 3rd row”, page 364](#)

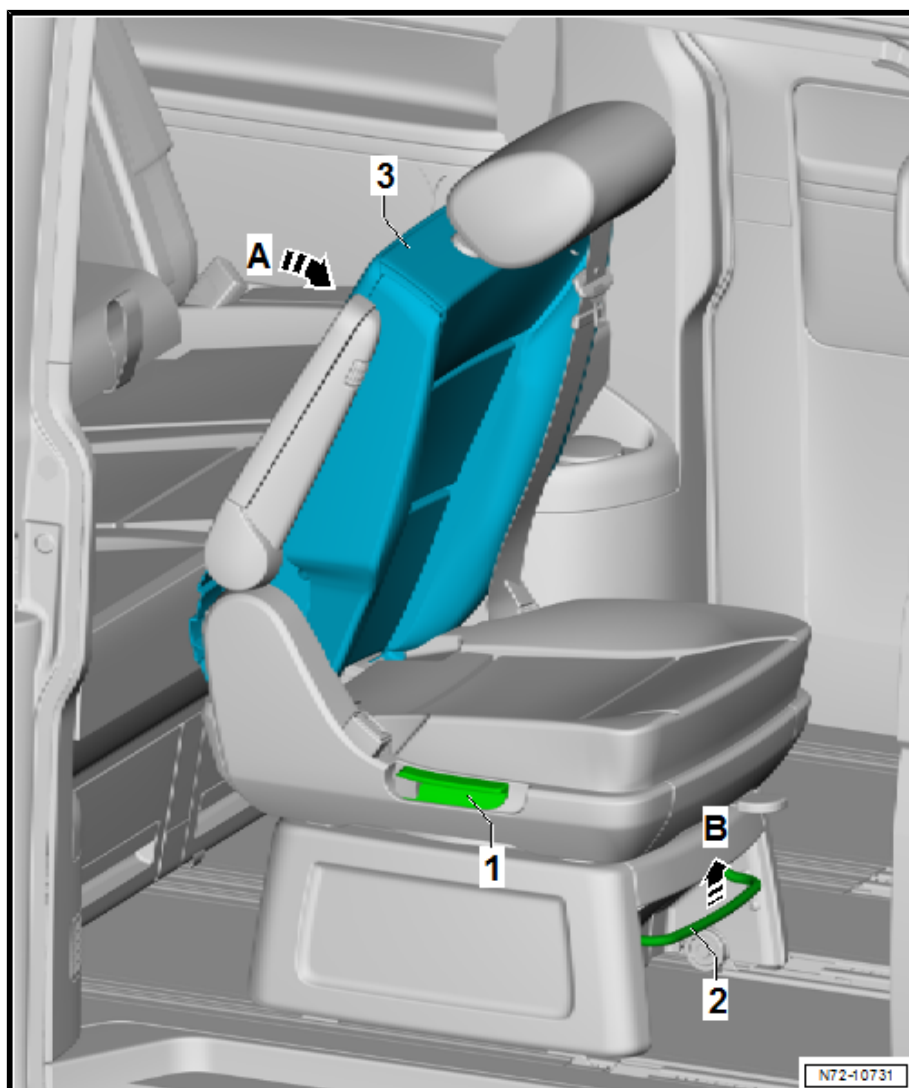
⇒ [“3.3.3 Retrofitting bench seat / individual seat in 2nd row, Kombi/Shuttle”, page 365](#)

#### 3.3.1 Removing and installing bench seat / individual seats, swivel seat with seat frame in 2nd row, Multivan/Business



##### Note

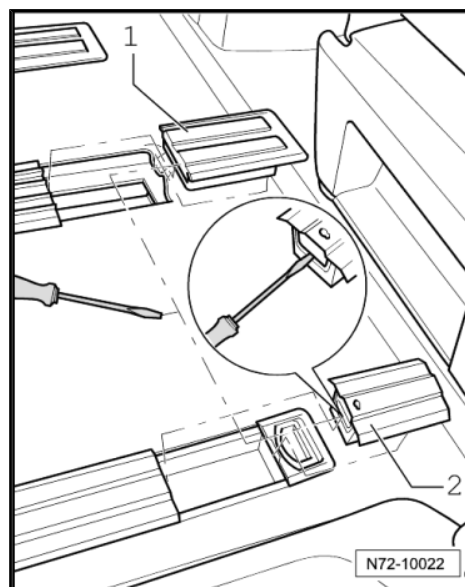
*The removal and installation procedure is described for the right-hand side of the vehicle. The procedures for the left side are analogous.*



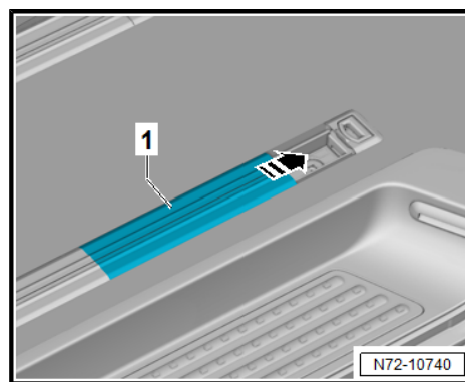


## Removing

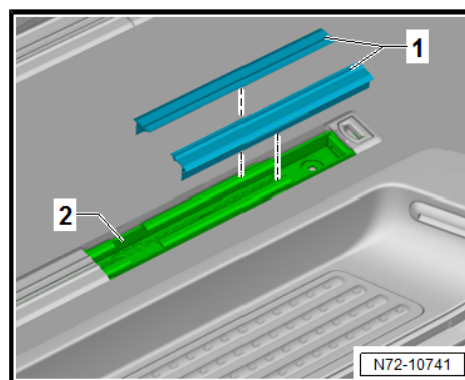
- Operate backrest release mechanism -1-.
- Fold backrest -3- towards front in -direction of arrow-.
- Operate release lever -2- in -direction of arrow B-.
- Move seat to rearmost position.
- Use a screwdriver to release end cap of right, centre seat rail -1- and pull out upwards.
- Use a screwdriver to release end cap of right seat rail -2- and pull out upwards.

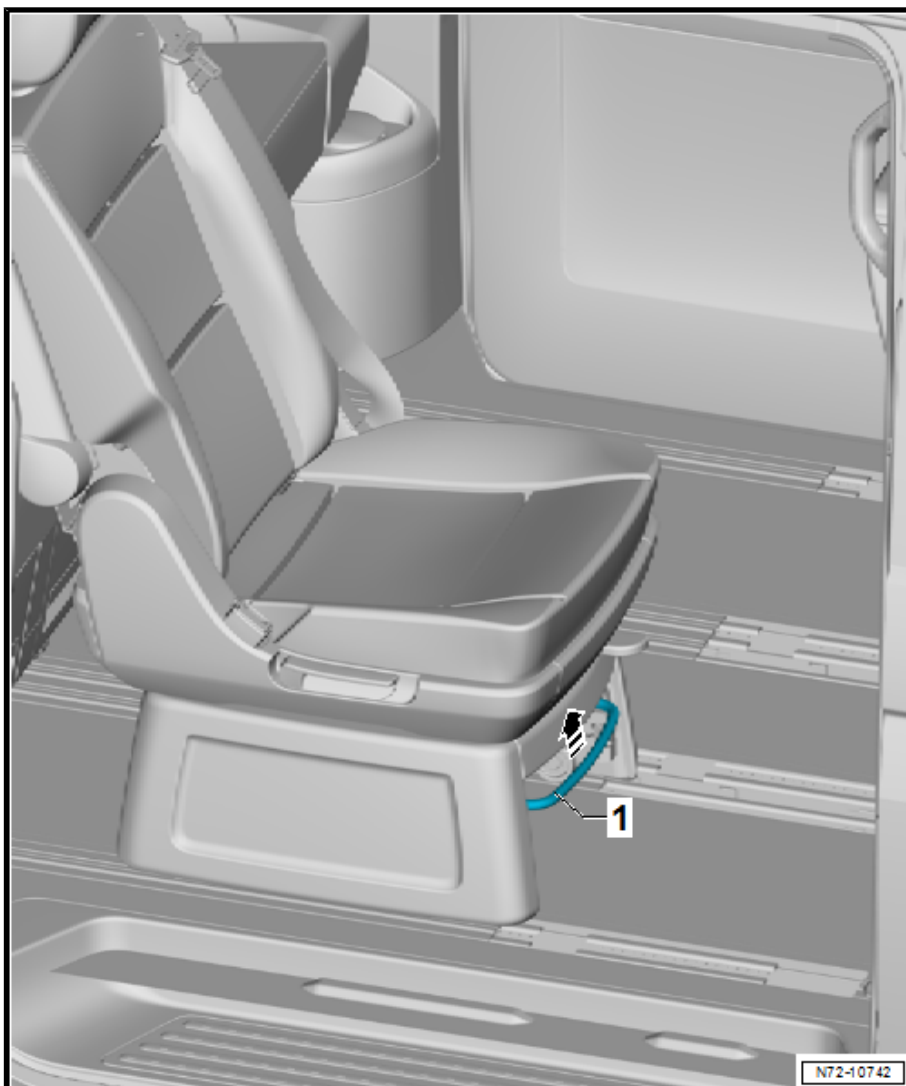


- Push cap -1- in -direction of arrow-.



- Remove cap -1- from seat rails -2-.





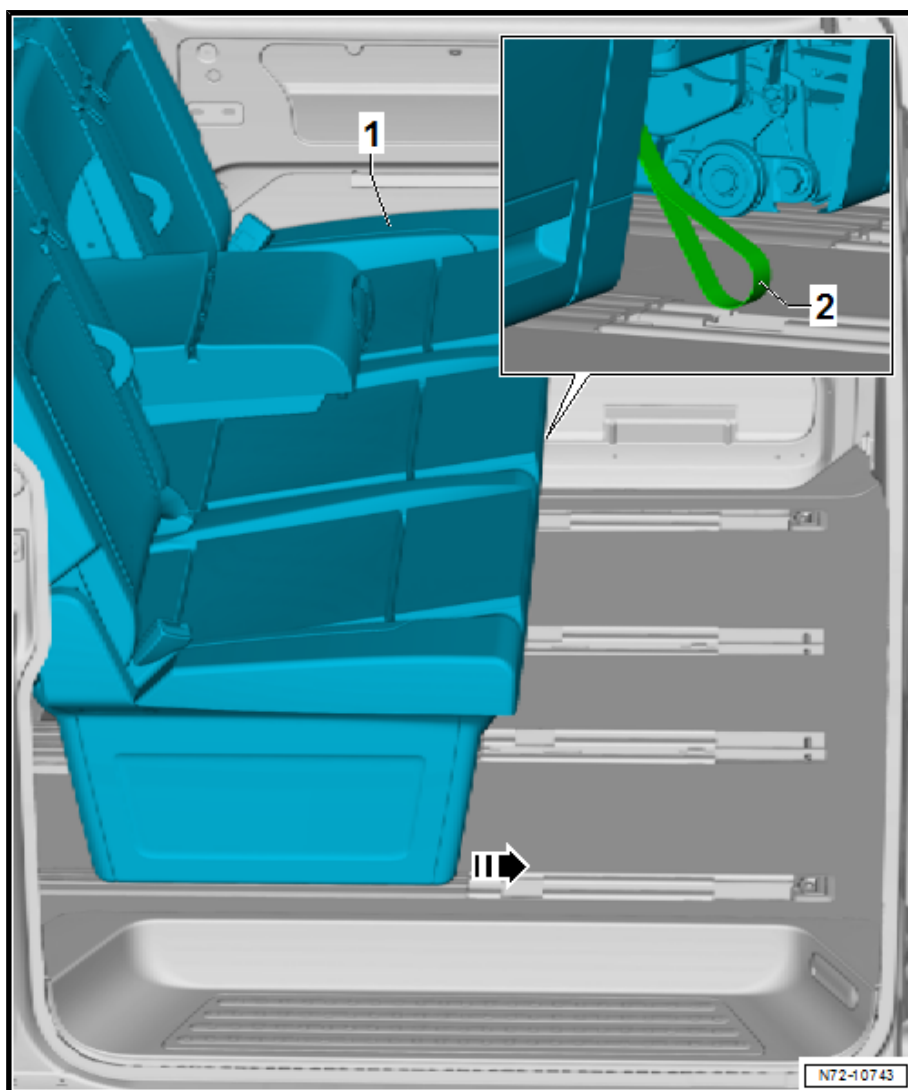
- Operate release lever -1- in -direction of arrow-.
- Move seat as far forwards as possible.
- Lift seat upwards out of seat rails.

#### **Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse order.



### 3.3.2 Removing and installing bench seat/individual seats, 3-seater bench seat, 3rd row



#### Removing

- Remove seats from 2nd row ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- If fitted, remove table module from seat rails.
- Pull on loop -2- to release bench seat.
- Move bench seat as far forwards as possible -arrow-.
- Fold backrest forwards.
- With the aid of a second mechanic lift bench seat out of seat rail.

#### Installing

- Installation is carried out in reverse order.





### 3.3.3 Retrofitting bench seat / individual seat in 2nd row, Kombi/Shuttle

#### Removing surroundings

- Remove double bench seat, 2nd seat row ⇒ [page 369](#) .
- Remove rear step inserts ⇒ [page 224](#) .
- Depending on equipment, remove side panel trim  
⇒ [page 242](#) .
- Remove floor covering in passenger compartment  
⇒ [page 243](#) .



#### Note

- ◆ *Installing floor covering between the seat securing rails and the underbody for purposes of height compensation is recommended.*
- ◆ *If the previously fitted floor covering is reinstalled, sections will need to be cut out of it to accommodate the retrofitted seat securing rails.*

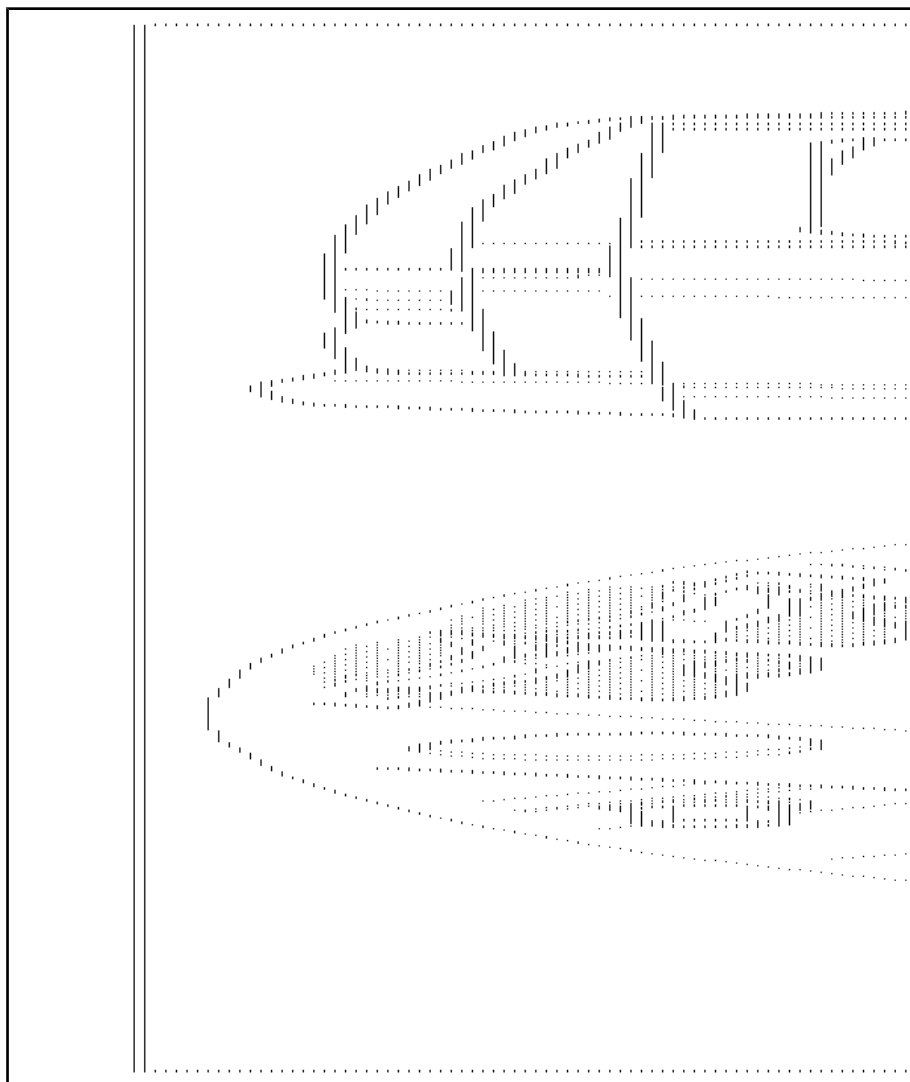
- Remove front right floor trim ⇒ [page 243](#) .
- Remove rear right floor trim ⇒ [page 243](#) .
- Depending on equipment, remove exhaust system of auxiliary air heater ⇒ Rep. gr. 82 .
- Disconnect pull cable from handbrake cables and detach pull cable from floor ⇒ Rep. gr. 46 .
- Remove rear centre floor trim ⇒ [page 243](#) .
- Remove rear left floor trim ⇒ [page 243](#) .
- Remove bracket from front silencer and lower exhaust system  
⇒ Rep. gr. 26 .
- Remove heat shields.

#### Installing surroundings



#### Note

*The -arrows- in the illustration each point in the direction of normal travel.*

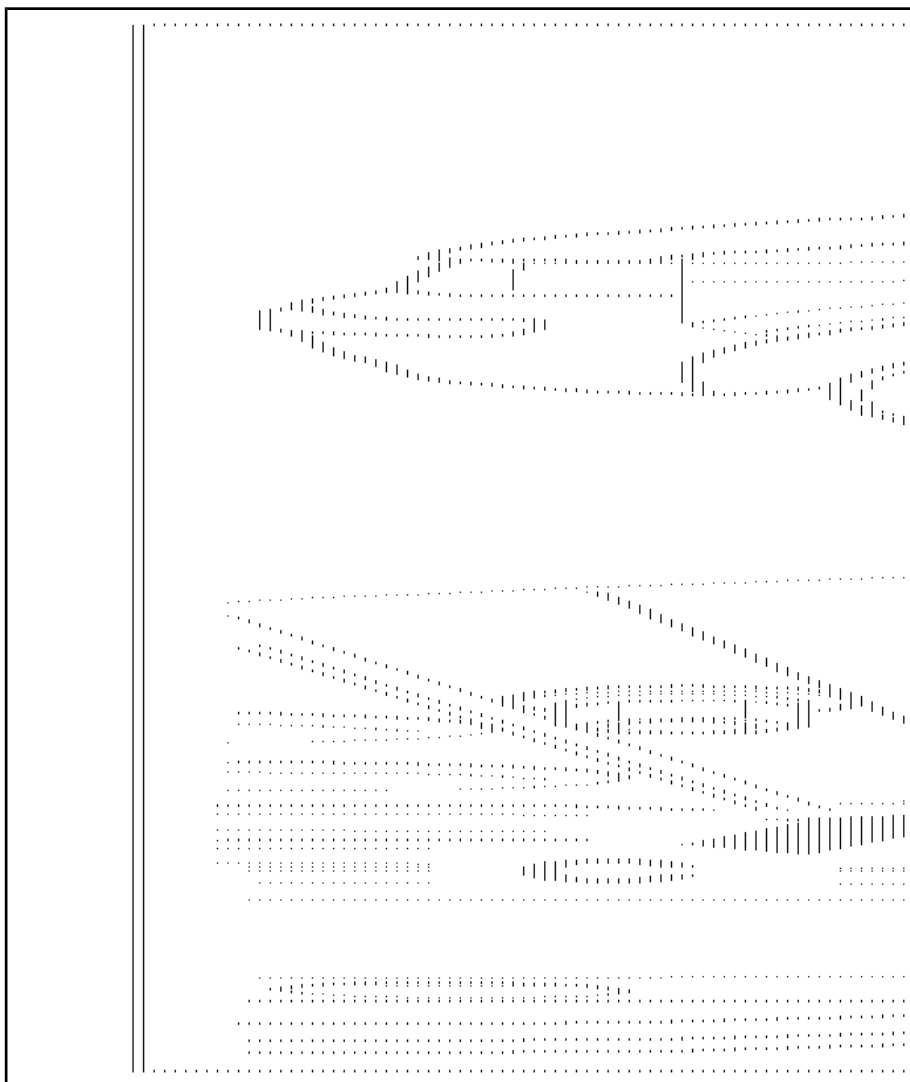


- Using pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072- to secure front, outer seat securing rail -2-, rivet the two reinforcement brackets -3- and -5- using two pop rivets each -4- and -6- (4.8 x 11 mm) in existing holes of cross member.
- From vehicle underside, drill holes ( $\varnothing$  14 mm) for seat securing rail -2- in underbody through existing holes in reinforcement brackets -3- and -5-.
- Then apply corrosion protection treatment ⇒ Paintwork manual .
- Perform work measures, as described, for rear, outer seat securing rail -1-.

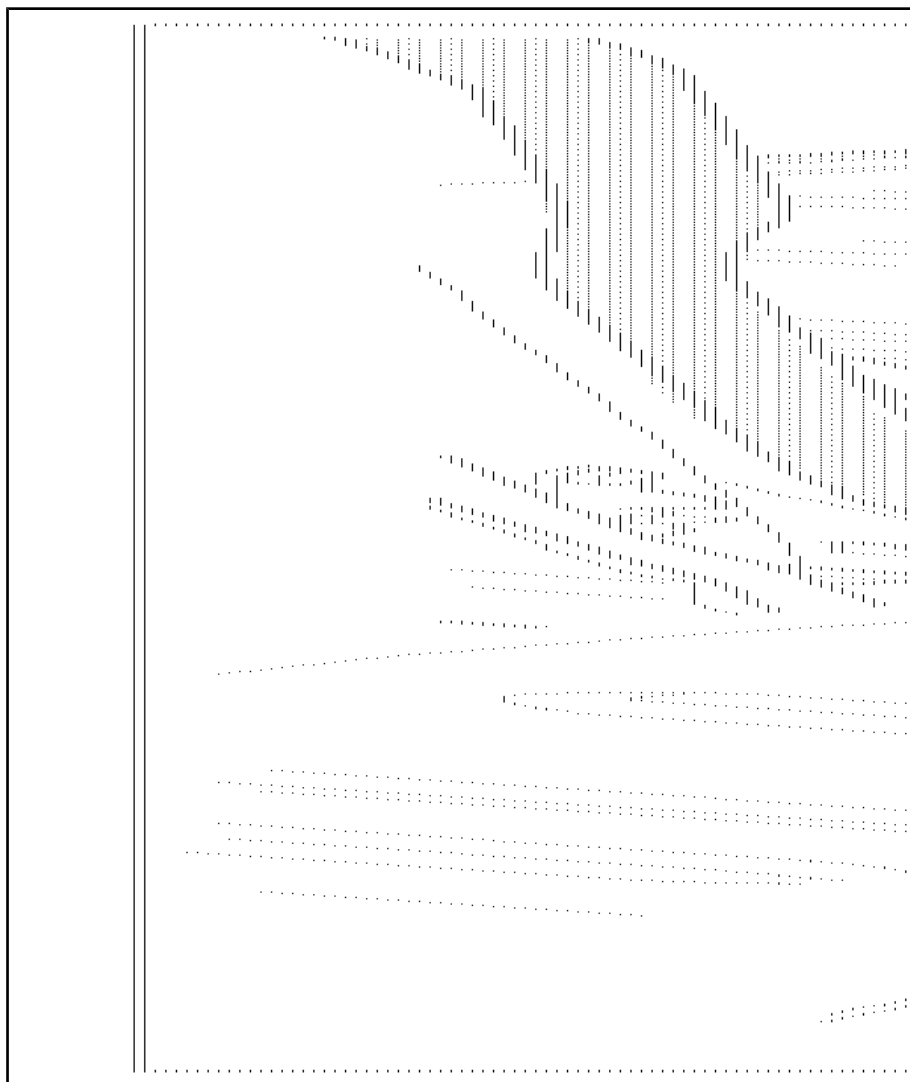


**Note**

*-Arrow A- points in direction of normal travel.*



- Drill 2 holes (14 mm in diameter) from vehicle underside through vehicle underbody -arrows C-.
- Holes are already provided in cross member. These holes are required for attachment of the front, inner seat securing rail -1-.
- Drill 2 holes (14 mm in diameter) for attachment of rear, inner seat securing rail -2- through vehicle underbody -arrows B-.
- Then apply corrosion protection treatment ⇒ Paintwork manual .



- Tighten nuts -2- of 4 seat securing rails -1- on underbody.
- Install seat belt ⇒ [page 105](#) .
- The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence of removal.

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Seat securing rail	55 Nm



### 3.4 Removing and installing rear seat backrest

⇒ [“3.4.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest, Multivan, 2nd row, Multivan/Business”, page 369](#)

⇒ [“3.4.2 Removing and installing rear seat backrest, Multivan, 3-seater bench seat”, page 371](#)

⇒ [“3.4.3 Removing and installing rear seat backrest, Transporter, individual seat, 2nd row”, page 373](#)

⇒ [“3.4.4 Removing and installing rear seat backrest, Transporter, double bench seat, 2nd row”, page 375](#)

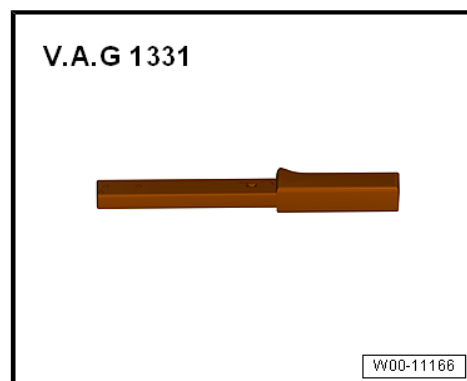
⇒ [“3.4.5 Removing and installing rear seat backrest, Transporter, 3-seater bench seat”, page 377](#)

⇒ [“3.4.6 Removing and installing rear seat backrest, double cab, 3-seater bench seat, 2nd row”, page 378](#)

#### 3.4.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest, Multivan, 2nd row, Multivan/Business

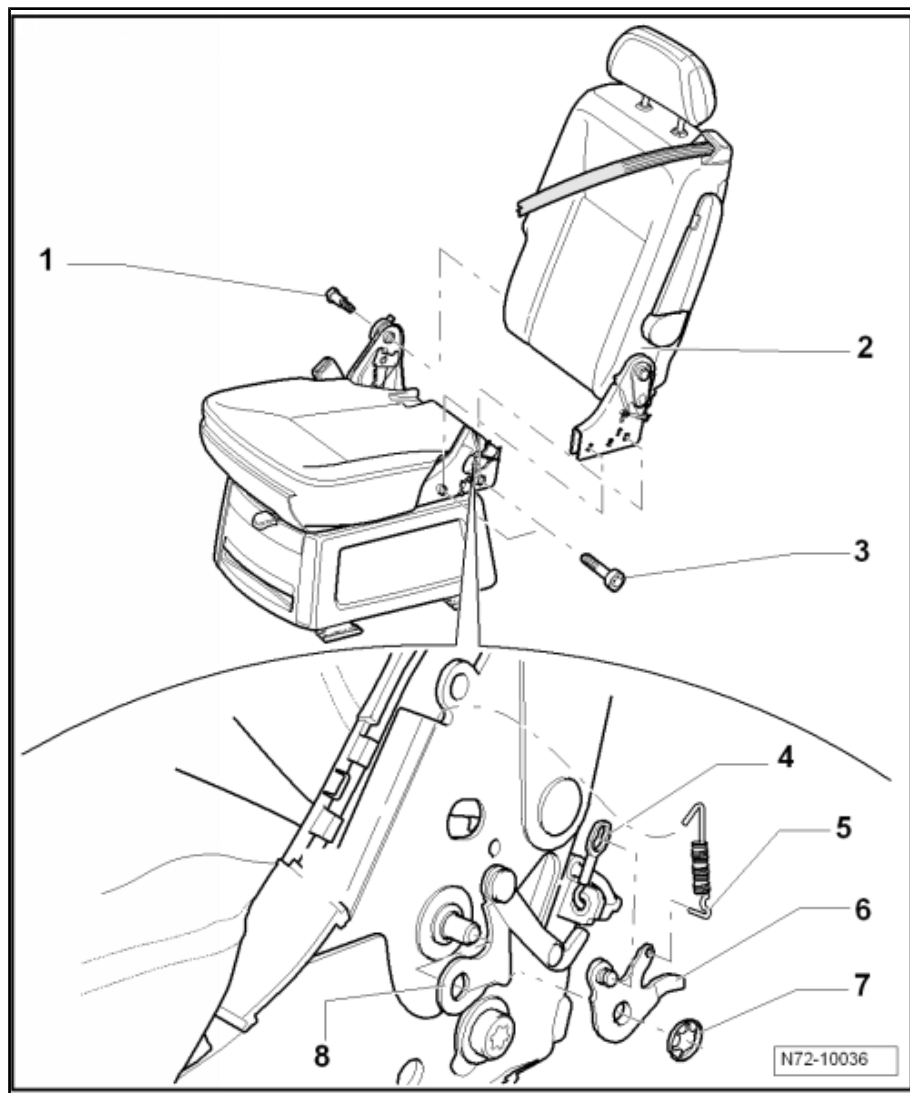
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-





### Removing

- Remove front seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove rear seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove right seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove left seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove belt end fitting ⇒ [page 124](#) .
- Using a small screwdriver, unclip Bowden cable -4- from relay lever -6-.
- Unhook tensioning spring -5-.
- Using a small screwdriver, lever off spring clip -7-.
- Remove relay lever -6- from backrest frame.
- Remove relay lever -8- from backrest frame.
- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- Unscrew bolt -1-.
- Remove backrest -2- upwards from seat frame.



## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



### Note

- ◆ *Bolts -1- and -3- are micro-encapsulated. They must be renewed each time after loosening.*
- ◆ *Before new bolts are installed, the threads of the corresponding nuts must be cleaned.*
- ◆ *The speed nut -7- is damaged beyond repair during removal and must be renewed.*

## Specified torques

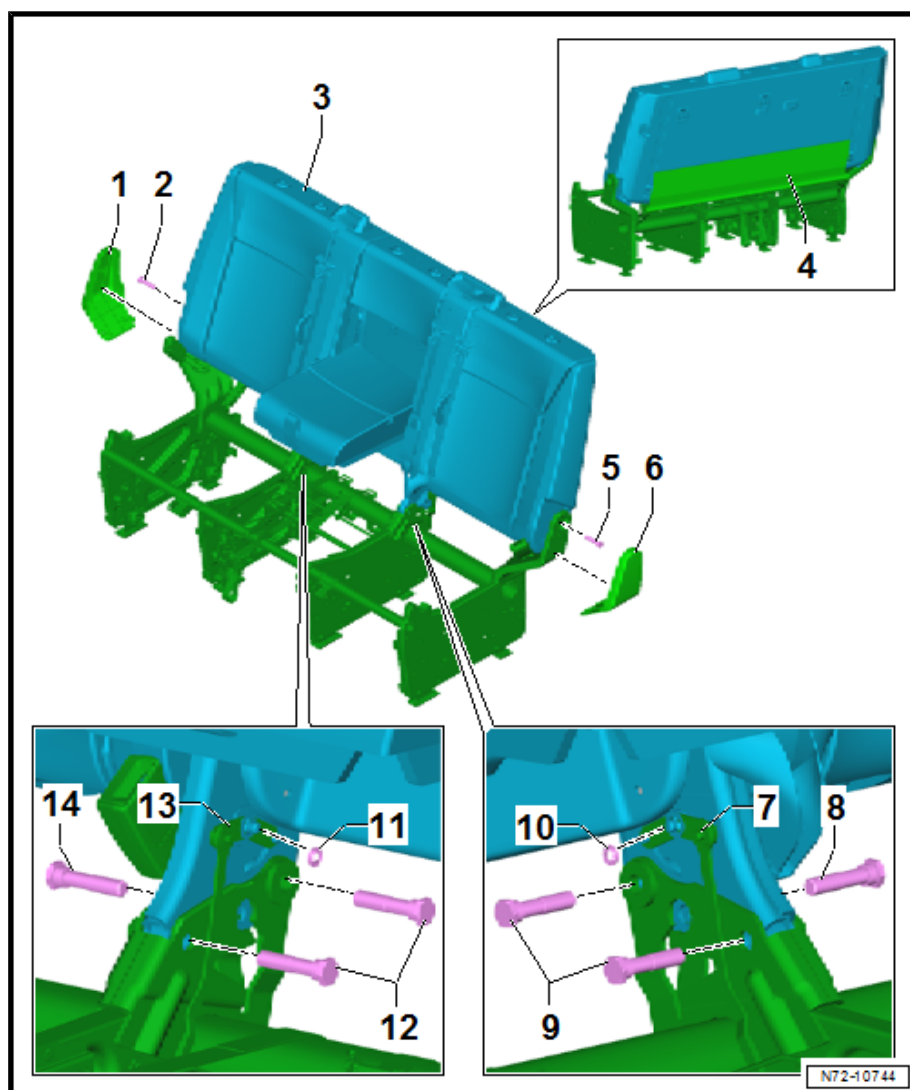
- ◆ [⇒ "3.1 Assembly overview - bench seat/individual seats", page 347](#)

### 3.4.2 Removing and installing rear seat backrest, Multivan, 3-seater bench seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-





## Removing

- Remove seats from 2nd row ➤ [page 361](#) .
- Remove table module in seat rail.
- Move bench seat as far forwards as possible.
- Remove front trim of 3-seater bench seat.
- Remove side trims of 3-seater bench seat.
- Pull out rear flaps of drawers.
- Remove rear trim of 3-seater bench seat.
- Remove seat padding of 3-seater bench seat ➤ [page 460](#) .
- Remove belt end fittings of 3-seater bench seat ➤ [page 124](#) .
- Unclip roller blind -4- from backrest -3-.
- Unclip the 2 caps -6- and -1- from seat frame.
- Using a small screwdriver, unclip speed nuts -10- and -11- from release mechanism.
- Pull off relay levers -7- and -13-.
- Unscrew bolts -8- and -14-





- Unscrew bolts -9- and -12-
- Unscrew bolts -5- and -2-
- Lift backrest -3- off seat frame.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

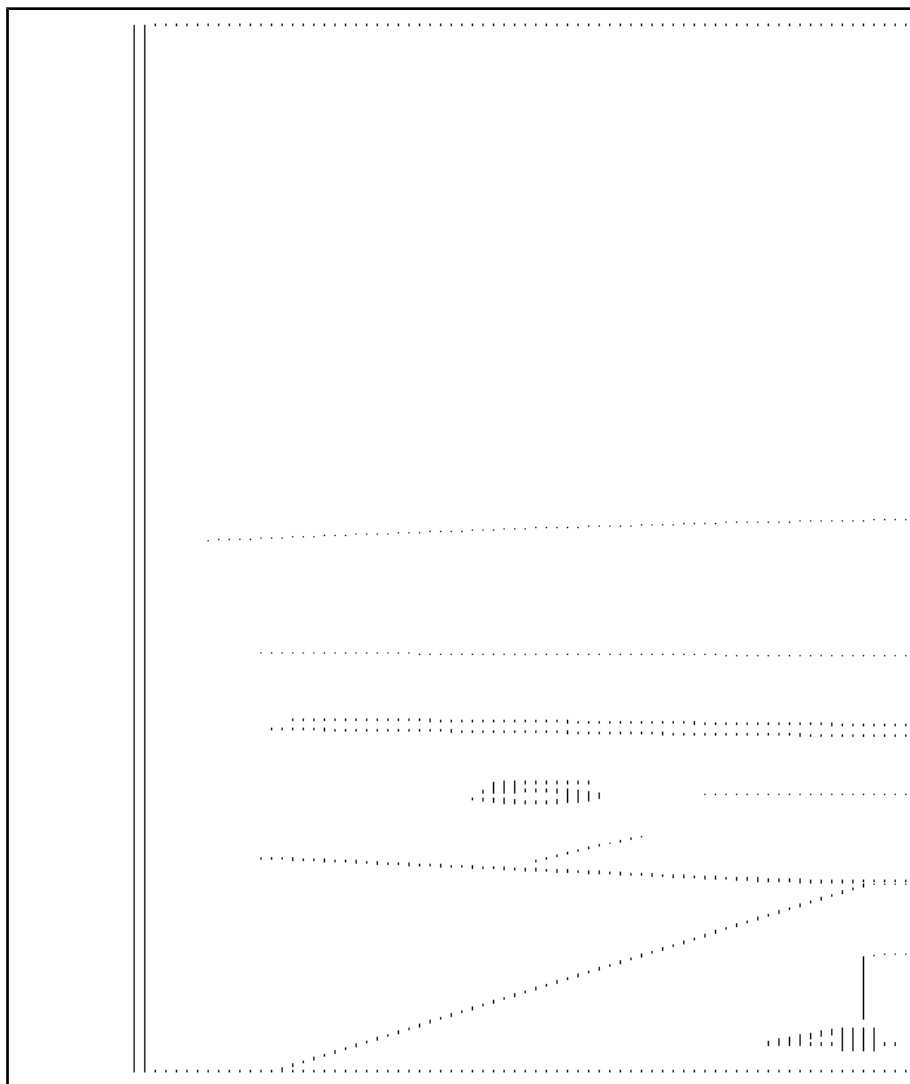
- ◆ ⇒ ["3.1.4 Assembly overview - bench seat / Multivan, 3-seat bench seat", page 352](#)

## 3.4.3 Removing and installing rear seat backrest, Transporter, individual seat, 2nd row

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-





### Removing

- Remove seat.
- Remove seat padding ⇒ [page 460](#) .
- Unclip cable -3- from mounting in seat frame -arrow A- on left and right respectively.
- Disengage Bowden cable -5- from auxiliary lever -4- in direction of -arrow B- on left and right respectively.
- Unscrew bolts -1-.
- Unscrew bolts -2-, and pull backrest towards rear off seat frame.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

**Replace auxiliary levers -4- in conjunction with following repairs:**

- ◆ Renewal of Bowden cable with release unit.
- ◆ Renewal of backrest frame with release unit.
- ◆ Damage to backrest cover (if release unit is also to be replaced).
- ◆ Easy Entry ineffective.



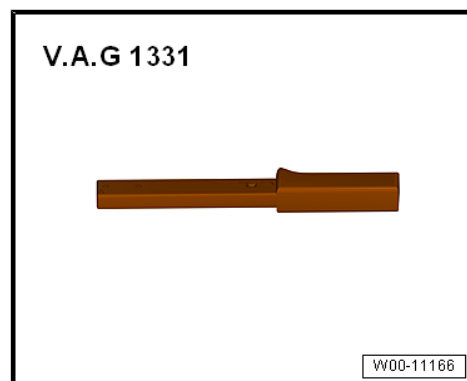
### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ ["3.1.3 Assembly overview - individual seats, Easy Entry", page 350](#)

### 3.4.4 Removing and installing rear seat backrest, Transporter, double bench seat, 2nd row

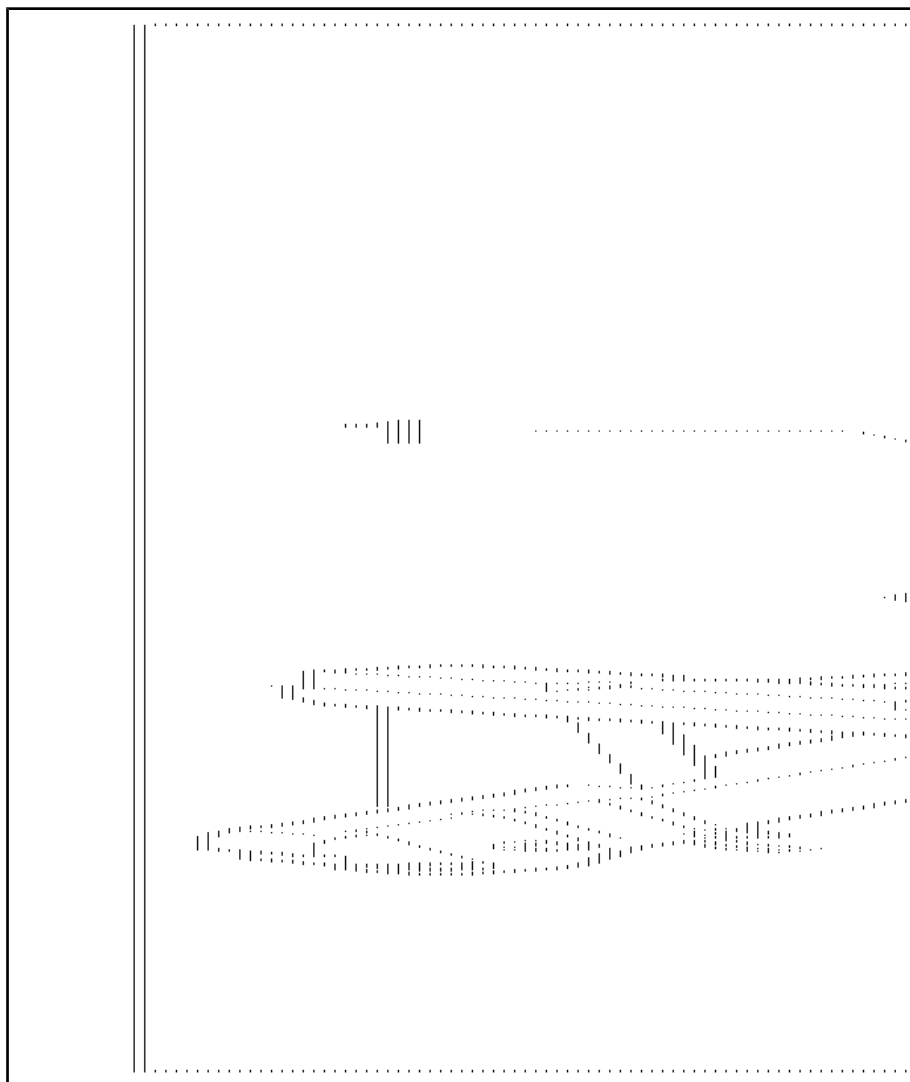
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-





### Removing

- Remove bench seat ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove centre belt buckle ⇒ [page 135](#) .
- Remove seat padding ⇒ [page 460](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -1- and -2-.
- Unscrew nuts -4- from bolts -3-.



### Note

*The 2 nuts -4- are self-locking. They must be renewed each time after loosening.*

- Pull the two bolts -3- out of seat frame.
- Remove backrest from seat frame.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

- ♦ ⇒ [“3.1 Assembly overview - bench seat/individual seats”, page 347](#)



### 3.4.5 Removing and installing rear seat backrest, Transporter, 3-seater bench seat

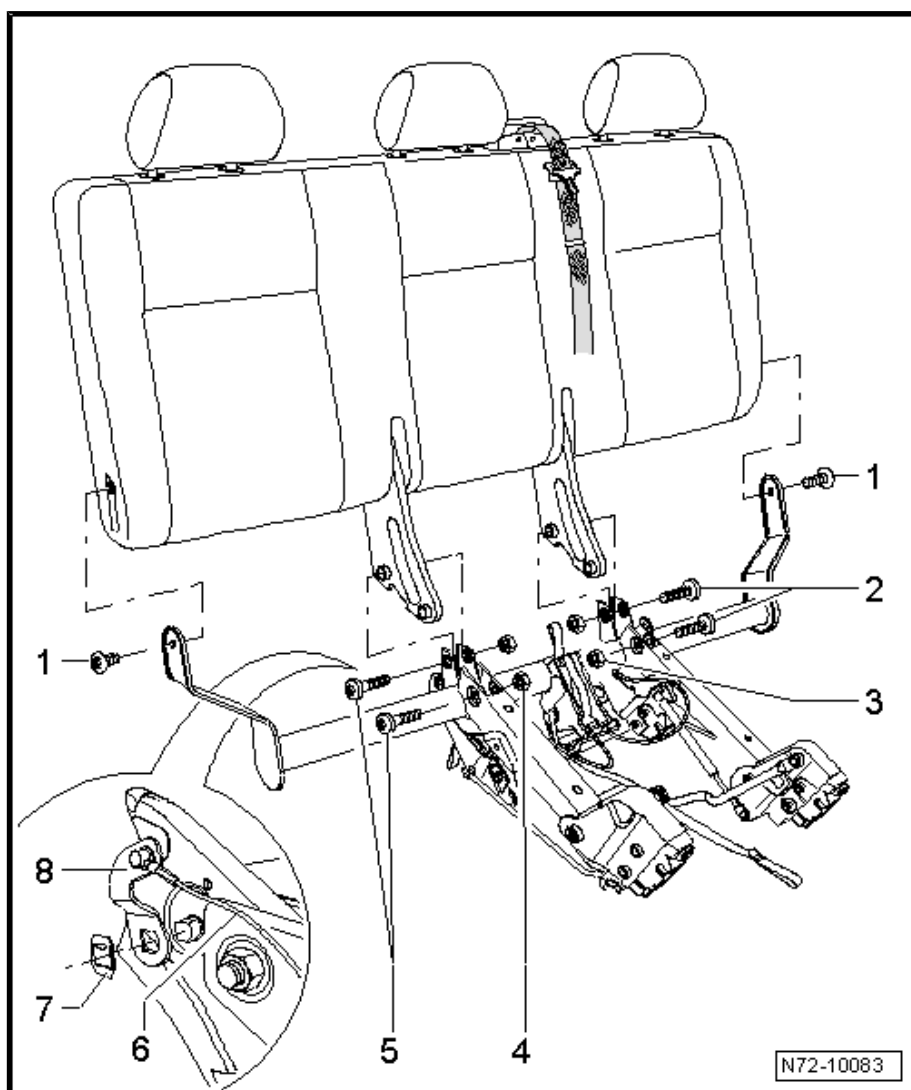
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-

V.A.G 1332



W00-11165



N72-10083

#### Removing

- Remove seats from 2nd row ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove bench seat ⇒ [page 361](#) .



- Remove belt buckles ➔ [page 135](#) .



#### Note

*The belt buckle trims need not be dismantled.*

- Remove seat padding ➔ [page 460](#) .
- Using a small screwdriver, lever off clamping washer -7- from both centre backrest attachments.
- Detach relay lever -8- from backrest frame.



#### Note

*The cable -6- must not be released from the relay lever -8-.*

- Unscrew bolts -1-.
- Unscrew nuts -3-.
- Pull out bolts -2- from seat frame.
- Unscrew nuts -4-.
- Pull out bolts -5- from seat frame.



#### Note

*The nuts -3- and -4- are self-locking. They must be renewed each time after loosening.*

- Pull backrest out of seat frame.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

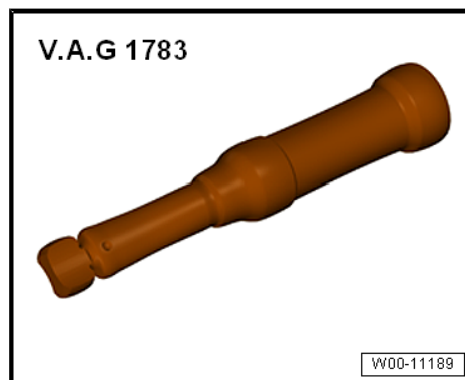
#### Specified torques

- ♦ ➔ [“3.1 Assembly overview - bench seat/individual seats”, page 347](#)

### 3.4.6 Removing and installing rear seat backrest, double cab, 3-seater bench seat, 2nd row

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



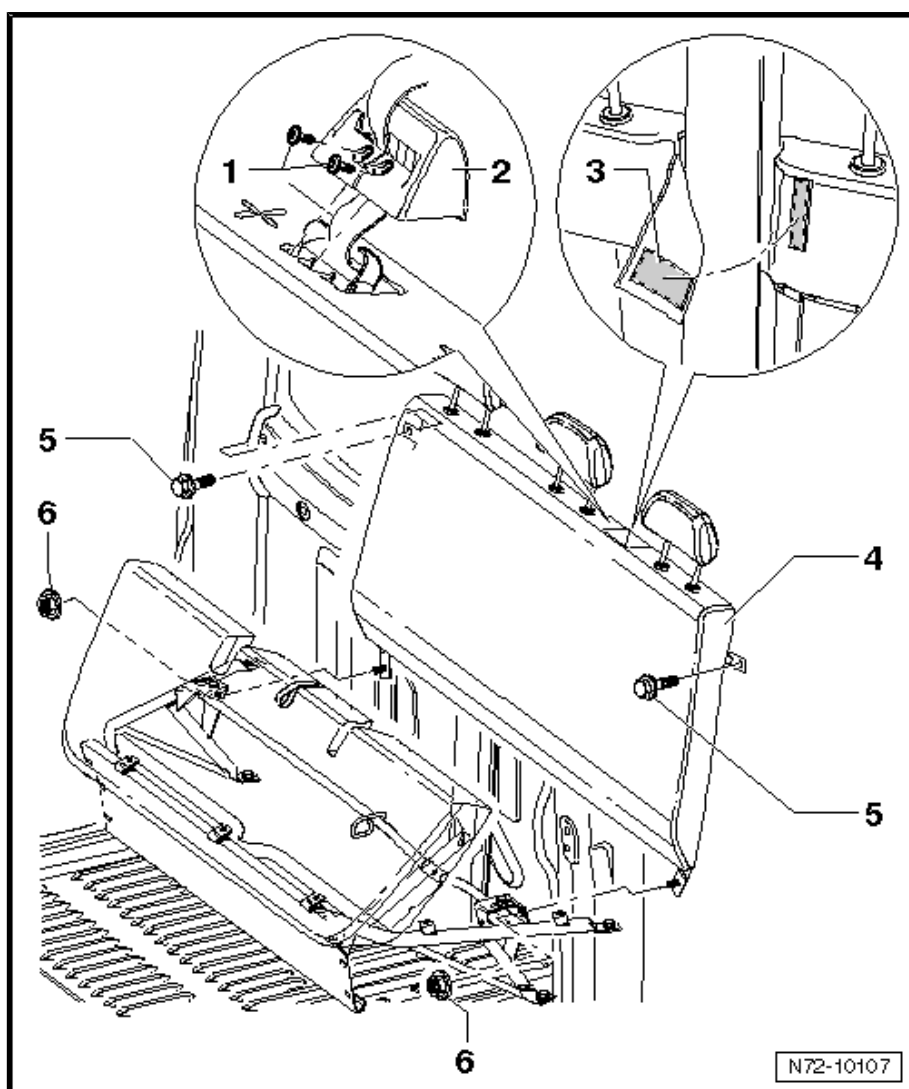


- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

V.A.G 1331



W00-11166



N72-10107

### Removing

- Fold out seat cushion.
- Detach centre seat belt with buckle from belt mounting bracket  
⇒ [page 116](#).
- Unscrew bolts -1-.
- Remove cap -2- of belt guide.



- Thread seat belt through slit in cover cap.
- Open Velcro fastener -3-.
- Unscrew nuts -6-.
- Unscrew bolts -5- on back panel of cab.
- Remove backrest -4- from rear panel.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“3.1 Assembly overview - bench seat/individual seats”, page 347](#)

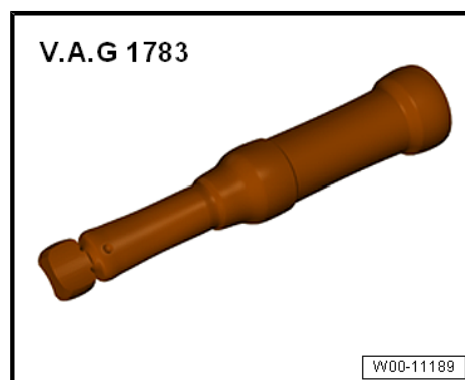
### 3.5 Removing and installing centre armrest

⇒ [“3.5.1 Removing and installing centre armrest, Multivan, 3-seater bench seat”, page 380](#)

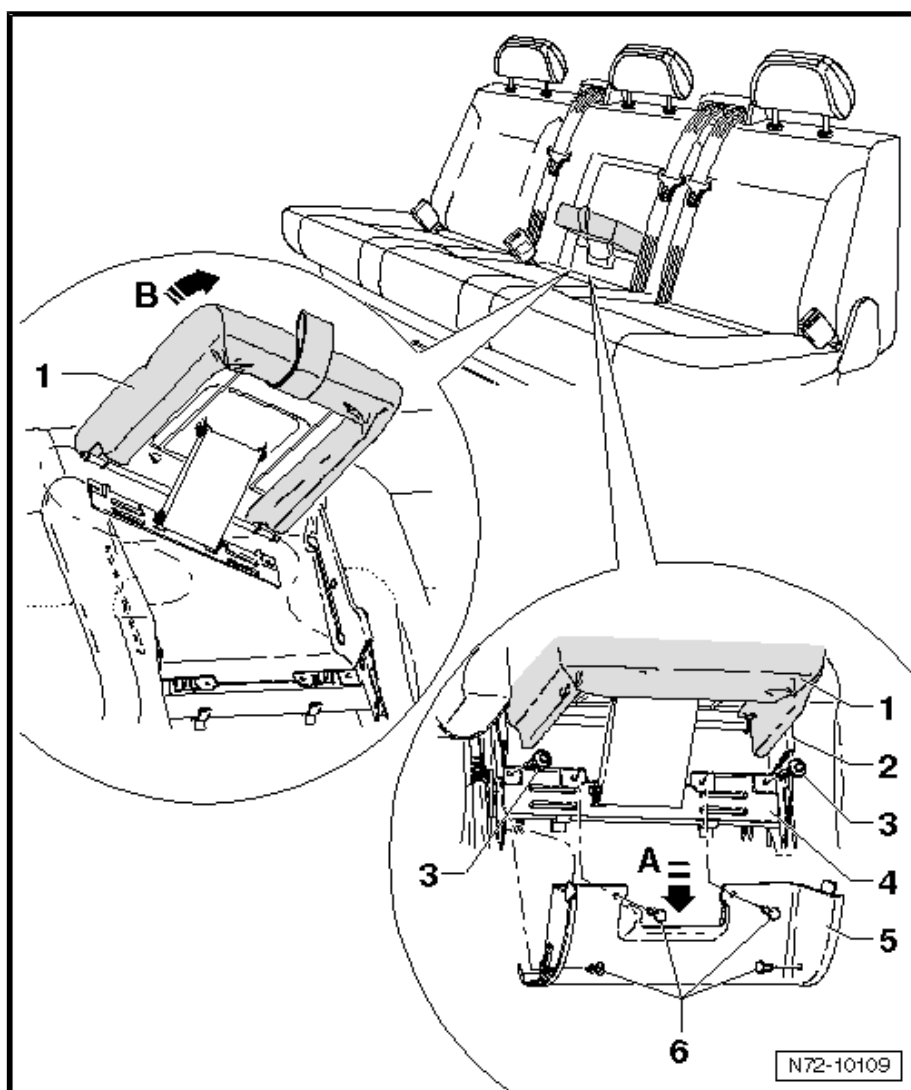
#### 3.5.1 Removing and installing centre armrest, Multivan, 3-seater bench seat

##### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

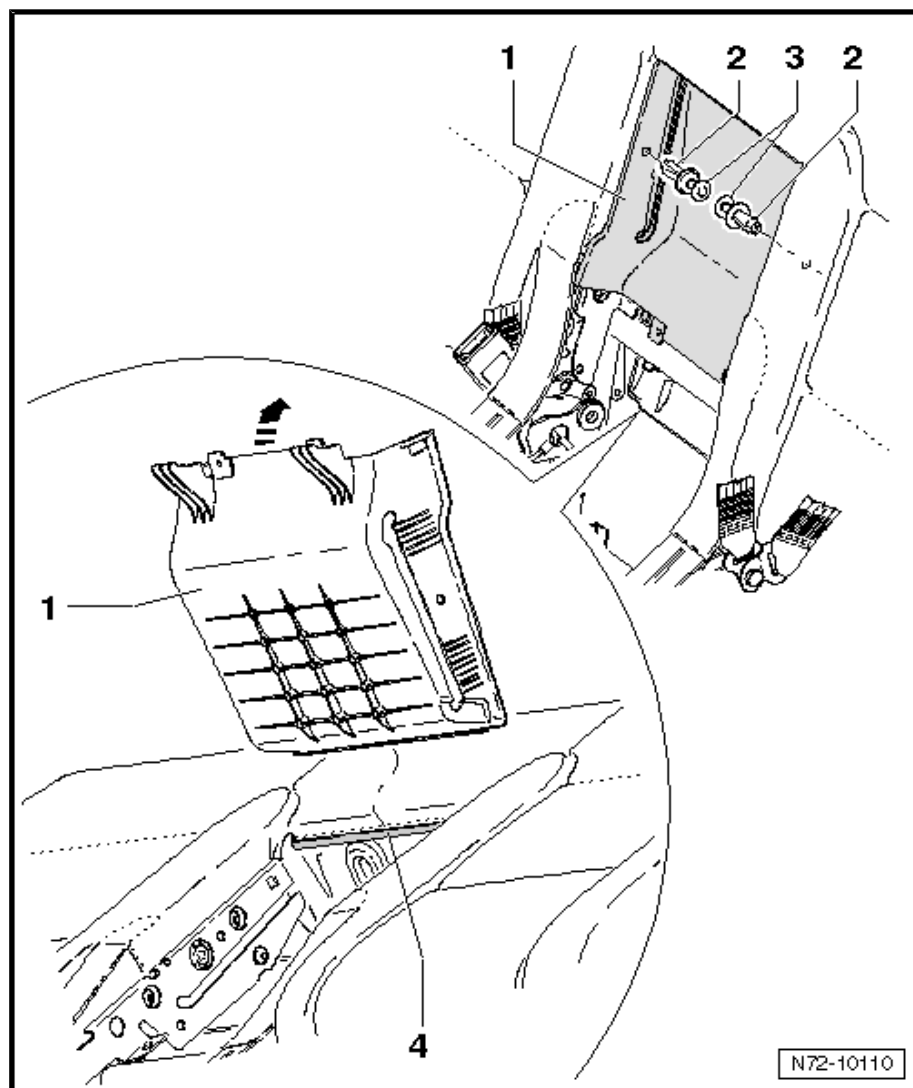






### Removing

- Remove clips -6-.
- Pull lower cover -5- downwards out of the mountings in upper cover -2- -arrow A-.
- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- Pull out lateral plate -4- downwards -arrow A-.
- Rotate armrest -1- on its longitudinal axis and remove from guide slots -arrow B-.

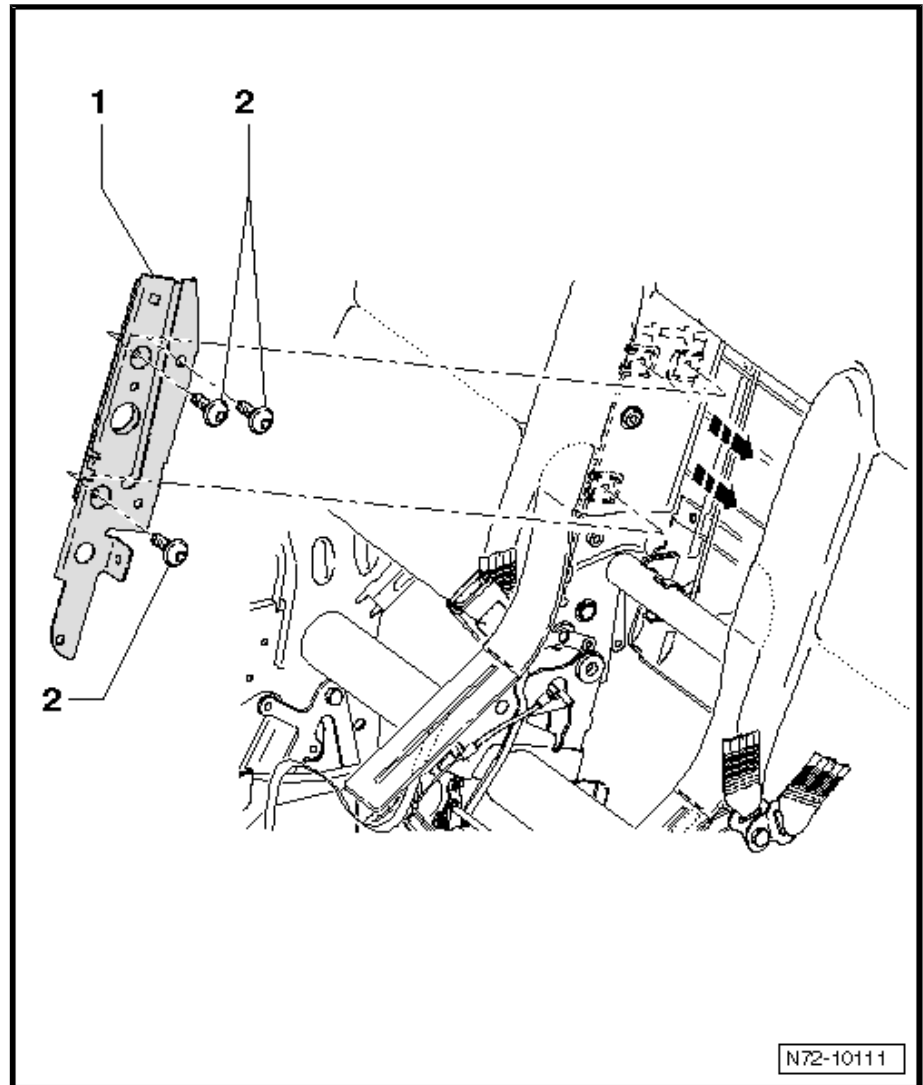


- Remove clamping pins -3-.
- Pull out spreader rivet -2-.
- Lift lower end of upper cover -1- -arrow-.
- Pull upper cover out of beading -4- backrest cover.



**Note**

- ◆ *The left guide of the centre armrest is removed in the same way.*
- ◆ *When installing the rest cover pull it so as to maintain a slight tension -arrows-.*



- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Remove right guide of centre armrest -1- from backrest frame.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for guide of centre armrest	8 Nm
Bolts for lateral plate	4.5 Nm



## 3.6 Trims of individual seat in 2nd row, Multivan/Business

⇒ ["3.6.1 Removing and installing rear seat frame trim", page 384](#)

⇒ ["3.6.2 Removing and installing front seat frame trim", page 385](#)

⇒ ["3.6.3 Removing and installing seat frame trim on right side", page 387](#)

⇒ ["3.6.4 Removing and installing seat frame trim on left side", page 389](#)

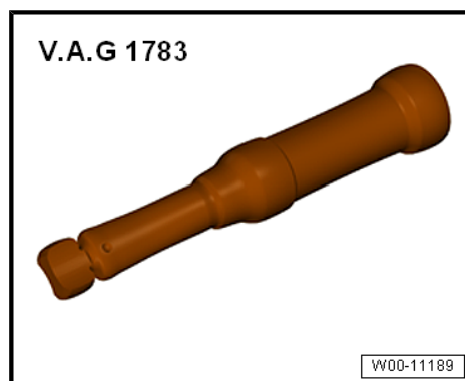
⇒ ["3.6.5 Removing and installing backrest rear panel", page 390](#)

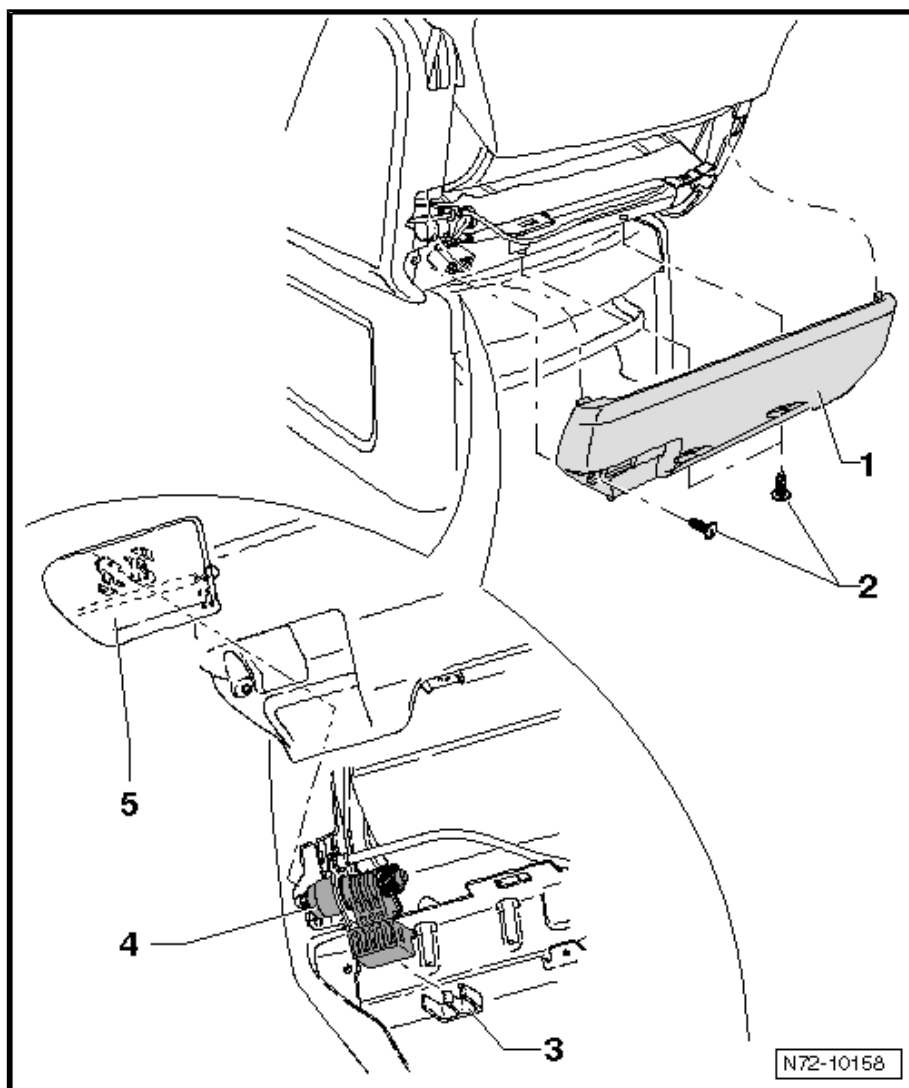
⇒ ["3.6.6 Removing and installing armrest on backrest frame", page 392](#)

### 3.6.1 Removing and installing rear seat frame trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-





#### Removing

- Pull backrest adjuster handle -5- backwards.
- Using a small screwdriver, release clip -3- to remove.
- Pull backrest adjuster handle off lever -4-.
- Unscrew bolts -2- (Qty. 3) and remove trim -1- from seat.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

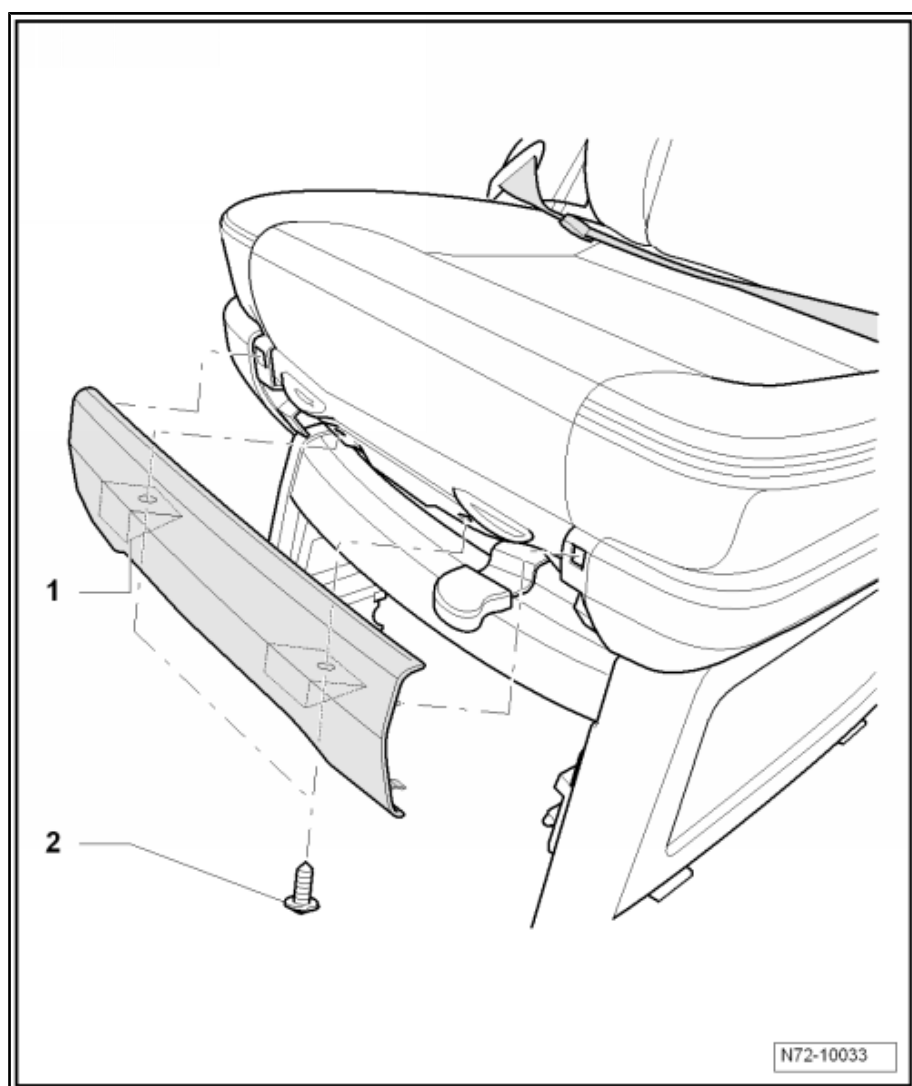
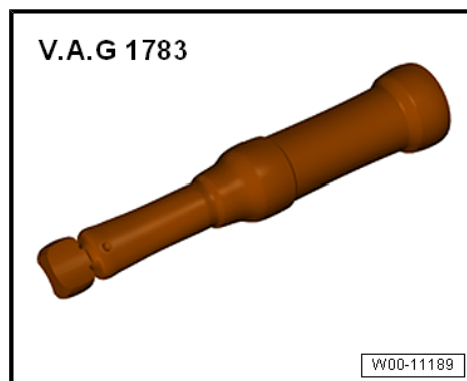
Component	Specified torque
Trim	3 Nm

### 3.6.2 Removing and installing front seat frame trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required



- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



### Removing

- Unscrew screws -2- (Qty. 2) and remove seat frame trim -1- from seat.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



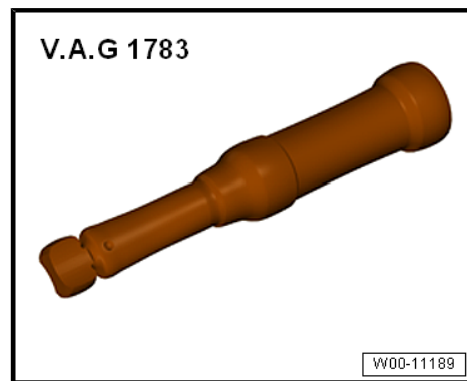
#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Trim	3 Nm

### 3.6.3 Removing and installing seat frame trim on right side

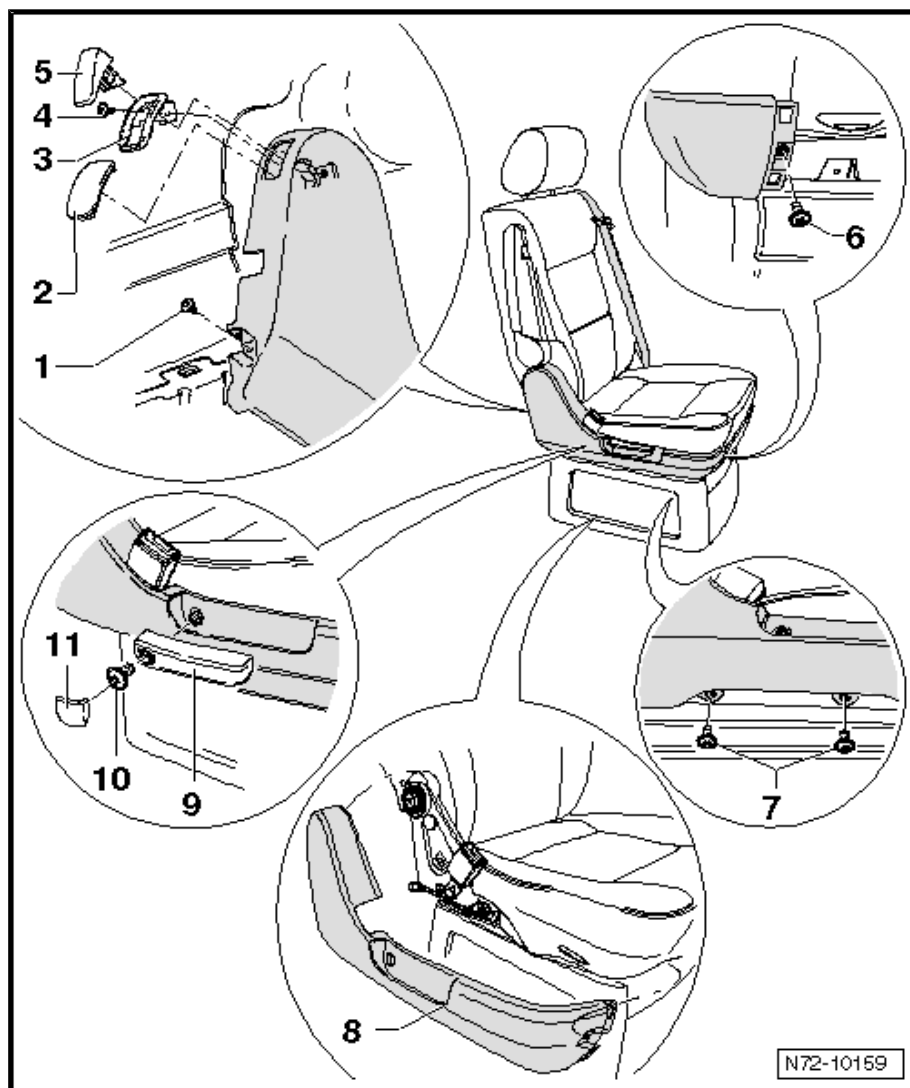
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



#### Note

*Slight deviations must be taken into consideration during removal and installation depending on model variant.*



### Removing

- Remove rear seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row  
⇒ [page 384](#) .
- Remove front seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row  
⇒ [page 385](#) .

### Vehicles with operating mechanism, backrest adjuster, rear

- Using a small screwdriver, lever off operating lever -5-.
- Unscrew bolt -4- and pull out operating bracket -3-.

### Vehicles without operating mechanism, backrest adjuster, rear

- Using a small screwdriver, lever off cover cap -2-.
- Unscrew bolt -4-.

### All vehicles

- Using a small screwdriver, lever off cover cap -11-.
- Remove screw -10- and pull off handle -9-.
- Unscrew bolts -1- and -6-.
- Remove bolts -7- (qty. 2).
- Remove seat frame trim -8- from seat.





## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

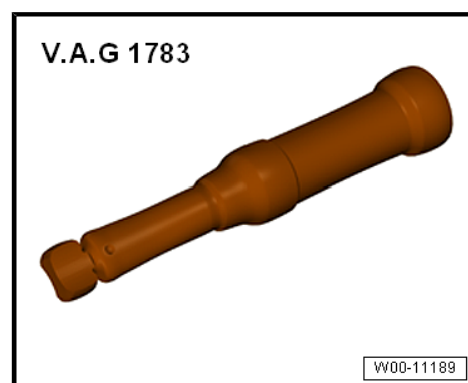
### Specified torques

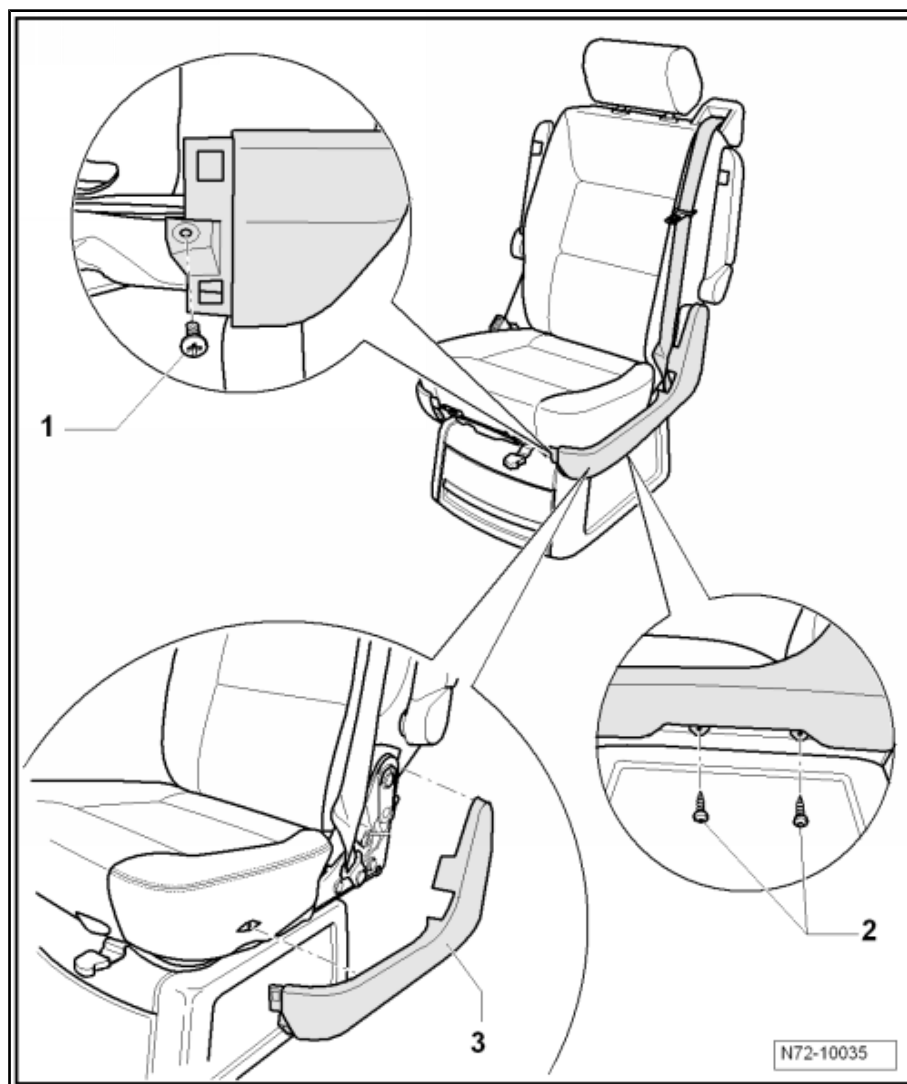
Component	Specified torque
Bolts for trims	3 Nm
Bolt for handle	4.5 Nm

## 3.6.4 Removing and installing seat frame trim on left side

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-





### Removing

- Remove rear seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row  
⇒ [page 384](#) .
- Remove front seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row  
⇒ [page 385](#) .
- Unscrew bolt -1-.
- Unscrew bolt -2-.
- Remove seat frame trim -3- from seat.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Trim	3 Nm

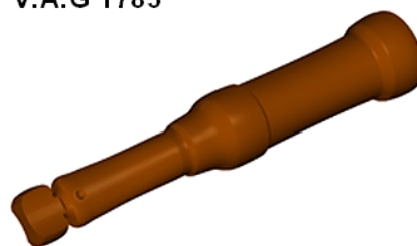
### 3.6.5 Removing and installing backrest rear panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

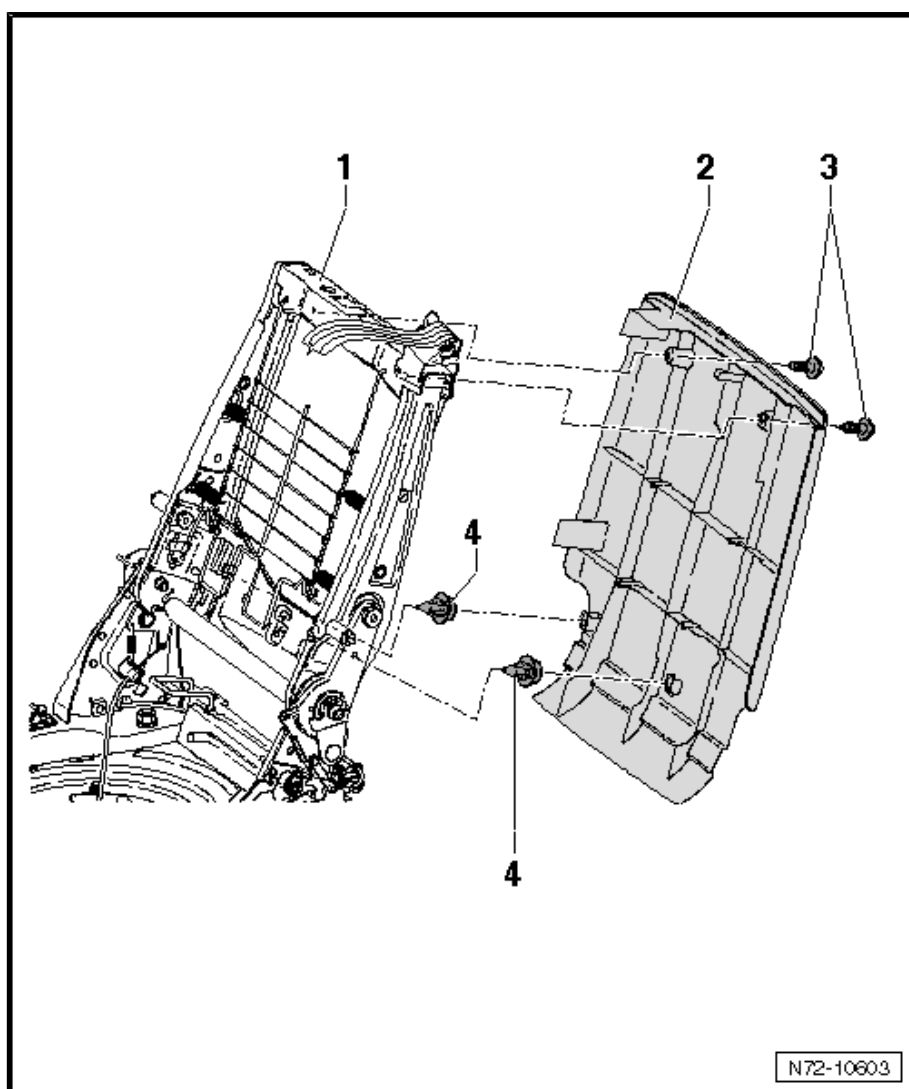


- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

V.A.G 1783



WV00-11189



N72-10603

#### Removing

- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- Pull backrest rear panel -2- out of its mountings in backrest frame -1-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



- Before installing, check retaining clips -4- for damage and renew if necessary.

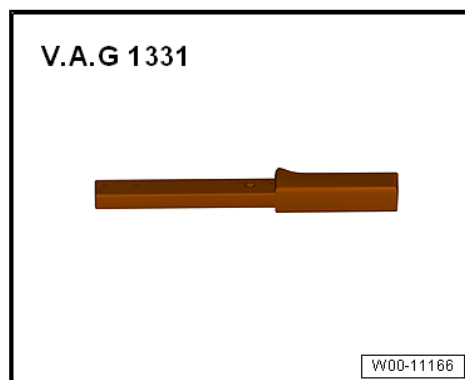
#### Specified torques

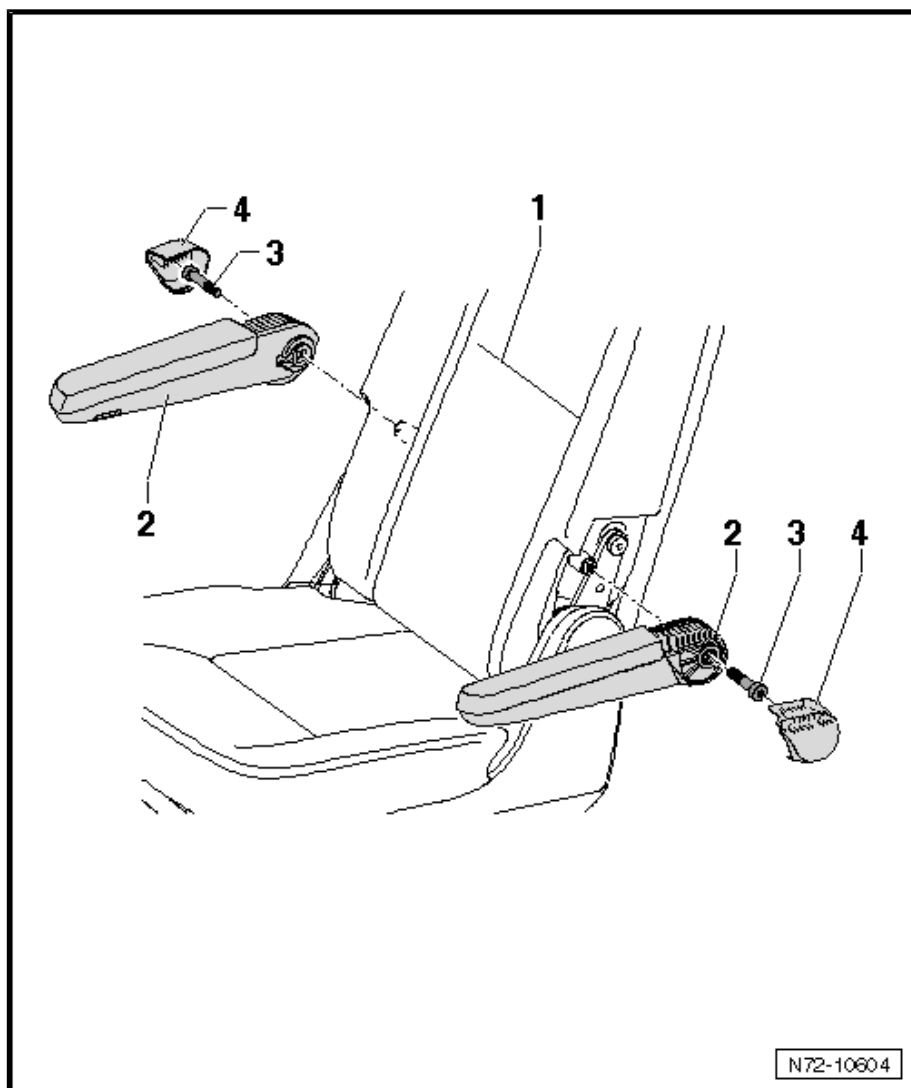
- ♦ ➔ [“3.1.1 Assembly overview - individual seats, Multivan/Business, swivel seat”, page 347](#)

### 3.6.6 Removing and installing armrest on backrest frame

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-





#### Removing

- Lever off cover cap -4- using a small screwdriver.
- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Remove armrest -2- from backrest frame -1-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

- ◆ ⇒ [“3.1.1 Assembly overview - individual seats, Multivan/Business, swivel seat”, page 347](#)



## 4 Rear seats, Business

- ⇒ ["4.1 Assembly overview - pneumatic lumbar support", page 394](#)
- ⇒ ["4.2 Removing and installing bench seat", page 396](#)
- ⇒ ["4.3 Removing and installing seat", page 401](#)
- ⇒ ["4.4 Removing and installing", page 403](#)
- ⇒ ["4.5 Removing and installing head restraint", page 406](#)
- ⇒ ["4.6 Removing and installing trim for head restraint adjuster", page 408](#)
- ⇒ ["4.7 Removing and installing backrest trim", page 411](#)
- ⇒ ["4.8 Removing and installing upper trim of front bench seat", page 412](#)
- ⇒ ["4.9 Removing and installing lower trim of front bench seat", page 414](#)
- ⇒ ["4.10 Removing and installing upper trim of rear bench seat", page 415](#)
- ⇒ ["4.11 Removing and installing lower trim of rear bench seat", page 416](#)
- ⇒ ["4.12 Removing and installing seat adjustment control element", page 418](#)
- ⇒ ["4.13 Removing and installing control element bracket", page 424](#)
- ⇒ ["4.14 Removing and installing seat belt", page 426](#)
- ⇒ ["4.15 Removing and installing belt buckle", page 430](#)
- ⇒ ["4.16 Removing and installing centre console cover", page 431](#)

### 4.1 Assembly overview - pneumatic lumbar support



### 1 - Valve block

- ☐ Valve block for lumbar support adjustment for left seat, row 3 - N406-
- ☐ Valve block for lumbar support adjustment for right seat, row 3 - N407-
- ☐ Distributes pressure
- ☐ To remove, first remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ [page 518](#) .

### 2 - Connector

- ☐ Connector, 6-pin left seat
- ☐ Connector, 6-pin right seat

### 3 - Pressure hose

- ☐ Leading from valve block to lumbar support.

### 4 - Pressure hose

- ☐ Leading from valve block to lumbar support.

### 5 - Air cushion

- ☐ Air cushion above lumbar support.

### 6 - Air cushion

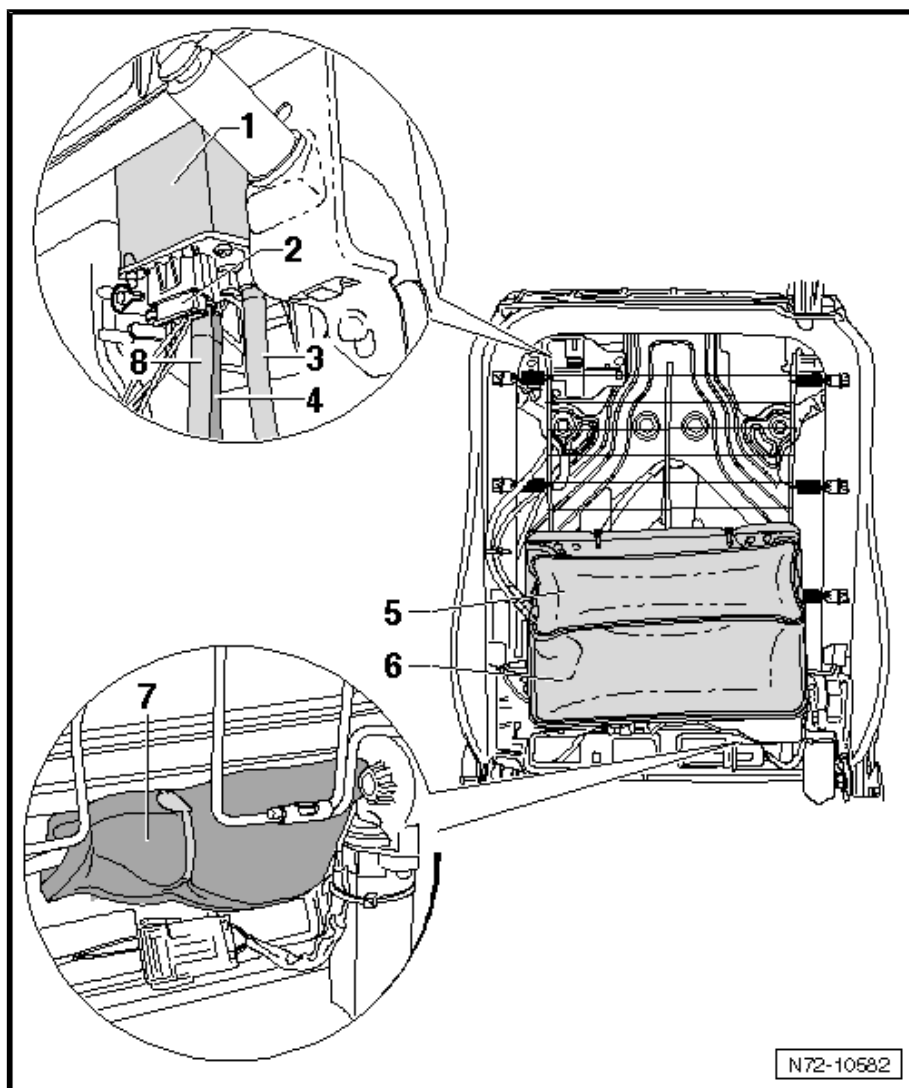
- ☐ Air cushion below lumbar support.

### 7 - Pump

- ☐ Lumbar support adjustment pump for left seat, row 3 - V369-
- ☐ Lumbar support adjustment pump for right seat, row 3 - V362-
- ☐ To remove, first remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ [page 518](#) .

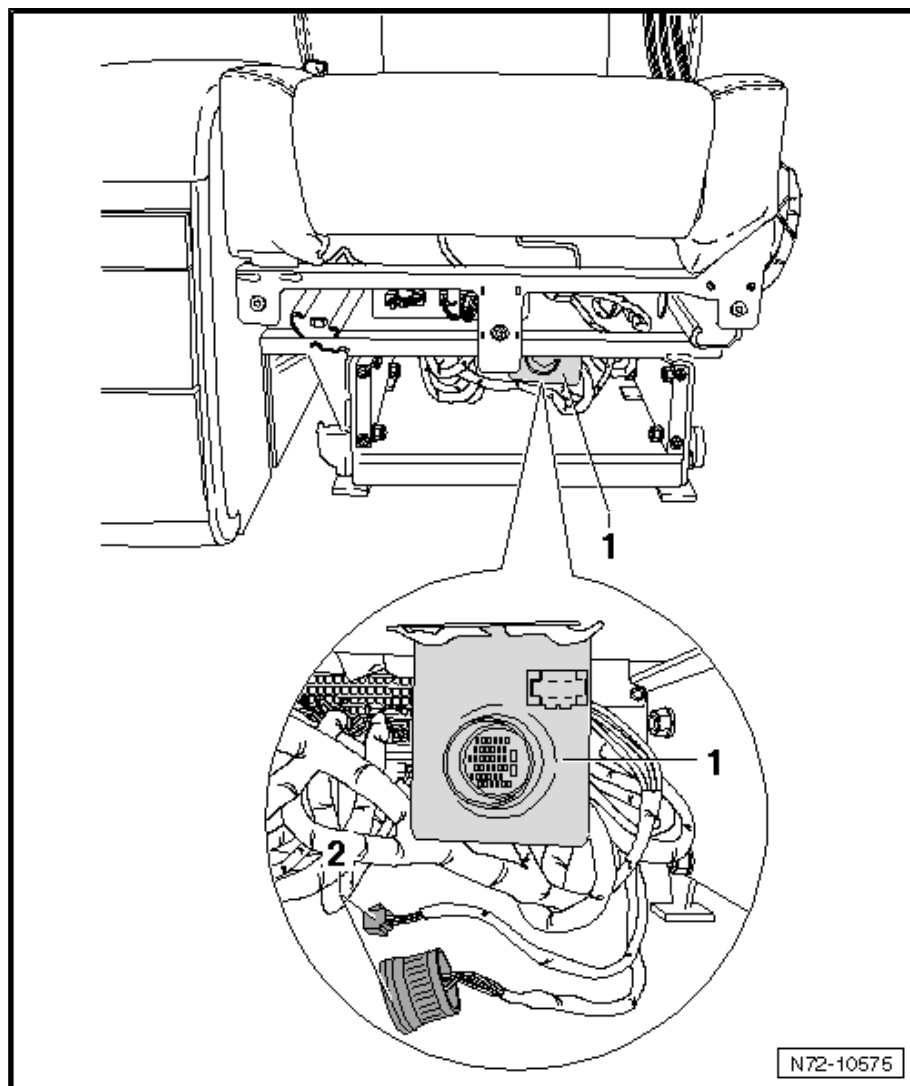
### 8 - Pressure hose

- ☐ Leading from pump to valve block.





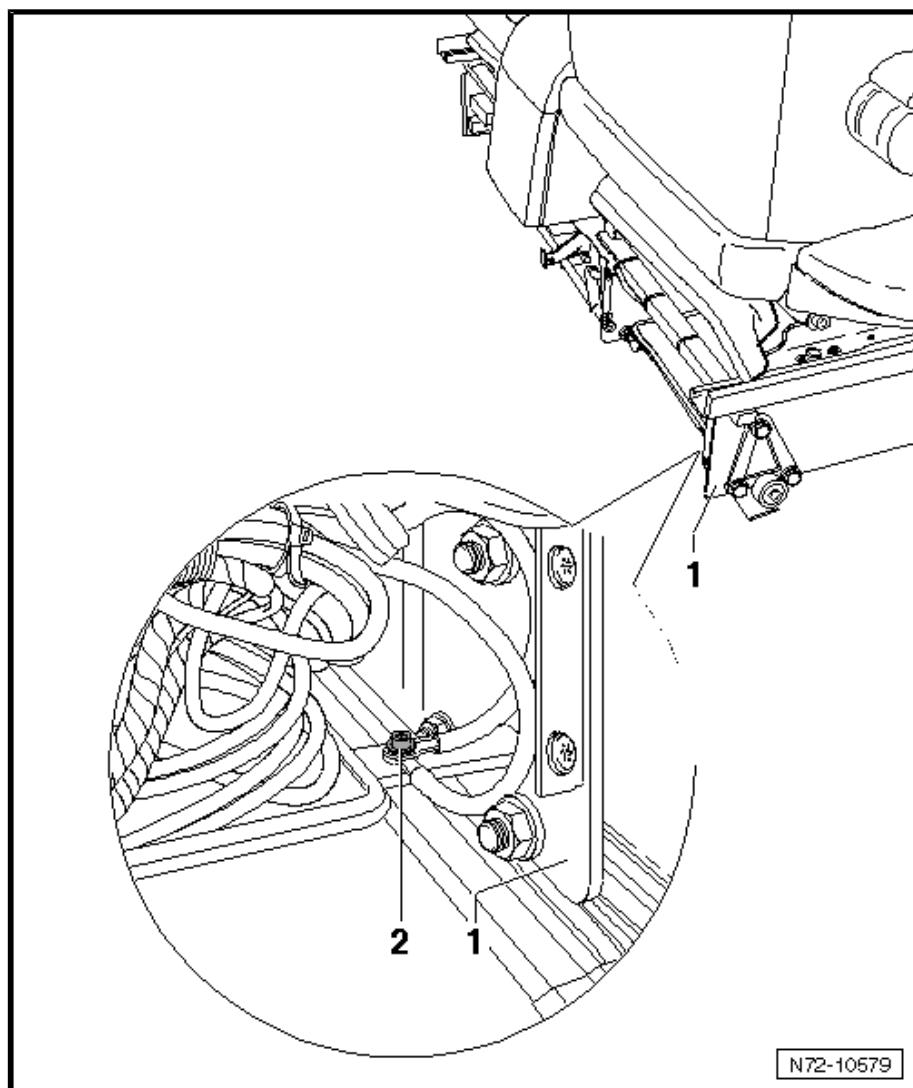
## 4.2 Removing and installing bench seat



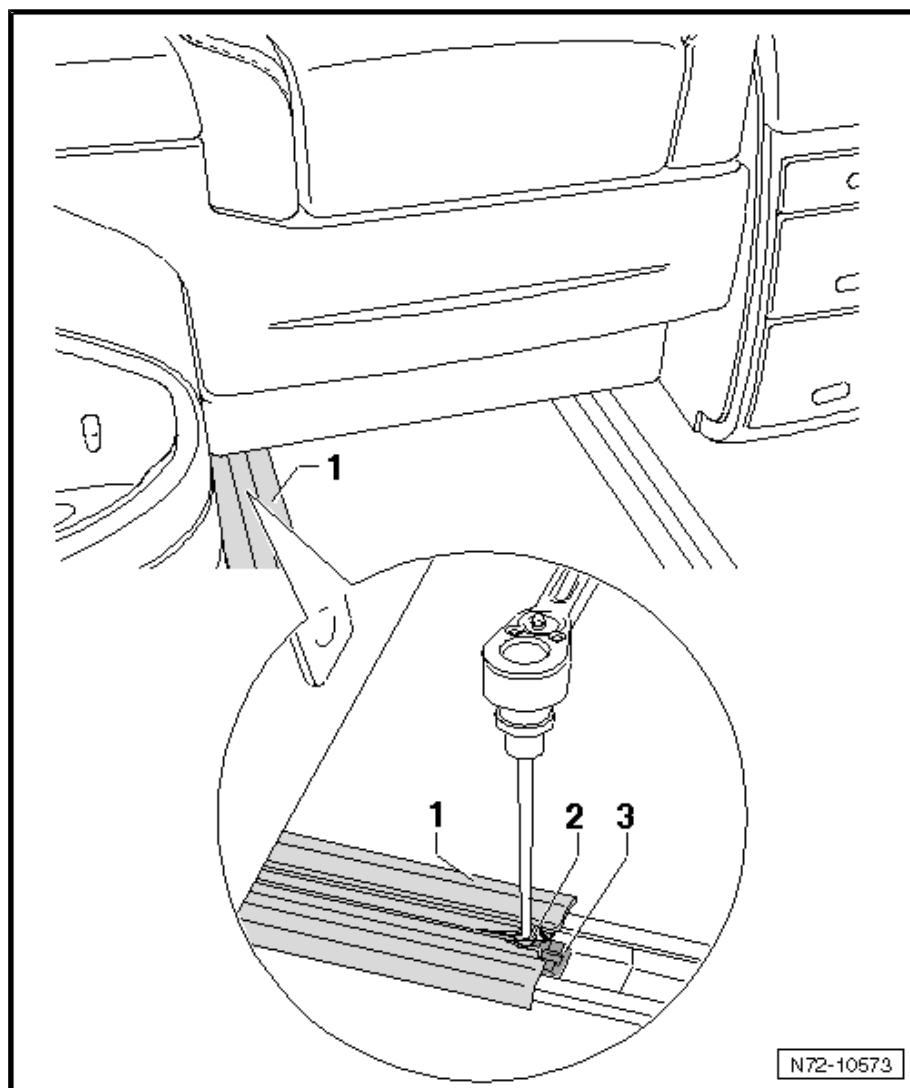
### Removing

- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Disconnecting and reconnecting battery .
- Remove rotating seat with seat frame on both sides  
⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove floor covering (if present) from vehicle.
- Remove trim on upper left and upper right sides of front bench seat ⇒ [page 412](#) .
- Remove trim on lower left and lower right sides of front bench seat ⇒ [page 414](#) .
- Remove lower trim of rear bench seat ⇒ [page 416](#) .
- Separate front connectors -2- at coupling point -1-.





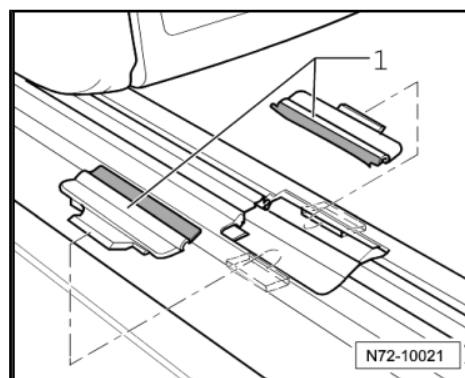
- Unscrew bolt -2- on seat frame -1- and separate earth connection.

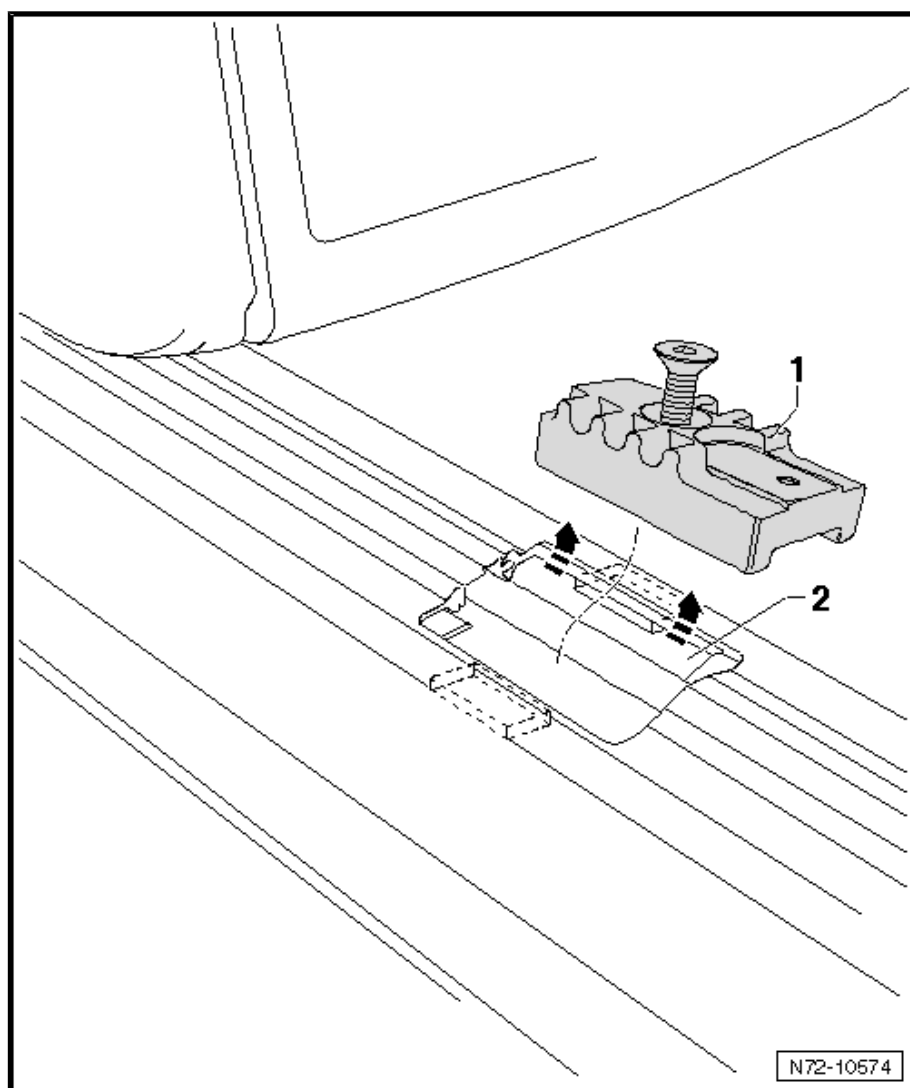


**Note**

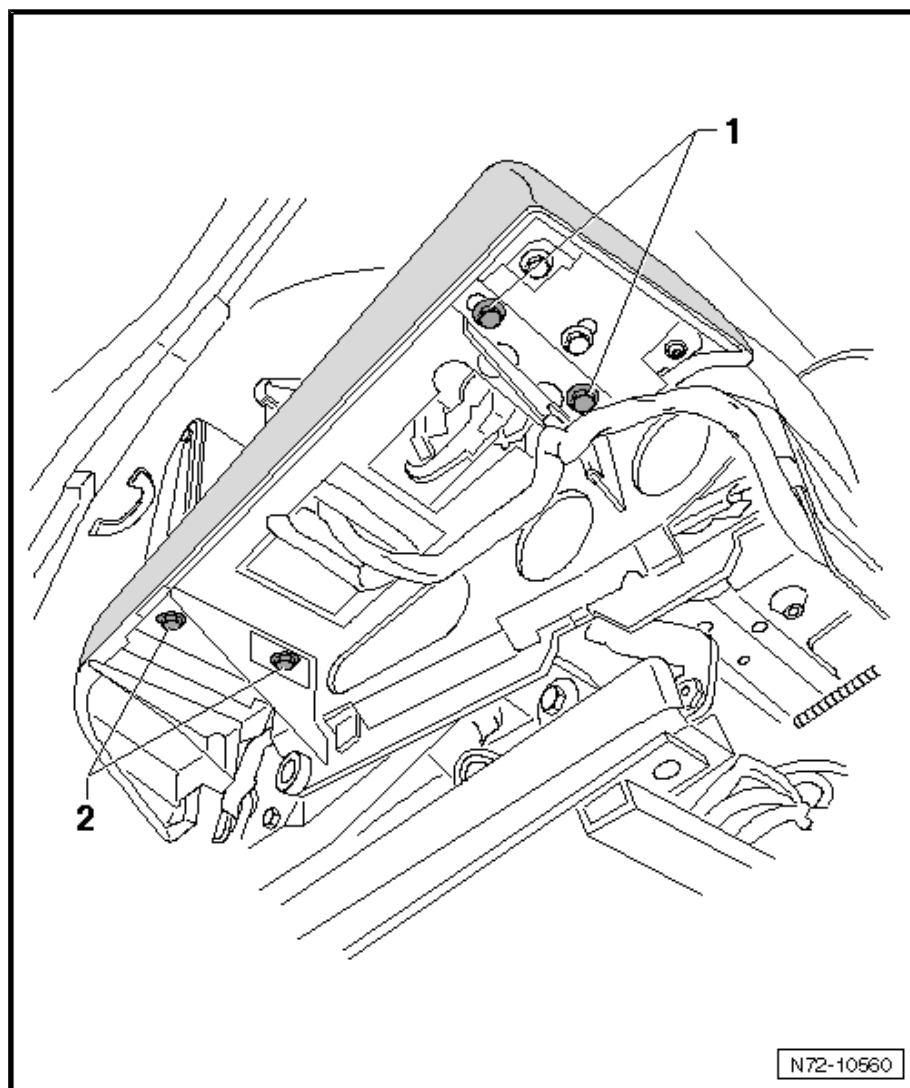
*Mark installation dimensions of end stops -3-.*

- Unscrew bolts -2- of end stops -3- in left and right seat rails -1-.
- Unclip end caps -1- for seat assembly opening upwards out of seat rails.





- Move left and right end stops -1- towards seat assembly opening -2- and remove upwards in -direction of arrow-.



- Push bench seat forwards until seat adjustment control element is accessible.
- Disconnect cable ties from wiring harness under control element on bench seat.
- Unscrew bolts -1- and -2-
- Slightly lift up seat adjustment control element and push to rear.
- Push bench seat forwards until it can be removed from seat assembly openings.



#### Note

- ◆ *At least four mechanics are required to remove the bench seat.*
- ◆ *In order to prevent damage to seat rails, floor covering and trims of interior equipment, these should be masked off.*

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

*When installing, ensure that all cable ties and insulation materials that were loosened or cut during removal are fitted in the same position.*

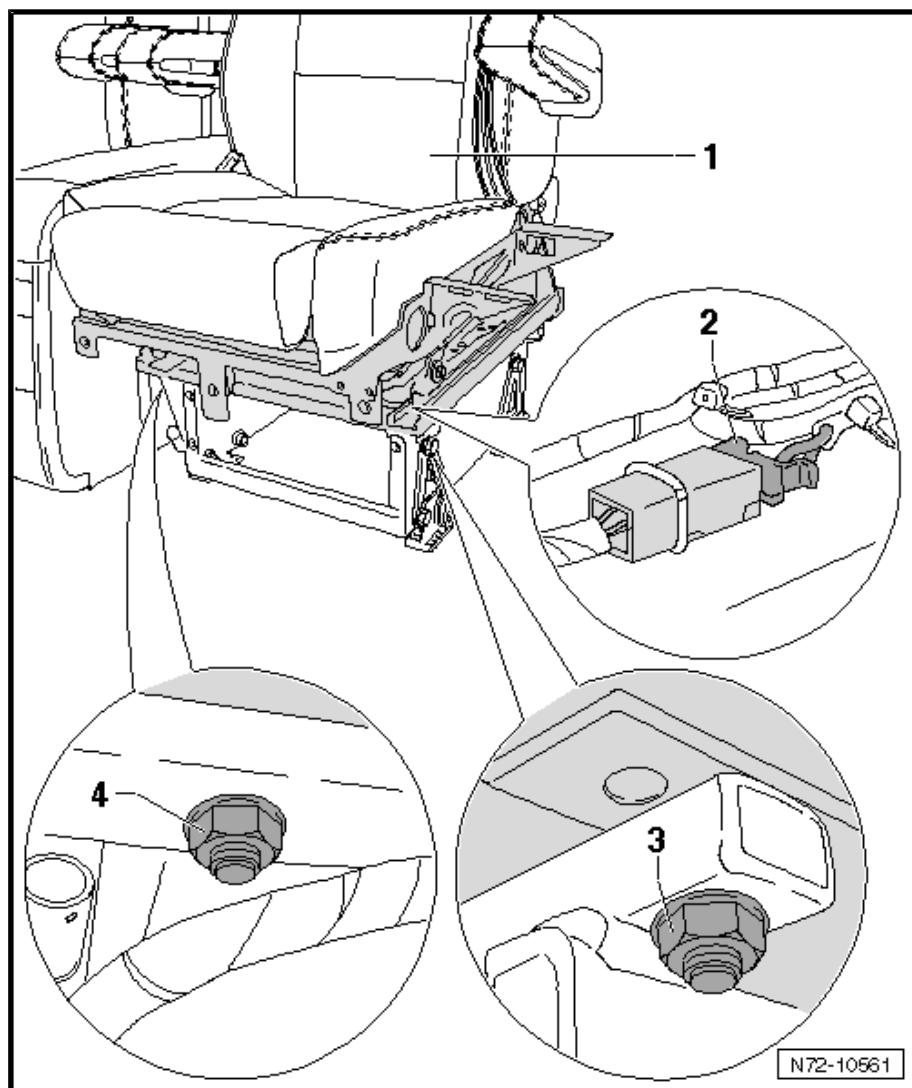
### 4.3 Removing and installing seat

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

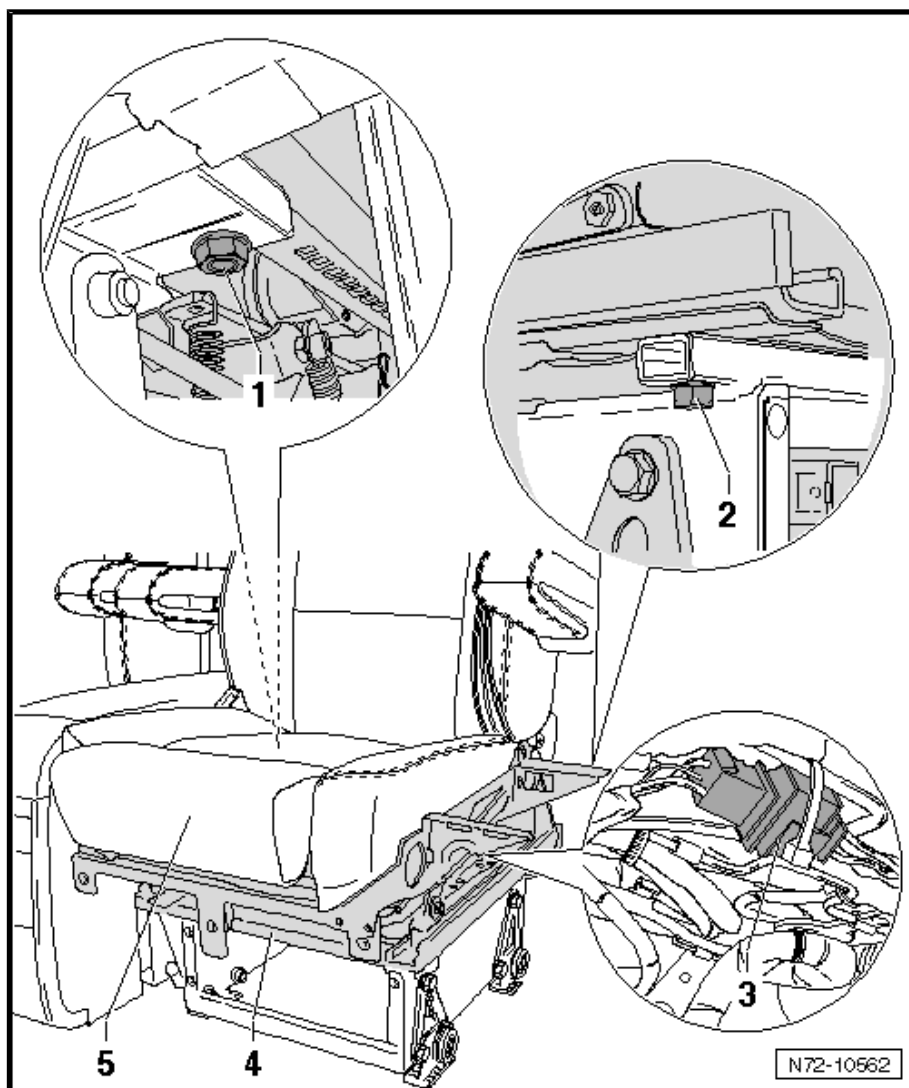
- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1332-



#### Removing



- Remove bench seat ➤ [page 396](#) .
- Unscrew hexagon nuts -3- and -4- from seat frame -1-.
- Separate connector -2- under seat -1-.



- Unscrew hexagon nuts -1- and -2- from seat frame -5-.
- Separate connector -3- under seat -5-.
- Remove seat -5- from bench seat -4-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew as necessary.

#### Specified torques

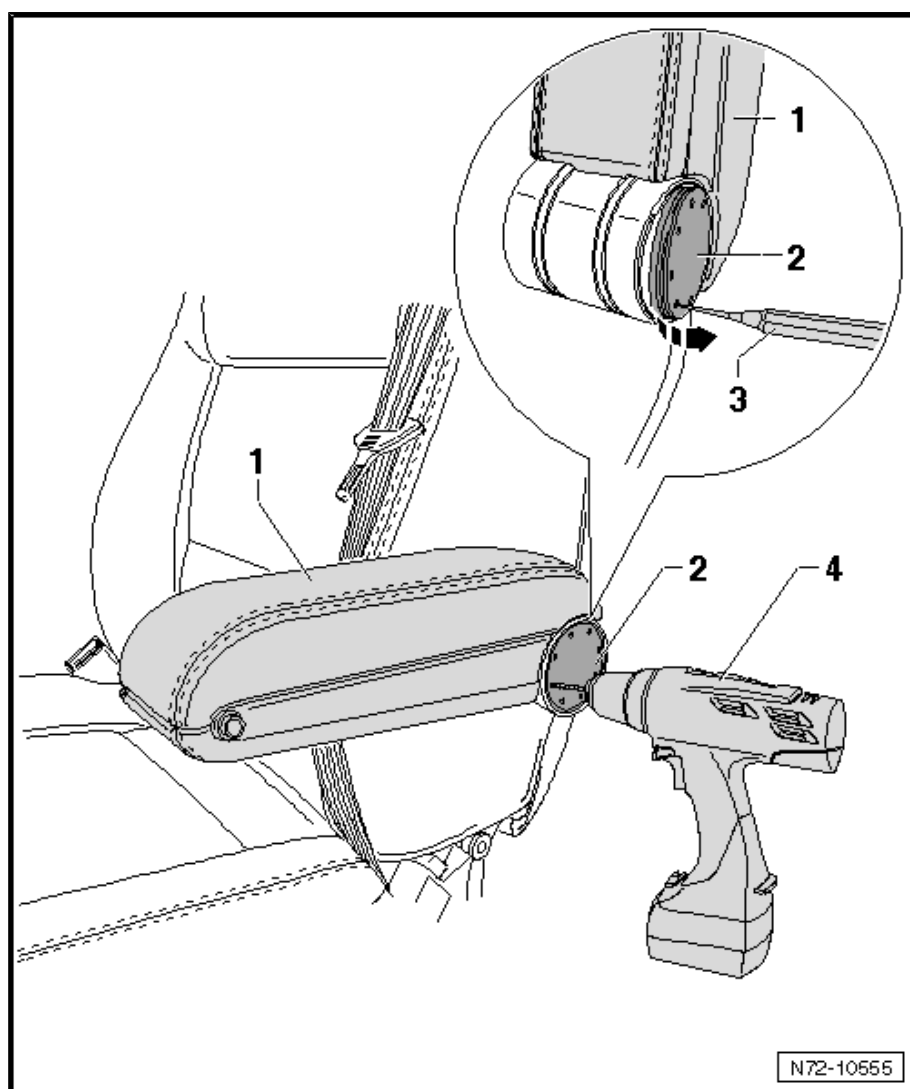
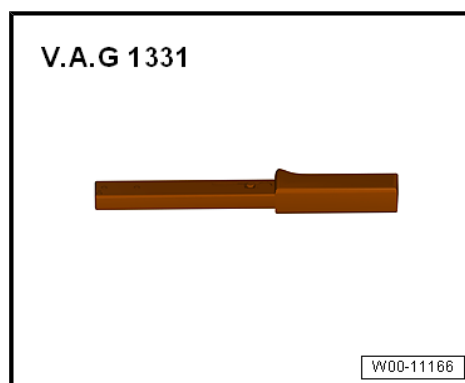
Component	Specified torque
Hexagon nuts for seat frame	55 Nm

## 4.4 Removing and installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-





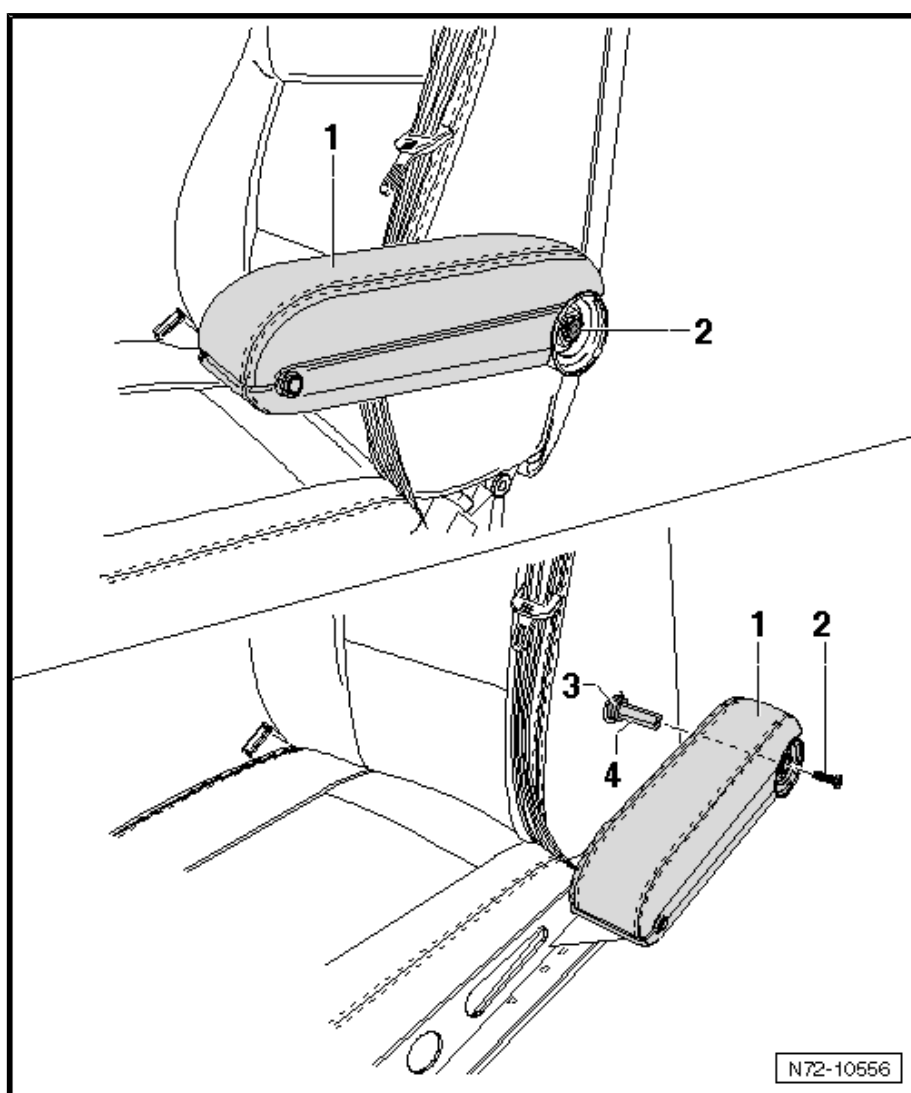


## Removing

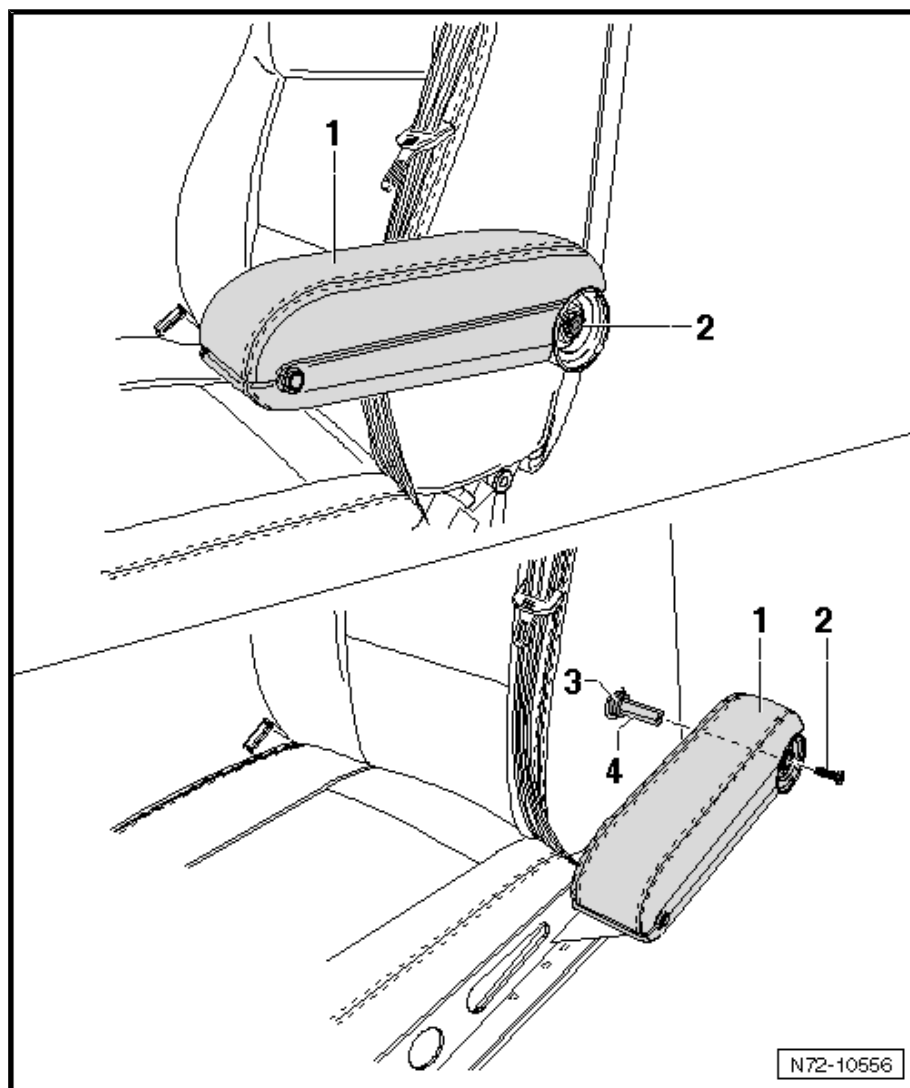


### Note

- ◆ *If the outer armrests have to be removed, the bench seat must first be removed ⇒ [page 396](#).*
- ◆ *If the inner armrests have to be removed, it is sufficient to move both backrests in a position which allows for removal of the armrests.*
- ◆ *Cap -2- cannot be removed without being damaged.*
- Drill a hole right into the “perforation” of cap -2- using a 2 mm drill -4-.
- Using drift -3- lever off cap -2- in -direction of arrow- and remove it from armrest -1-.



- Unscrew bolt -2-.
- Remove armrest -1- from seat frame pin -4-.
- Remove spacer ring -3- from seat frame pin -4-.



### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installation of armrest -1- spacer ring -3- must be fitted to seat frame pin -4-.
- Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew as necessary.

### Specified torques

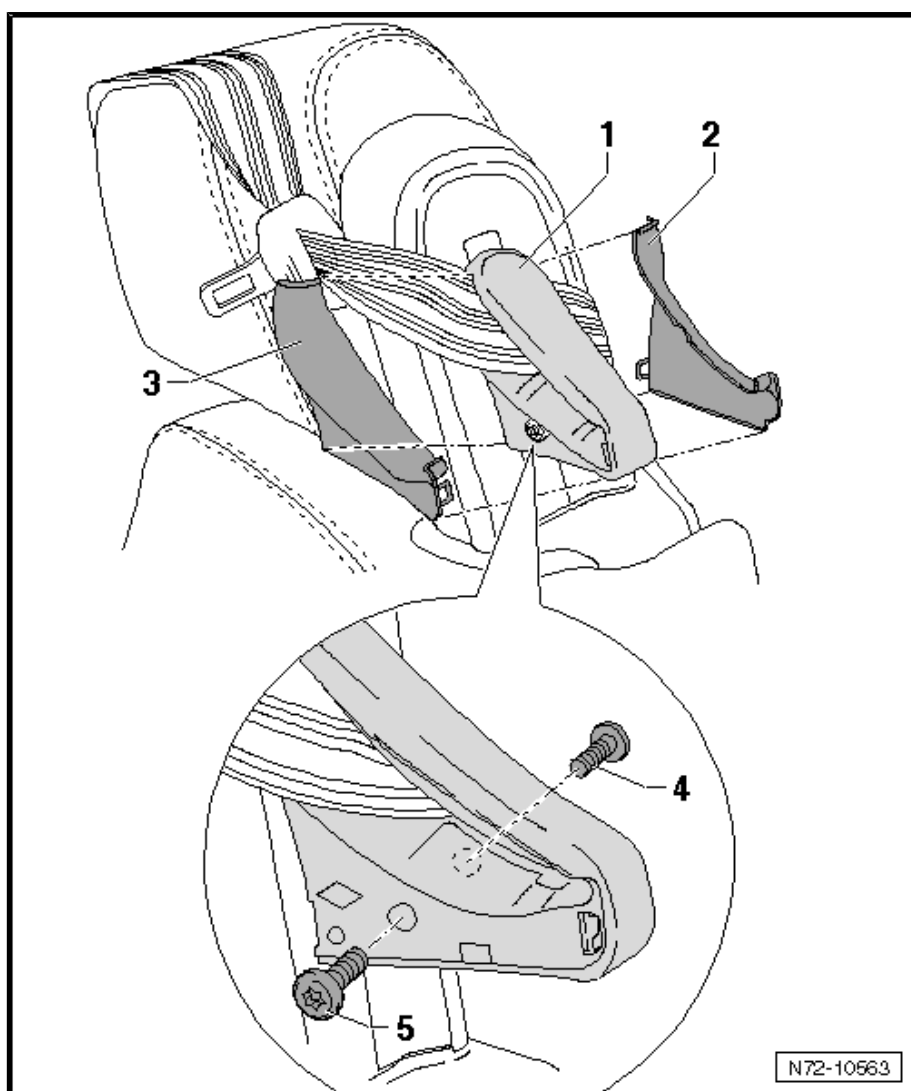
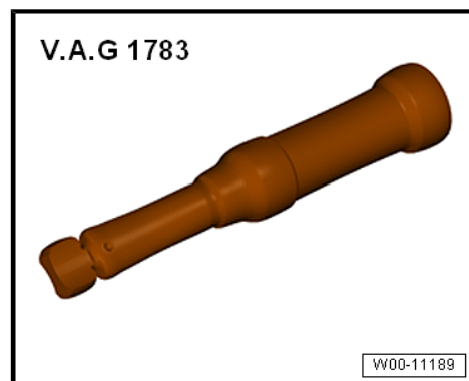
Component	Specified torque
Armrest	20 Nm

## 4.5 Removing and installing head restraint

Special tools and workshop equipment required



- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



#### Removing

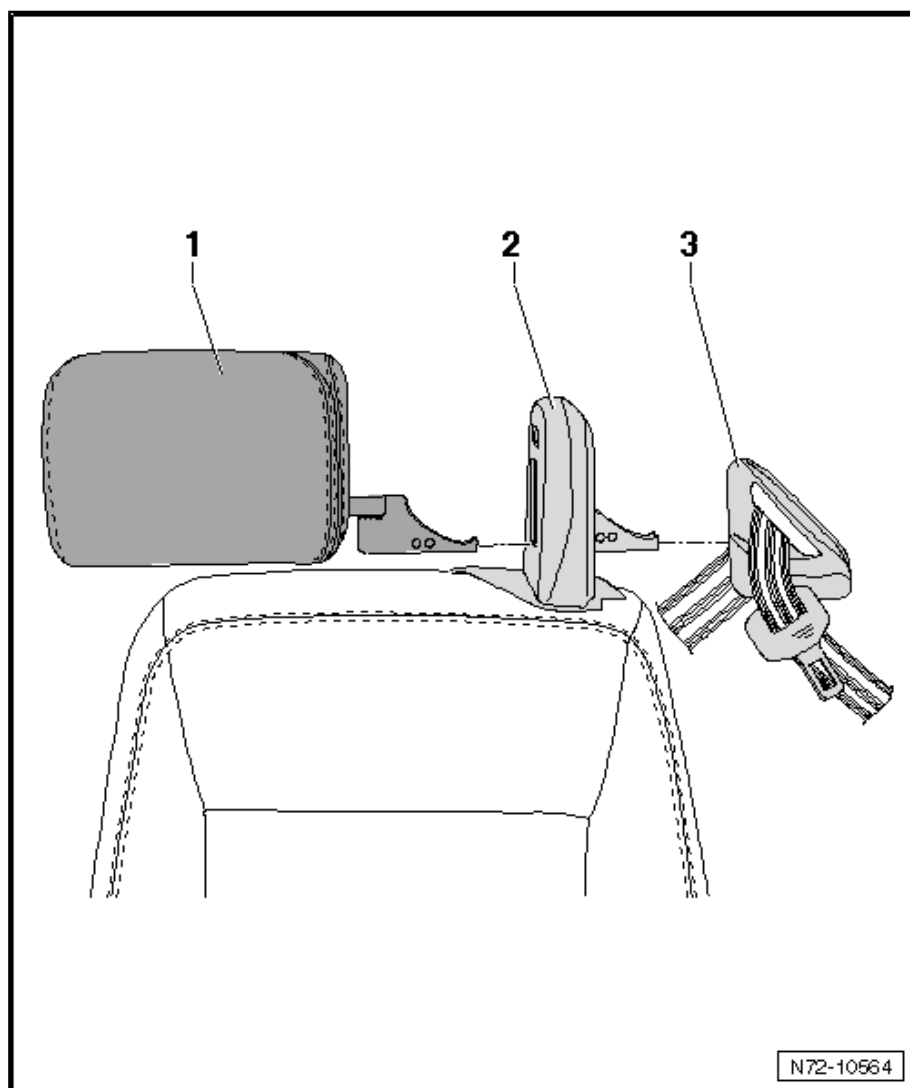


#### Note

- ◆ Caps -2- and -3- cannot be removed without being damaged.
- ◆ Bolts -4- and -5- are microencapsulated and must be renewed each time they are loosened.



- Unclip catches of caps -2- and -3- from belt guide -1- and remove caps.
- Unscrew bolts -4- and -5- of belt guide -1-.



- Pull belt guide -3- off head restraint adjuster -2-.
- Pull head restraint -1- out of head restraint adjuster -2-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew as necessary.

#### Specified torques

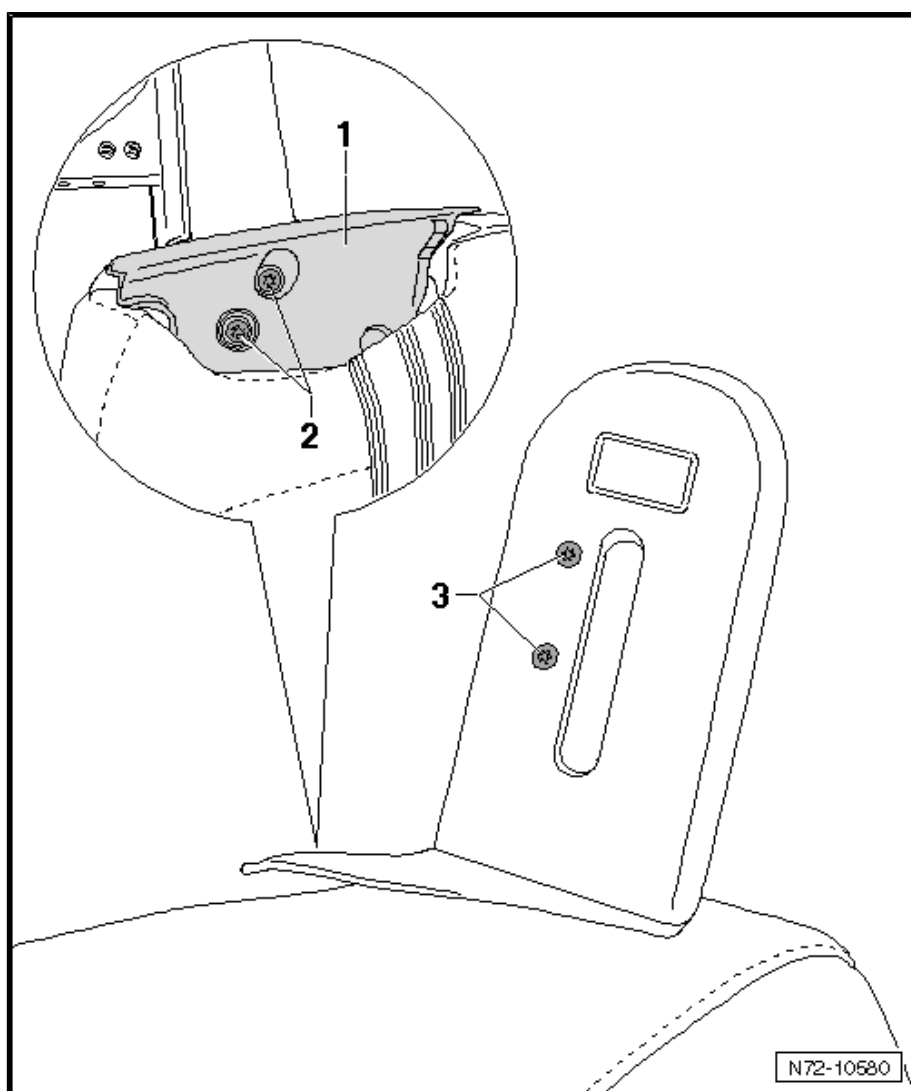
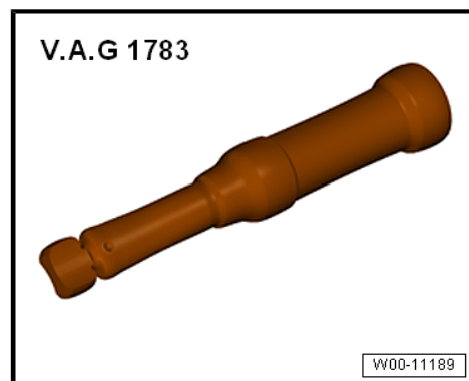
Component	Specified torque
Bolt for belt guide	8.0 Nm

## 4.6 Removing and installing trim for head restraint adjuster

Special tools and workshop equipment required

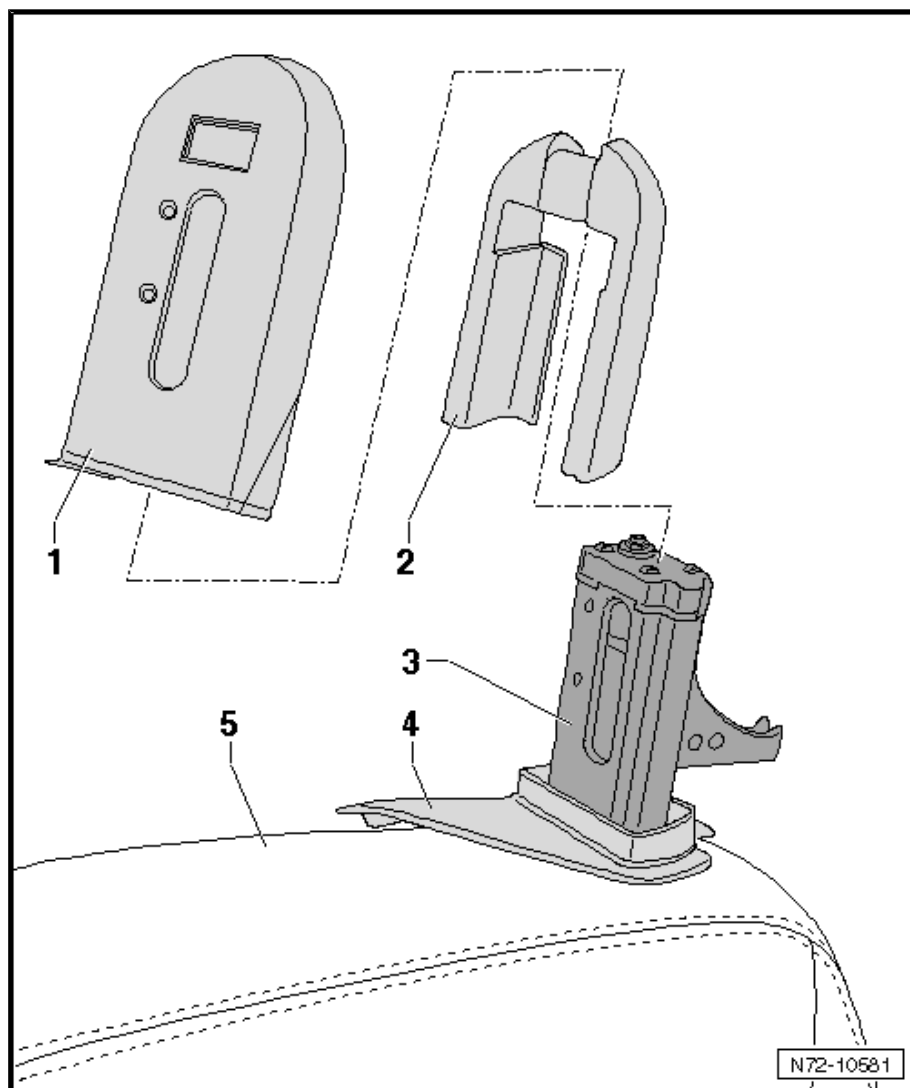


- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



#### Removing

- Remove backrest trim ⇒ [page 411](#) .
- Remove head restraint ⇒ [page 406](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Detach cover -1-.
- Unscrew bolts -3-.



- Remove trim -1- from head restraint adjuster -3-.
- Remove moulded foam element -2- from head restraint adjuster -3-.
- Remove cover -4- from seat -5-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

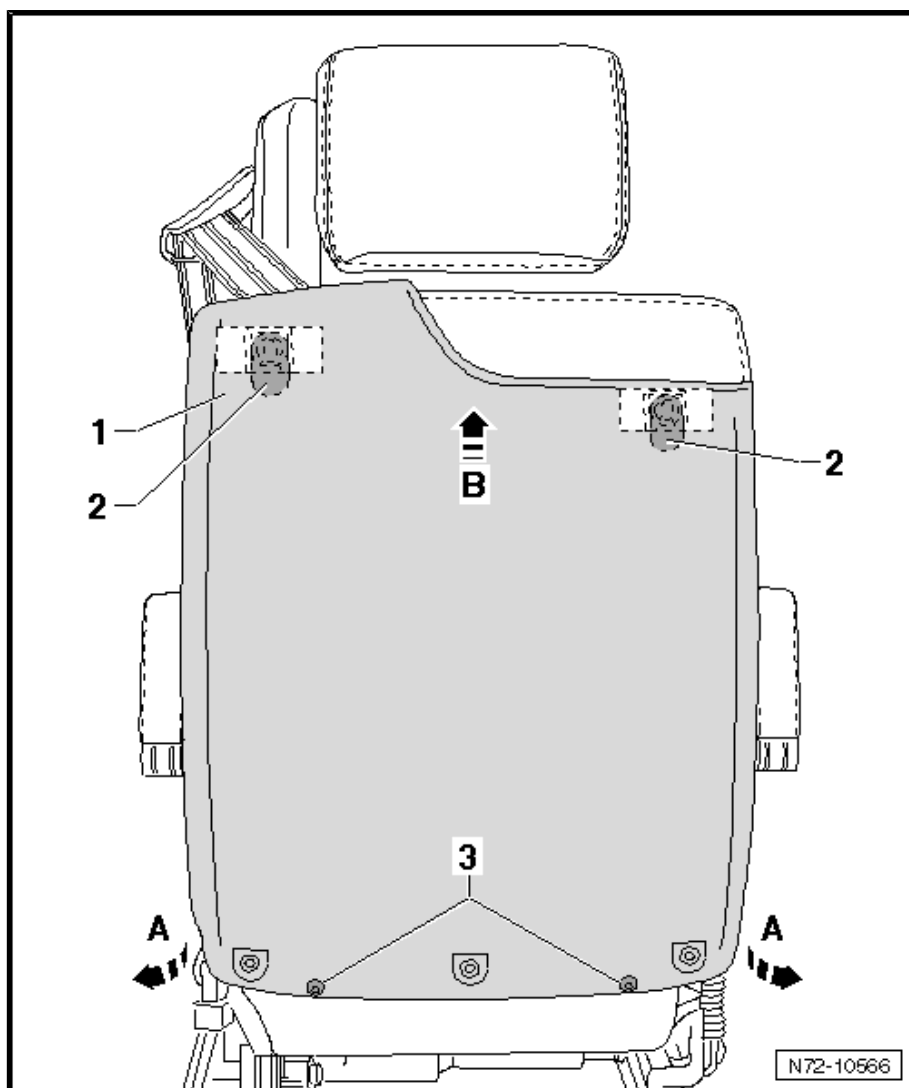
- Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew as necessary.

### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolt for belt guide	2.0 Nm

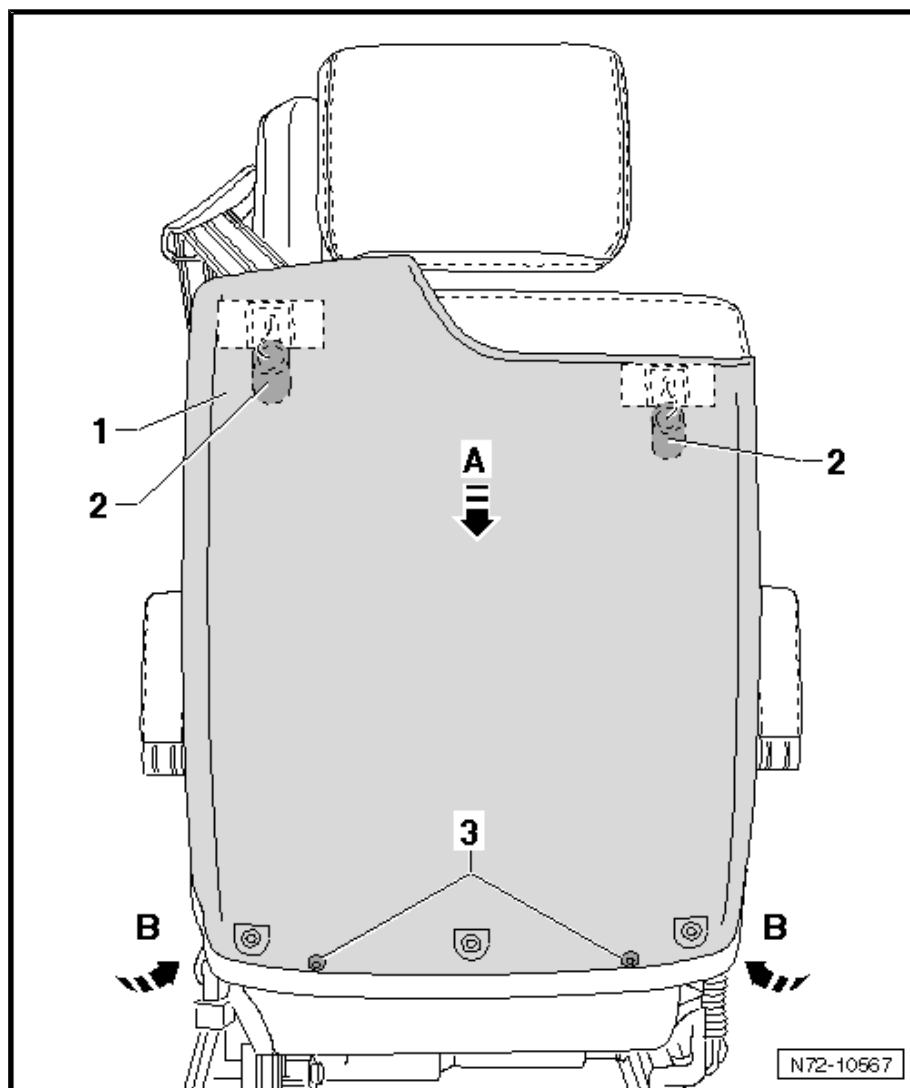


## 4.7 Removing and installing backrest trim



### Removing

- Remove upper trim of rear bench seat ⇒ [page 415](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- Slightly pull off backrest trim -1- in -direction of arrow A-.
- Pull backrest trim -1- upwards in -direction of arrow B- off studs -2-.
- Remove backrest trim -1- from seat.



### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew as necessary.
- Guide backrest trim -1- in -direction of arrow A- onto studs -2-.
- Fit backrest trim -1- to seat in -direction of arrow B-.
- Fit bolts -3- in place and tighten them.

### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolt for trim	3.5 Nm

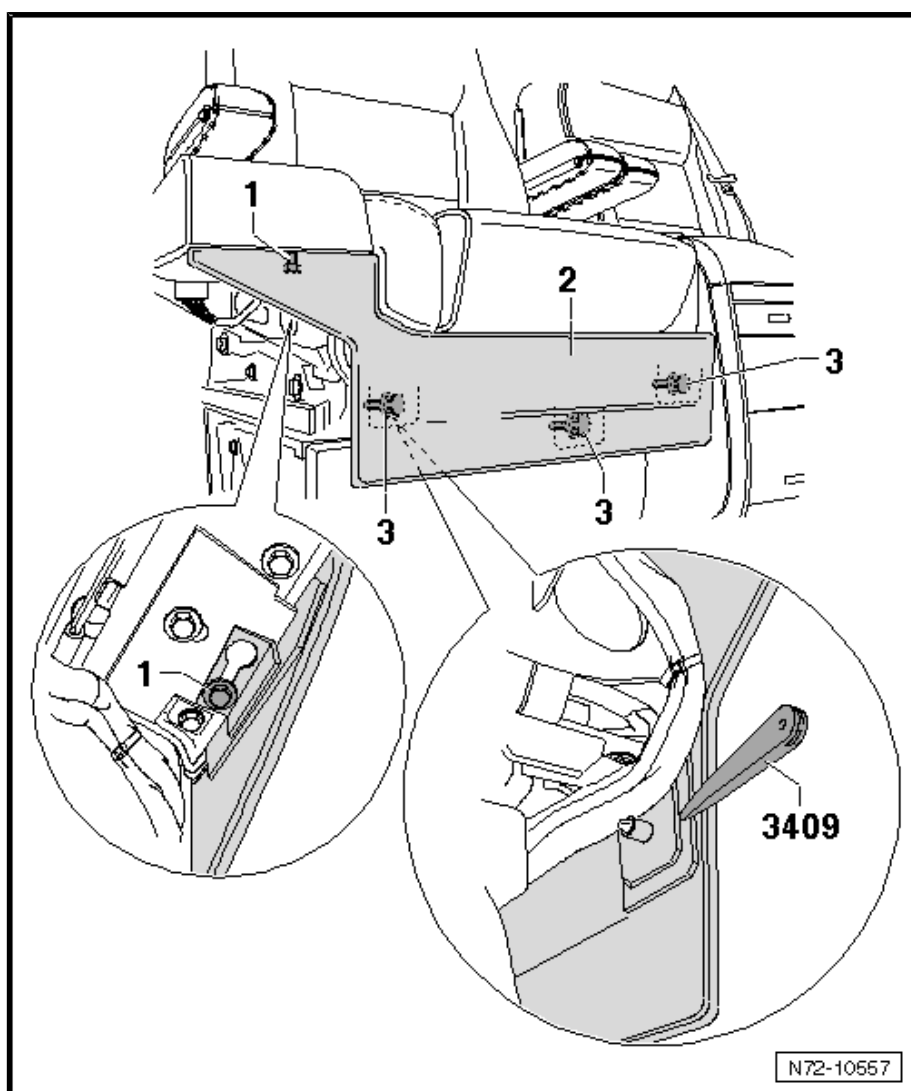
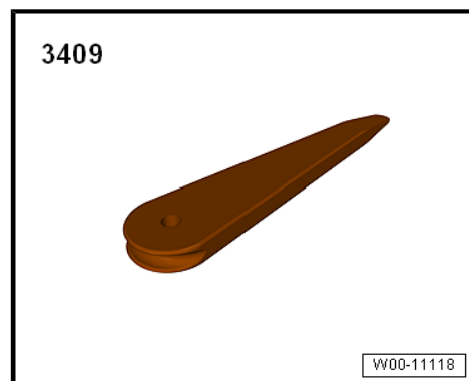
## 4.8 Removing and installing upper trim of front bench seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required





◆ Removal wedge - 3409-



**Removing**

- Unscrew bolt -1-.
- Release clips -3- from catches using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Remove upper trim -2- from front bench seat.

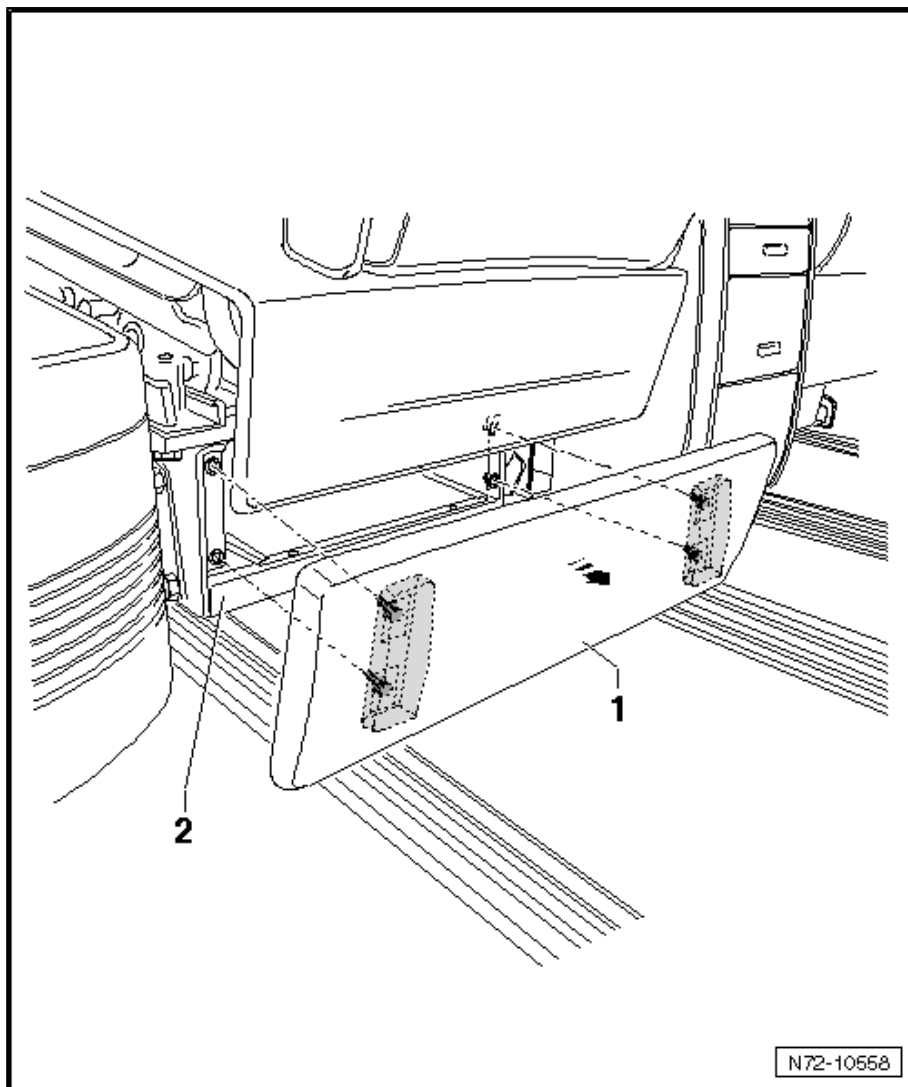
**Installing**

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



- Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew as necessary.

#### 4.9 Removing and installing lower trim of front bench seat



##### Removing

- Release clips from catches using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Remove lower cover -1- in direction of -arrow- from front bench seat -2-.

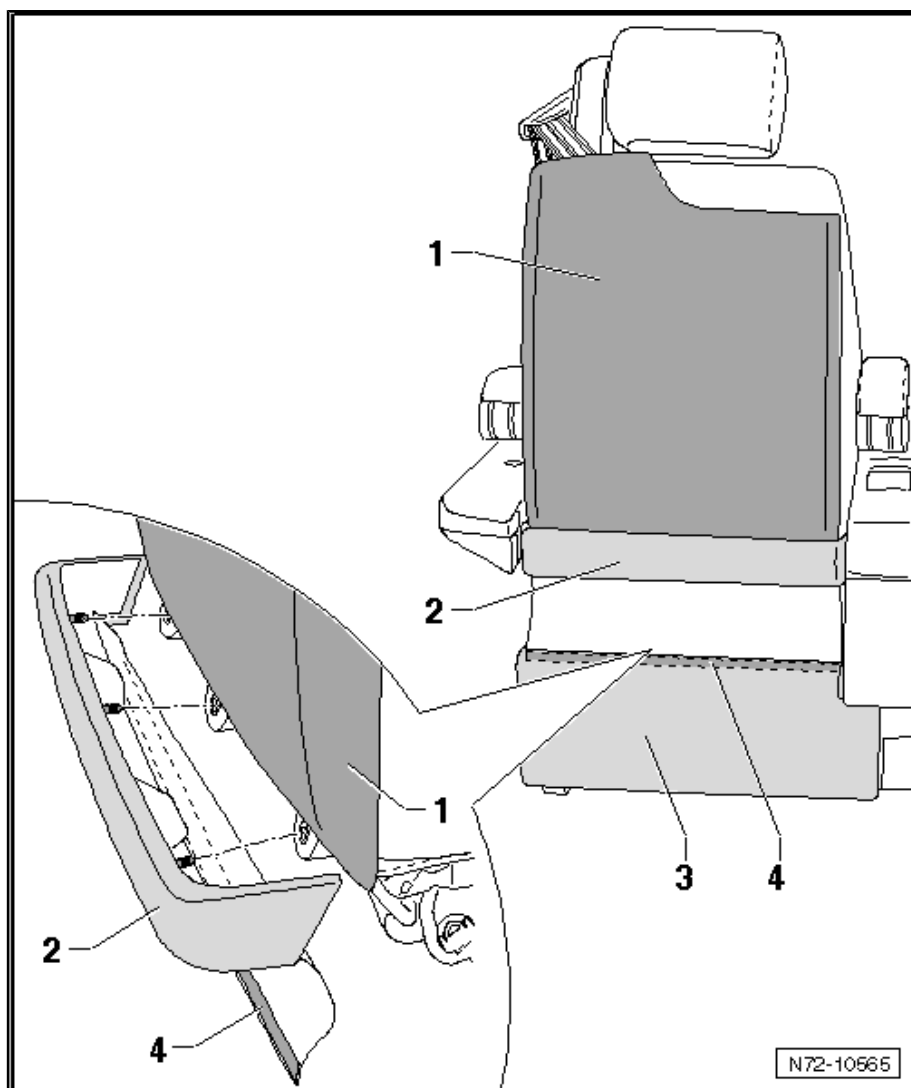
##### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew as necessary.



## 4.10 Removing and installing upper trim of rear bench seat



### Removing

- Remove Velcro tape -4- from lower trim of rear bench seat -3-.
- Release clips from catches on seat -1- using removal wedge - 3409- .
- Remove upper trim of rear bench seat -2- from seat -1-.

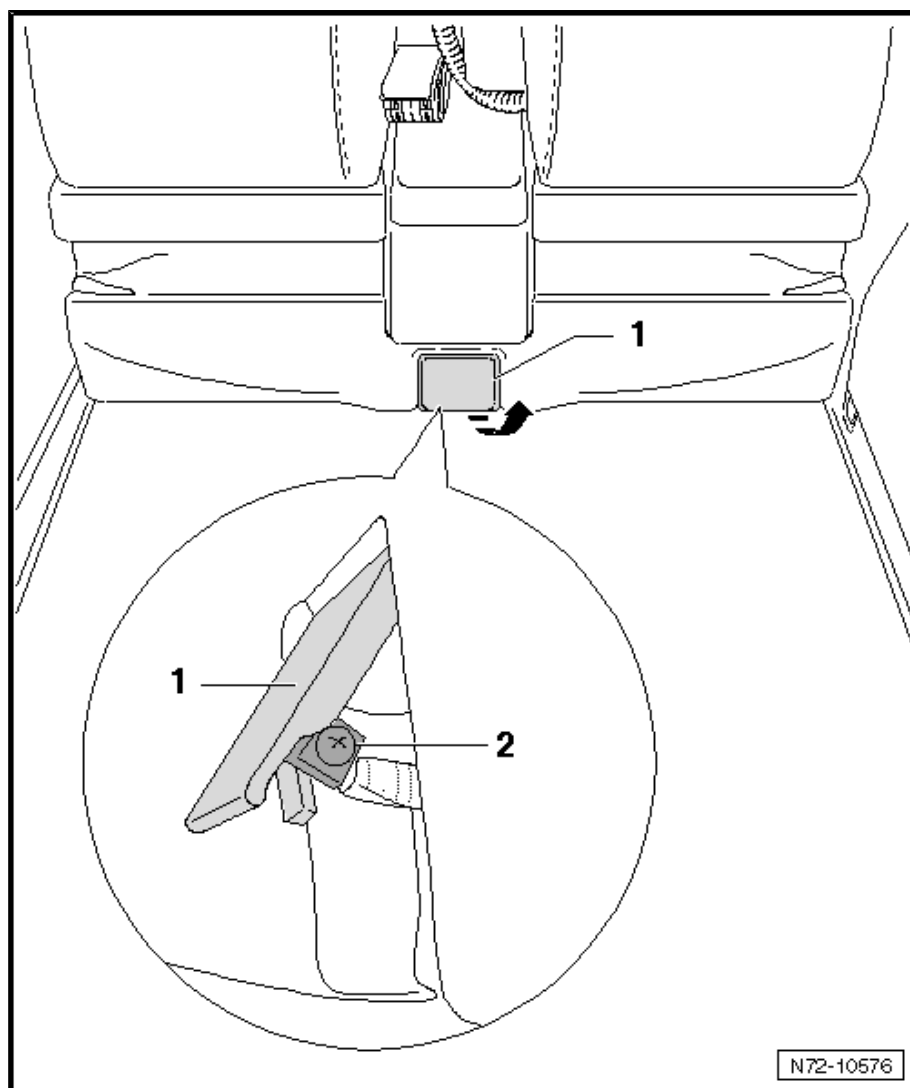
### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew as necessary.

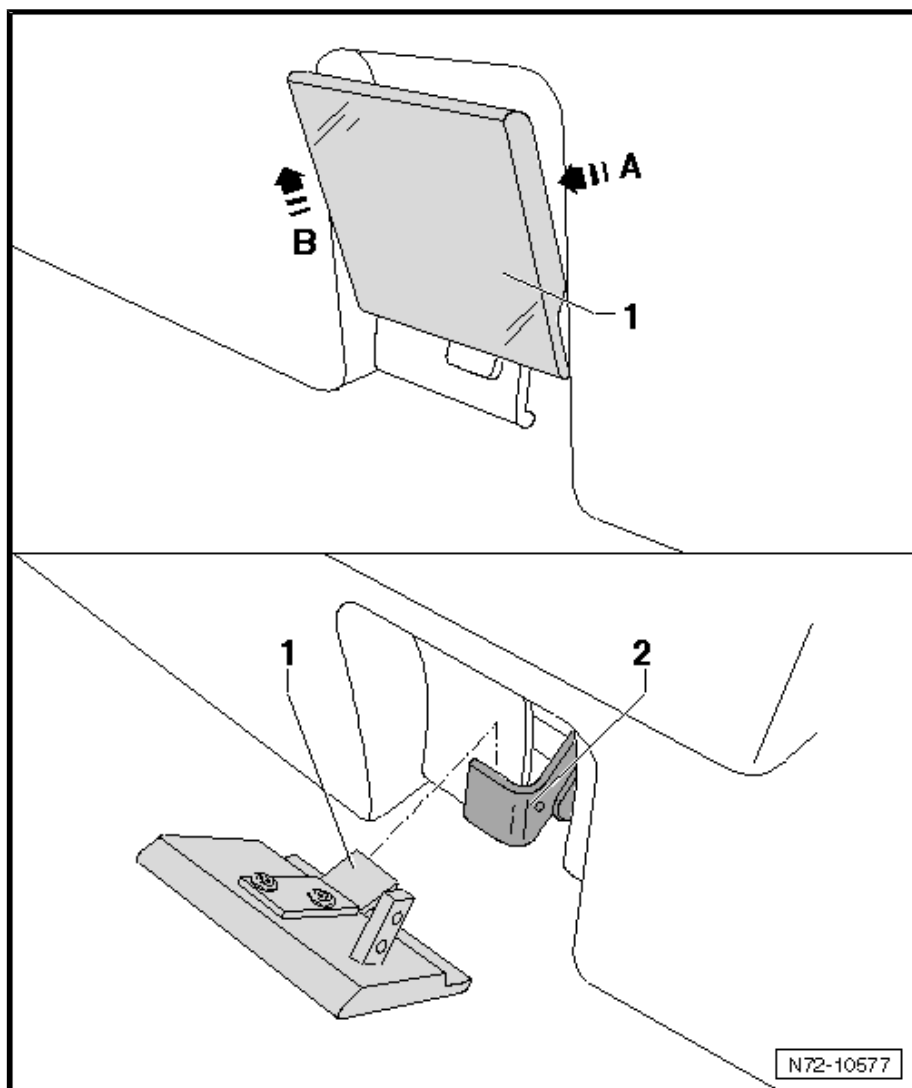


## 4.11 Removing and installing lower trim of rear bench seat

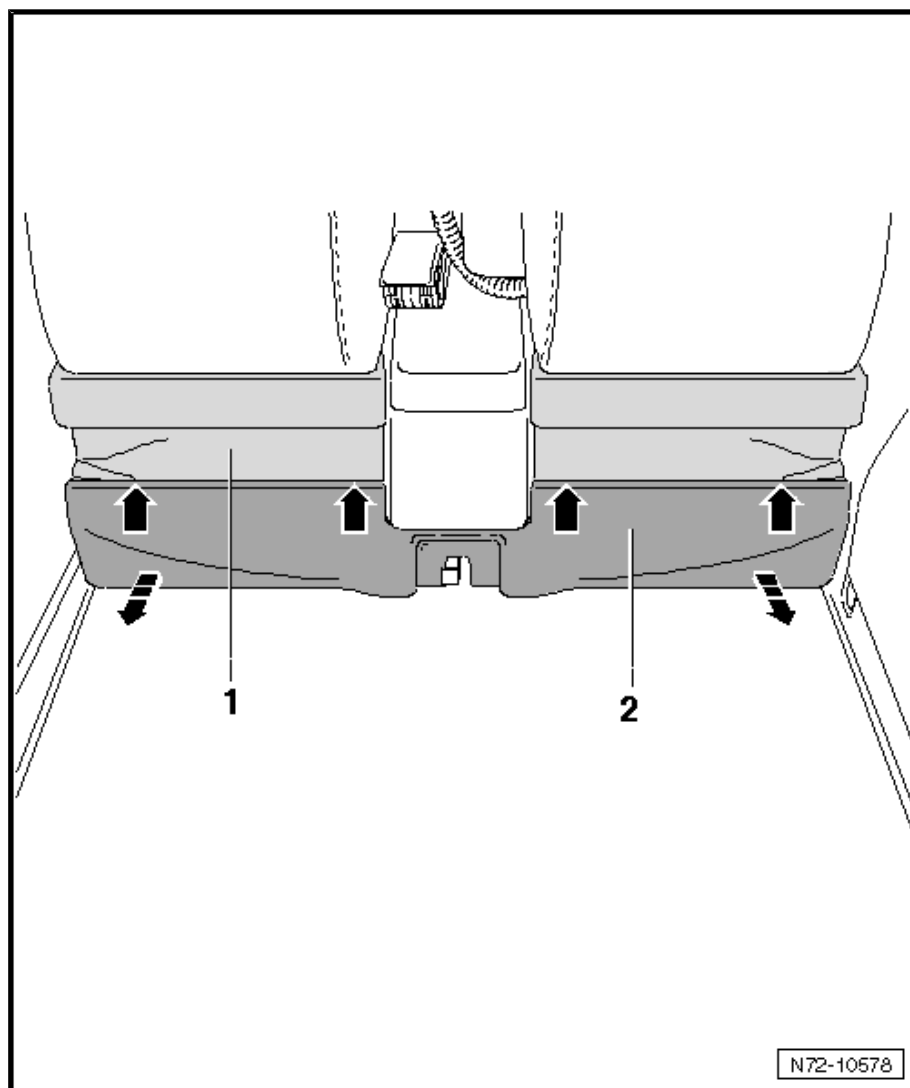


### Removing

- Pull release lever -1- in -direction of arrow A- and unscrew bolt -2-.



- Tilt release lever -1- in -direction of arrow A-.
- Remove release lever -1- in -direction of arrow B- from bracket -2-.



- Detach Velcro fastener -arrow- for upper trim of rear bench seat -1-.
- Unclip lower trim of rear bench seat -2- from seat frame in -direction of arrow-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

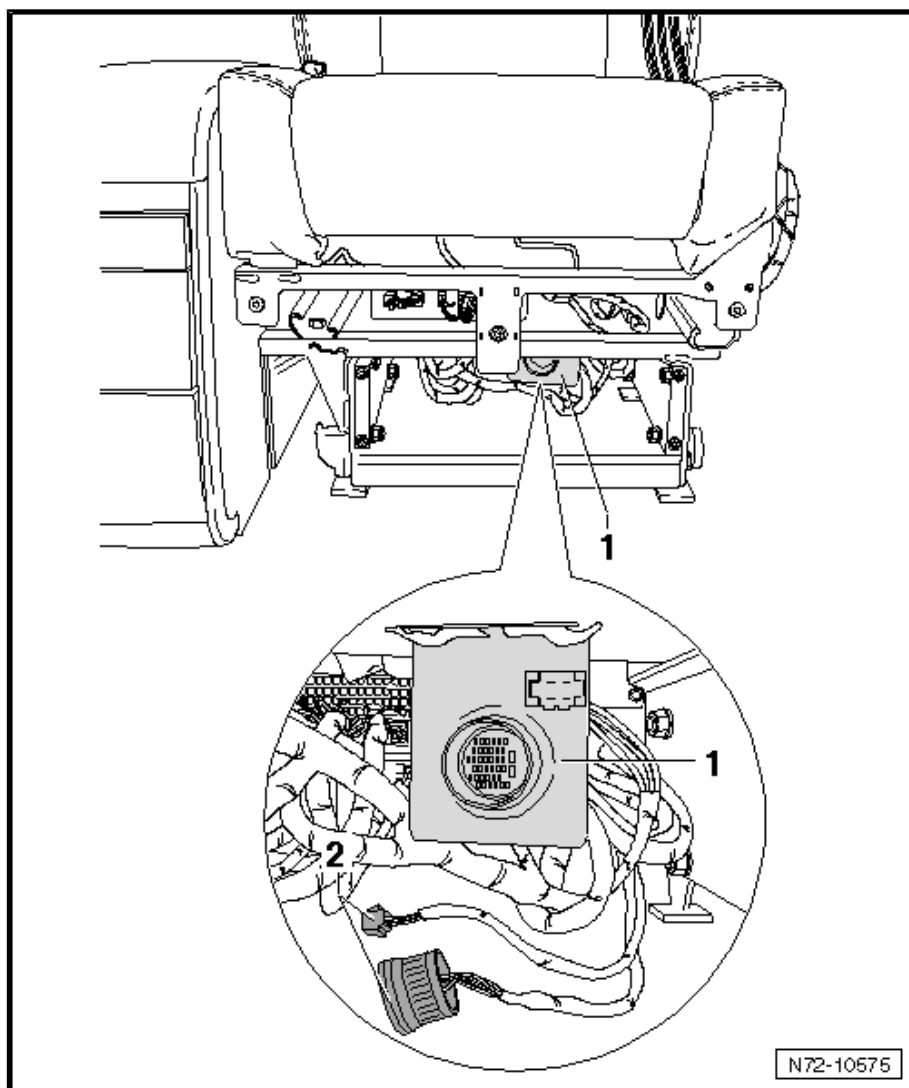
- Before installing, check retaining clips for damage and renew as necessary.

### 4.12 Removing and installing seat adjustment control element



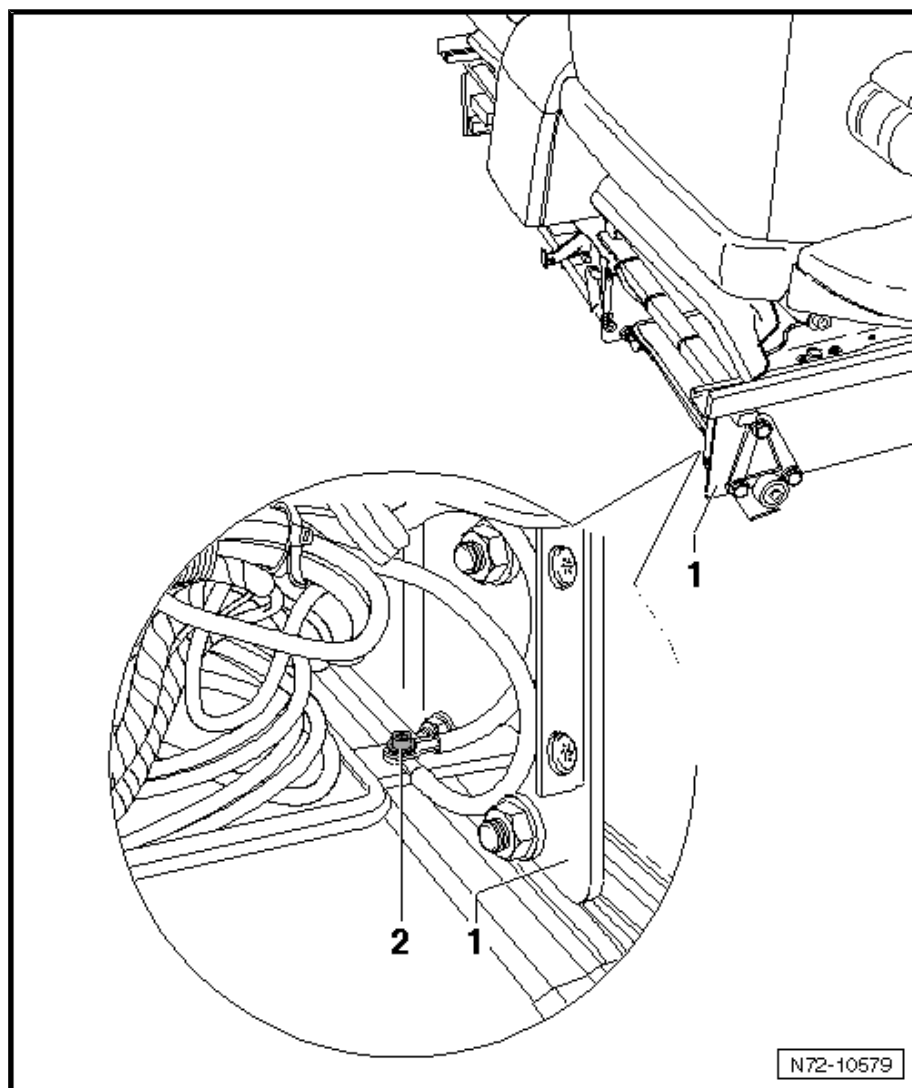
#### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the seat adjustment control element on right seat. Removal and installation of seat adjustment control element on left seat is carried out accordingly.*



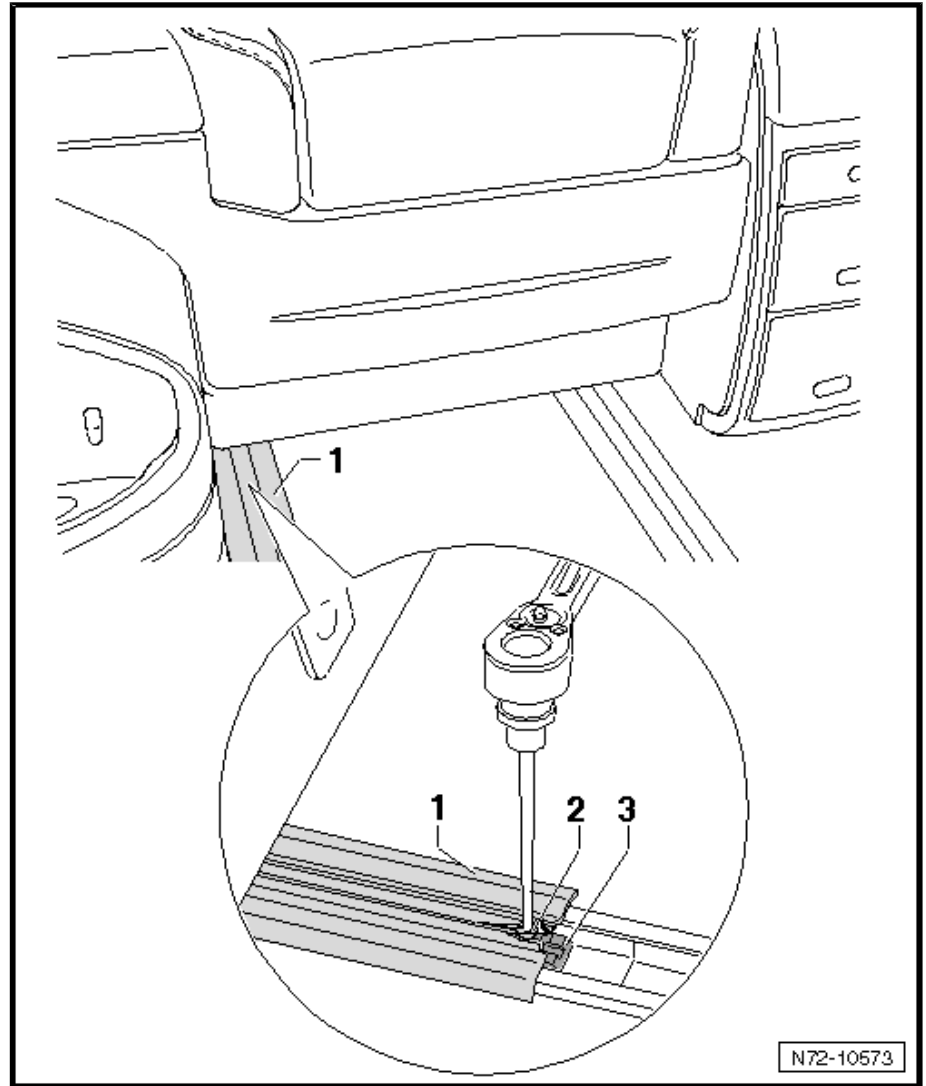
### Removing

- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect vehicle battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Disconnecting and reconnecting battery .
- Remove rotating seat with seat frame on both sides  
⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove floor covering (if present) from vehicle.
- Remove trim on upper left and upper right sides of front bench seat ⇒ [page 412](#) .
- Remove trim on lower left and lower right sides of front bench seat ⇒ [page 414](#) .
- Remove lower trim of rear bench seat ⇒ [page 416](#) .
- Separate front connectors -2- at coupling points -1-.



- Unscrew bolt -2- on seat frame -1- and separate earth connection.

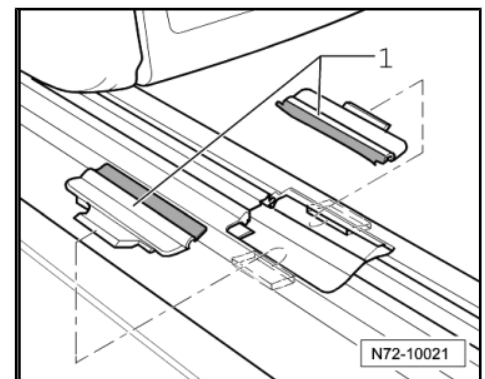


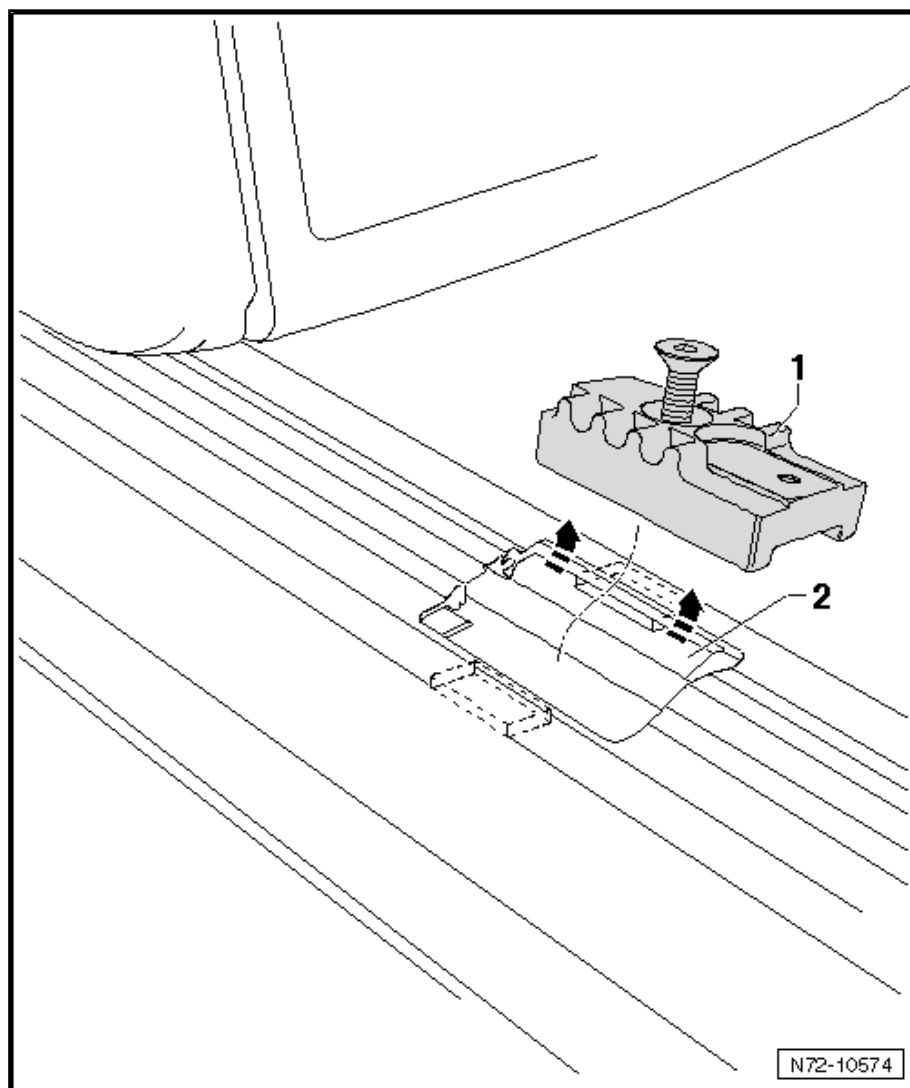


**Note**

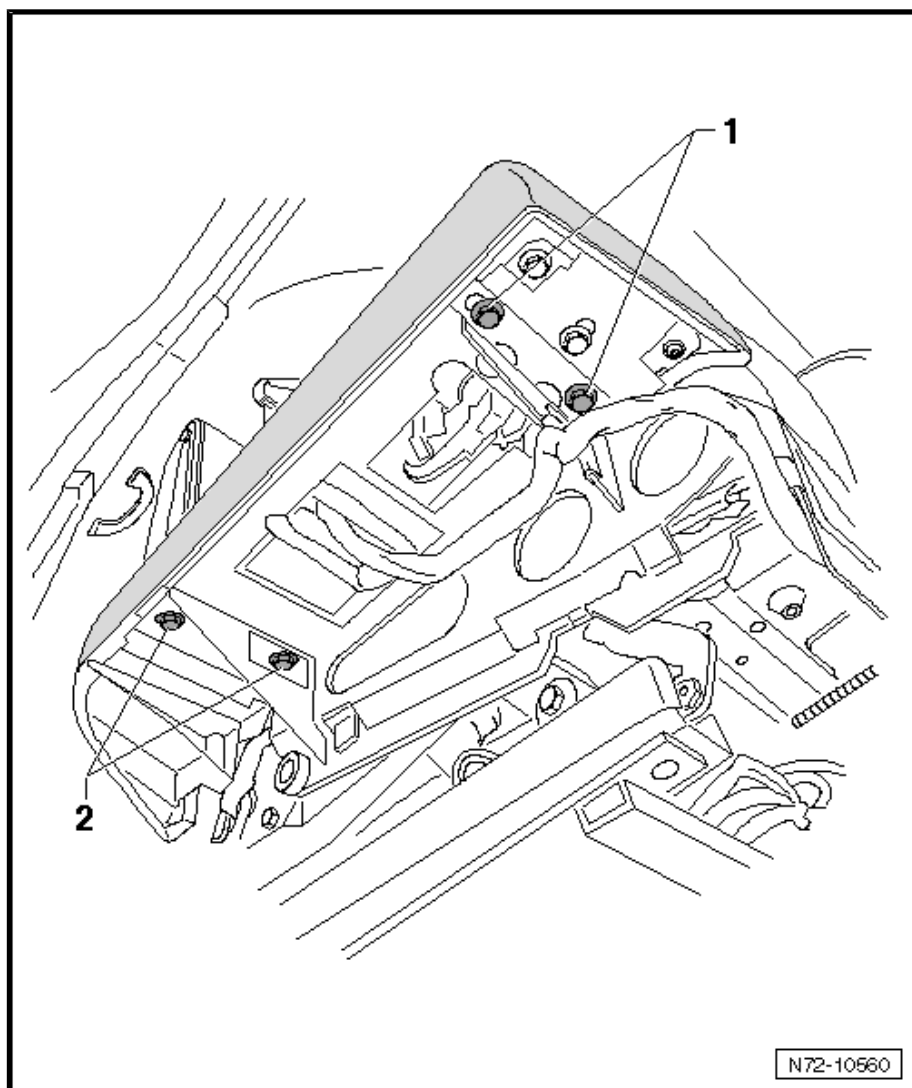
*Mark installation dimensions of end stops -3-.*

- Unscrew bolts -2- of end stops -3- in left and right seat rails -1-.
- Unclip end caps -1- for seat assembly opening upwards out of seat rails.

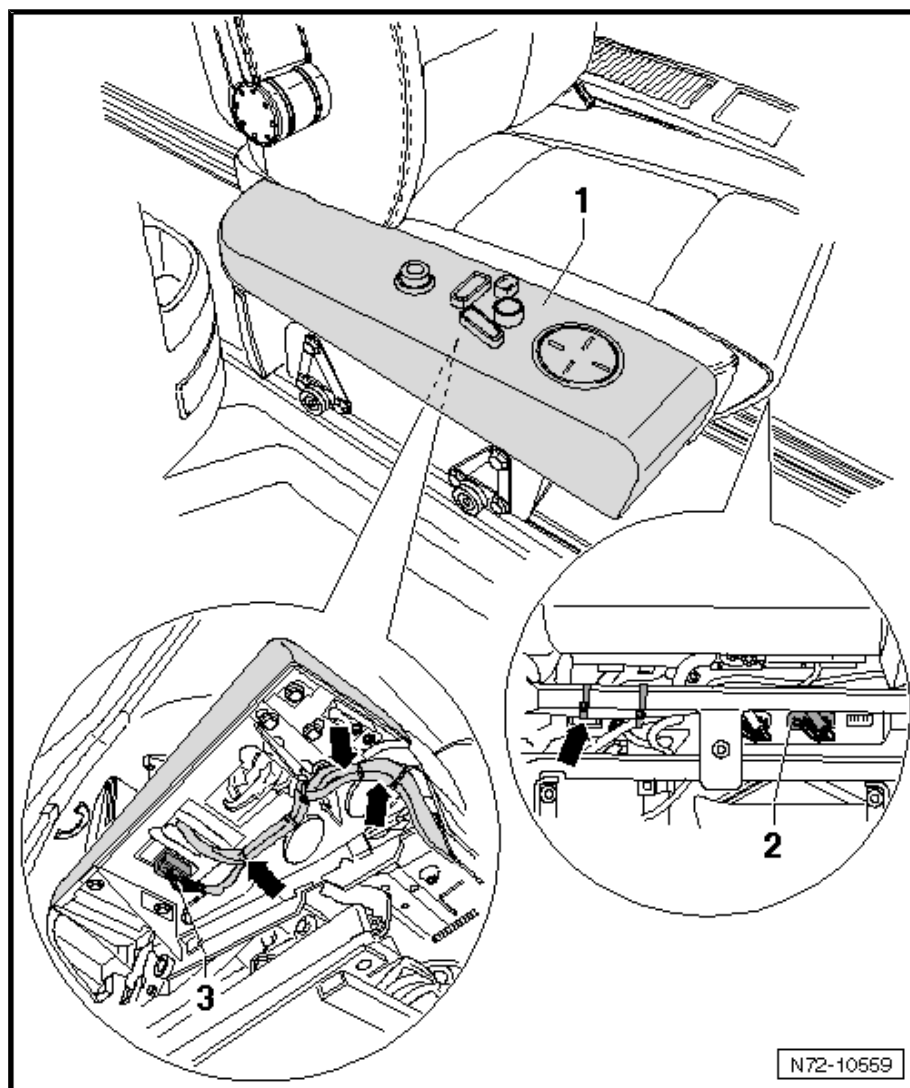




- Move left and right end stops -1- towards seat assembly opening -2- and remove upwards in -direction of arrow-.



- Push bench seat forwards until seat adjustment control element is accessible.
- Unscrew bolts -1- and -2-
- Remove seat adjustment control element from bench seat.



- Disconnect cable ties from wiring harnesses -arrows-.
- Detach connector -2- from seat adjustment control unit.
- Detach connector -3- from seat adjustment control element -1-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

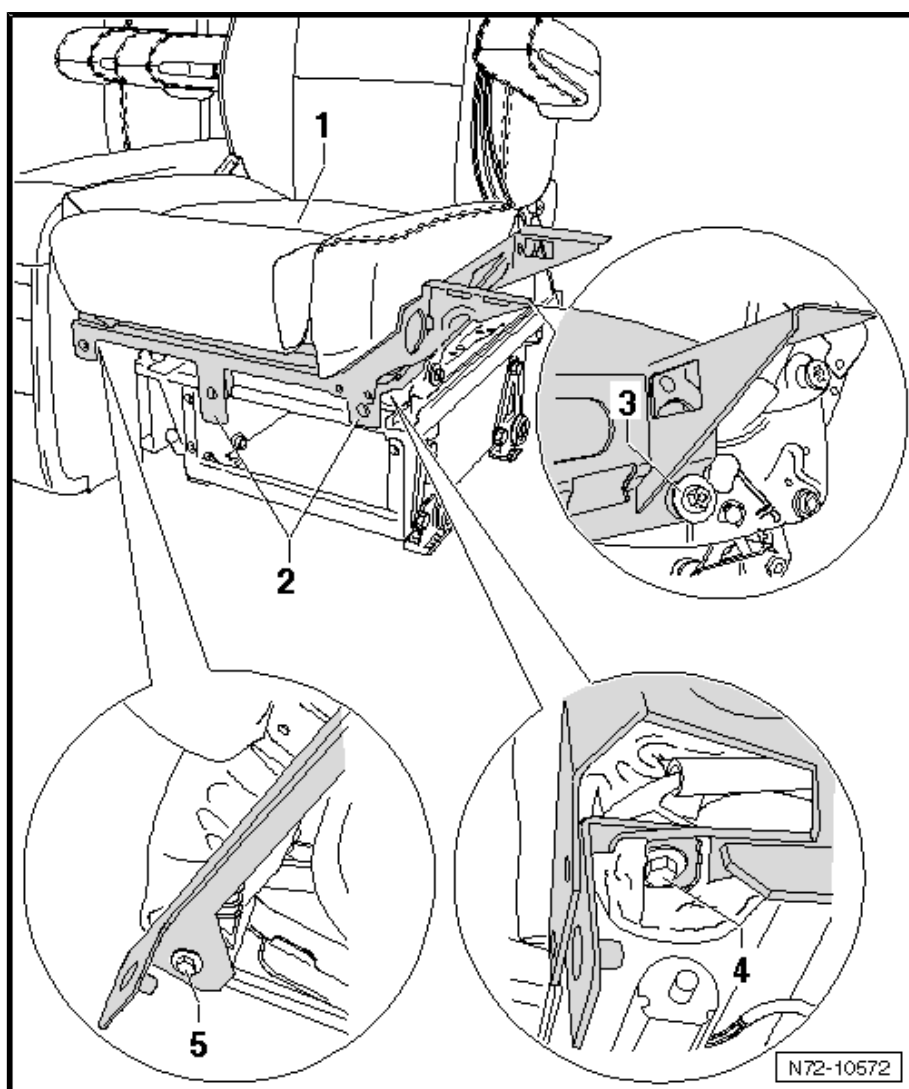
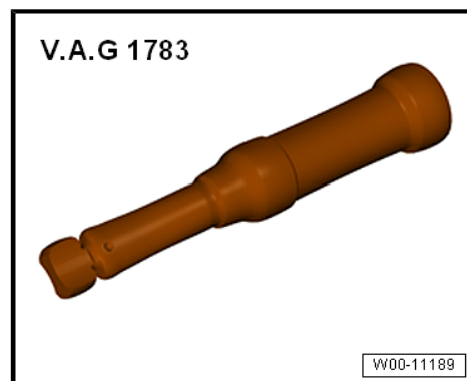
- Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew as necessary.

### 4.13 Removing and installing control element bracket

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



**Removing**

- Remove seat adjustment control element [⇒ page 418](#).
- Remove bolts -3-, -4- and -5-.
- Remove control element bracket -2- from seat -1-.

**Installing**

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



- Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew as necessary.

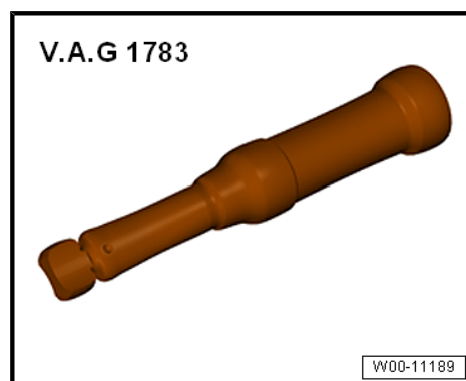
#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolt for trim	8.0 Nm

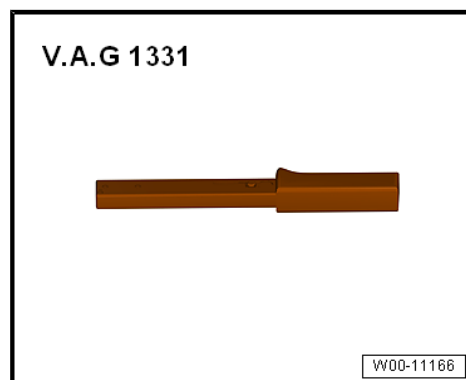
## 4.14 Removing and installing seat belt

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

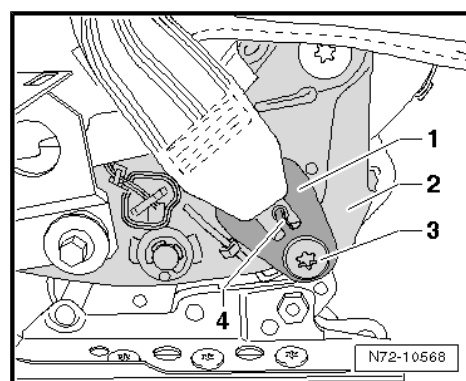


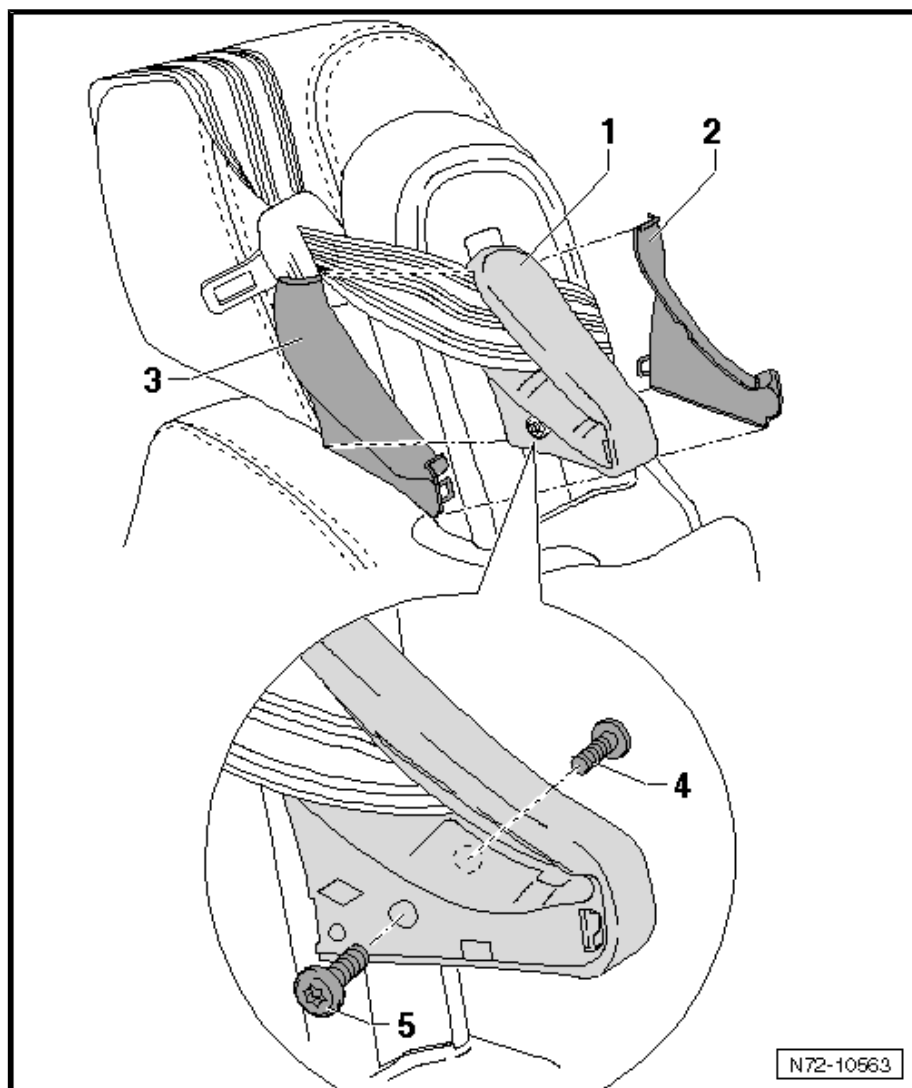
- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



### Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ [page 401](#) .
- Remove backrest trim ⇒ [page 411](#) .
- Unscrew bolt -3-.
- Remove belt end fitting -1- from seat frame -2-.



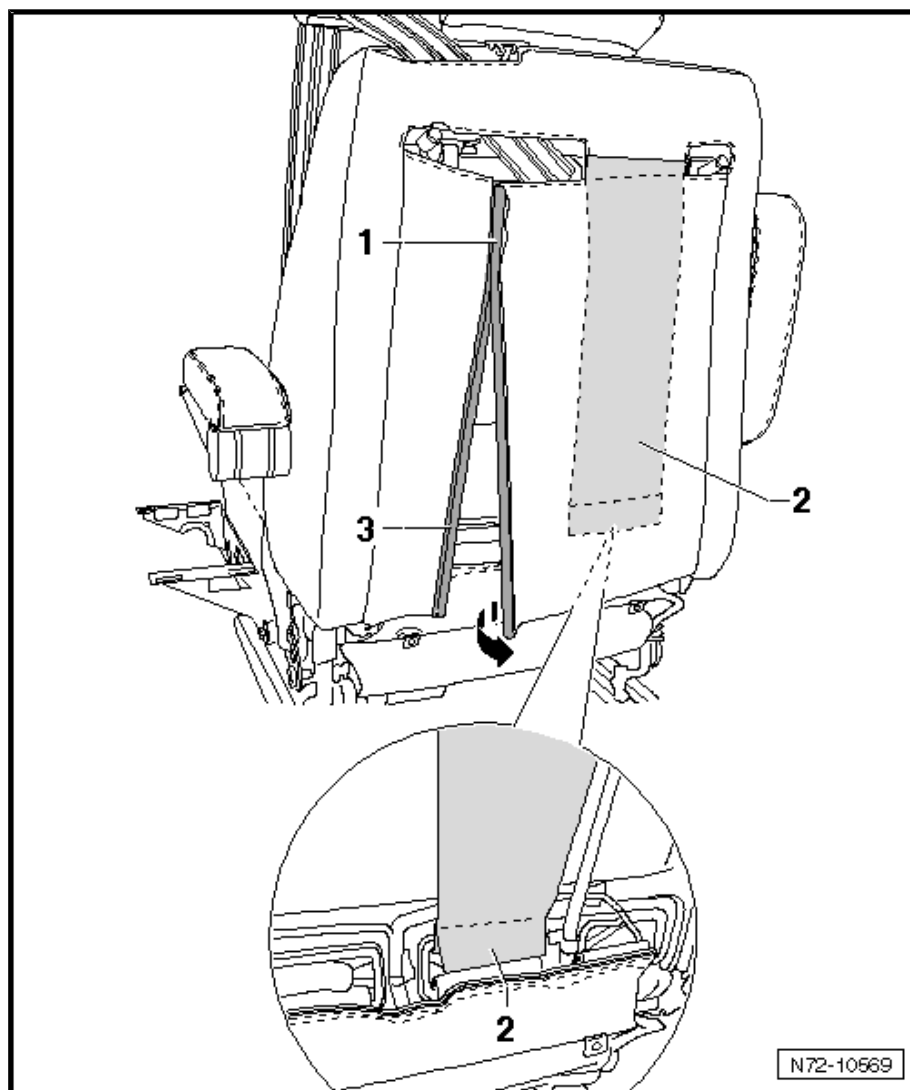


- Unclip catches of caps -2- and -3- from belt guide -1- and remove caps.



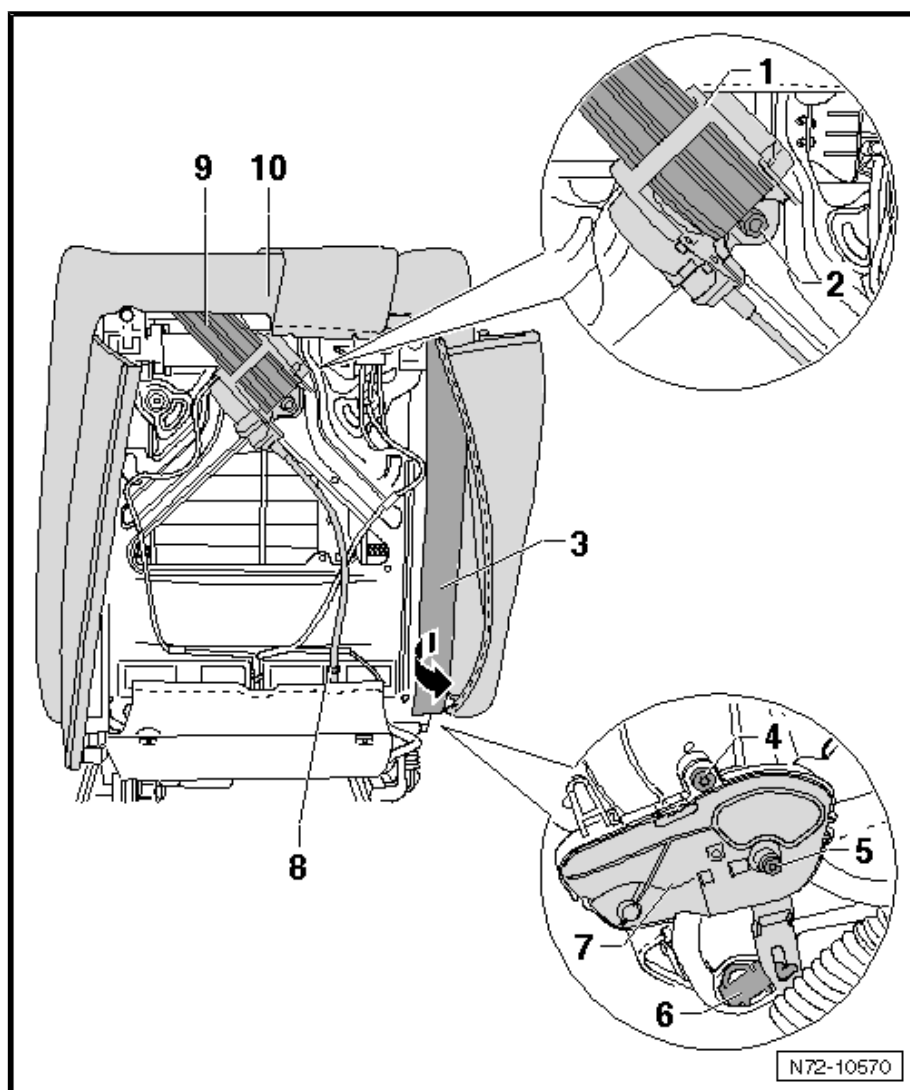
**Note**

- ◆ *Caps -2- and -3- cannot be removed without being damaged.*
- ◆ *Bolts -4- and -5- are microencapsulated and must be renewed each time they are loosened.*
- Unscrew bolts -4- and -5- of belt guide -1-.
- Pull belt guide -1- off head restraint adjuster.



- Open backrest cover in -direction of arrow- by detaching clamping profiles -1- and -3-.
- Unhook backrest cover tensioner -2- from backrest frame and lay over backrest.





- Unscrew bolts -4- and -5-
- Remove adjustment element -7- from seat frame and release it from clip -6-.
- Unclip cable -8- from backrest frame.
- Unscrew nut -2- and remove belt inertia reel -1- from backrest frame.
- Guide belt webbing -9- out of backrest cover -10-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



- Pin -4- must be locked in place in backrest frame -2- before belt end fitting -1- is attached.



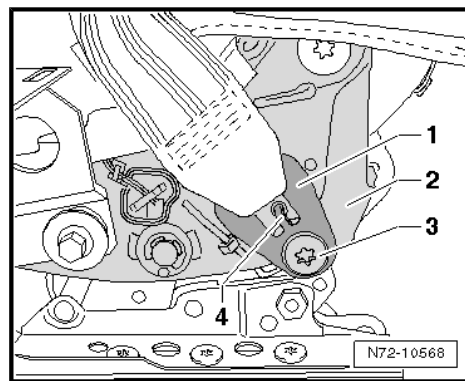
#### Note

- ♦ The bolt -3- is micro-encapsulated and must be renewed each time it is removed.
- ♦ Before a new bolt is installed, the thread of the nut must be cleaned and chased as necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

#### Specified torques

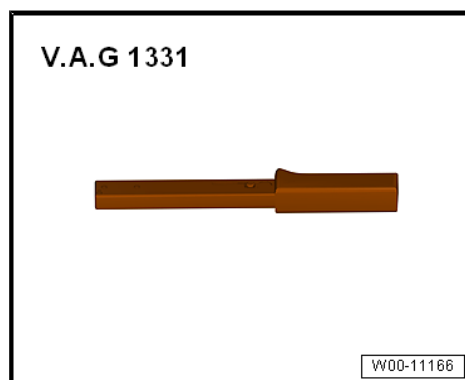
Component	Specified torque
Bolt for belt guide	8 Nm
Bolt for belt end fitting	45 Nm
Nut for belt inertia reel	40 Nm



## 4.15 Removing and installing belt buckle

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



#### Note

Removal and installation is described for the belt buckle on left seat. Removal and installation of belt buckle on right seat is carried out accordingly.



## Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ [page 401](#) .
- Unscrew bolt -2-.
- Remove belt buckle -1- from seat frame.

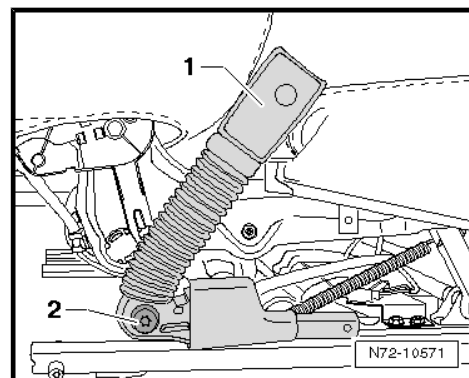
## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



### Note

- ♦ *The bolt -2- is micro-encapsulated and must be renewed each time it is removed.*
- ♦ *Before a new bolt is installed, the thread of the nut must be cleaned and chased as necessary.*



## Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolt for belt buckle	45 Nm

## 4.16 Removing and installing centre console cover

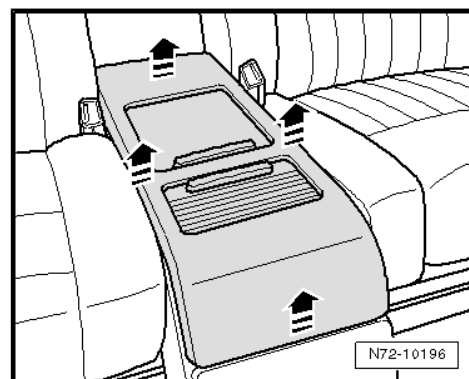
### Removing

- Unclip cover from centre console -in direction of arrow-.
- Slightly lift up cover and separate electrical connectors.
- Remove cover from centre console.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Before installing, check retaining clips for damage and renew as necessary.





## 74 – Seat - padding, covers

### 1 Front seat covers and padding

⇒ [“1.1 Assembly overview - seat heating element”, page 432](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Assembly overview - backrest heater element”, page 435](#)

⇒ [“1.3 Removing and installing cover and padding for seat pan”, page 436](#)

⇒ [“1.4 Removing and installing backrest cover and backrest padding”, page 444](#)

⇒ [“1.5 Separating cover and padding on seat pan”, page 450](#)

⇒ [“1.6 Separating cover and padding on backrest”, page 450](#)

⇒ [“1.7 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 ”, page 452](#)

⇒ [“1.8 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 ”, page 455](#)

#### 1.1 Assembly overview - seat heating element

⇒ [“1.1.1 Assembly overview - seat heating element, individual seat”, page 432](#)

⇒ [“1.1.2 Assembly overview - seat heating element, double bench seat”, page 433](#)

##### 1.1.1 Assembly overview - seat heating element, individual seat



### 1 - Heater element

- ☐ Heated seat cushion for driver seat - Z6-
- ☐ Heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 452](#)
- ☐ Observe technical product information. Seat heating not functional; seat cover or backrest cover damaged. Process no.: 2050995

### 2 - Adhesive tape

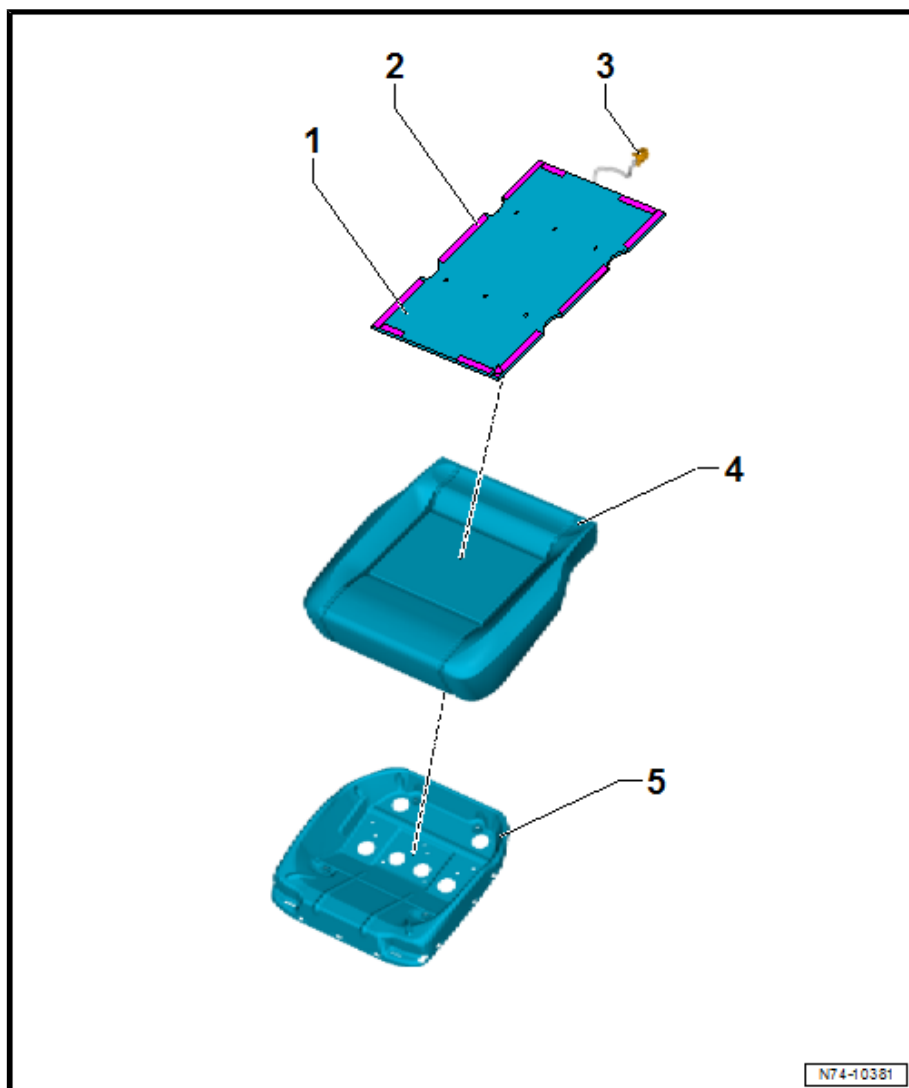
### 3 - Electrical connector

### 4 - Seat padding

- ☐ Removing and installing front seat cushion for height-adjustable front seat ⇒ [page 436](#)
- ☐ Removing and installing front seat cushion for front swivel seat  
⇒ [page 436](#)
- ☐ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

### 5 - Seat frame

- ☐ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



## 1.1.2 Assembly overview - seat heating element, double bench seat



#### 1 - Heater element

- ☐ Heated seat cushion for front passenger seat - Z8-
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 452](#)

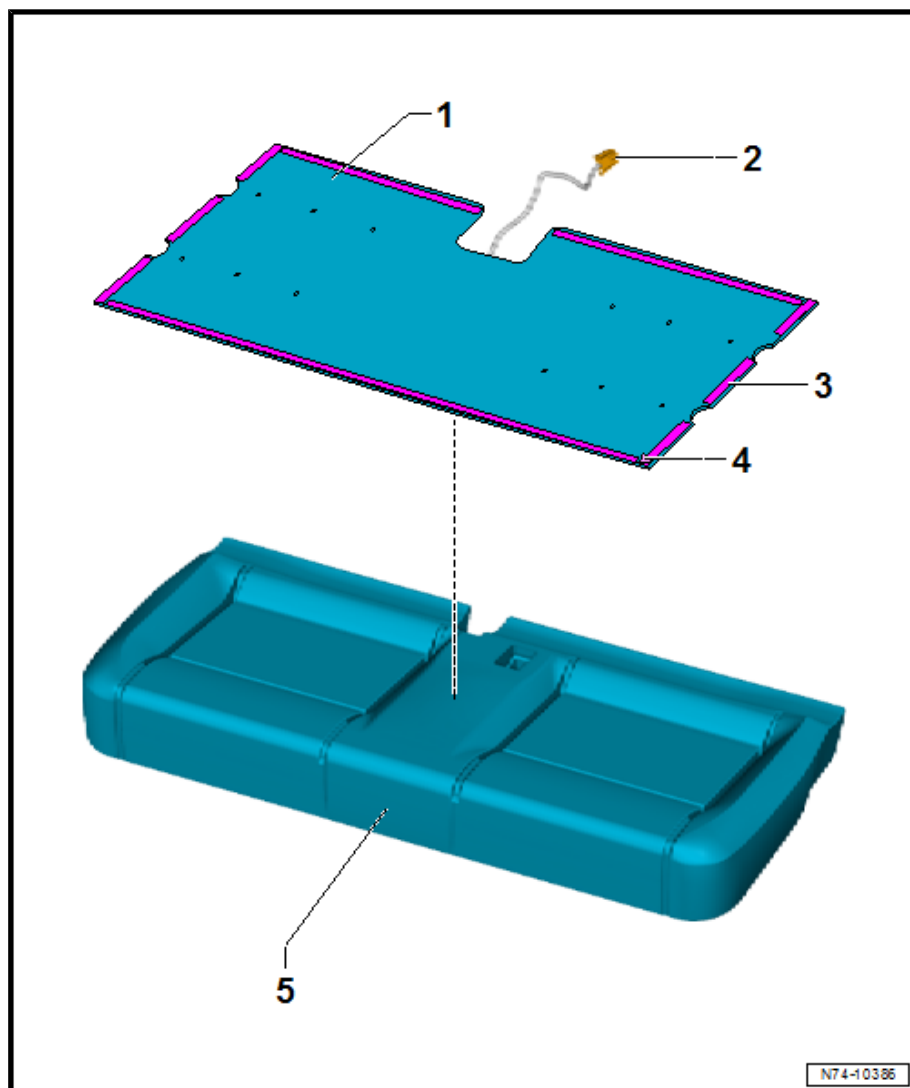
#### 2 - Electrical connector

#### 3 - Adhesive tape

#### 4 - Protective sheet

#### 5 - Seat padding

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 436](#)





## 1.2 Assembly overview - backrest heater element

⇒ ["1.2.1 Assembly overview - backrest heating element, individual seat", page 435](#)

⇒ ["1.2.2 Assembly overview - backrest heating element, double bench seat", page 436](#)

### 1.2.1 Assembly overview - backrest heating element, individual seat

#### 1 - Heater element

- ☐ Heated backrest for driver seat - Z7-
- ☐ Heated backrest for front passenger seat - Z9-
- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 452](#)
- ☐ Observe technical product information. Seat heating not functional; seat cover or backrest cover damaged. Process no.: 2020995

#### 2 - Electrical connector

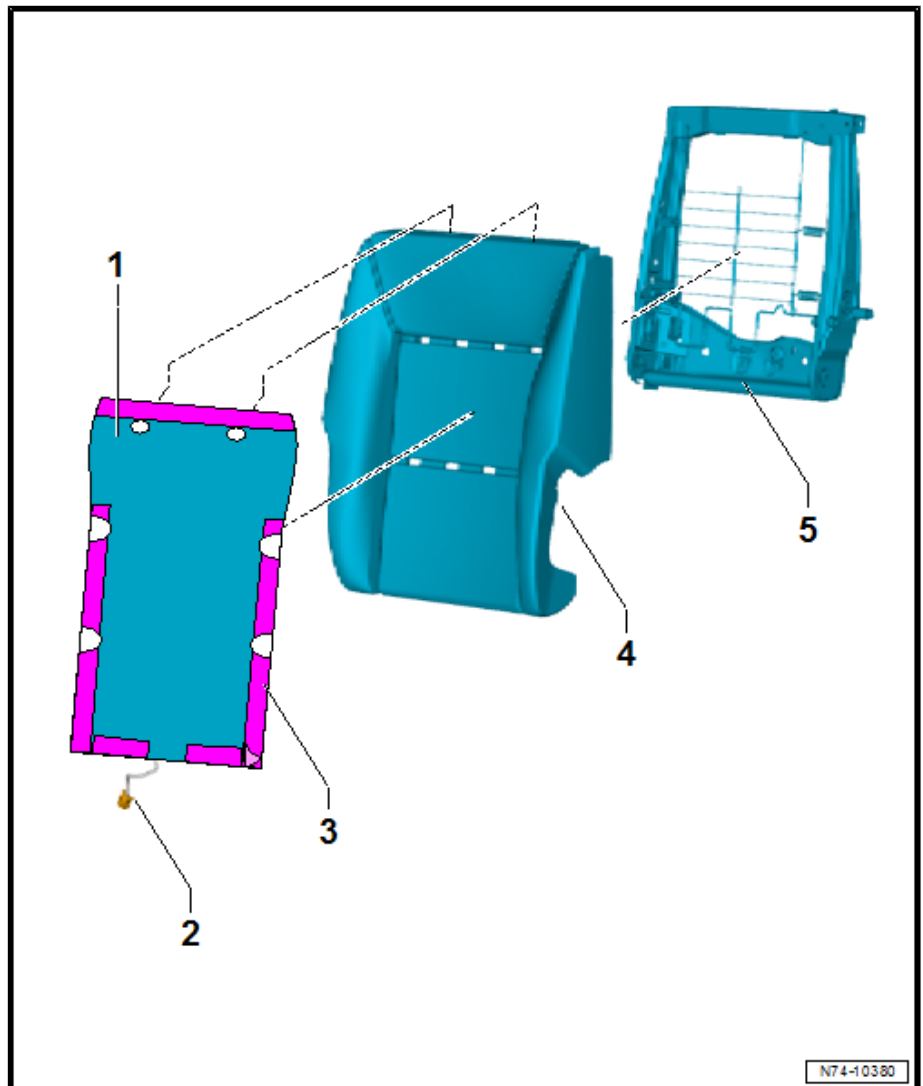
#### 3 - Adhesive tape

#### 4 - Backrest padding

- ☐ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 444](#)
- ☐ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

#### 5 - Backrest frame

- ☐ Allocation ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



N74-10380

## 1.2.2 Assembly overview - backrest heating element, double bench seat

### 1 - Backrest padding

- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 444](#)
- ❑ Allocation ⇒ Electronic  
parts catalogue

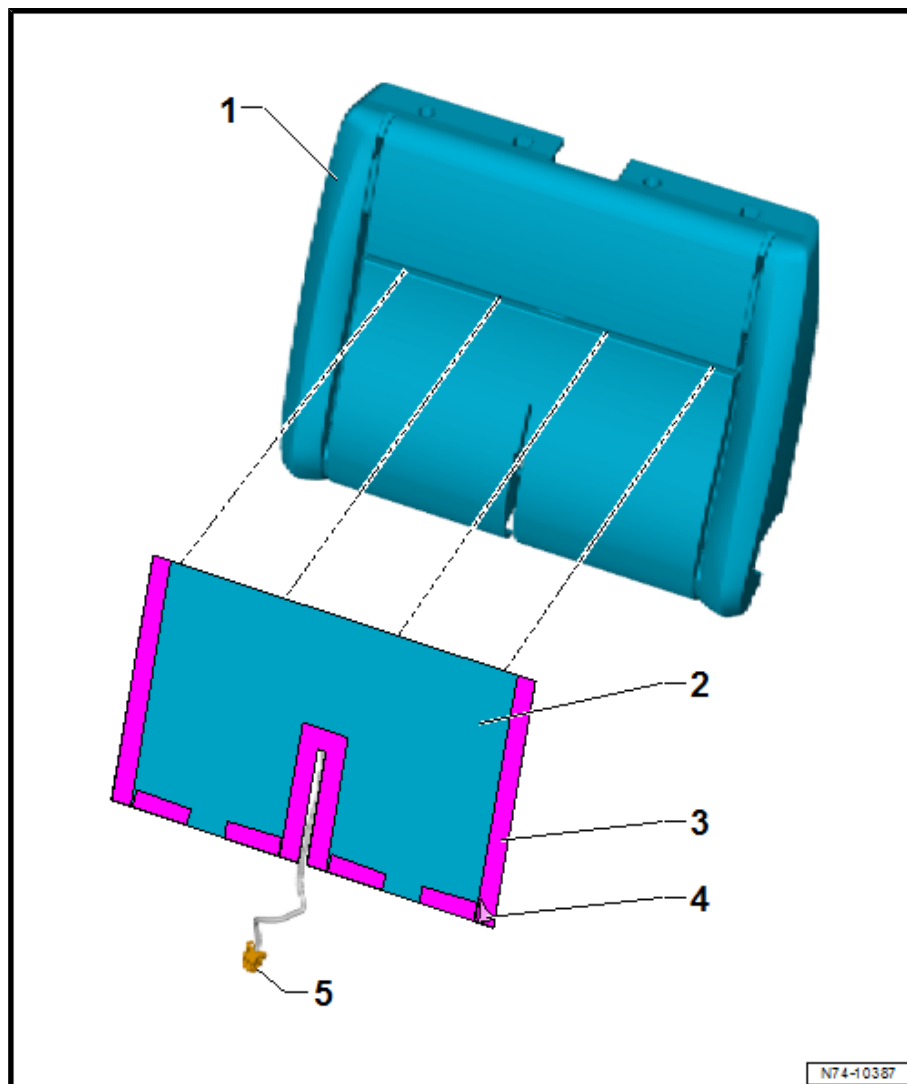
### 2 - Heater element

- ❑ Heated backrest for  
front passenger seat -  
Z9-
- ❑ Removing and installing  
⇒ [page 452](#)

### 3 - Adhesive tape

### 4 - Protective sheet

### 5 - Electrical connector



## 1.3 Removing and installing cover and padding for seat pan

⇒ ["1.3.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding, Multivan, height adjustable seat", page 436](#)

⇒ ["1.3.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding, Multivan, swivel seat", page 439](#)

⇒ ["1.3.3 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding, Transporter, height adjustable seat", page 441](#)

⇒ ["1.3.4 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding, Transporter, double bench seat", page 443](#)

⇒ ["1.3.5 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding, individual seat, electric adjustment", page 444](#)

### 1.3.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding, Multivan, height adjustable seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required





- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

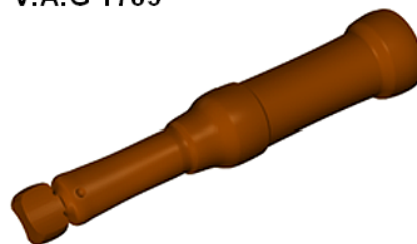
V.A.G 1331



W00-11166

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

V.A.G 1783

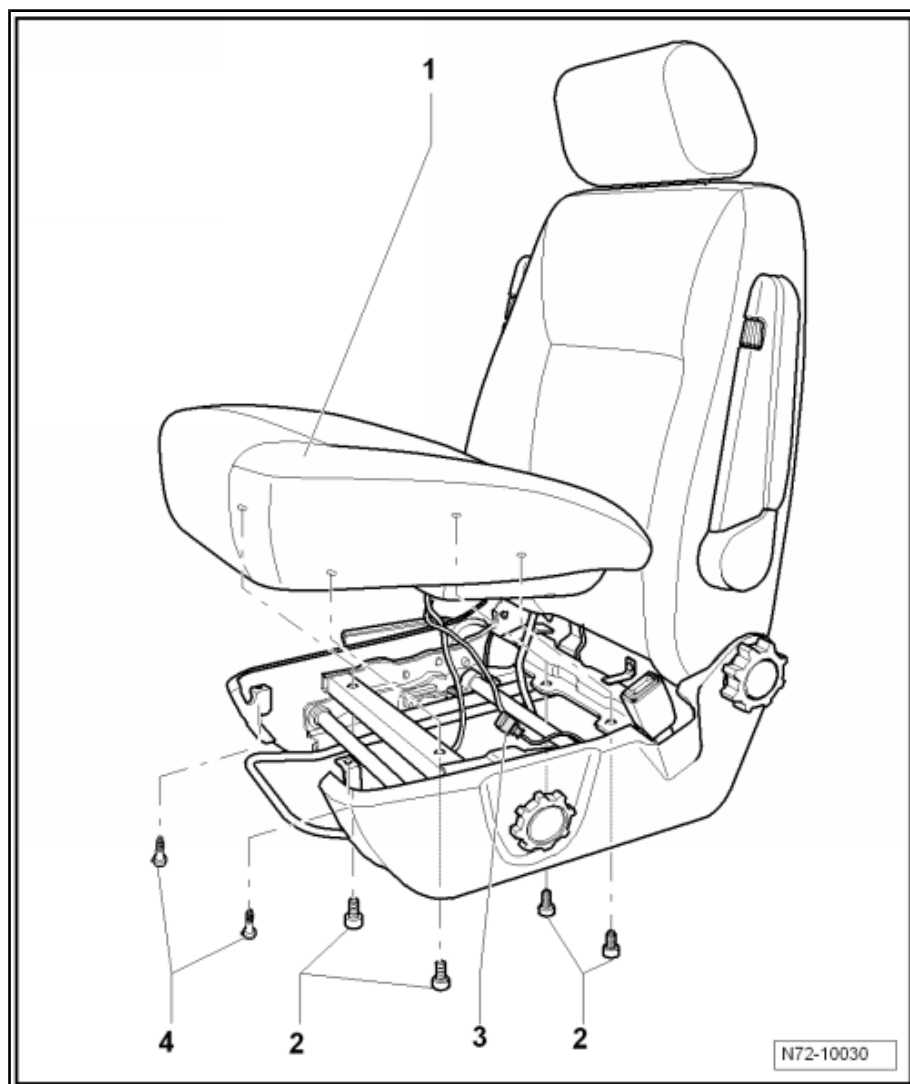


W00-11189



#### Note

- ◆ *Removal and installation is described for the right front seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of the left front seat as appropriate.*
- ◆ *Removal and installation is described for the front, height adjustable seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation on the front, rigid seat as appropriate.*



### Removing

- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Unscrew bolts -4-.



### Note

*Instead of the bolts, 2 spreader rivets may be installed.*

- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Lift up front seat padding until wiring harnesses are accessible.
- Detach wiring harnesses from seat pan.
- If fitted, disconnect connector of seat heating -3-.
- Remove front seat padding -1- from seat.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



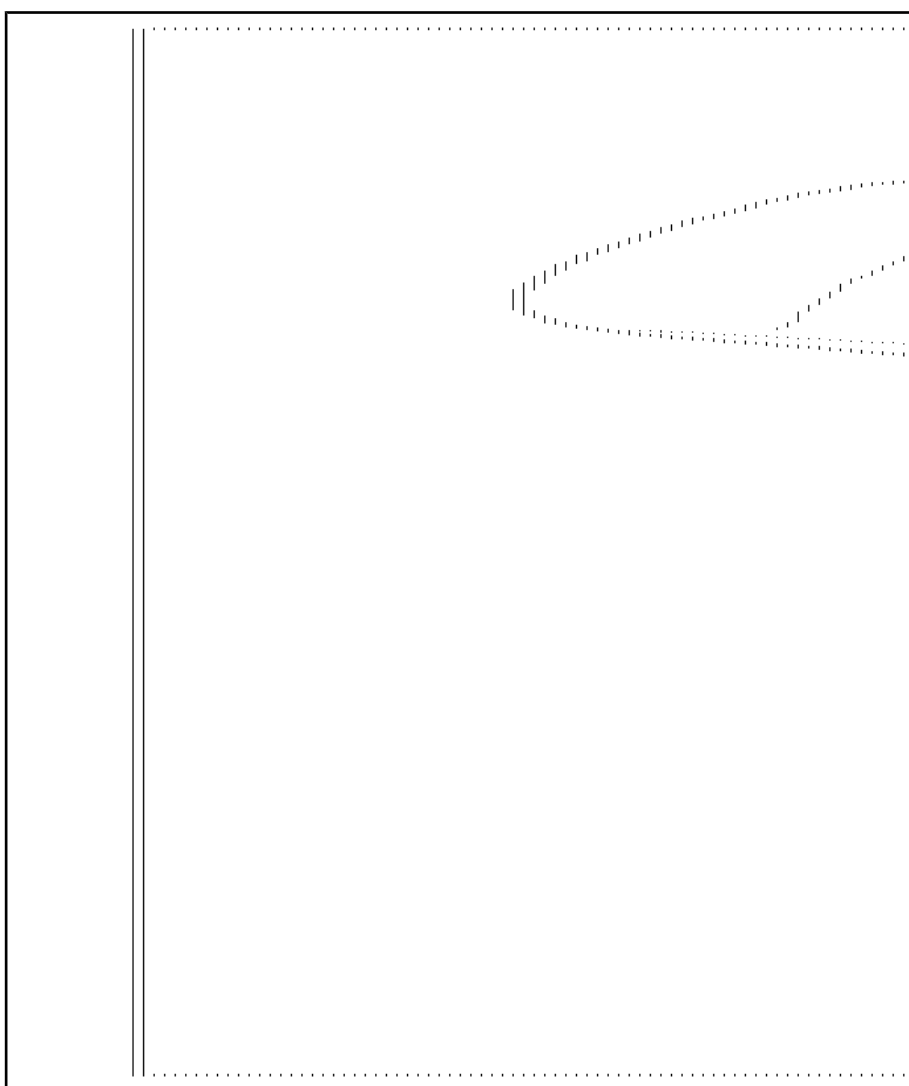
### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts -4- for front seat cushion	2 Nm
Bolts -2- for front seat cushion	20 Nm

## 1.3.2 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding, Multivan, swivel seat

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-





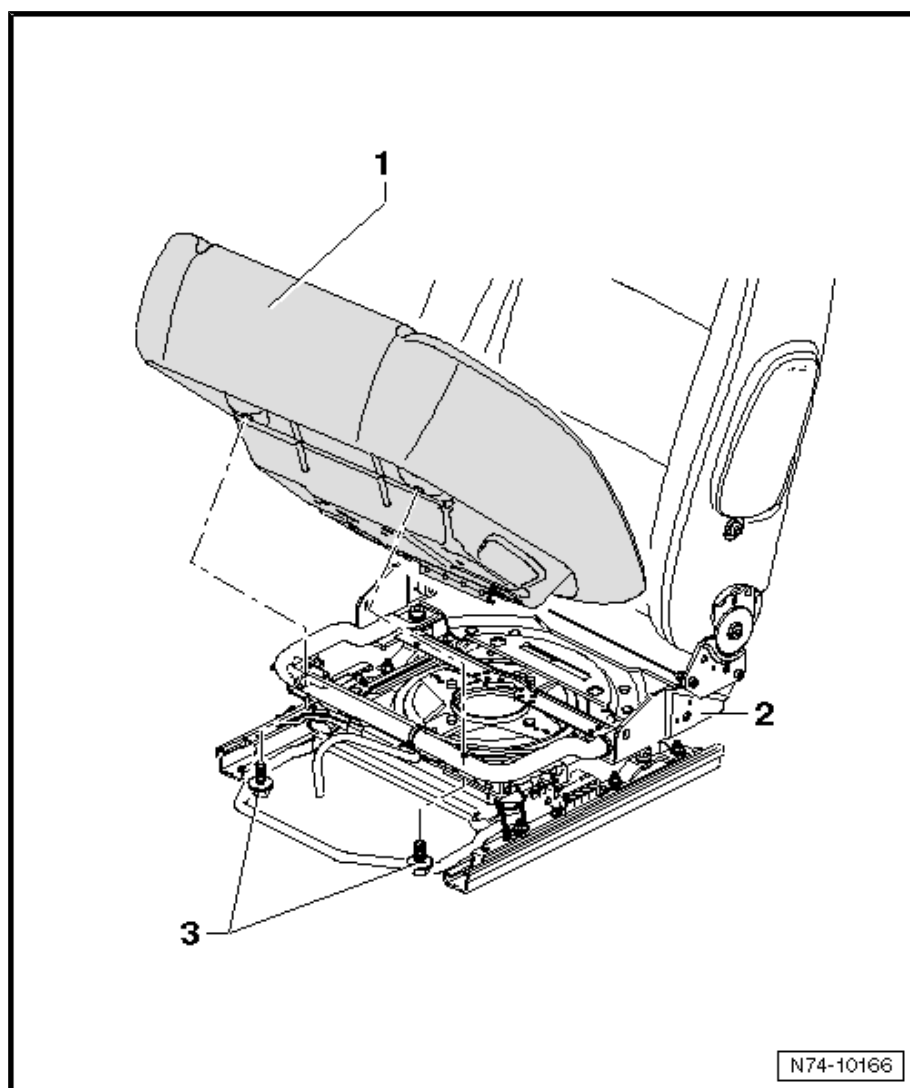
## Removing



### Note

*Removal and installation is described for the left front seat. Removal and installation for the right front seat is similar.*

- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Detach front seat trim ⇒ [page 319](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -3-.
- Lift up seat padding at front -arrow A-.
- Detach wiring harnesses from seat pan.
- Pull seat padding -1- out of seat frame mounting -2- -arrow b-.



## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



- Guide seat padding -1- into mounting for front swivel seat -2-.
- Attach wiring harnesses on seat pan.
- Fold down seat padding -1-.
- Tighten bolts -3-.
- Connect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Front seat cushion	20 Nm

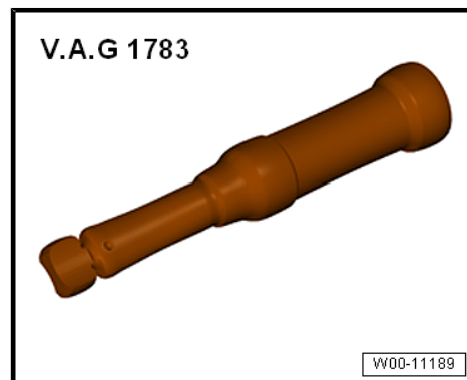
### 1.3.3 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding, Transporter, height adjustable seat

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

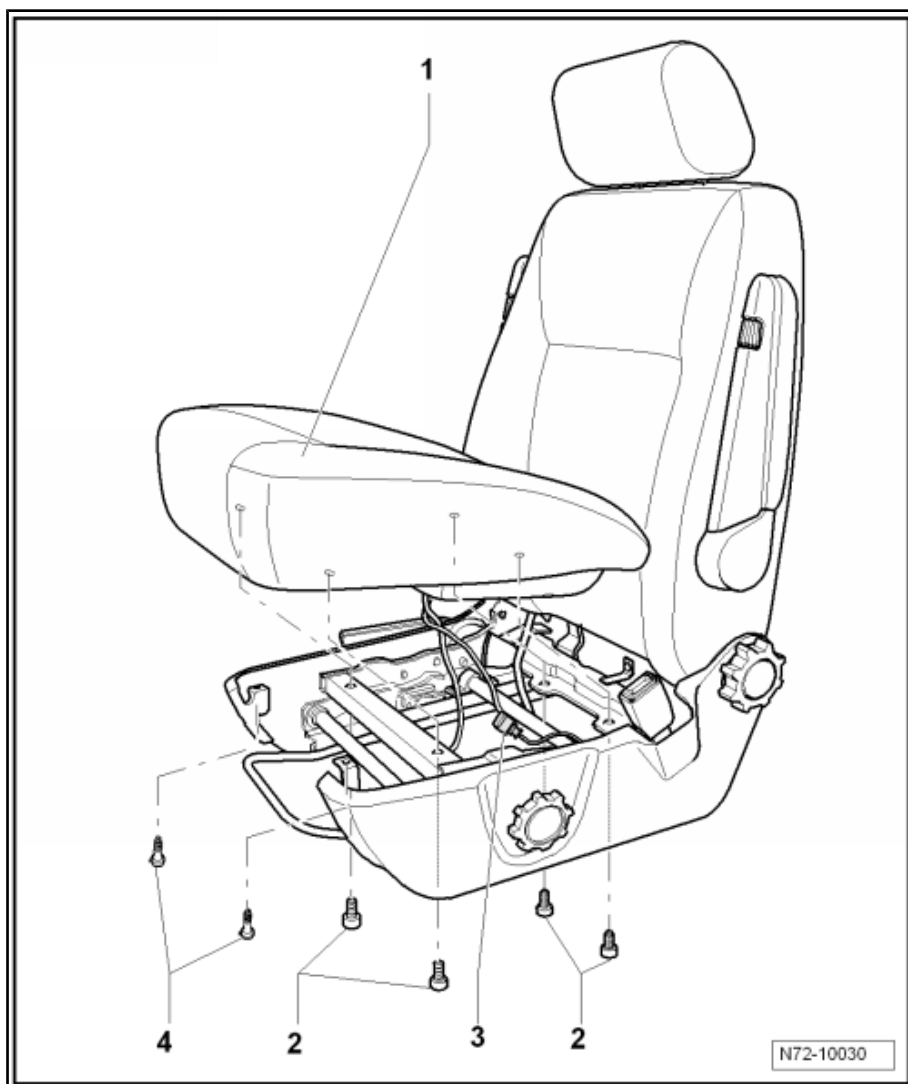


- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



#### Note

- ◆ *Removal and installation is described for the right front seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of the left front seat as appropriate.*
- ◆ *Removal and installation is described for the front, height adjustable seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation on the front, rigid seat as appropriate.*



### Removing

- Switch off ignition.
- Disconnect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Unscrew bolts -4-.



### Note

*Instead of the bolts, 2 spreader rivets may be installed.*

- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Lift up front seat padding until wiring harnesses are accessible.
- Detach wiring harnesses from seat pan.
- If fitted, disconnect connector of seat heating -3-.
- Remove front seat padding -1- from seat.

### Installing

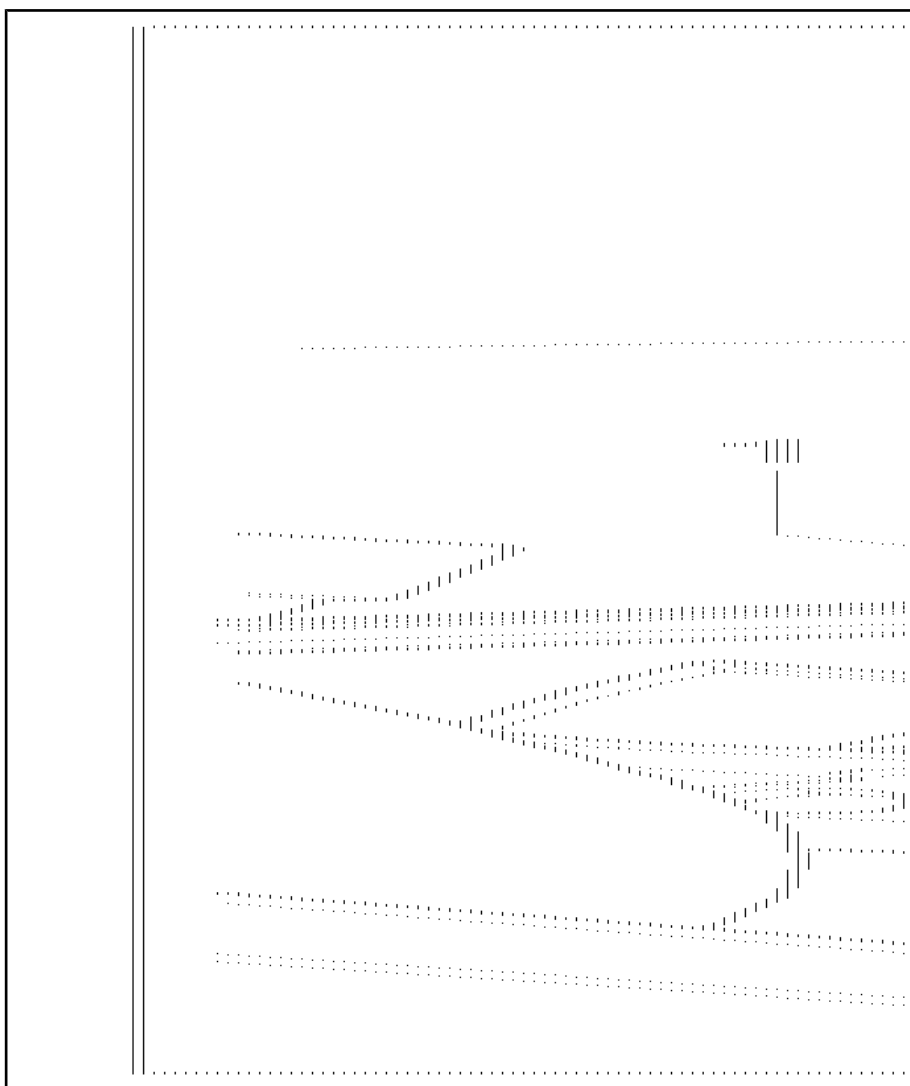
Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts -4- for front seat cushion	2 Nm
Bolts -2- for front seat cushion	20 Nm

## 1.3.4 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding, Transporter, double bench seat



### Removing

- Fold out seat cushion.
- If fitted, disconnect connector.
- Using a small screwdriver, lever off clamping washers -1-.



### Note

*The clamping washers are damaged during removal and must be renewed.*

- Remove washers -2-.



- Push seat padding with retaining bracket -3- towards left -arrow-, and remove it upwards.

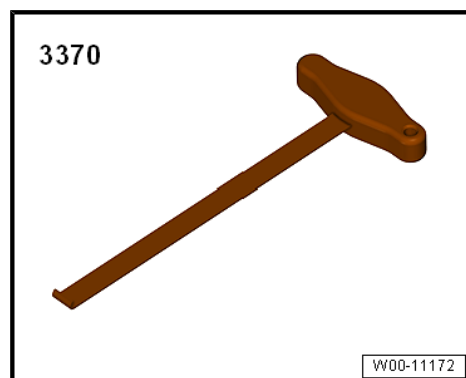
#### Installing

- Installation is carried out in reverse order.

### 1.3.5 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding, individual seat, electric adjustment

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Front end hook - 3370-



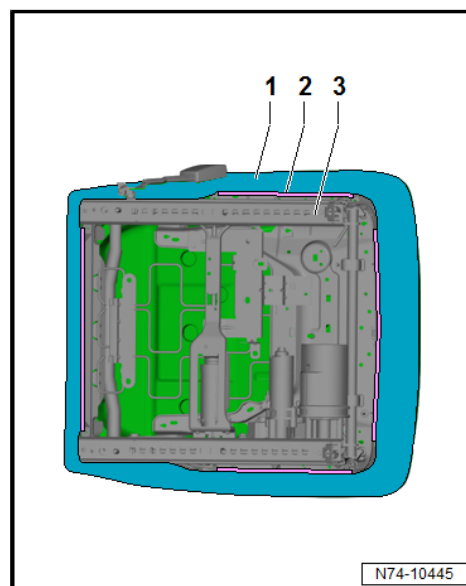
#### Removing

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 300](#) .
- Remove front backrest ⇒ [page 336](#) .
- If fitted, disconnect connector.
- Use front end hook - 3370- to detach fastening strips -2- all-round from seat pan -3-.
- Remove cover together with padding -1-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Upon installing, make sure that the cover is free of creases.



### 1.4 Removing and installing backrest cover and backrest padding

⇒ [“1.4.1 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding, individual seat”, page 444](#)

⇒ [“1.4.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding, double bench seat”, page 447](#)

#### 1.4.1 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding, individual seat

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required





◆ Front end hook - 3370-



Removing



Note

*Removal and installation is described for the right front seat. Apply the same instructions for removal and installation of the left front seat as appropriate.*

- Front seat must be positioned in foremost and highest position.
- Backrest must be positioned in foremost position.

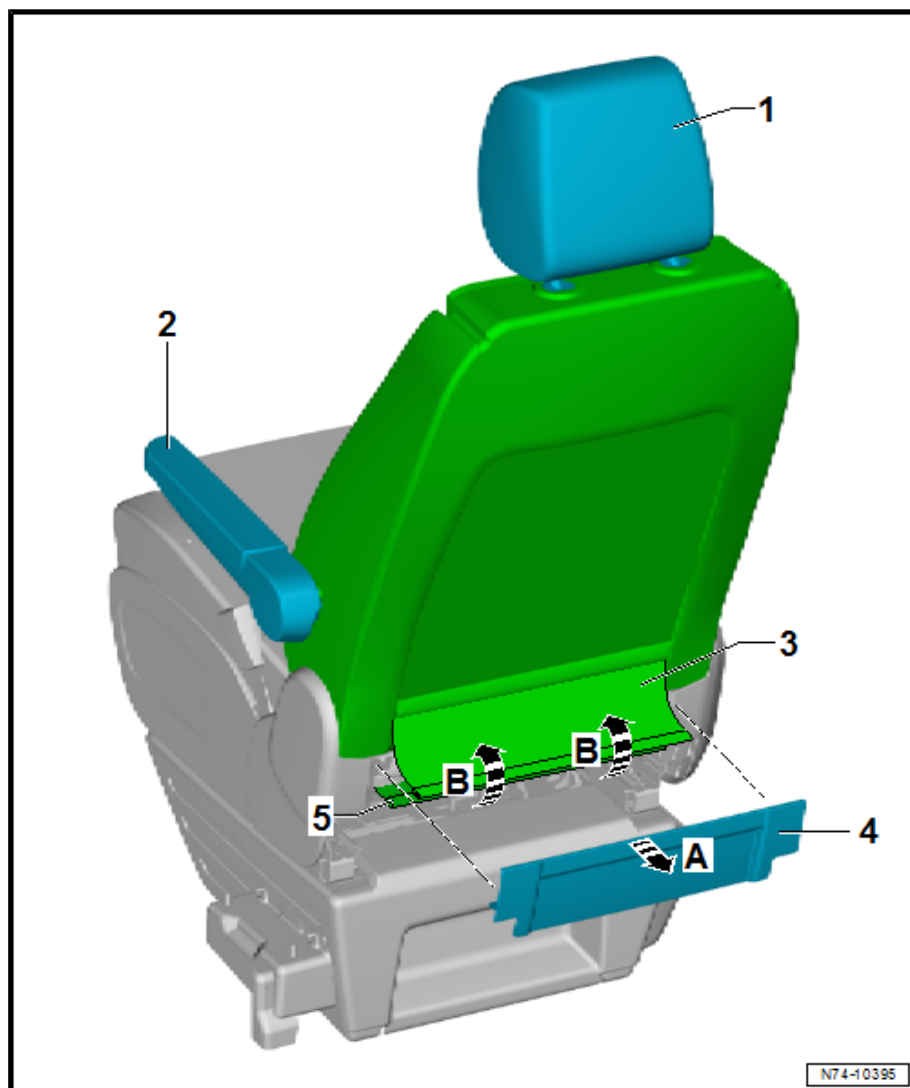
**Vehicles with side airbag**

- Connect airbag adapter ⇒ [page 317](#) .

**Vehicles with electrically adjustable seat**

- Remove front backrest ⇒ [page 336](#) .

**Continued for all vehicles**



- Switch off ignition and all electrical consumers.
- Withdraw ignition key.
- If fitted, remove armrest -2- ➔ [page 66](#) .
- Remove head restraint -1-.
- If present, remove screws on left and right from cover -4-.
- Unclip cover -4- in -direction of arrow A-.
- If fitted, disconnect connector.
- Open clamping strip on backrest cover -3- from mounting -5- in direction of -arrow B- using front end hook - 3370- .
- Unhook tensioning wires from backrest frame.
- Roll backrest cover -3- upwards at front and rear.
- Guide cover together with padding -3- over head restraint locking mechanism.
- Remove cover together with padding -3- upwards from backrest frame.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



- Upon installing, make sure that the cover is free of creases.

#### Vehicles with side airbag



#### Note

*Battery must be connected with ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioners) are repaired incorrectly, they could be accidentally triggered. Ensure that nobody is in vehicle when connecting battery.*

- Switch on ignition.
- Connect earth wire at battery negative terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



#### Note

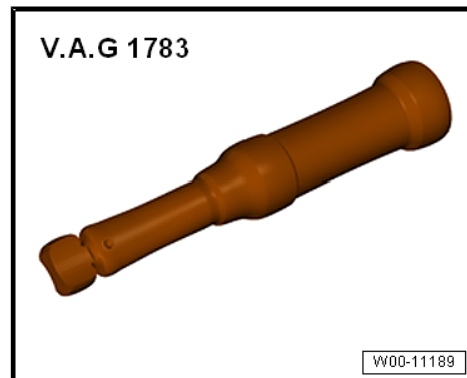
*If the ignition is not switched on after reconnecting the battery, the ignition may only be switched on (key/button) from the driver's seat with the seat set in the rearmost position.*

- Use ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester to read event memory, clear event memory as necessary, and then read it again.

### 1.4.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding, double bench seat

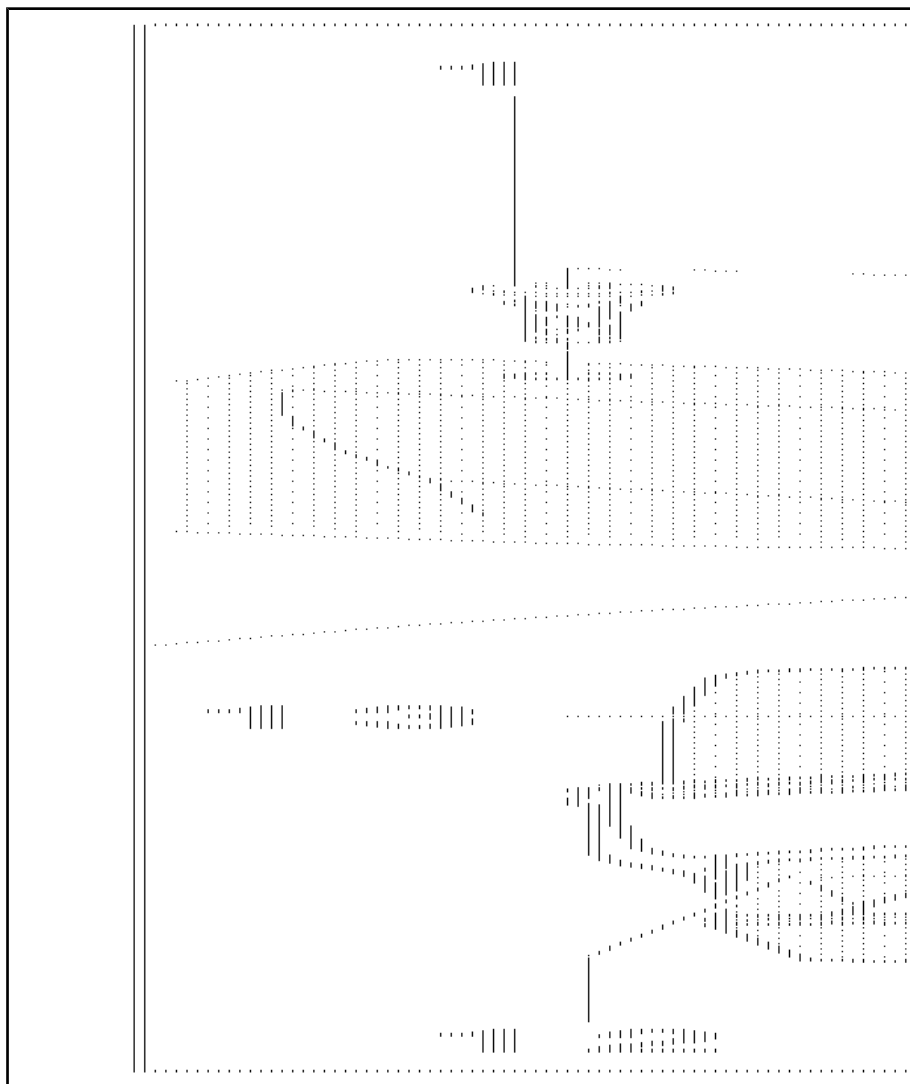
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



#### Note

*On vehicles equipped with partition panel, the backrest must be removed ⇒ [page 342](#) .*



### Removing

- Fold backrest down.
- Press button of respective left head restraint guide -3-.
- Pull out respective head restraints -2-.
- Press down padding in the rear area of the head restraint guides.
- Release catches and pull head restraint guides -1- and -3- out of backrest.



### Note

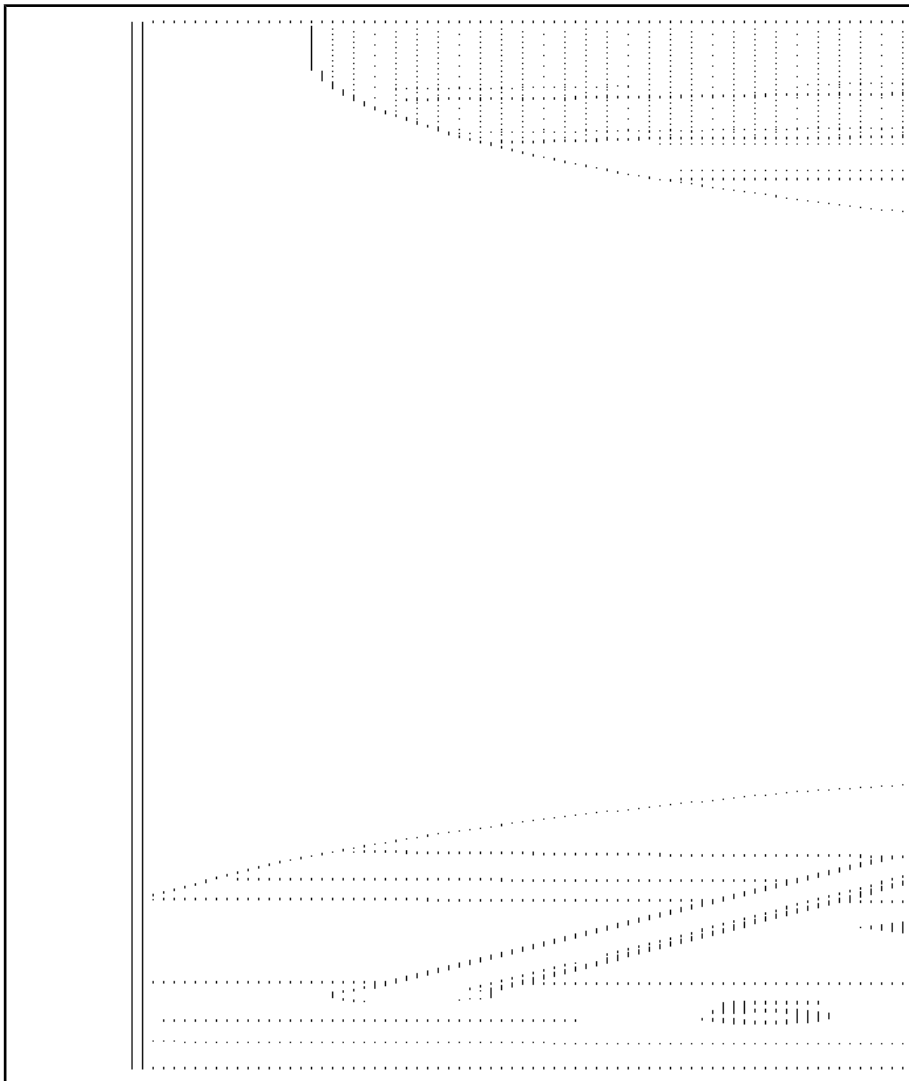
*Removing right head restraint guides -1- without destroying them is not possible. They must be renewed prior to installation.*

- Unscrew bolts -4-.
- Detach belt guide -5- from backrest.
- Detach profiles -6- and -13- from mountings -8- and -11-.
- If fitted, remove staples in areas -7-, -9-, -10- and -12-.



**Note**

*Staples are destroyed during removal and must be renewed.*



- Detach profile -5- in lower area on both left and right next to backrest attachment from backrest frame.
- Roll cover off padding until the tensioning wires are accessible.
- Unhook tensioning wire -4- on left and right from cover out of wire frame in padding.
- Unhook tensioning wire -3- in upper area on left and right from cover out of wire frame in padding.
- Unhook tensioning wires -1- and -2- in centre from cover out of wire frame in padding.



**Note**

*In case of vehicles with seat heating, remove cover separately. In addition, the wiring harness of the seat heating must be detached when removing the seat heating.*



- Remove cover from backrest padding.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

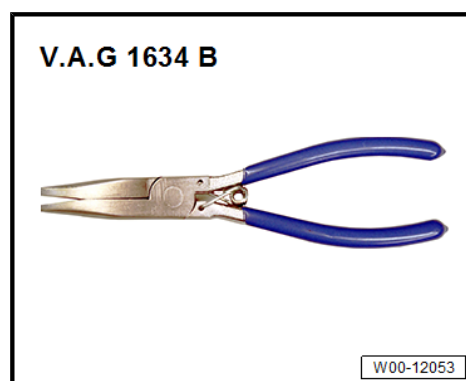
### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for belt guide	2 Nm

## 1.5 Separating cover and padding on seat pan

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B-



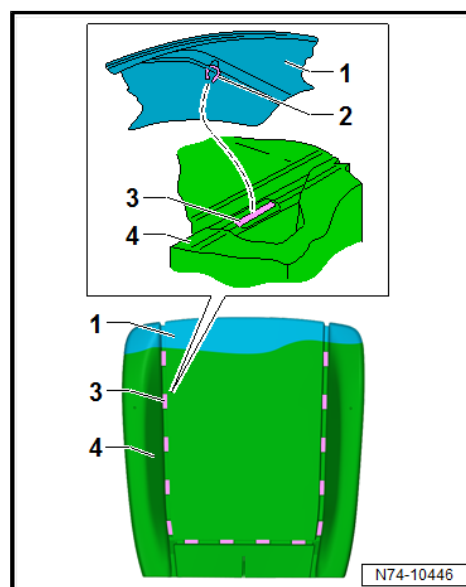
### Removing

- Remove seat pan cover and cushion ➔ [page 436](#) .
- Fold up seat cover -1- from seat padding -4-.
- Use pliers to cut through upholstery clips -2- at mountings -3-.
- Remove seat cover -1- from seat padding -4-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Use upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B- to secure upholstery clips.
- Upon installing, make sure that the cover is free of creases.

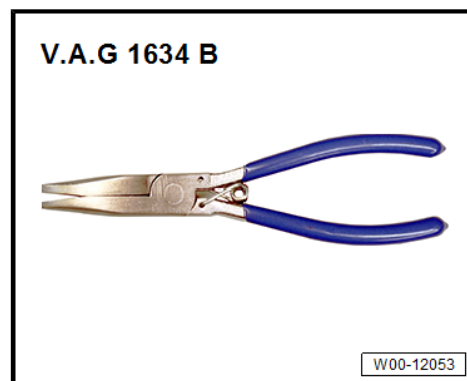


## 1.6 Separating cover and padding on backrest

### Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B-



**Removing**

**Vehicles with Alcantara or leather covers, or Alcantara/leather elements.**

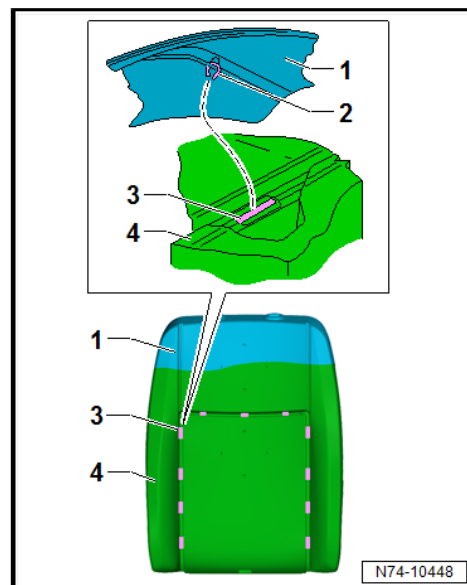
- Observe technical product information. Seat heating not functional; seat cover or backrest cover damaged. Process no.: 2020995

**All vehicles**

- Remove backrest cover and cushion ⇒ [page 444](#) .
- Roll cover upwards from padding.

**Vehicles without side airbag**

- Use pliers to cut through upholstery clips -2- at mountings -3-.
- Remove backrest cover -1- from backrest padding -4-.





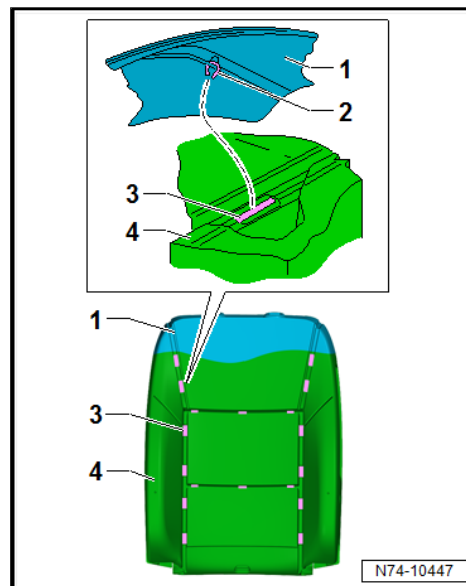
### Vehicles with side airbag

- Use pliers to cut through upholstery clips -2- at mountings -3-.
- Remove backrest cover -1- from backrest padding -4-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Use upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B- to secure upholstery clips.
- Upon installing, make sure that the cover is free of creases.



## 1.7 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8-

⇒ ["1.7.1 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 , individual seat", page 452](#)

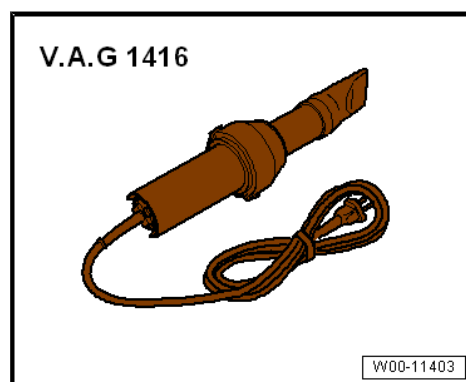
⇒ ["1.7.2 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 , double bench seat", page 454](#)

⇒ ["1.7.3 Removing and installing seat heating element Z6 / Z8 , in seat cover", page 455](#)

### 1.7.1 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8- , individual seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

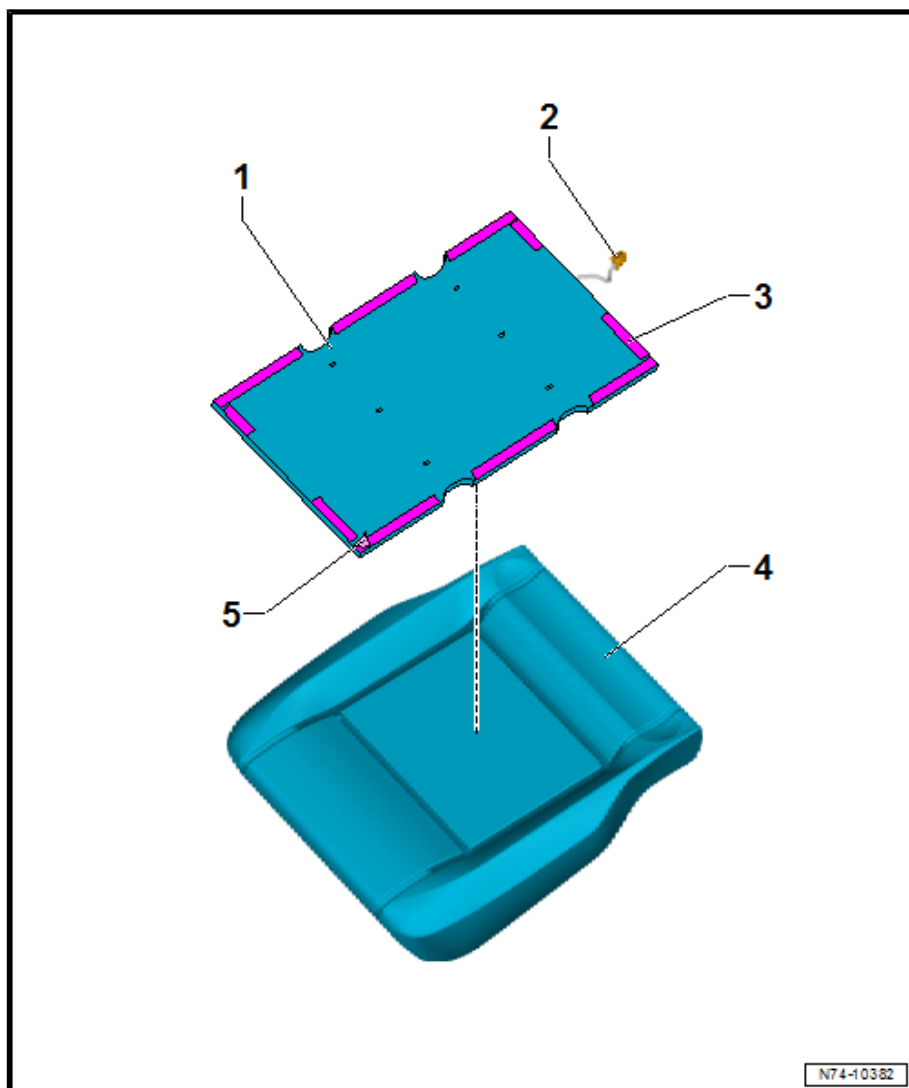
- ♦ Hot-air blower - V.A.G 1416-



### Note

*Seat heater element cannot be removed without causing damage.*





### Removing

- Remove cover of front seat cushion ⇒ [page 436](#) .
- Separate electrical connector -2- directly on heater element -1-.
- Partially warm-up heater element -1- and padding -4- using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- from a distance of ≈ 30 cm.



### Note

*Temperature setting of hot air blower: 220°C*

- Carefully pull heater element -1- off padding -4-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

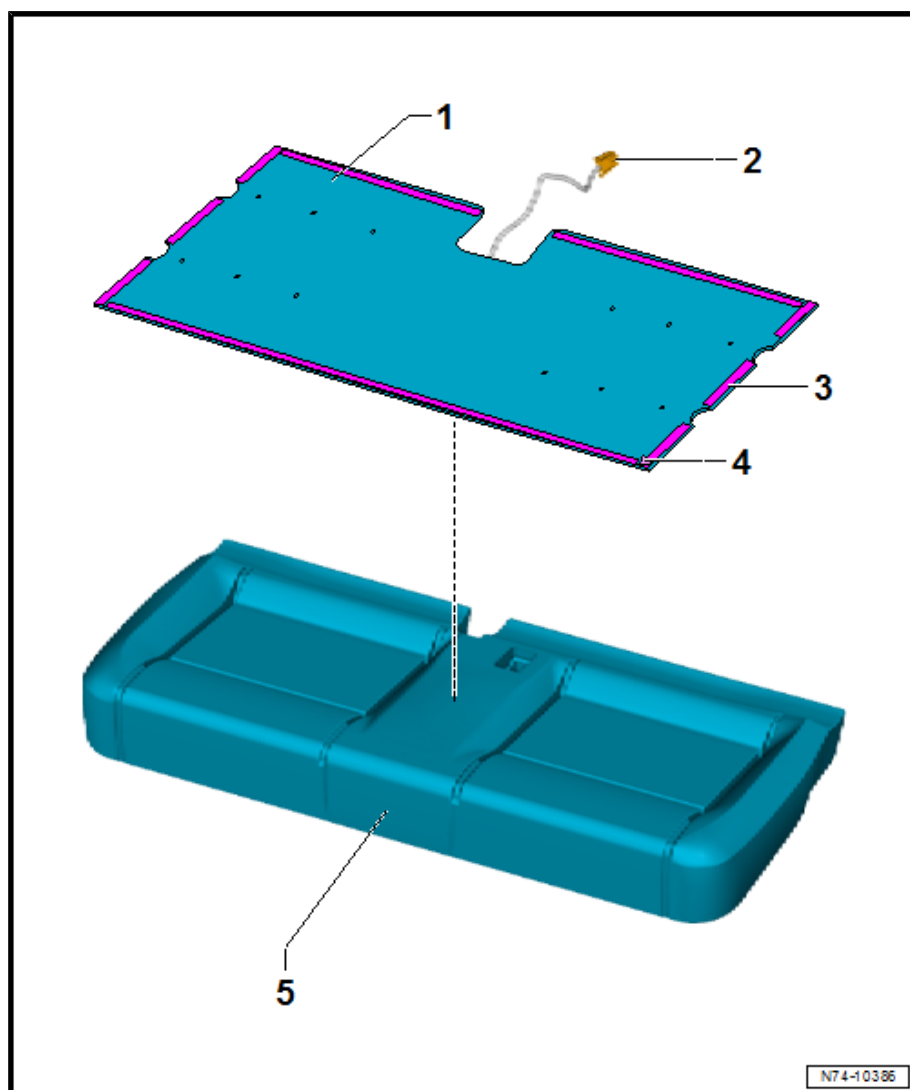
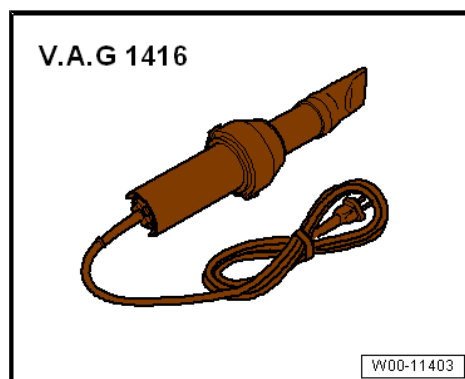
- Align new heater element -1- on padding -4-.
- Pull protective films -5- one after other off heater elements. Make sure not to damage heater elements -3-.
- Bond in heater element -1- without creases.



## 1.7.2 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8- , double bench seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Hot-air blower - V.A.G 1416-





## Removing



### Note

*Seat heater element of front double bench seat cannot be removed without causing damage.*

- Remove seat cover and padding ⇒ [page 436](#) .
- Pull out wires through seat pan.
- Partially warm-up heater element -1- and padding -5- using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- from a distance of ≈ 30 cm.



### Note

*Temperature setting of hot air blower: 220°C*

- Carefully pull heater element -1- off padding -5-.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Align new heater element -1- on padding -5-.
- Pull protective films -4- off heater elements -3- one after the other. Ensure to not damage the heater elements -1-.
- Bond in heater element -1- without creases.
- Make sure that wires of connector -2- are routed correctly.

### 1.7.3 Removing and installing seat heating element -Z6- / -Z8- , in seat cover

**Vehicles with Alcantara or leather covers, or Alcantara/leather elements.**

- Observe technical product information. Seat heating not functional; seat cover or backrest cover damaged. Process no.: 2050995

#### All vehicles

The seat heating element is integrated in the seat cover  
⇒ [page 436](#) .

### 1.8 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9-

⇒ [“1.8.1 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 , individual seat”, page 455](#)

⇒ [“1.8.2 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 , double bench seat”, page 457](#)

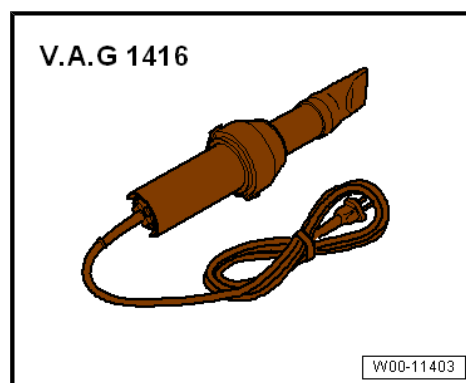
⇒ [“1.8.3 Removing and installing backrest heating element Z7 / Z9 , in backrest cover”, page 459](#)

#### 1.8.1 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9- , individual seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

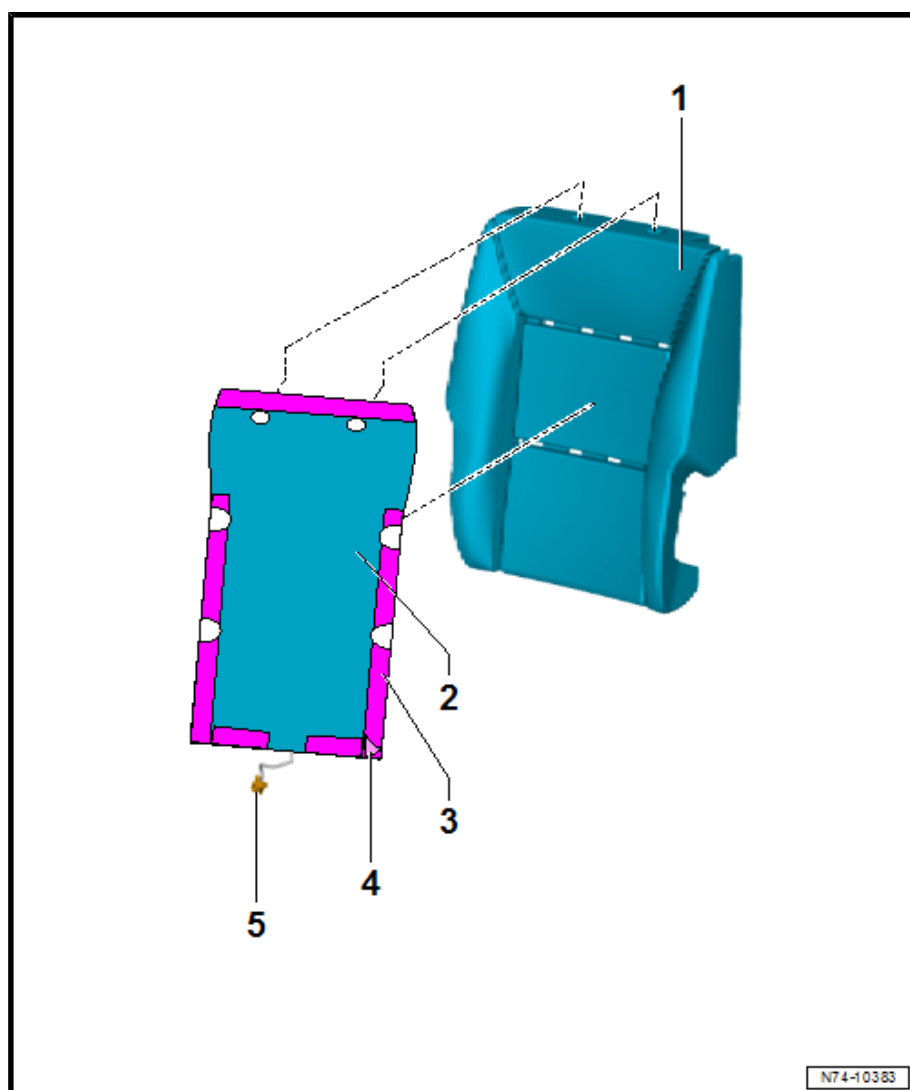


◆ Hot-air blower - V.A.G 1416-



Note

*Backrest heater element cannot be removed without causing damage.*



Removing

- Remove cover of front seat backrest ⇒ [page 444](#) .



- Separate electrical connector -5- directly on heater element -2-.
- Partially warm-up heater element -2- and padding -1- using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- from a distance of  $\approx$  30 cm.



**Note**

*Temperature setting of hot air blower: 220°C*

- Carefully pull heater element -2- off padding -1-.

**Installing**

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

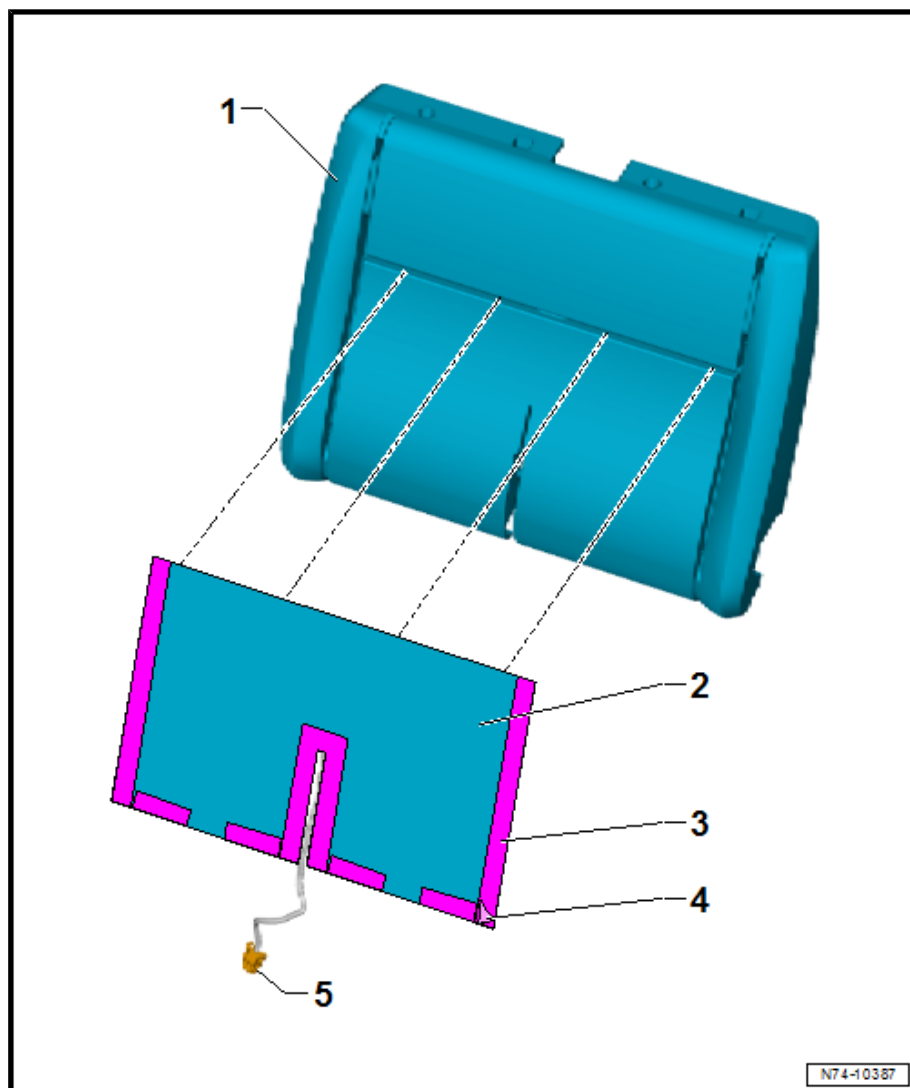
- Align new heater element -2- on padding -1-.
- Pull protective films -4- off heater elements -3- one after the other. Ensure to not damage the heater elements -2-.
- Bond in heater element -2- without creases.

### 1.8.2 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9- , double bench seat

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Hot-air blower - V.A.G 1416-





## Removing



### Note

*Backrest heater element of front double bench seat cannot be removed without causing damage.*

- Detach cover of front seat backrest up to the upper area (head restraints) ⇒ [page 444](#) .
- Separate electrical connector -5- directly on heater element -2-.
- Partially warm-up heater element -2- and padding -1- using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- from a distance of ≈ 30 cm.



### Note

*Temperature setting of hot air blower: 220°C*

- Carefully pull heater element -2- off padding -1-.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



- Align new heater element -2- on padding -1-.
- Pull protective films -4- off heater elements -3- one after the other. Ensure to not damage the heater elements -2-.
- Bond in heater element -2- without creases.
- Make sure that wires of connector -5- are routed correctly.

### **1.8.3 Removing and installing backrest heating element -Z7- / -Z9- , in backrest cover**

**Vehicles with Alcantara or leather covers, or Alcantara/leather elements.**

- Observe technical product information. Seat heating not functional; seat cover or backrest cover damaged. Process no.: 2050995

#### **All vehicles**

The backrest heating element is integrated in the backrest cover  
⇒ [page 444](#) .



## 2 Rear seat covers and padding

⇒ [“2.1 Removing and installing covers and padding”, page 460](#)

⇒ [“2.2 Separating cover and padding”, page 477](#)

### 2.1 Removing and installing covers and padding

⇒ [“2.1.1 Removing and installing cover and padding, Multivan/Business, seat padding of individual seat, 2nd row”, page 460](#)

⇒ [“2.1.2 Removing and installing cover and padding, Multivan/Business, seat padding of individual seat with integrated child seat, 2nd row”, page 464](#)

⇒ [“2.1.3 Removing and installing cover and padding, Transporter, seat padding of individual seat, 2nd row”, page 472](#)

⇒ [“2.1.4 Removing and installing cover and padding, Transporter, seat padding of double bench seat, 2nd row”, page 474](#)

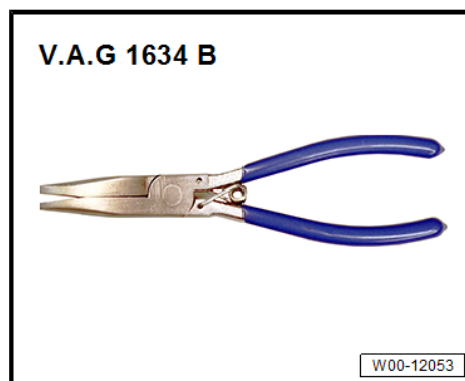
⇒ [“2.1.5 Removing and installing cover and padding, double cab, seat padding of 3-seater bench seat, 2nd row”, page 475](#)

RO:

#### 2.1.1 Removing and installing cover and padding, Multivan/Business, seat padding of individual seat, 2nd row

Special tools and workshop equipment required

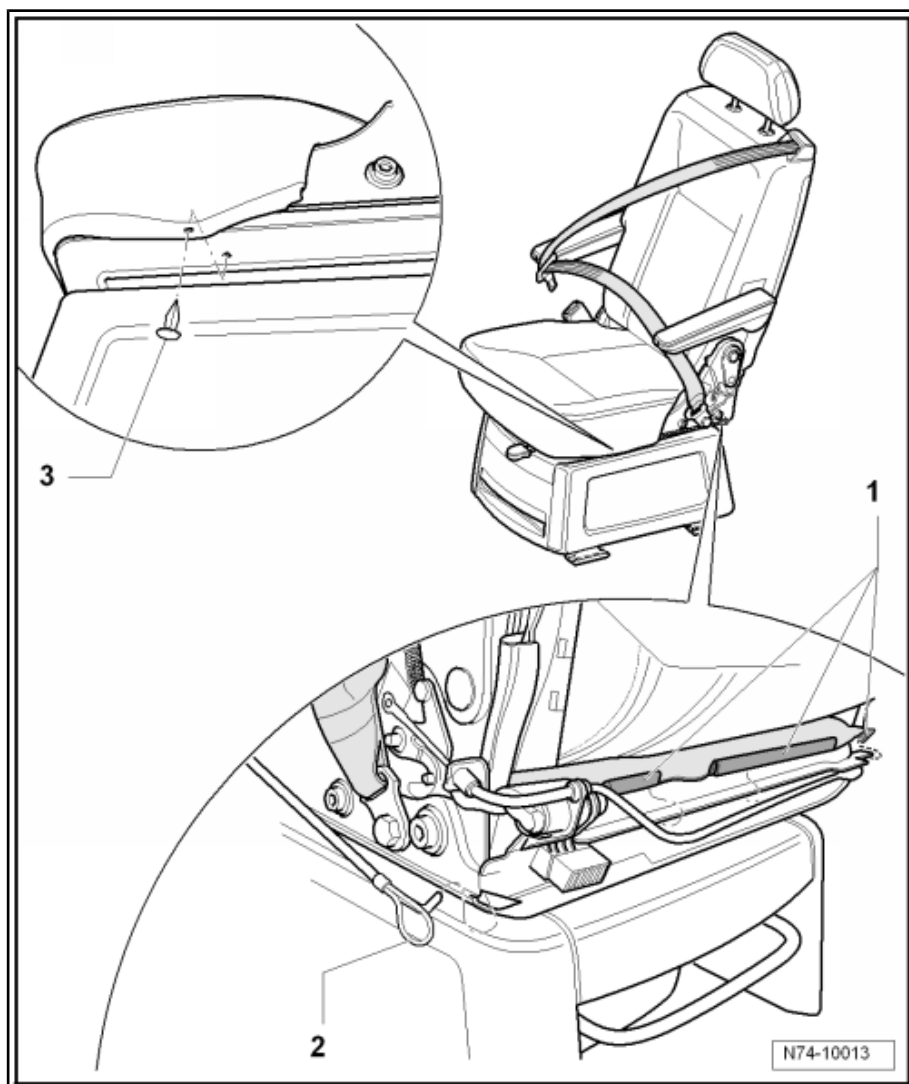
- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B-



#### Note

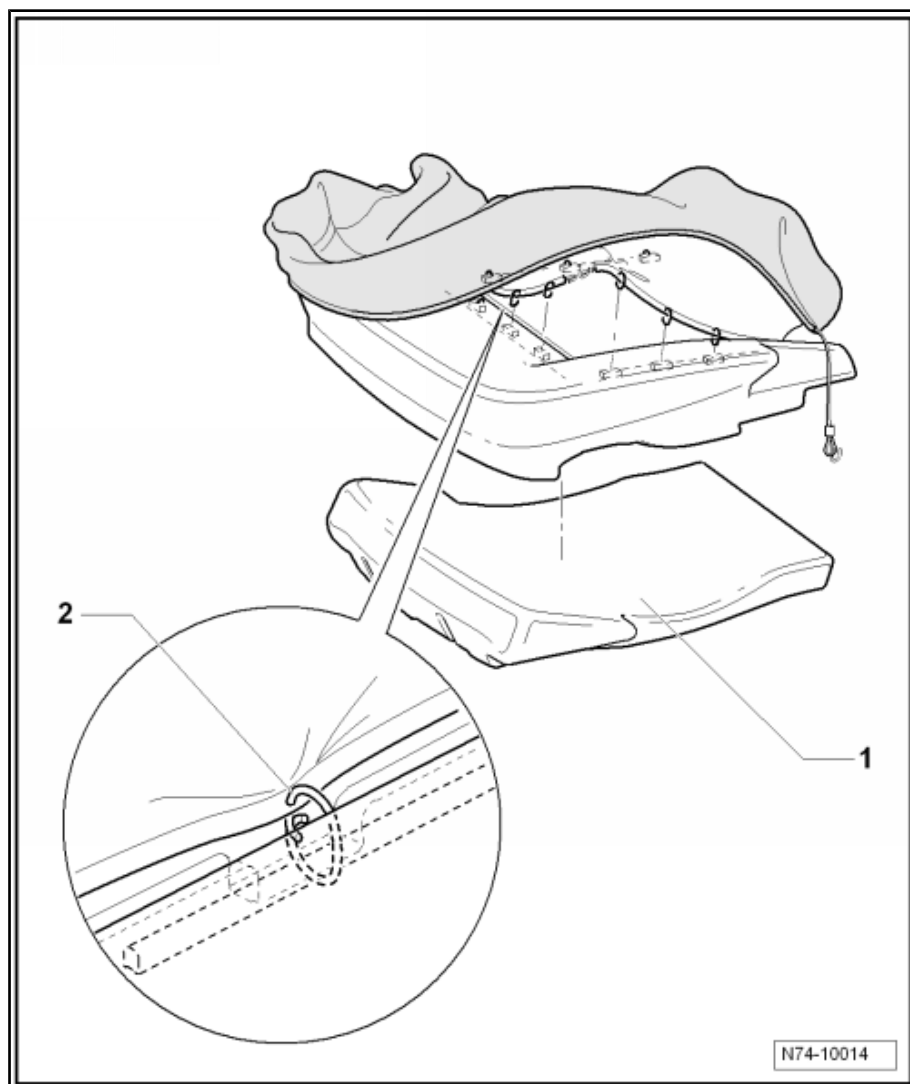
*The removal and installation procedures may have to be modified slightly depending on models.*





### Removing

- Remove front seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove rear seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove right seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove left seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Detach profile sections -1- from mountings in seat frame.
- Unhook tensioning strap -2- on left and right.
- Pull out clips -3- on left and right from mountings in seat frame.
- Remove padding and cover towards front from seat frame.



- Remove seat inlay -1- downwards from seat padding.
- Cut through clips -2- and remove cover from seat padding.



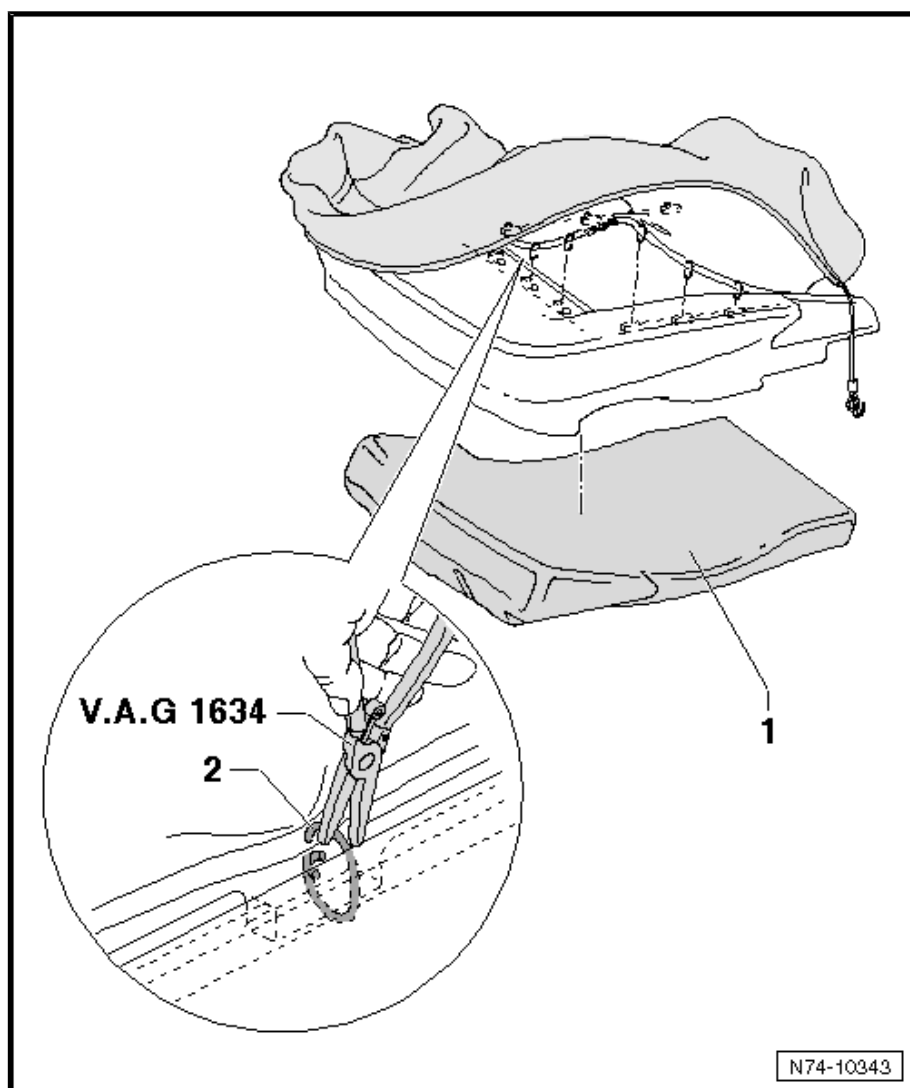
**Note**

*The upholstery clips -2- are damaged beyond repair during removal and must therefore be renewed during installation.*



**Note**

- ◆ *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- ◆ *Always renew clips. The part numbers of the clips can be found in the ⇒ Electronic Parts Catalogue (ETKA).*
- ◆ *Attach clips using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B-.*
- ◆ *To aid installation, heat up cover to approx. 30°C.*



### Installing

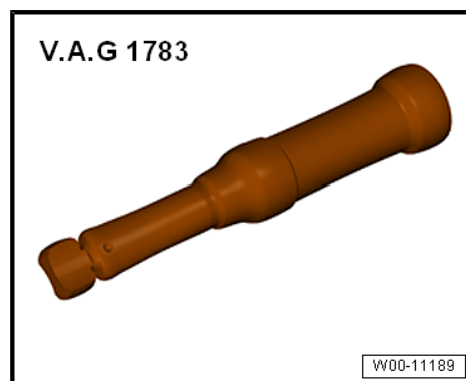
Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Place cover on seat padding.
- Attach cover -2- all around padding with new upholstery clips at the positions indicated, using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B- .
- Install seat inlay -1-.



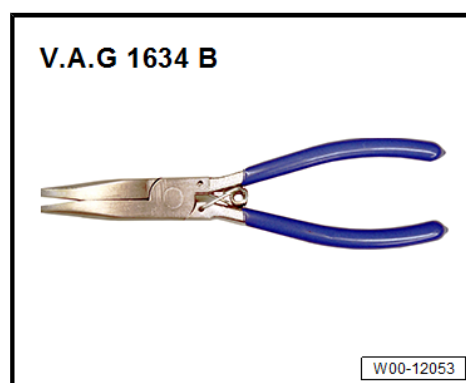
## 2.1.2 Removing and installing cover and padding, Multivan/Business, seat padding of individual seat with integrated child seat, 2nd row

Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



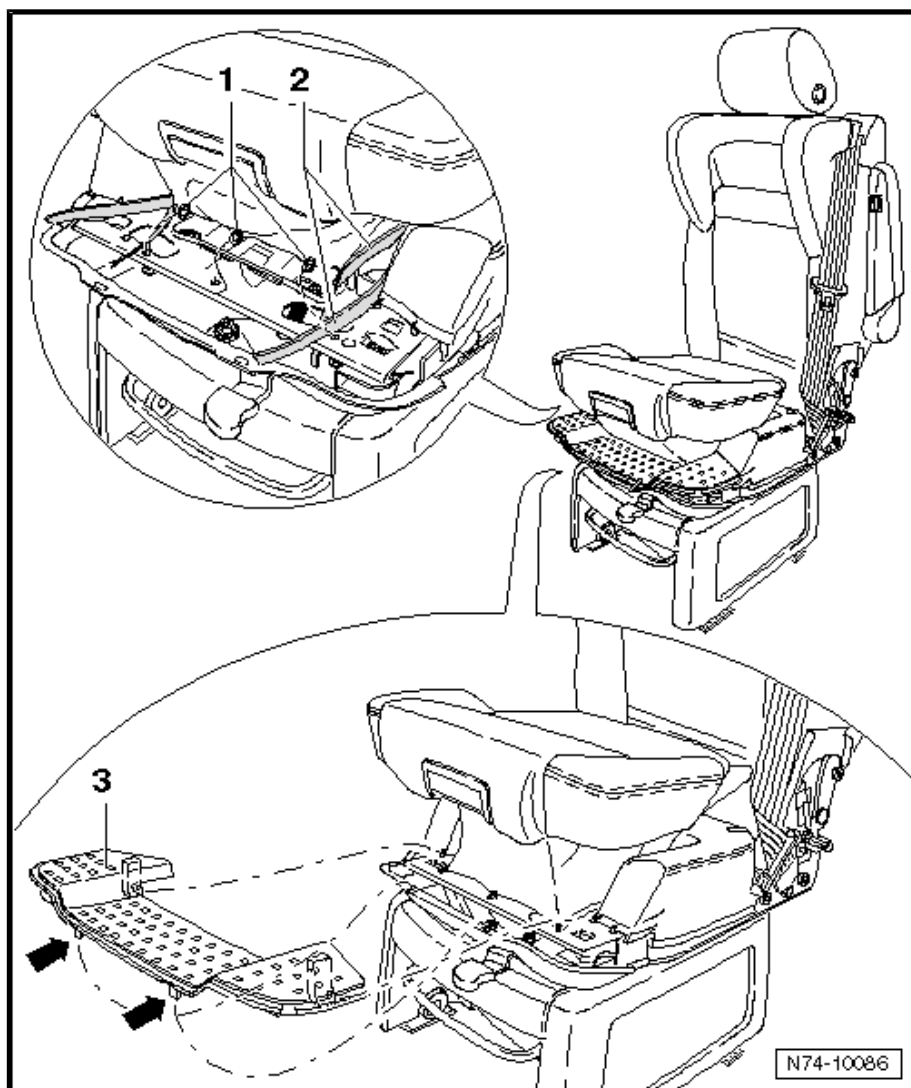
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B-



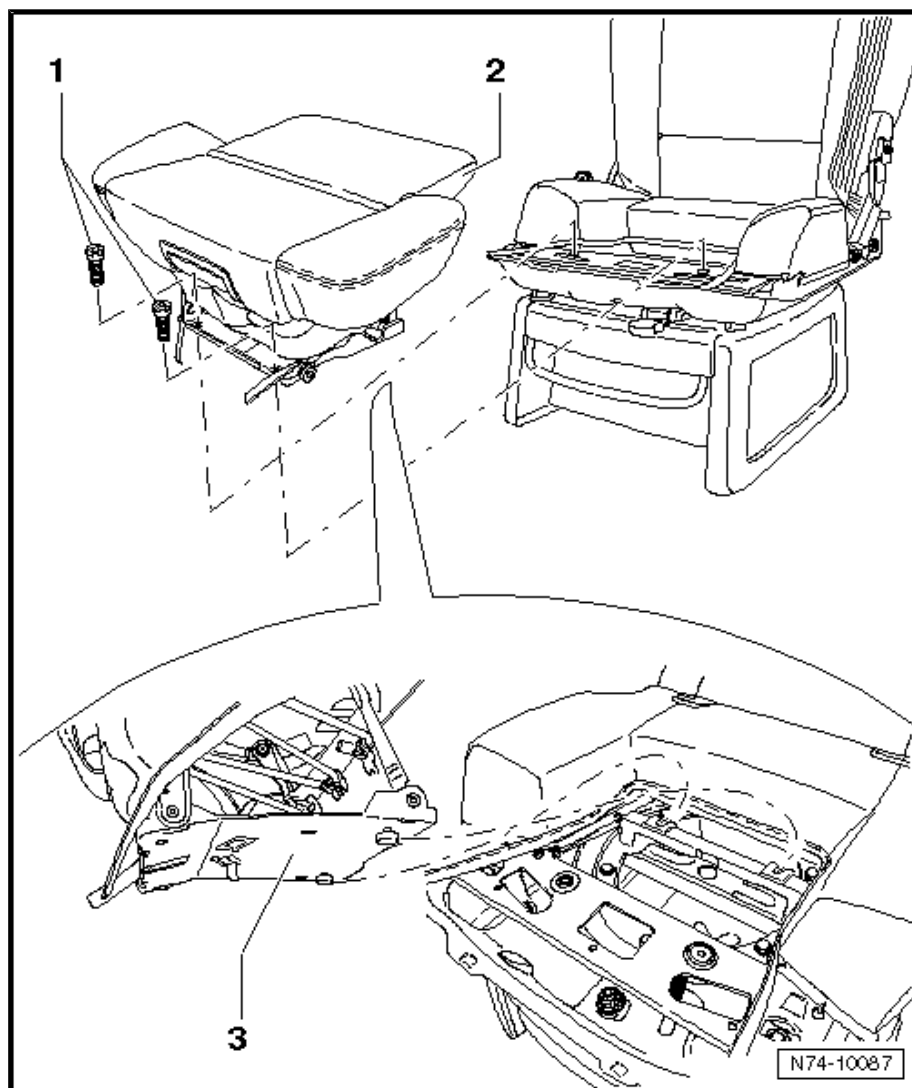
### Note

*3 upholstery clips -1- are destroyed during removal. They must be renewed when installing.*



### Removing

- Remove front seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove rear seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove right seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove left seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Press catches -arrows-.
- Lift up foot rest -3- at front.
- Detach rear area of footrest from mountings in seat frame.
- Cut through and remove upholstery clips -1-.
- Open zip fastener
- 2-

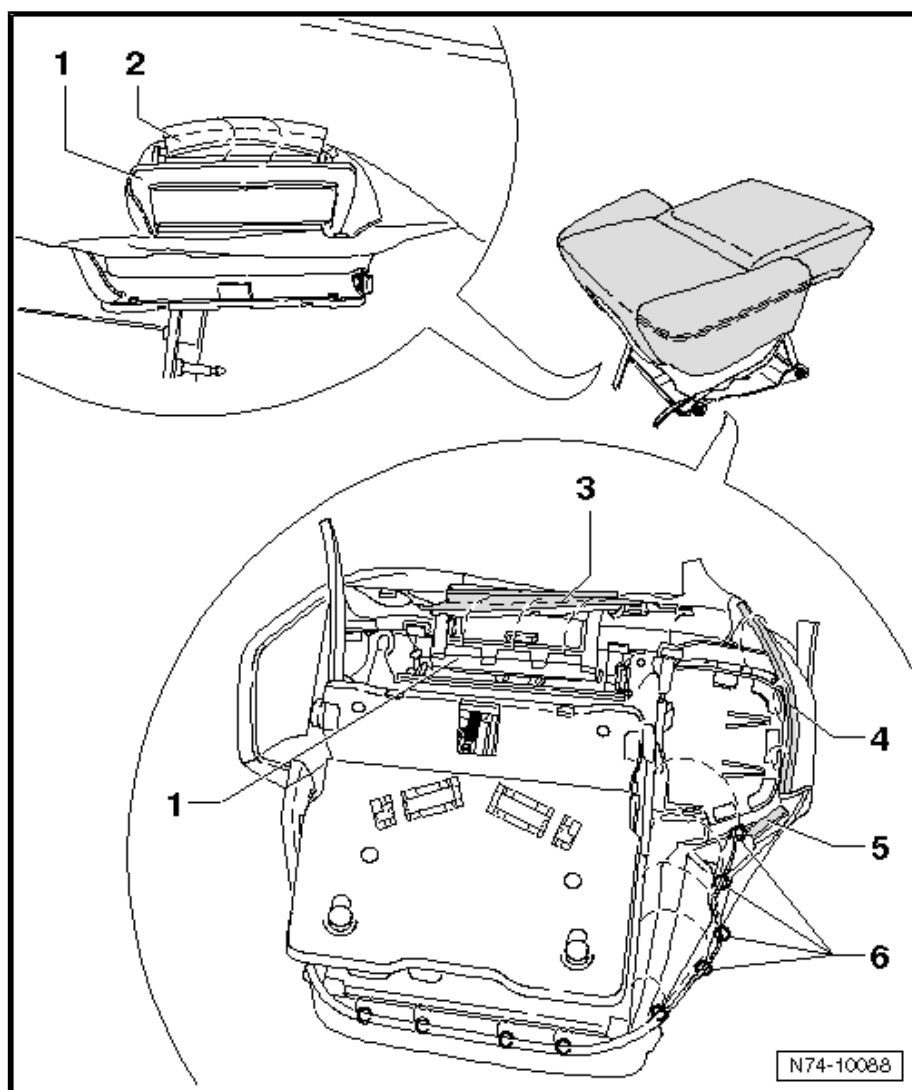


- Unscrew bolts -1-.
- Slide seat cushion -2- to rear until the child seat adjustment mechanism -3- is released.
- Remove seat padding together with child seat adjustment mechanism upwards from seat frame.

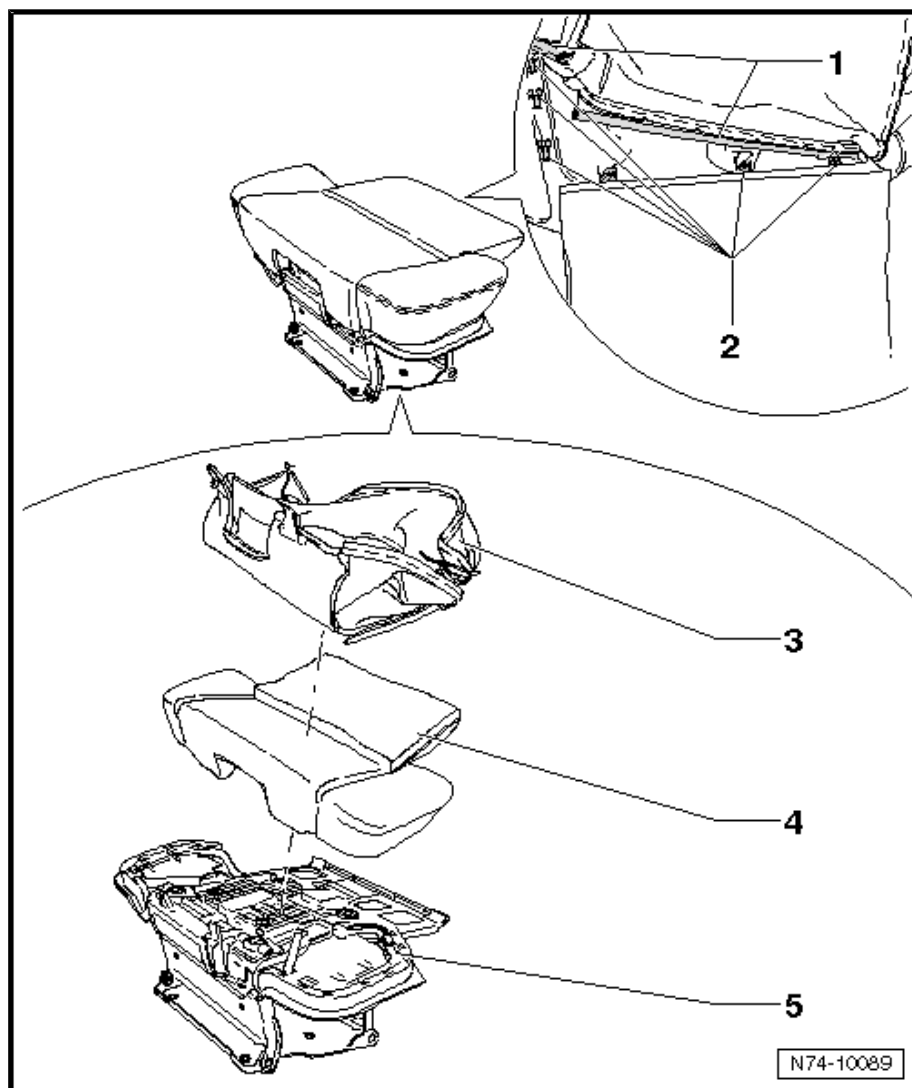


**Note**

*Upholstery clips -6- are damaged beyond repair during removal. They must be renewed when installing.*



- Cut through and remove all upholstery clips -6- around circumference.
- Release clamping profiles -4- and -5- on both sides.
- Detach clamping profile -3- from mountings in trim -1-.
- Detach clamping profile -2- from mountings in trim -1-.



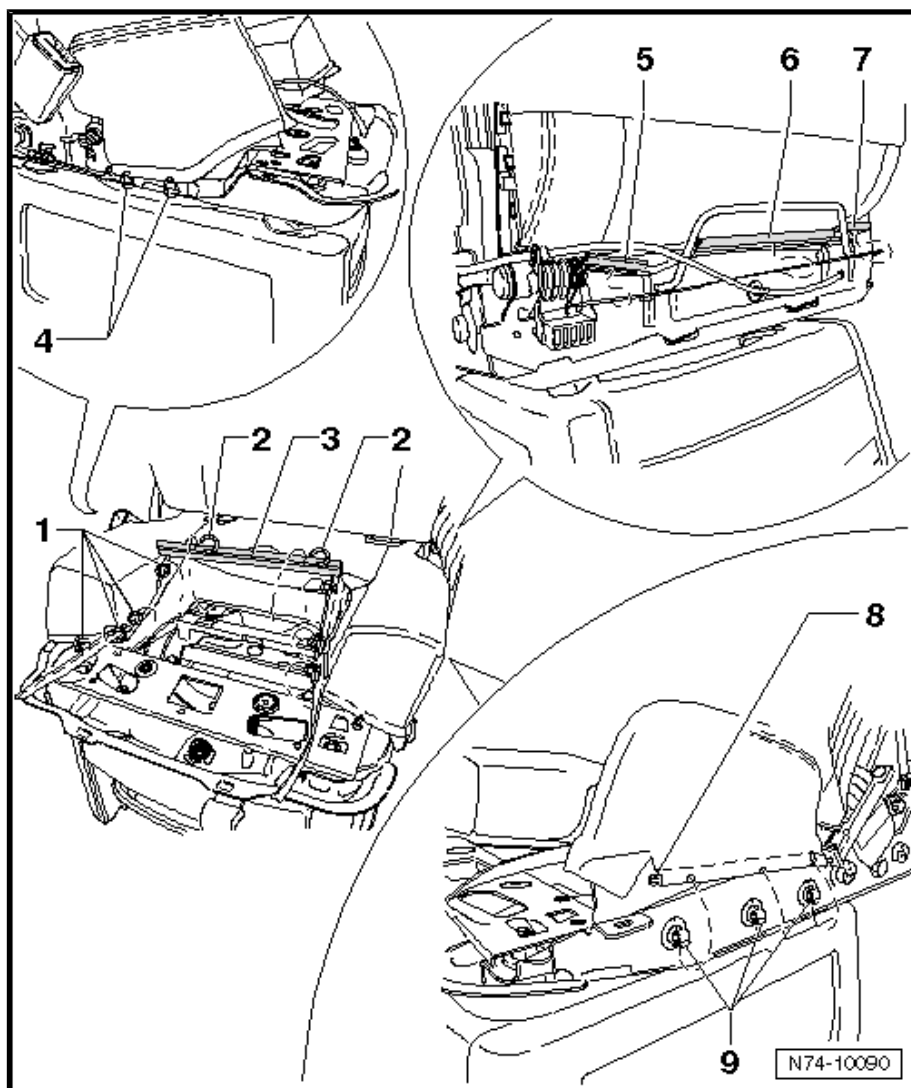
- Roll up cover -3- on outer sides working around perimeter.
- Using a small screwdriver, unclip cover profiles -1- from mountings -2- in padding.
- Remove cover -3- and padding -4- from child seat adjustment mechanism -5-.



**Note**

*Upholstery clips -1- and -2- are destroyed during removal. They must be renewed when installing.*





- Cut through and remove upholstery clips -1- on both inner sides.
- Cut through and remove rear upholstery clips -2-.
- Detach clamping profile -3- from seat frame.
- In the rear area, detach clamping profiles -5-, -6- and -7- from seat frame.
- Cut through and remove the 2 upholstery clips -4- on the right side.



**Note**

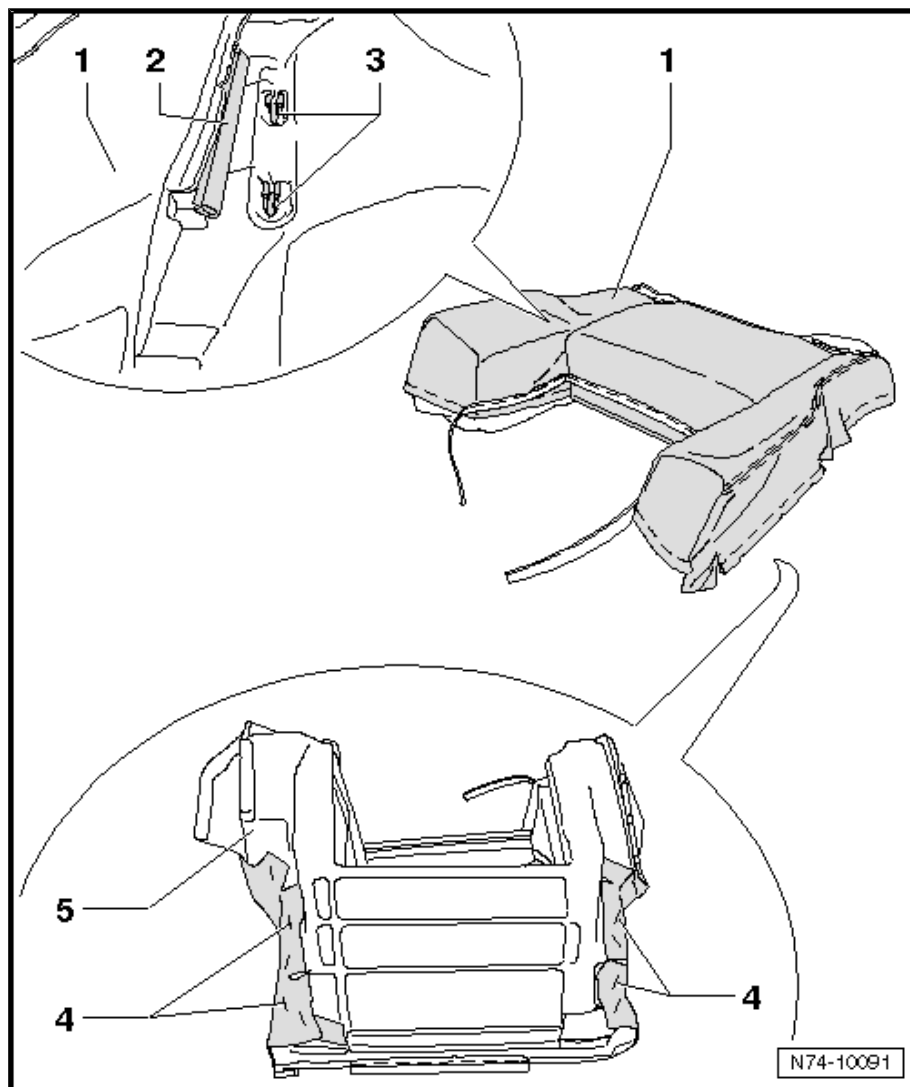
*Upholstery clips -4- are damaged beyond repair during removal. They must be renewed when installing.*

- On the left side, release tension strap -8- from the three mountings -9- on the seat frame.
- Remove padding and cover from seat frame.



**Note**

*When installing the cover, use upholstery clips instead of the staples -4-.*



- Underneath, remove all staples -4- from padding -5-.
- Roll cover -1- over padding.
- Using a small screwdriver, unclip profile section -2- from mountings -3- in padding on both sides.
- Remove cover from padding.

**Installing**

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Close zip fastener with zip closer ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA) .



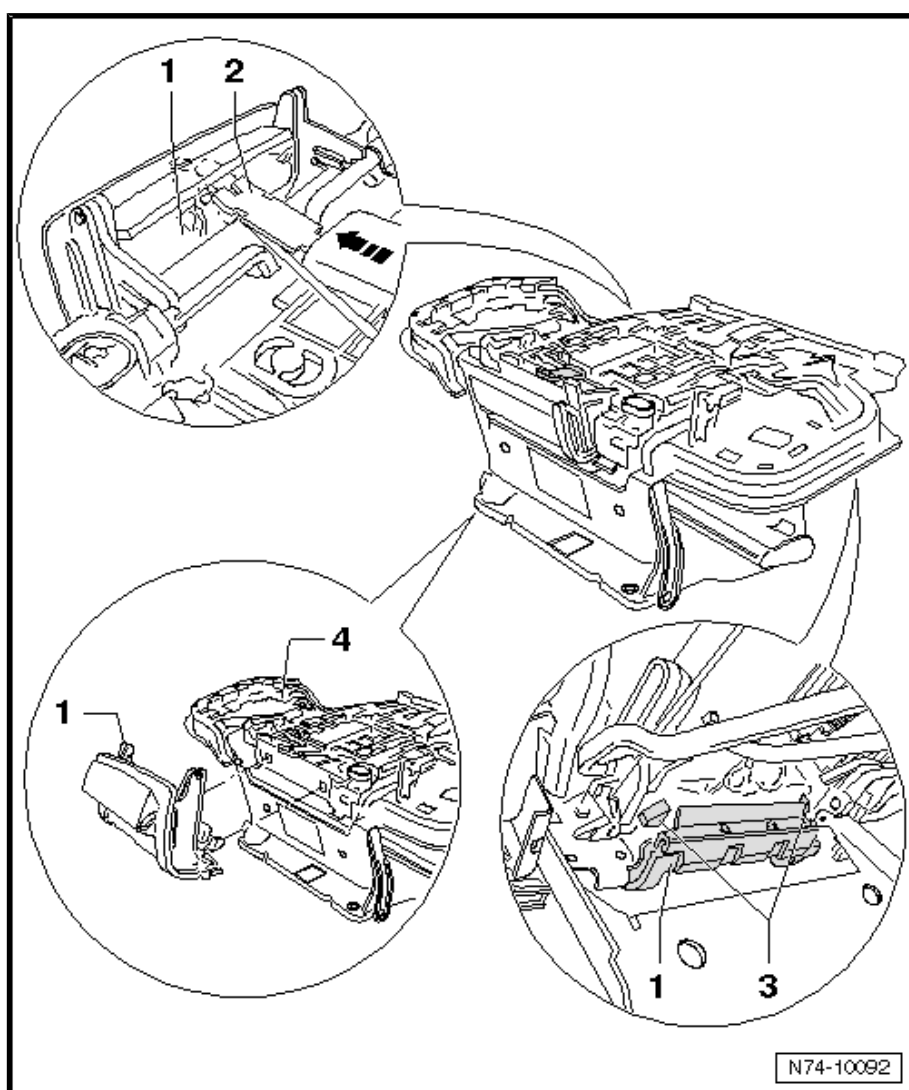
## Note

- ◆ Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.
- ◆ Always renew clips. The part numbers of the clips can be found in the ⇒ *Electronic Parts Catalogue (ETKA)*.
- ◆ Attach clips using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B-.
- ◆ To aid installation, heat up cover to approx. 30°C.

## Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for seat cushion	8 Nm

## Removing and installing button with trim for child seat adjustment mechanism



## Removing

- Remove cover and padding from 2nd seat row with integrated child seat ⇒ [page 460](#).

Note that only the cover and padding of the child seat adjustment mechanism must be removed.



- Push transfer element -2- towards front -arrow-.
- Detach from button -1-.
- Press together retaining hooks -3-.
- Detach button with trim from child seat adjustment mechanism -4-.

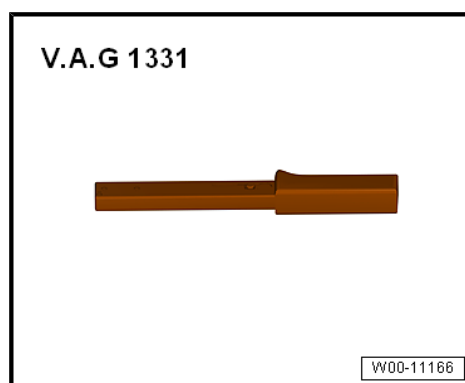
#### Installing

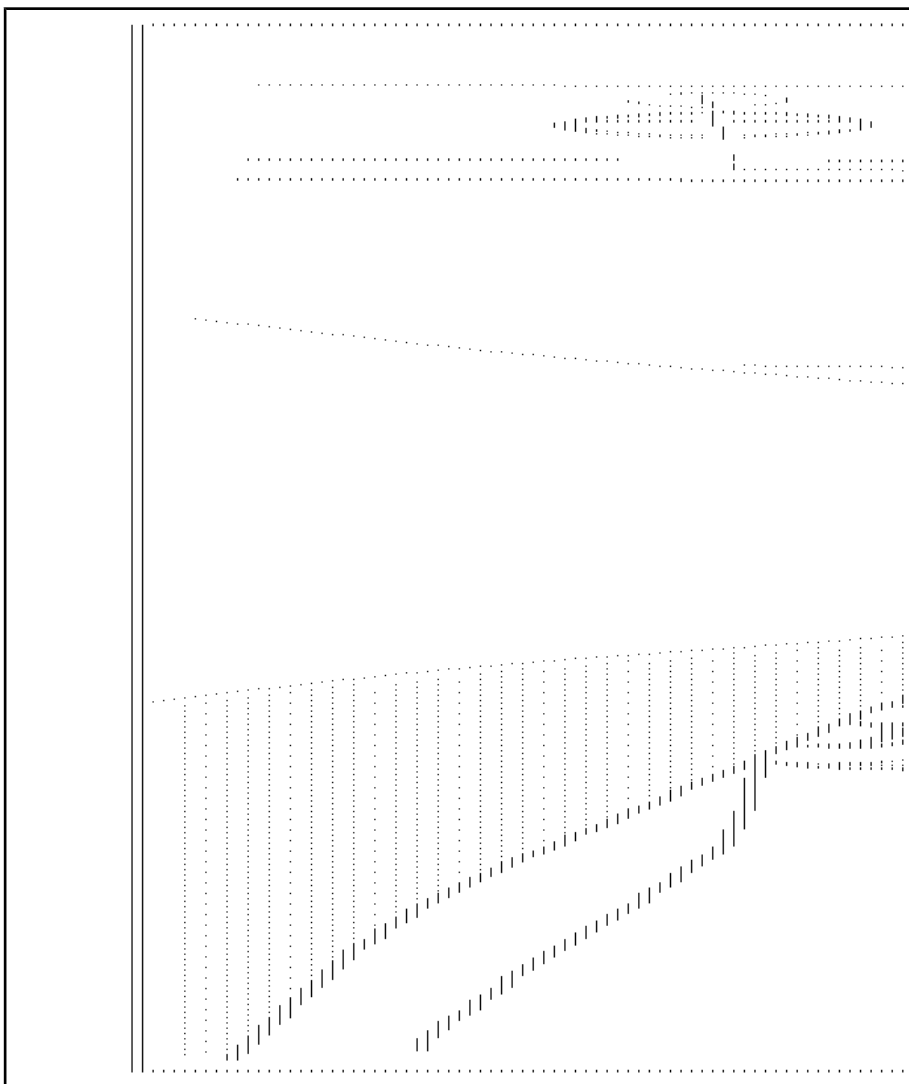
- Installation is carried out in reverse order.

### 2.1.3 Removing and installing cover and padding, Transporter, seat padding of individual seat, 2nd row

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-





## Removing



### Note

*The removal and installation procedures may have to be modified slightly depending on models.*

- Remove seat.
- Unscrew bolts -1- in rear area.
- Unscrew bolts -2- in front area, and remove seat padding from seat frame.

## Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

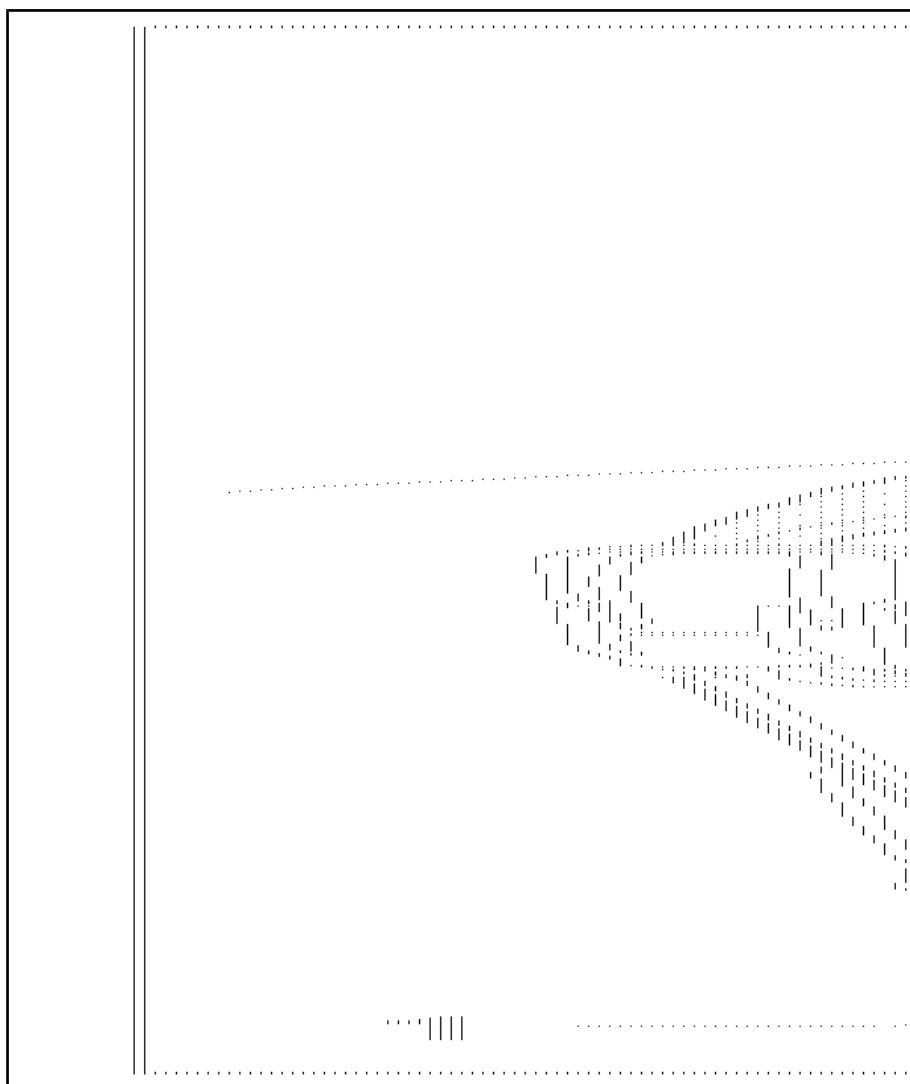
- ◆ [⇒ "3.1.3 Assembly overview - individual seats, Easy Entry", page 350](#)



## 2.1.4 Removing and installing cover and padding, Transporter, seat padding of double bench seat, 2nd row

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-



### Removing

- Remove bench seat.



- Remove centre belt buckle ⇒ [page 135](#) .



**Note**

*Belt buckle trim need not be dismantled.*

- Unscrew bolts -1-.
- Remove seat padding from seat frame.

**Installing**

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

**Specified torques**

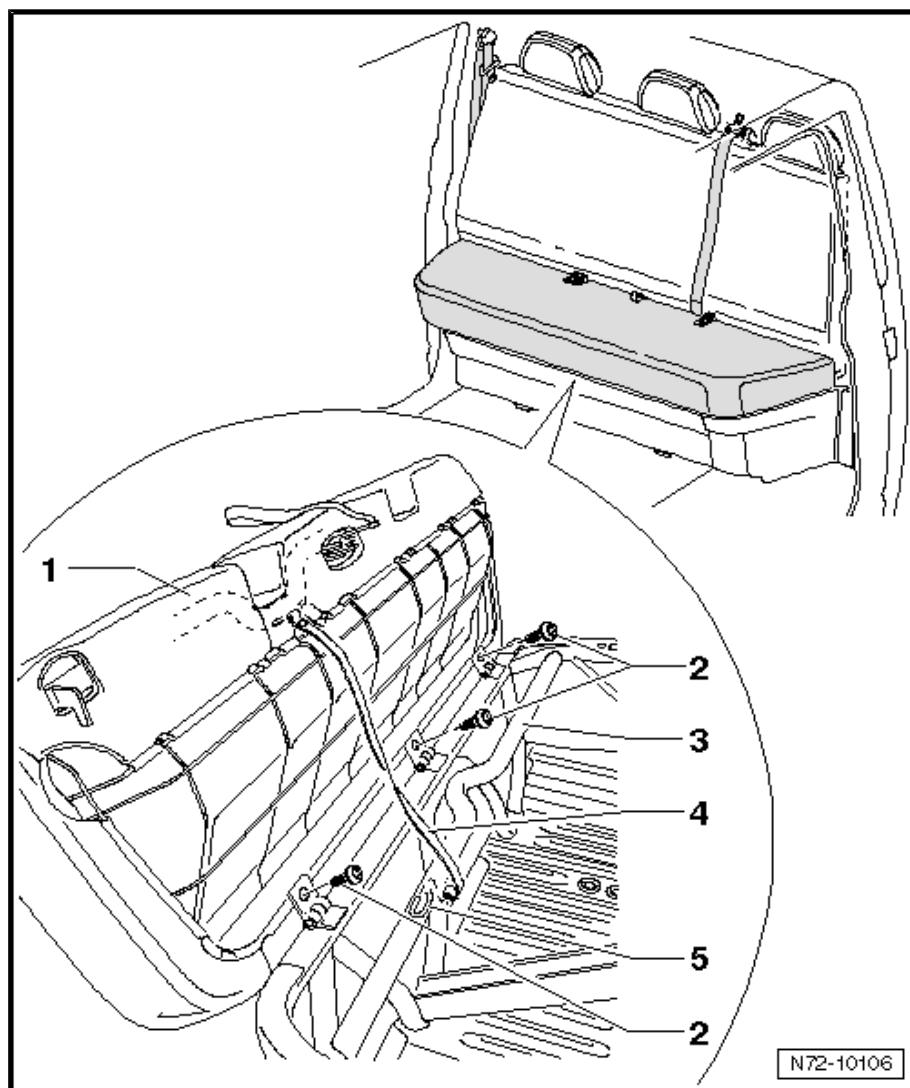
Component	Specified torque
Bolts for seat cushion	8 Nm

## 2.1.5 Removing and installing cover and padding, double cab, seat padding of 3-seater bench seat, 2nd row

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-





### Removing

- Fold up seat padding -1-.
- Detach retaining strap -4- from hook -5-.



### Note

*Hold the seat padding firmly in the folded out position, to avoid any damage once the retaining strap has been detached.*

- Unscrew bolts -2-.
- Remove seat padding from seat frame -3-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for seat cushion	20 Nm





## 2.2 Separating cover and padding

⇒ [“2.2.1 Separating cover and padding, Multivan, seat padding cover, 3-seater bench seat”, page 477](#)

⇒ [“2.2.2 Separating cover and padding, Multivan/Business, backrest cover, 2nd row”, page 479](#)

⇒ [“2.2.3 Separating cover and padding, Multivan, backrest cover, 2nd row, with integrated child seat”, page 484](#)

⇒ [“2.2.4 Separating cover and padding, Multivan, backrest cover, 3-seater bench seat”, page 493](#)

⇒ [“2.2.5 Separating cover and padding, Transporter, seat padding cover of individual seat, 2nd row”, page 497](#)

⇒ [“2.2.6 Separating cover and padding, Transporter, seat padding cover of double bench seat, 2nd row”, page 498](#)

⇒ [“2.2.7 Separating cover and padding, Transporter, seat padding cover, 3-seater bench seat”, page 500](#)

⇒ [“2.2.8 Separating cover and padding, Transporter, backrest cover of individual seat, 2nd row”, page 501](#)

⇒ [“2.2.9 Separating cover and padding, Transporter, backrest cover of double bench seat, 2nd row”, page 504](#)

⇒ [“2.2.10 Separating cover and padding, Transporter, backrest cover, 3-seater bench seat”, page 507](#)

⇒ [“2.2.11 Separating cover and padding, double cab, seat padding of 3-seater bench seat, 2nd row”, page 510](#)

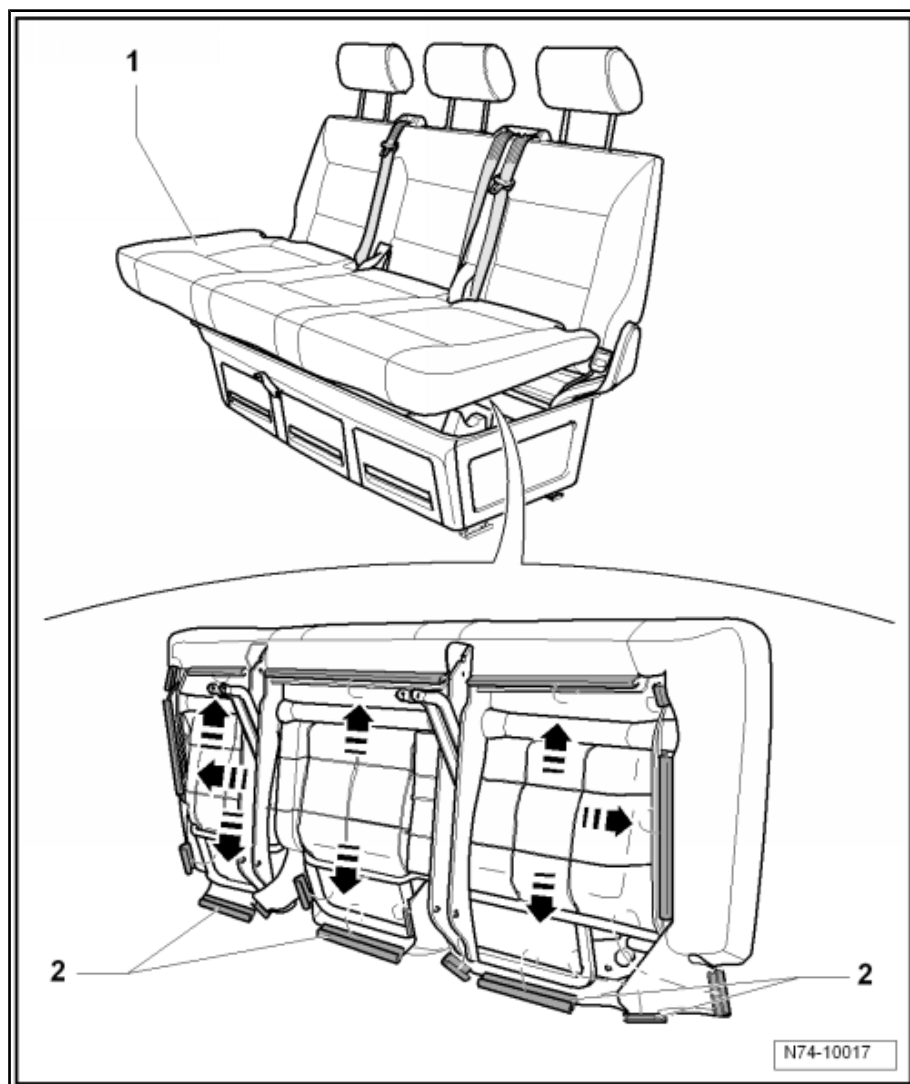
⇒ [“2.2.12 Separating cover and padding, double cab, backrest cover of 3-seater bench seat, 2nd row”, page 511](#)

### 2.2.1 Separating cover and padding, Multivan, seat padding cover, 3-seater bench seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B-





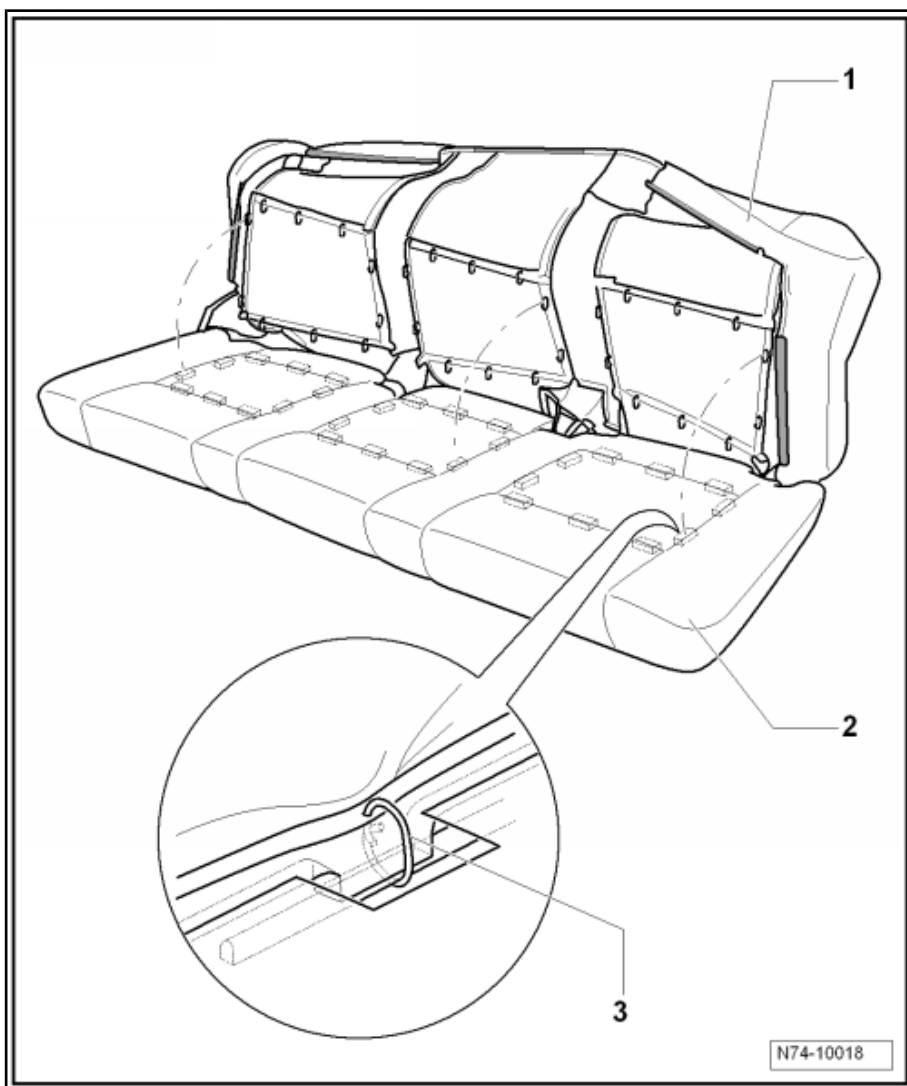
### Removing

- Fold seat cushion -1- forwards.
- Detach any profile sections -2- from mountings -arrows-.
- Remove padding and cover from seat pan.



### Note

*Upholstery clips -3- are damaged beyond repair during removal. They must be renewed prior to installation.*



- Roll cover -1- upwards.
- Cut through upholstery clips -3-.
- Release cover -1- from padding -2-.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Attach cover to padding with new upholstery clips at the positions indicated, using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B- .



#### Note

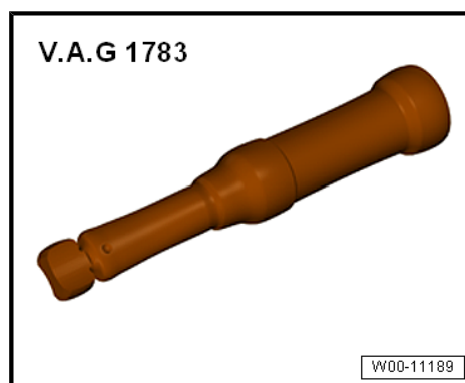
*The part numbers of the upholstery clips can be found in the ⇒ Electronic Parts Catalogue .*

### 2.2.2 Separating cover and padding, Multi-van/Business, backrest cover, 2nd row

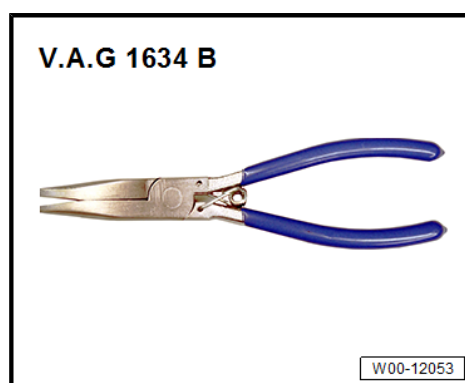
Special tools and workshop equipment required

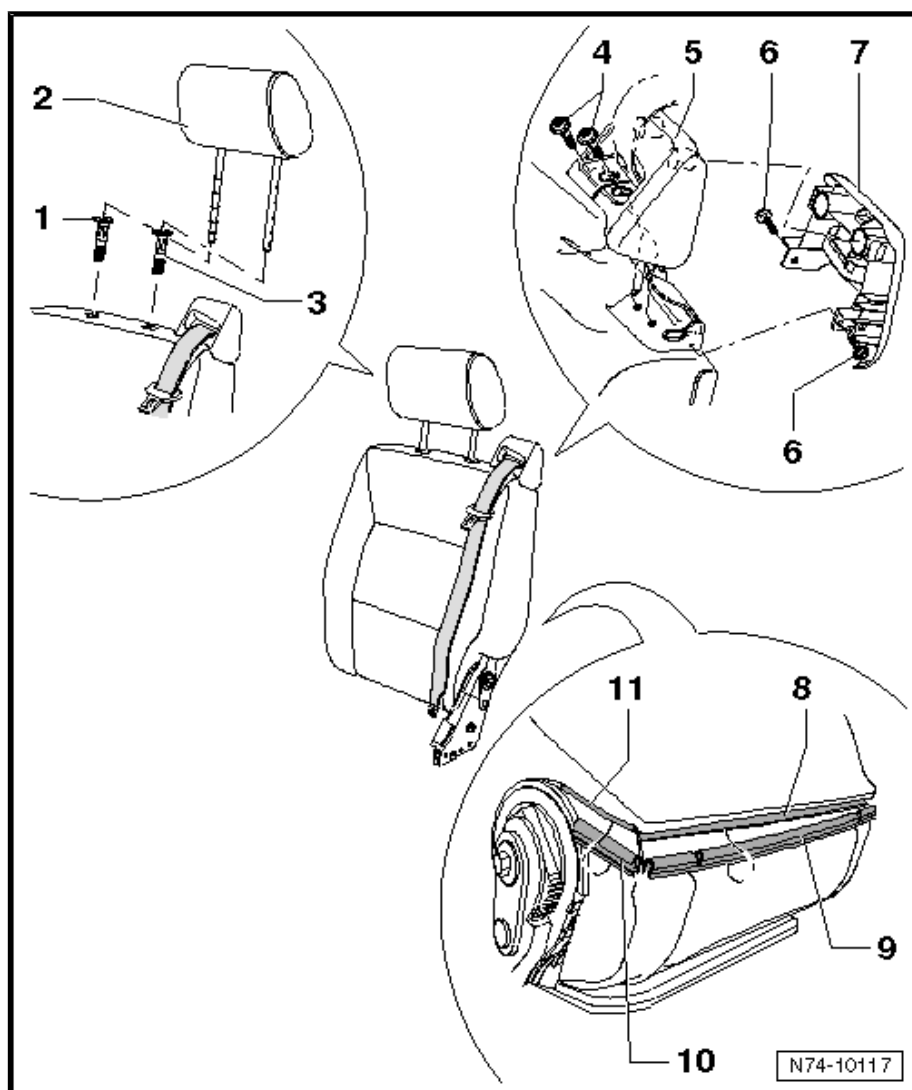


- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B-





## Removing



### Note

*The removal and installation procedures may have to be modified slightly depending on models.*

- Remove front seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove rear seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove right seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove left seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Removing arm rests [⇒ page 66](#).
- Remove belt end fitting [⇒ page 124](#).
- Press button of left head restraint guide -3-.
- Pull head restraint -2- out of backrest.
- Press down padding in the rear area of the head restraint guides.
- Release catches and pull head restraint guides -1- and -3- out of backrest.



**Note**

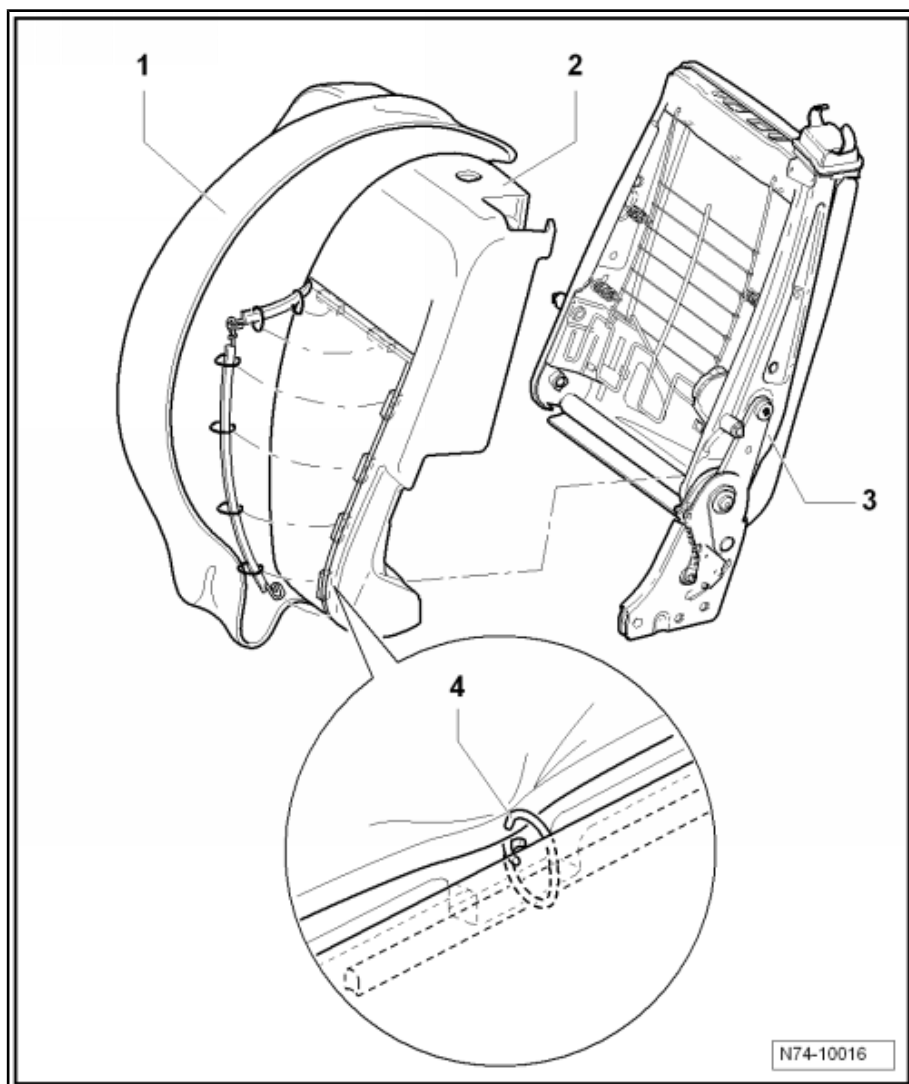
- ◆ *Removing right head restraint guide -1- without destroying it is not possible. It must be renewed prior to installation.*
- ◆ *Depending on model variant, right head restraint guide -1- can also be removed without destroying it, as can left head restraint guide -3-.*
- Unscrew bolts -4-.
- Lever out front part -5- of belt guide cover using a small screwdriver from mountings in the rear section -7- of belt guide cover.
- Guide belt through opening in front section -5- of belt guide cover.
- Remove front section of cover from belt guide.
- Unscrew bolts -6-.
- Remove rear section -7- of belt guide cover from belt guide.



**Note**

*The front section -5- of the belt guide cover and the rear section -7- of the belt guide cover are destroyed during removal. They must be renewed when installing.*

- Detach profile section -8- from mounting -9-.
- Detach profile section -11- from mounting -10- on left and right.



- Roll cover -1- upwards.
- Cut through and remove upholstery clips -4-.

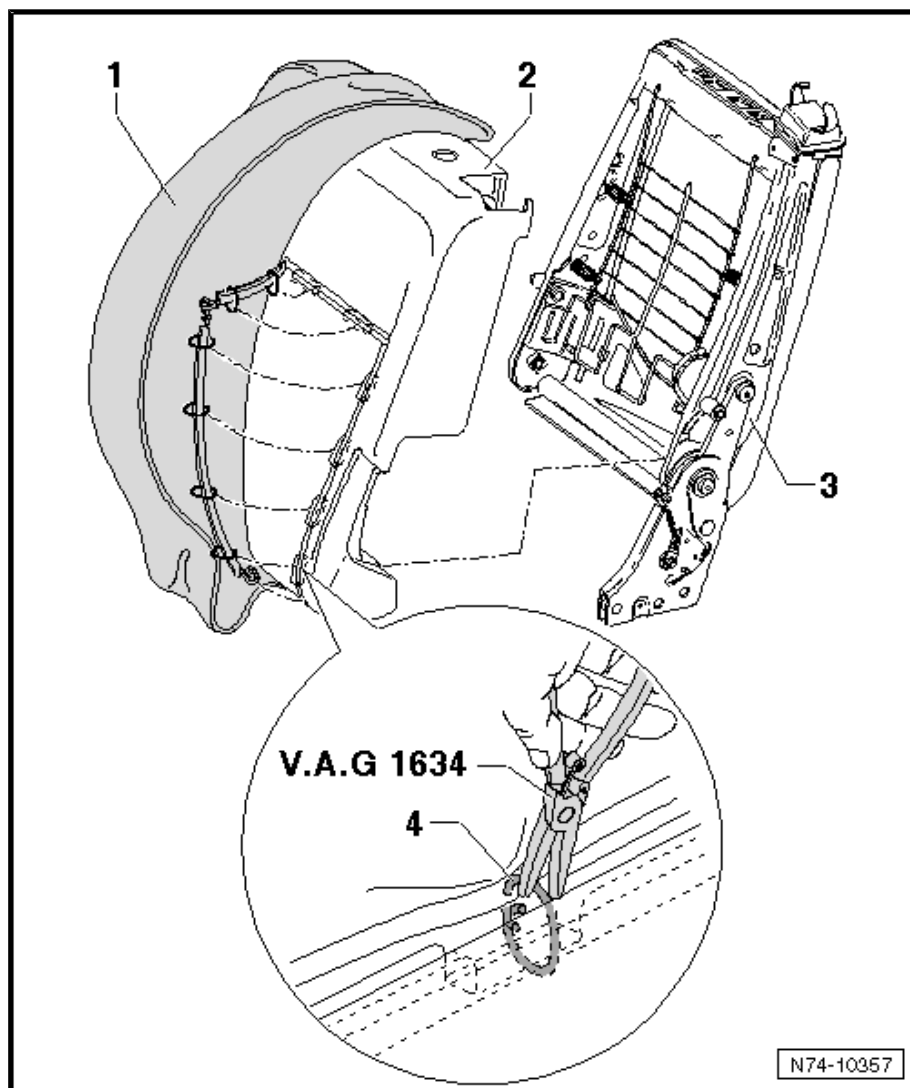
**i** Note

*The upholstery clips -4- are damaged beyond repair during removal and must therefore be renewed during installation.*

- Remove cover -1- and padding -2- from backrest frame -3-.

**i** Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- ◆ *Always renew clips. The part numbers of the clips can be found in the ⇒ Electronic Parts Catalogue (ETKA).*
- ◆ *Attach clips using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B- .*
- ◆ *To aid installation, heat up cover to approx. 30°C.*



### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Slide padding -2- onto backrest frame -3-.
- Attach backrest cover -1- all around padding with new upholstery clips -4- at the positions indicated, using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B- .

### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for front section of belt guide cover	2 Nm

### 2.2.3 Separating cover and padding, Multi-van, backrest cover, 2nd row, with integrated child seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required





- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1331-

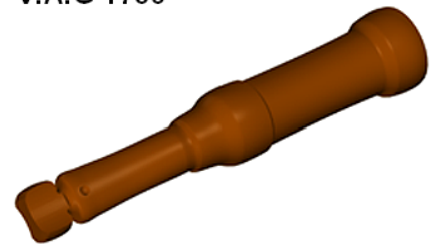
**V.A.G 1331**



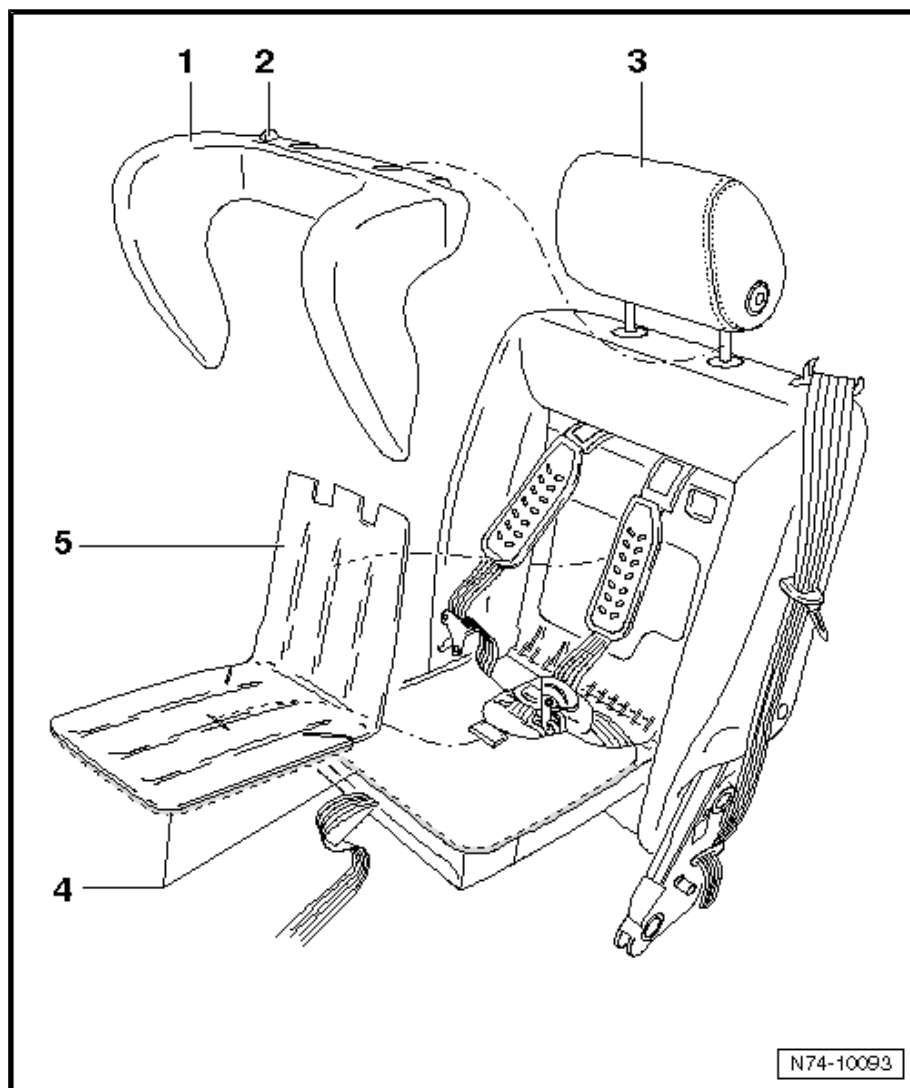
W00-11166

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-

**V.A.G 1783**



W00-11189



### Removing

- Remove front seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove rear seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove right seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Remove left seat frame trim of individual seat in 2nd row.
- Removing arm rests ⇒ [page 66](#) .
- Remove belt end fitting ⇒ [page 124](#) .
- Remove backrest of individual seat in 2nd row ⇒ [page 369](#) .
- Press catch -2-.
- Remove head padding -1-.
- Press buttons of head restraint guides.
- Pull head restraint -3- out of backrest.
- Remove head restraint guides and belt guide cover.



**Note**

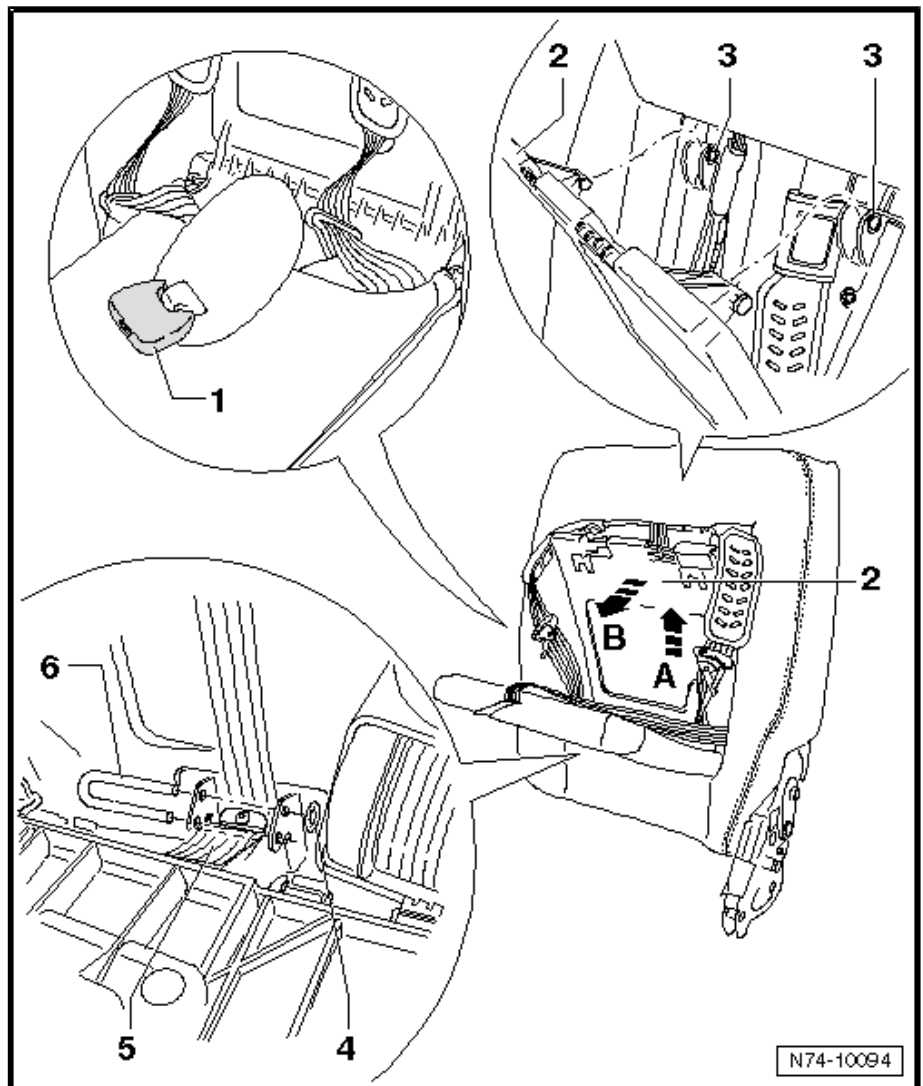
*If only shoulder belt of child seat is to be removed, head restraint guides and belt guide cover do not have to be removed.*

- Open zipper -4- and release child seat support -5- from the back panel.
- Remove child seat support.



**Note**

*At the same time press down to support the seat panel.*



- Push back panel -2- upwards -arrow A-.
- Pull back panel out of the two connecting guides -3- -arrow B-.
- Fold back panel forwards -arrow B-.
- Remove clamping washer -4-.



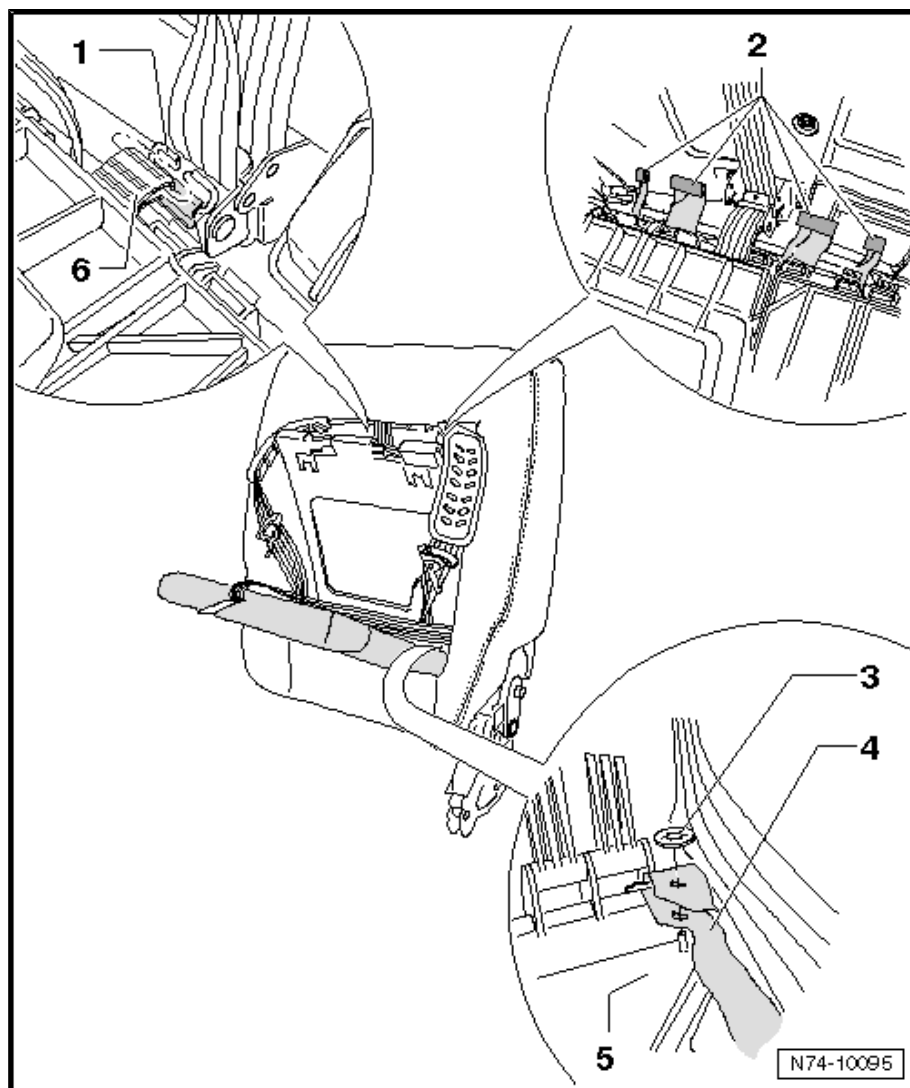
- Pull retaining clip -6- out of retainer, and pull out belt -5-.



**Note**

*Lock washer -4- is destroyed during removal. They must be renewed when installing.*

- Pull out belt buckle -1- from seat panel.

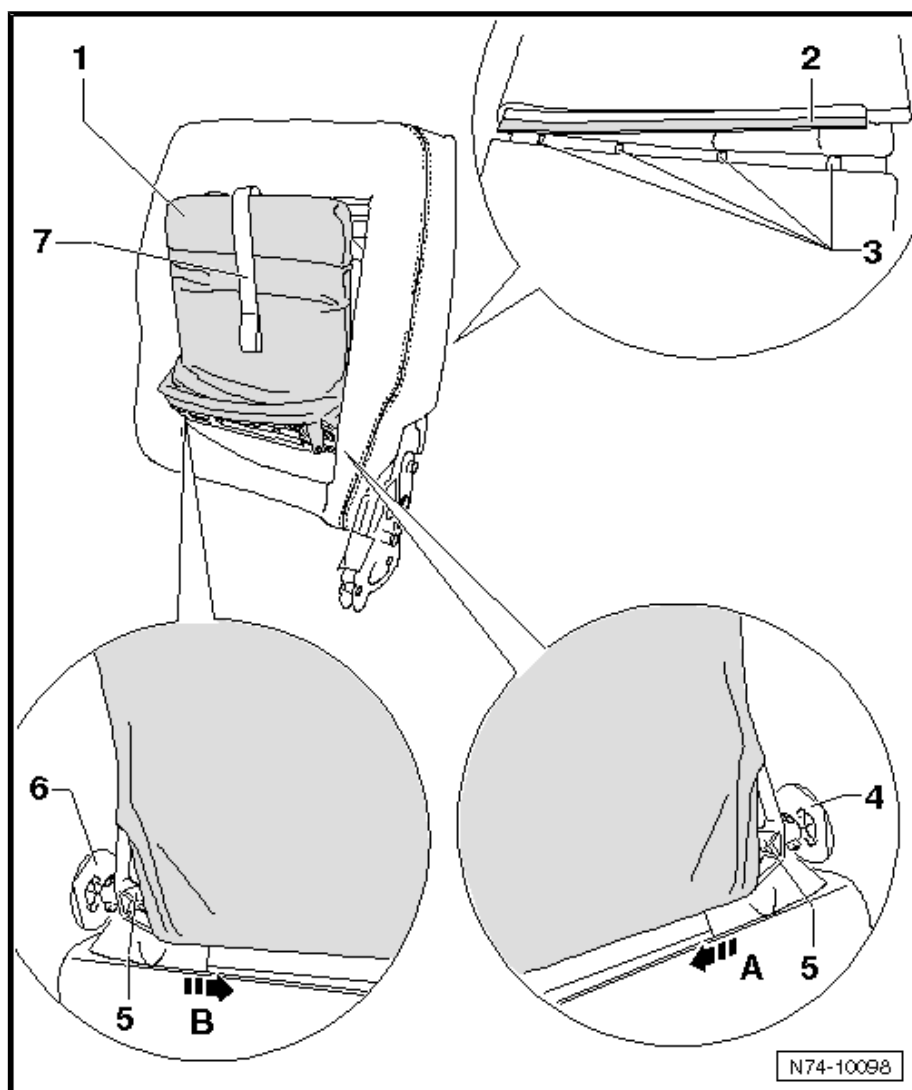


- Remove clamping washer -3- on both sides.
- Detach cover -4- from seat panel -5-.
- Detach profile sections -2- from seat panel.
- Unhook unlocking strap -6- from mounting bar -1-.

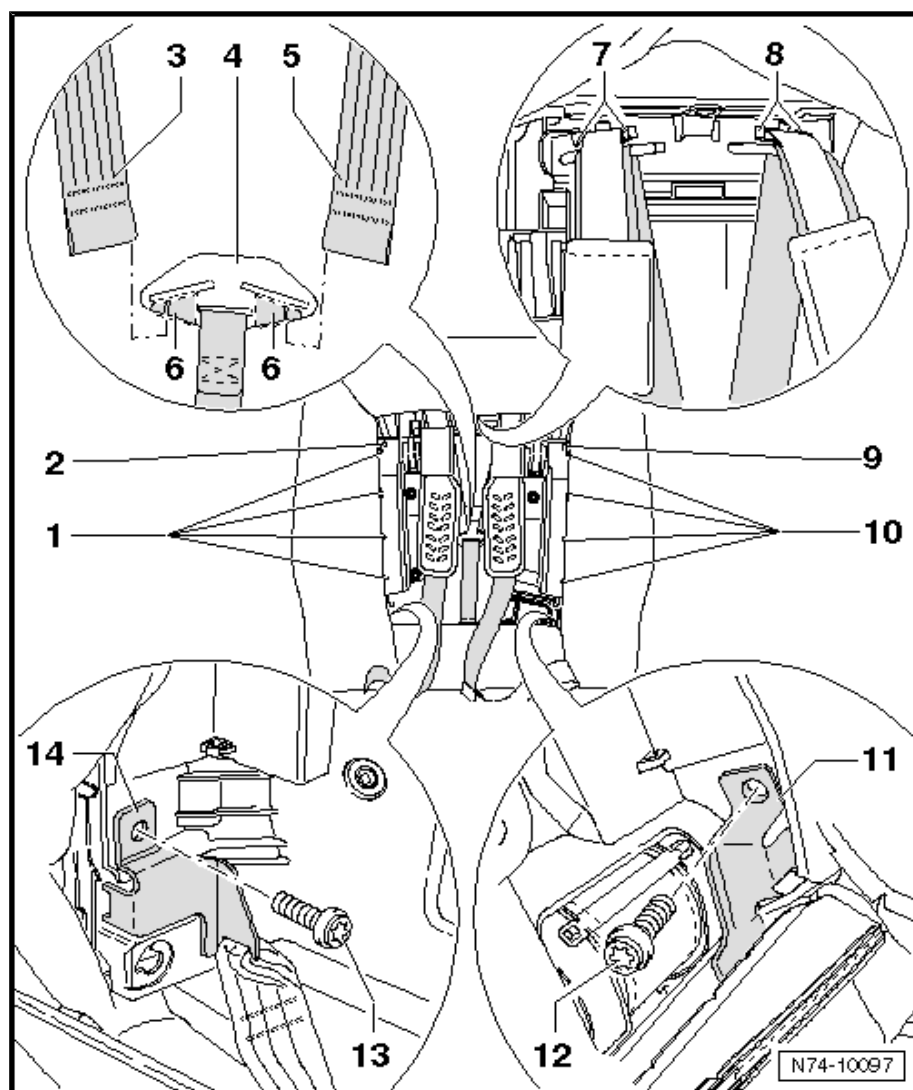


**Note**

- ◆ *The seat panel must be lightly folded out during installation and removal. Opening angle to backrest of approx. 43°.*
- ◆ *The locking studs of the seat panel -5- are destroyed during removal. They must be renewed when installing.*



- Using a small screwdriver, push seat panel -5- out of mounting -4- in carrier plate -arrow A-.
- Using a small screwdriver, push seat panel -5- out of mounting -6- in carrier plate -arrow B-.
- Remove seat panel with back panel from backrest.
- Fold cover -1- upwards until the clamping profile -2- is accessible.
- Release clamping profile -2- from mountings -3- in seat panel using a small screwdriver.
- Pull out tension strap -7-.
- Remove padding and cover from seat panel.



- Unhook tension strap -2- of cover from mountings -1- in carrier plate.
- Unhook tension strap -9- of cover from mountings -10- in carrier plate.
- Unscrew bolt -12-.
- Release left belt end fitting -11- from carrier plate and pull it out.
- Unscrew bolt -13-.
- Release right belt end fitting -14- from carrier plate and pull it out.
- Press catches -7- and -8-.
- Guide retaining clip for belt padding out of upper belt guide.
- Remove felt strips -6-.

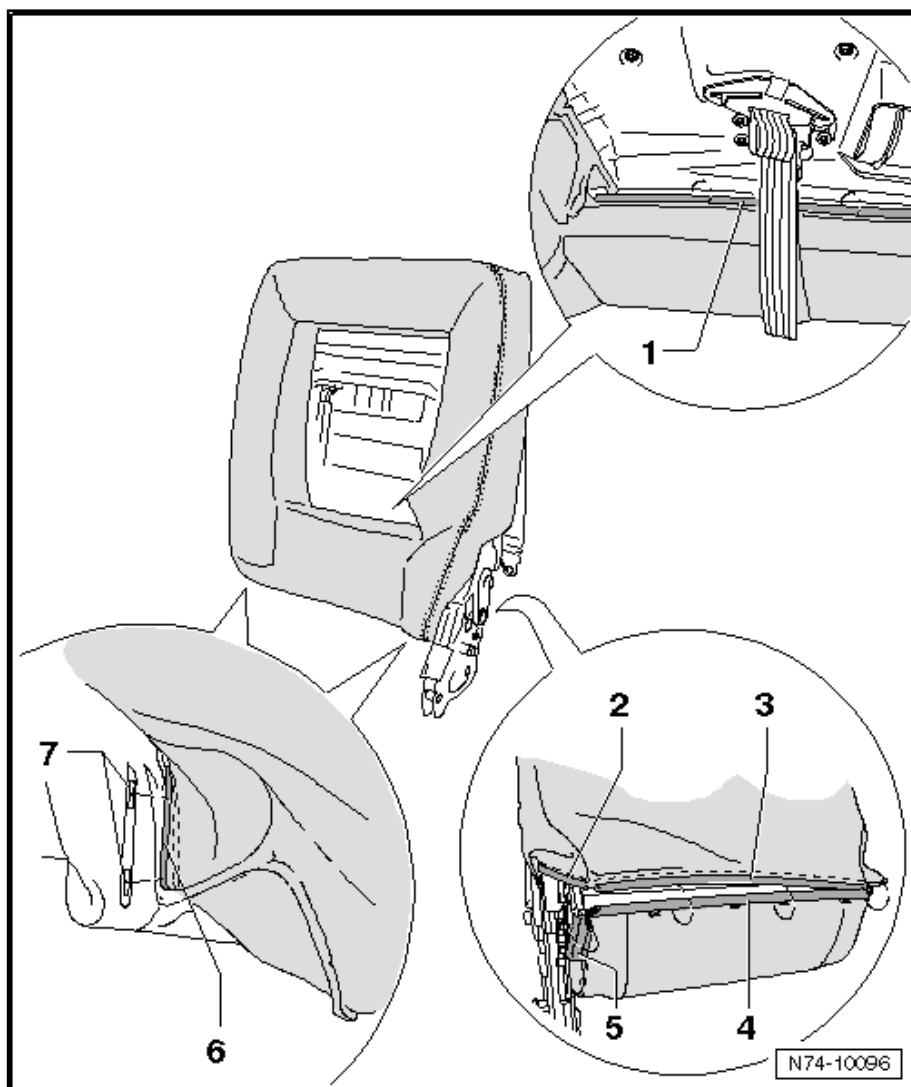


#### Note

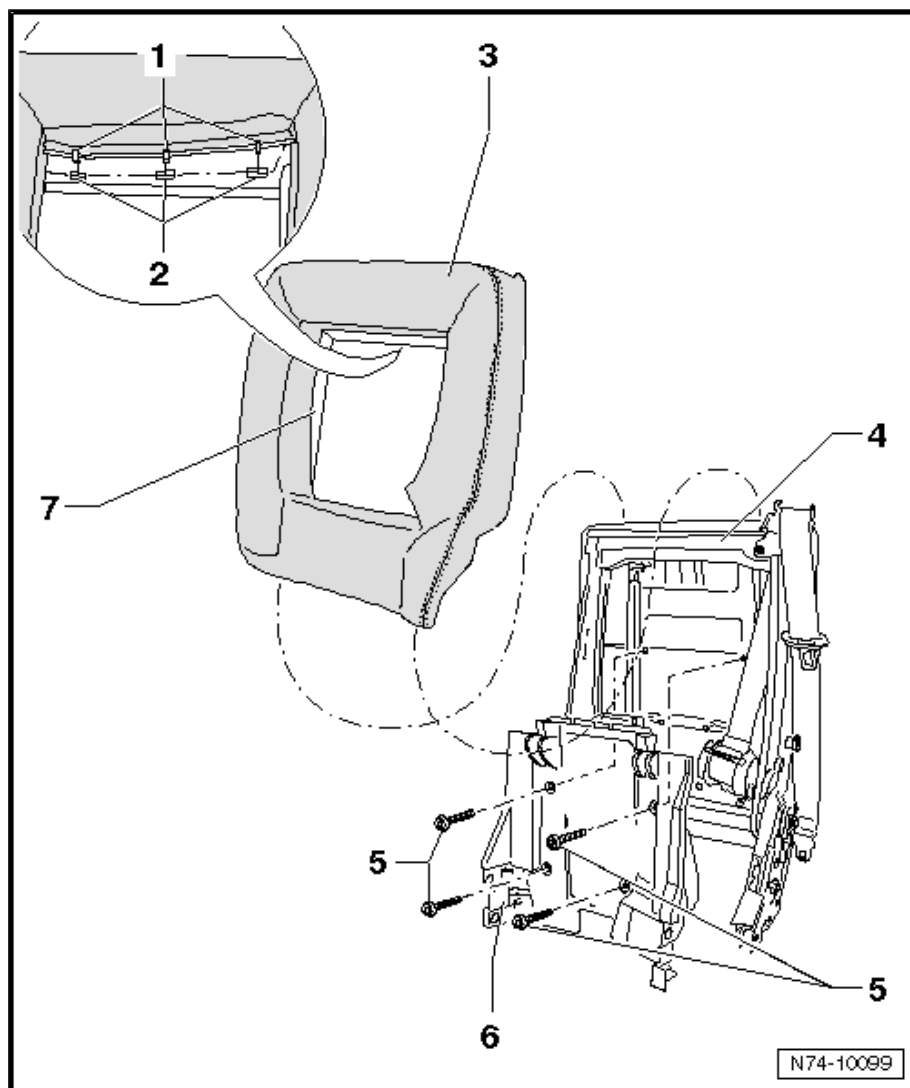
*The two felt strips -6- must be secured again during installation, they prevent any rattling.*



- Detach right shoulder belt -3- from connecting panel -4- and thread it out of backrest.
- Detach left shoulder belt -5- from connecting panel -4- and thread it out of backrest.



- Detach clamping profile -1- from backrest frame.
- Detach profile section -3- from mounting -4-.
- Detach profile section -2- from mounting -5- on left and right.
- Roll cover upwards.
- Detach profile section -6- on left and right of cover from mountings -7- in padding.



- Remove cover -3- with padding -7- from backrest frame -4-.
- Using a small screwdriver, release the three clips -1- of cover from padding wire -2-.
- Fold cover off padding.
- Unscrew bolts -5-.
- Remove mounting plate -6- from backrest frame.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

- ♦ *When installing, pay attention to ensure that the belt is routed correctly and that the seat belts are not twisted or trapped by any means.*
- ♦ *The function of the seat belts should be checked on completion of assembly work.*

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for belt end fitting	20 Nm





Component	Specified torque
Bolts for carrier plate	2 Nm

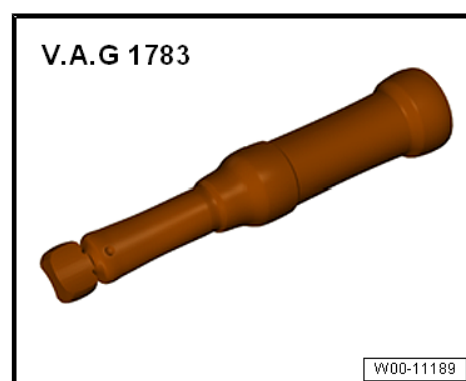
## 2.2.4 Separating cover and padding, Multi-van, backrest cover, 3-seater bench seat

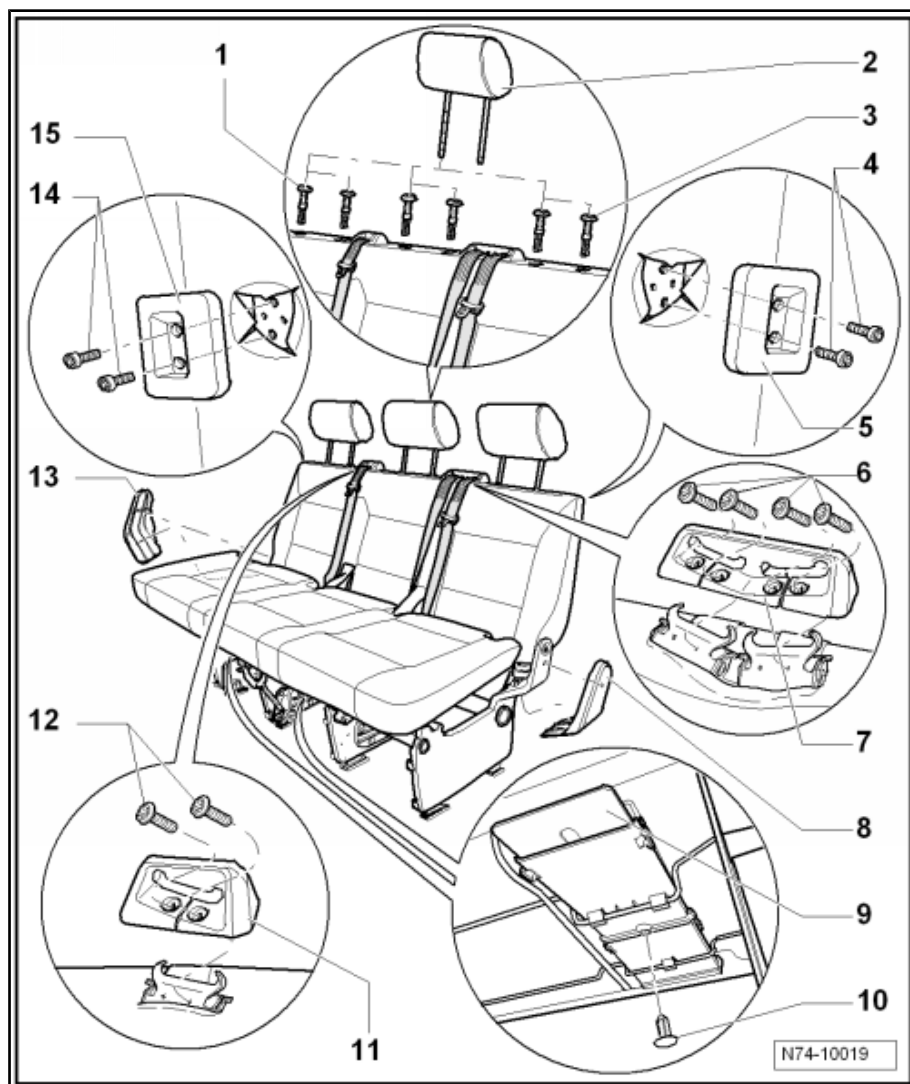
### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B-



- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-





## Removing

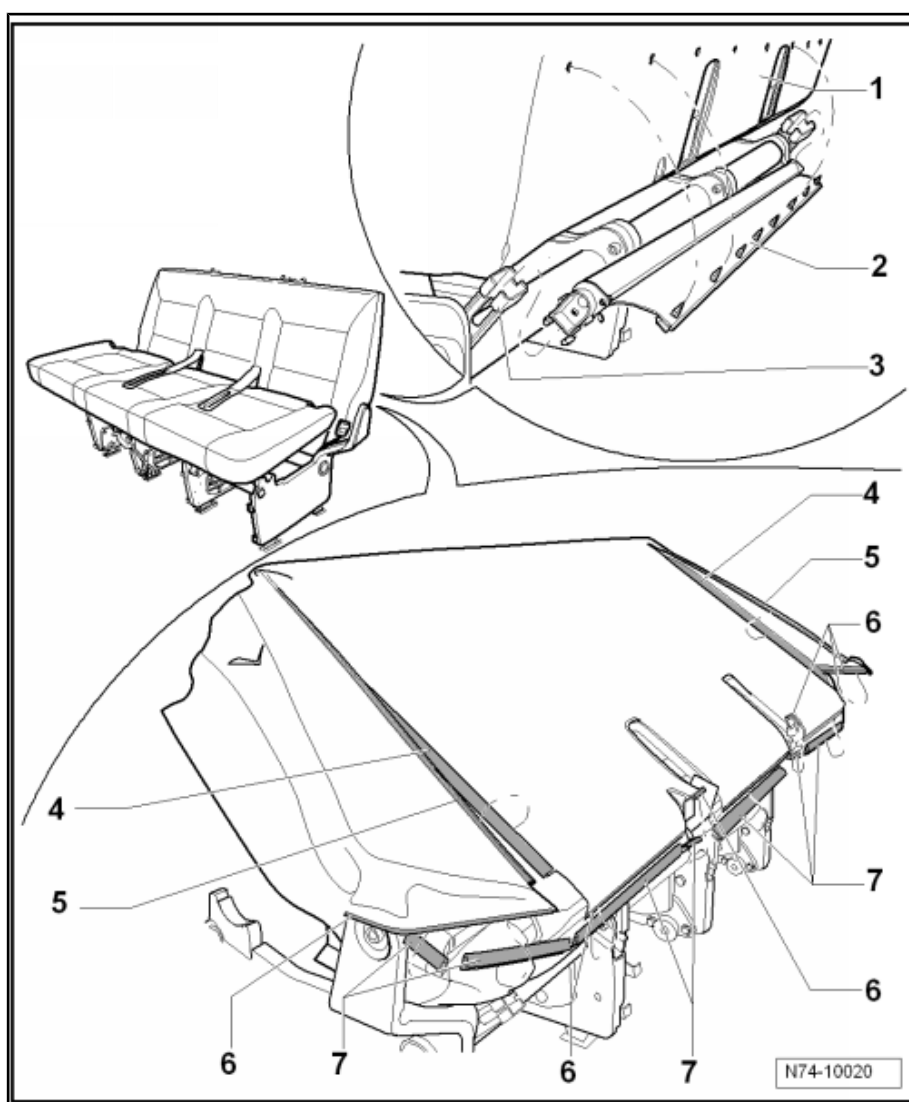
- Remove seats from 2nd row ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove table module in seat rail.
- Move bench seat as far forwards as possible.
- Remove front trim of 3-seater bench seat.
- Remove side trims of 3-seater bench seat.
- Pull out rear flaps of drawers.
- Remove rear trim of 3-seater bench seat.
- Remove seat belt end fittings ⇒ [page 124](#) .
- If fitted, remove centre armrest ⇒ [page 380](#) .
- Press button of left head restraint guide -3- on the respective head restraint -2-.
- Pull head restraint out of backrest.
- Press down padding in the rear area of the head restraint guides.
- Press catches.
- Pull head restraint guides -1- and -3- out of backrest.



# **Note**

*Removing right head restraint guide -1- without destroying it is not possible. It must be renewed prior to installation.*

- Unscrew bolts -4-, and remove left mounting -5- of luggage compartment cover.
- Unscrew bolts -14-, and remove right mounting -15- of luggage compartment cover.
- Unclip covers -8- and -13- from seat frame.
- Unscrew bolts -6- and detach belt guide -7- from backrest.
- Unscrew bolts -12- and detach belt guide -11- from backrest.
- Lever clips -10- out of mountings.
- Pull detent fitting covers -9- towards rear out of guides.



- Unclip roller blind -2- from backrest -1-.
- Using a small screwdriver -2-, push roller blind upwards out of mountings in seat frame -3-.

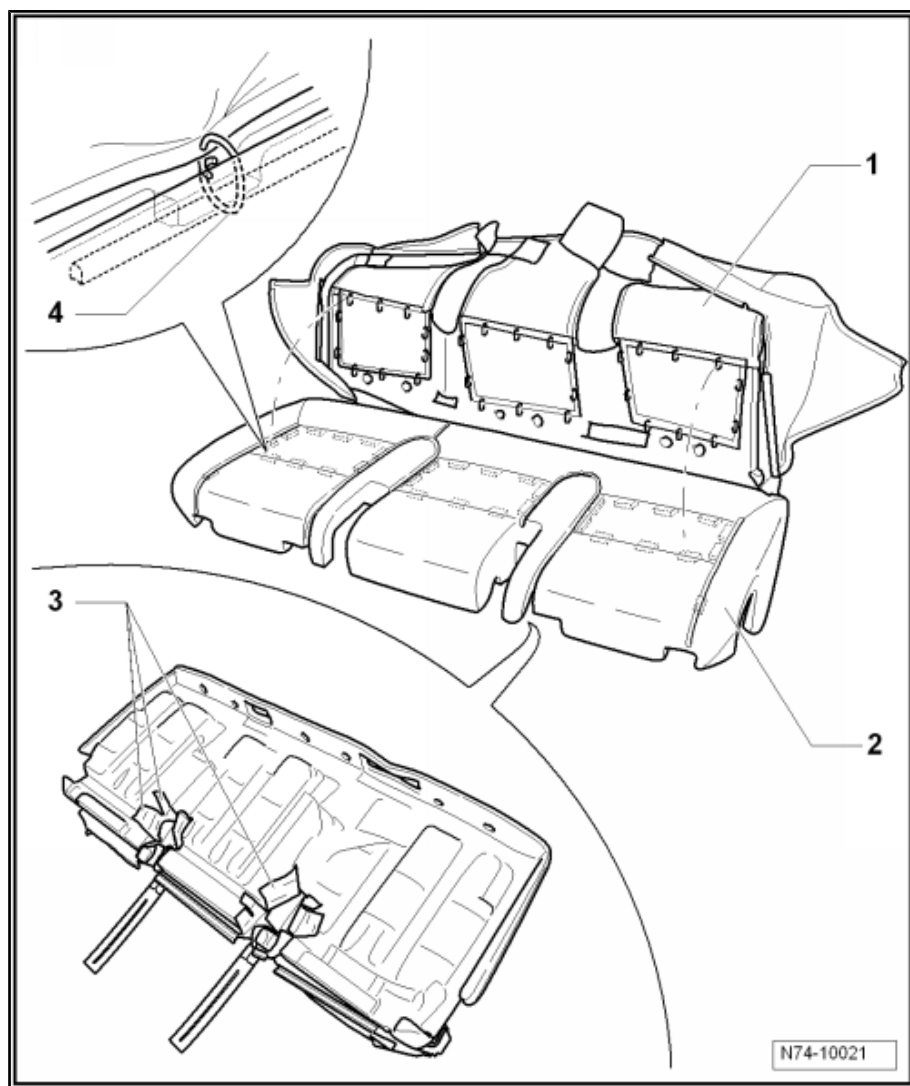


- Detach lateral profile sections -5- from mountings -4-.
- Detach lower profile sections -6- from mountings -7-, and fold up rear of cover.
- Remove cover and padding from backrest frame.



**Note**

*Upholstery clips -4- are damaged beyond repair during removal. They must be renewed prior to installation.*



- Release clips -3- on rear of padding -2-.
- Roll cover -1- upwards.
- Remove upholstery clips -4-.
- Take cover -1- off padding -2-.

**Installing**

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

- Using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B- , attach cover at the positions indicated to padding with new upholstery clips.



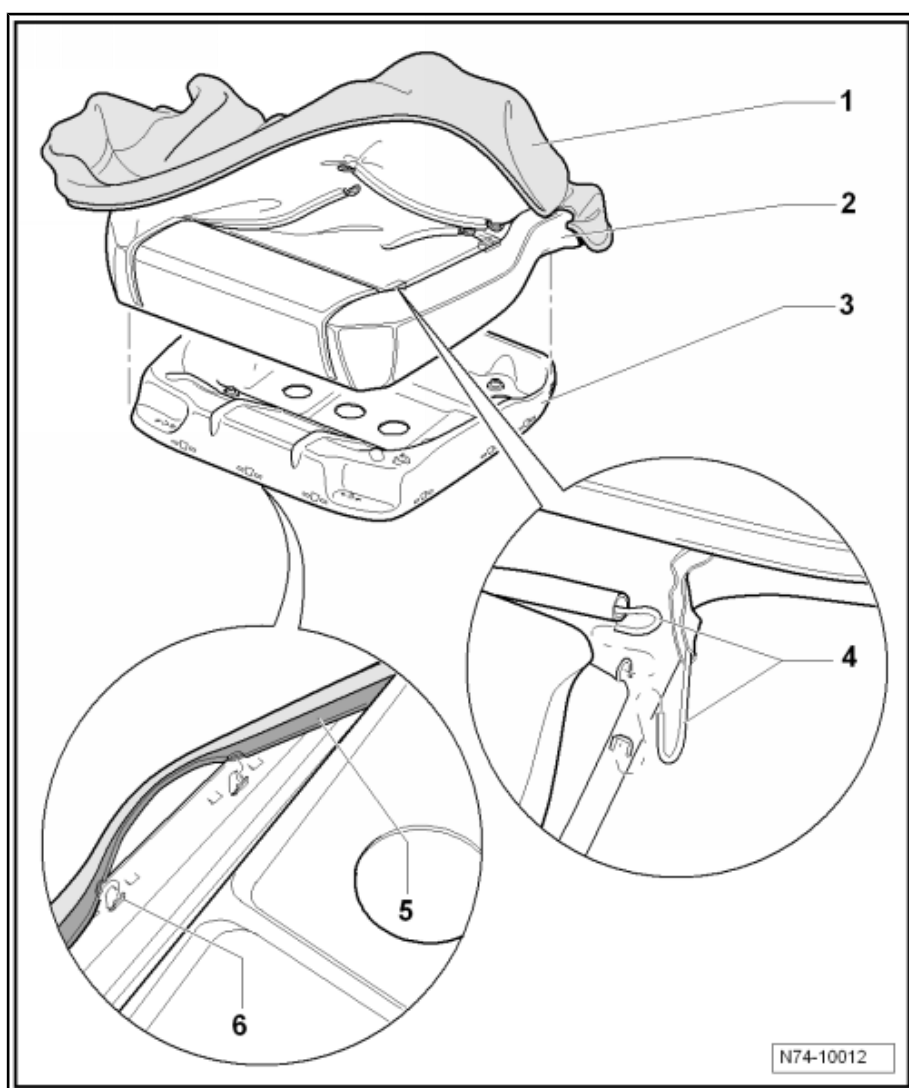
#### Note

The part numbers of the upholstery clips can be found in the ⇒ *Electronic Parts Catalogue*.

#### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for mounting	8 Nm
Bolts for belt guide	3.5 Nm

### 2.2.5 Separating cover and padding, Transporter, seat padding cover of individual seat, 2nd row



#### Removing

- Remove respective individual seat.
- Remove seat padding ⇒ [page 460](#).
- Detach surrounding profile section -5- from mountings -6- in seat pan -3-.

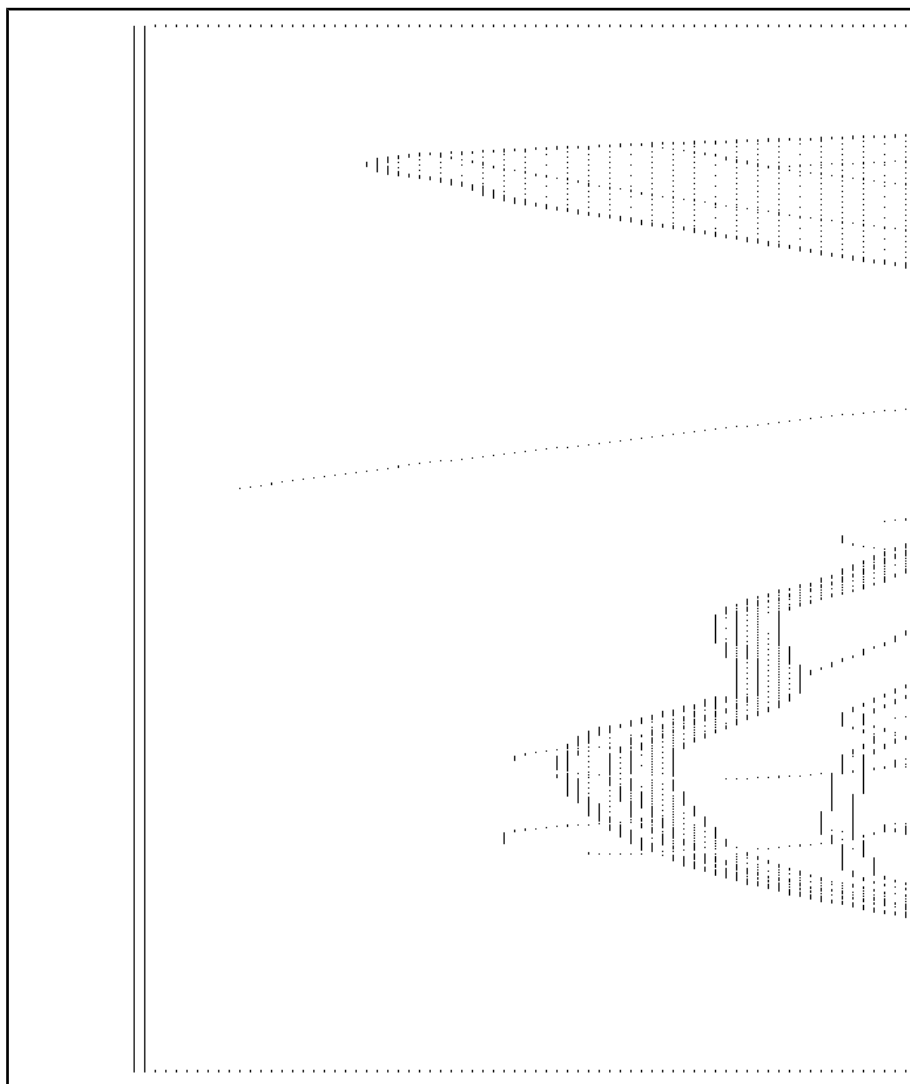


- Roll up cover -1- all round on outer sides.
- Unhook tensioning wires -4- from upholstery wire.
- Remove cover -1- and seat padding -2- from seat pan -3-.

#### Installing

- Installation is carried out in reverse order.

### 2.2.6 Separating cover and padding, Transporter, seat padding cover of double bench seat, 2nd row



#### Removing



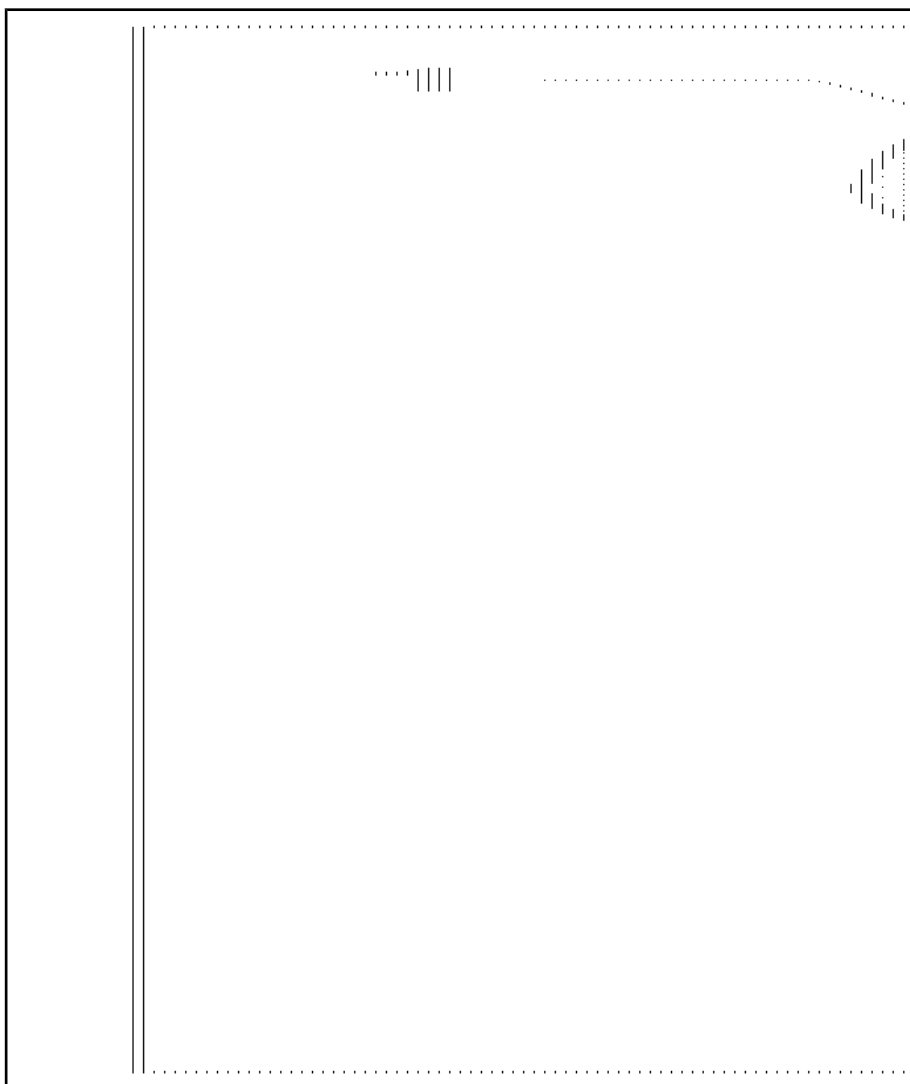
#### Note

*Belt buckle trim need not be dismantled.*

- Remove bench seat ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove centre belt buckle ⇒ [page 135](#) .
- Remove seat padding ⇒ [page 460](#) .



- Detach profile sections -2-, -3- and -4- from mountings in seat pan -1-.



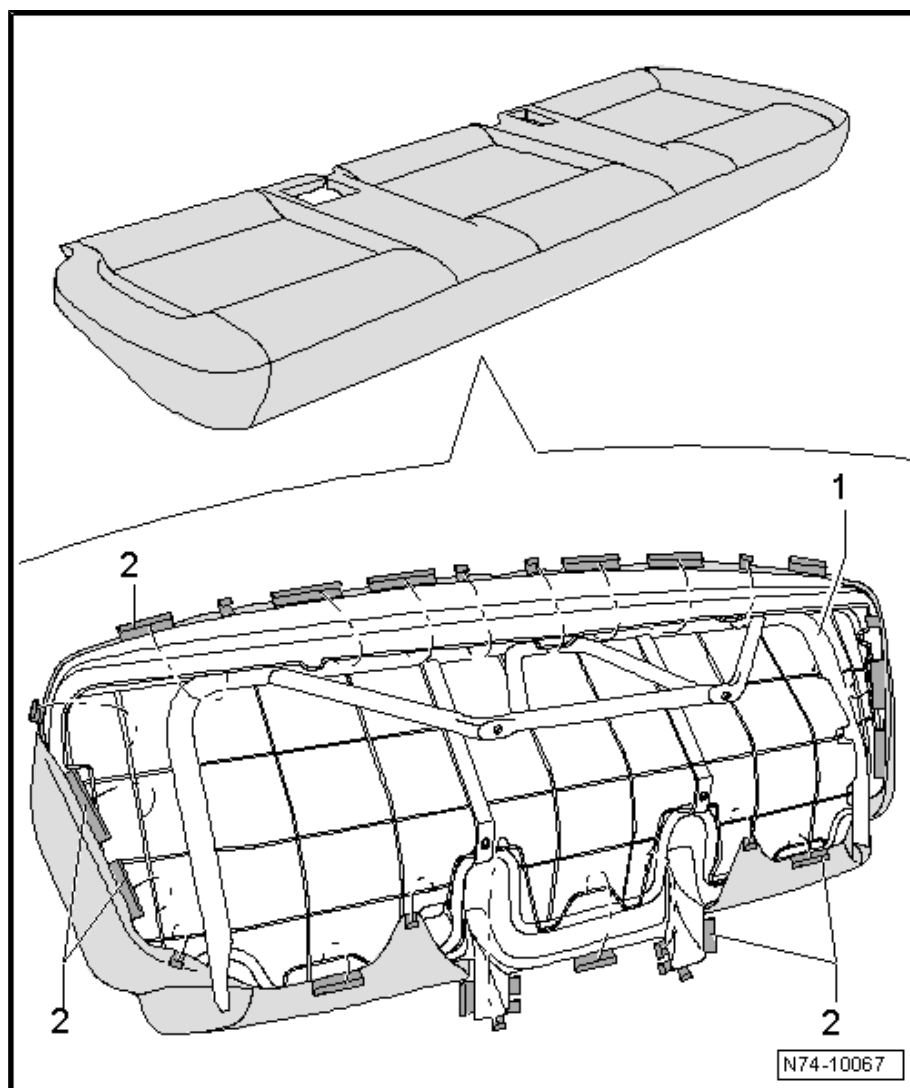
- Roll cover -1- off padding -2- until the tensioning wires are accessible.
- Detach tensioning wires -3- on all mounting points -arrows- and from wire frame -4- in cover.
- Remove cover from padding.

#### **Installing**

- Installation is carried out in reverse order.



## 2.2.7 Separating cover and padding, Transporter, seat padding cover, 3-seater bench seat



### Removing

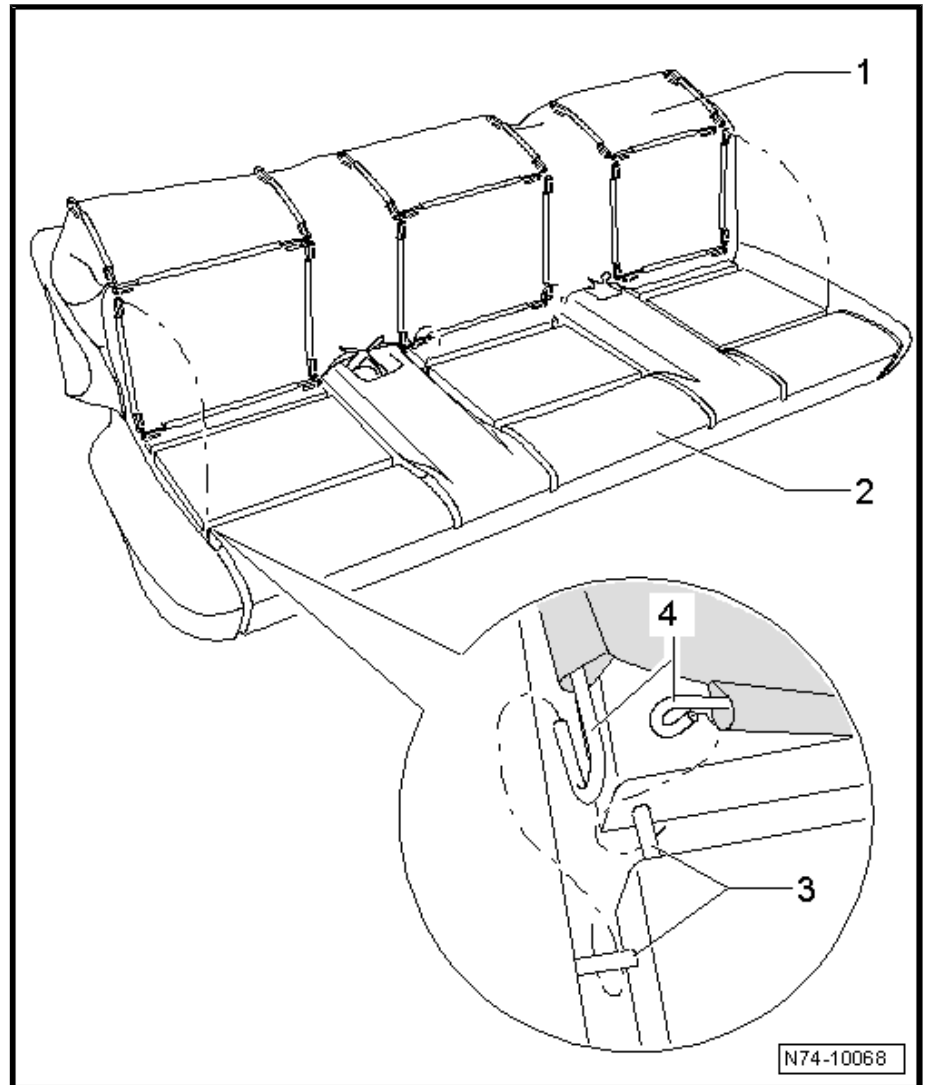


#### Note

*The belt buckle trims need not be dismantled.*

- Remove seats from 2nd row ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove bench seat ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove belt buckles ⇒ [page 135](#) .
- Remove seat padding ⇒ [page 460](#) .
- Detach all profile sections -2- on underside from seat frame -1-.





- Roll cover -1- off padding -2- until the tensioning wires -4- of the cover are accessible.
- Detach tensioning wires -4- of cover at all mounting points from wire frame in padding -3-.
- Detach cover and padding from seat frame.

#### Installing

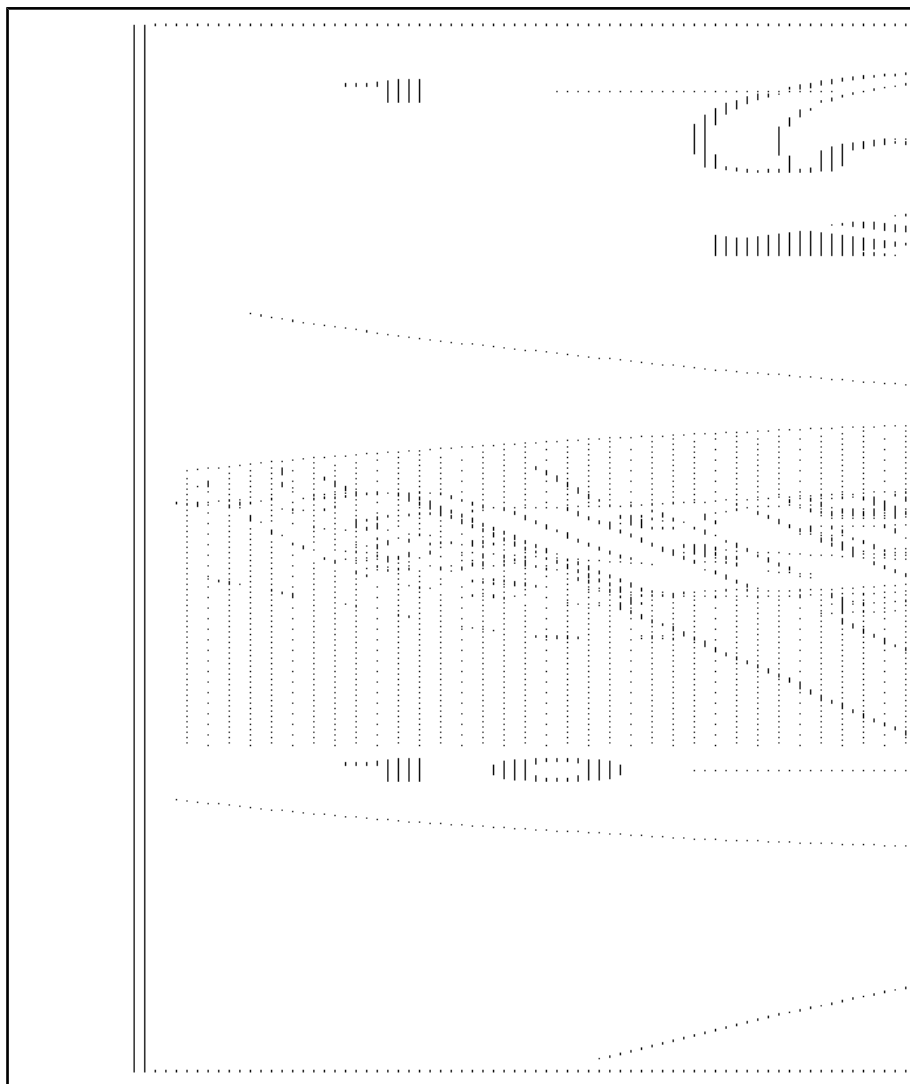
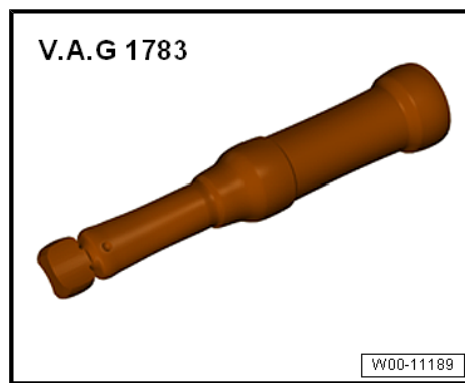
- Installation is carried out in reverse order.

### 2.2.8 Separating cover and padding, Transporter, backrest cover of individual seat, 2nd row

Special tools and workshop equipment required



◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-



### Removing

- Remove seat.
- Remove seat padding ⇒ [page 477](#) .
- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 369](#) .
- Use a small screwdriver to press release lever -9-, and pull it out of backrest.
- Pull trim -10- at rear out of mountings.



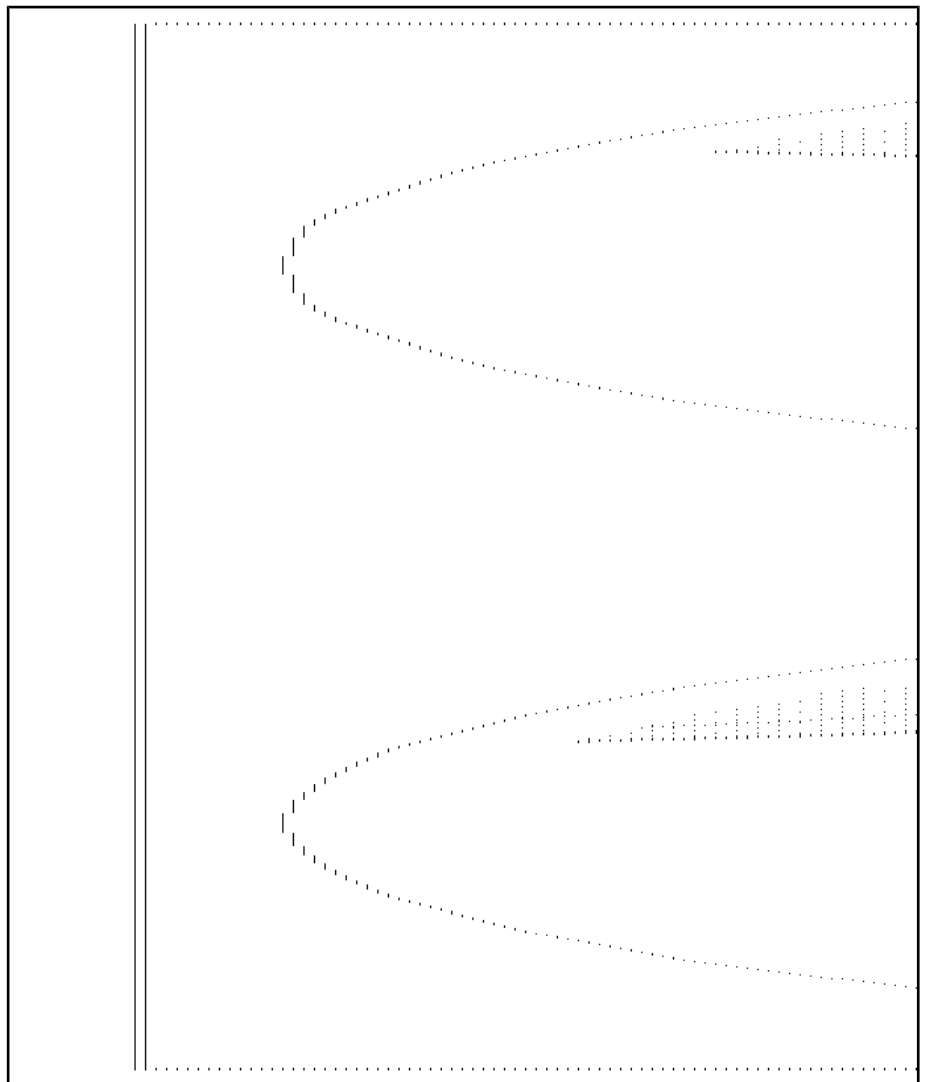
- Guide trim at front out of catches.



**Note**

*When installing, first insert in rear mountings and then push in front clips.*

- Press button of left head restraint guide -4-.
- Pull out head restraint -5-.
- Press down padding in area of head restraint guides.
- Press rear catches.
- Pull out head restraint guides -4- and -6-.
- Detach profile section -7- from mounting -8-.



- Roll cover off padding until the tensioning wires are accessible.
- Detach tensioning wire -1- of cover in lower area on both left and right from upholstery wire.
- Detach tensioning wires of cover -1- and -2- in upper area on both left and right from upholstery wire.



- Remove cover and padding from backrest frame.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

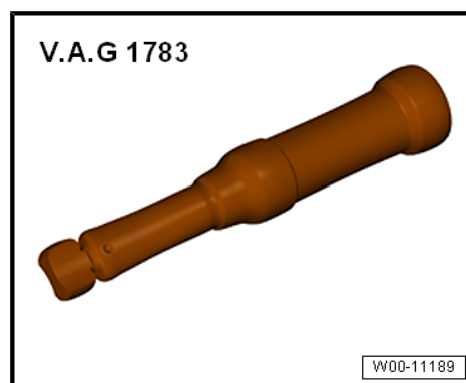
### Specified torques

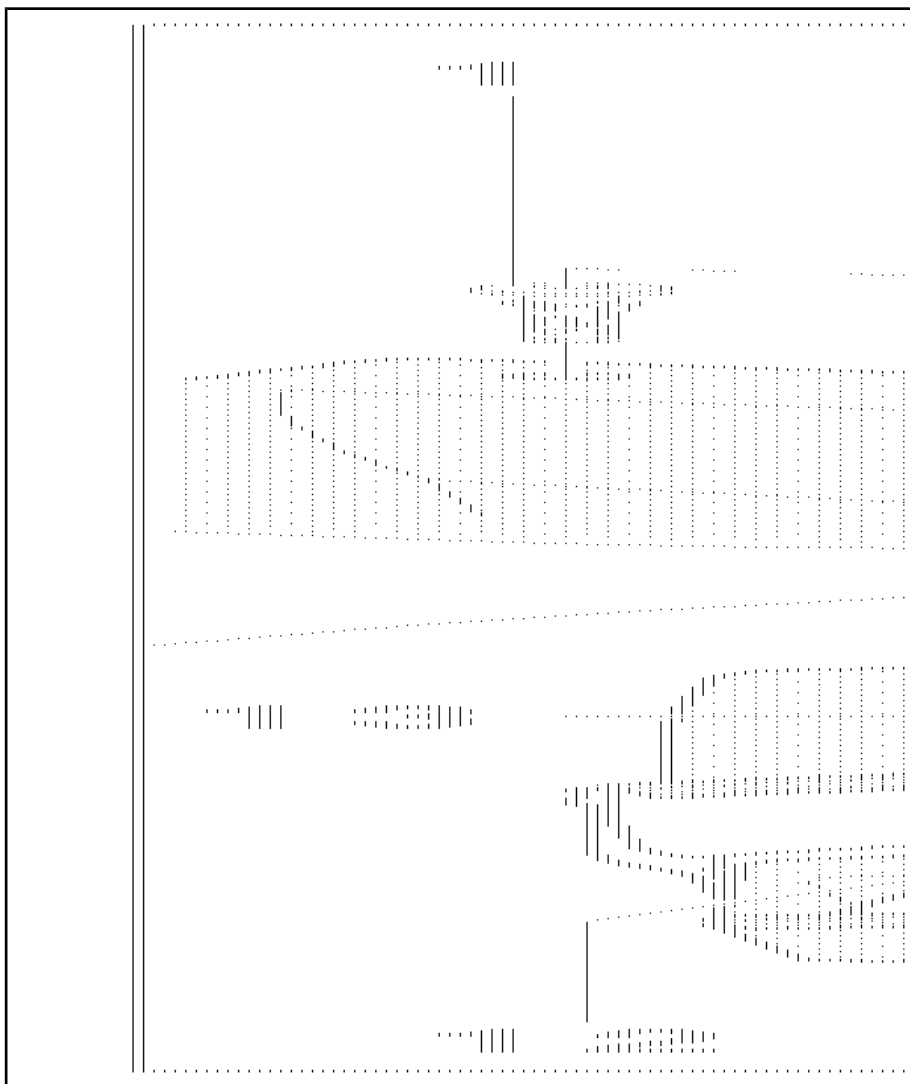
Component	Specified torque
Bolts for trim	2 Nm

## 2.2.9 Separating cover and padding, Transporter, backrest cover of double bench seat, 2nd row

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-





## Removing



### Note

*Belt buckle trim need not be dismantled.*

- Remove bench seat ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove centre belt buckle ⇒ [page 135](#) .
- Remove seat padding ⇒ [page 477](#) .
- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 369](#) .
- Press button of left head restraint guide -3-.
- Pull respective head restraint -2- out of backrest.
- Press down padding in the rear area of the head restraint guides.
- Press catches.
- Pull respective head restraint guides -1- and -3- out of backrest.



**Note**

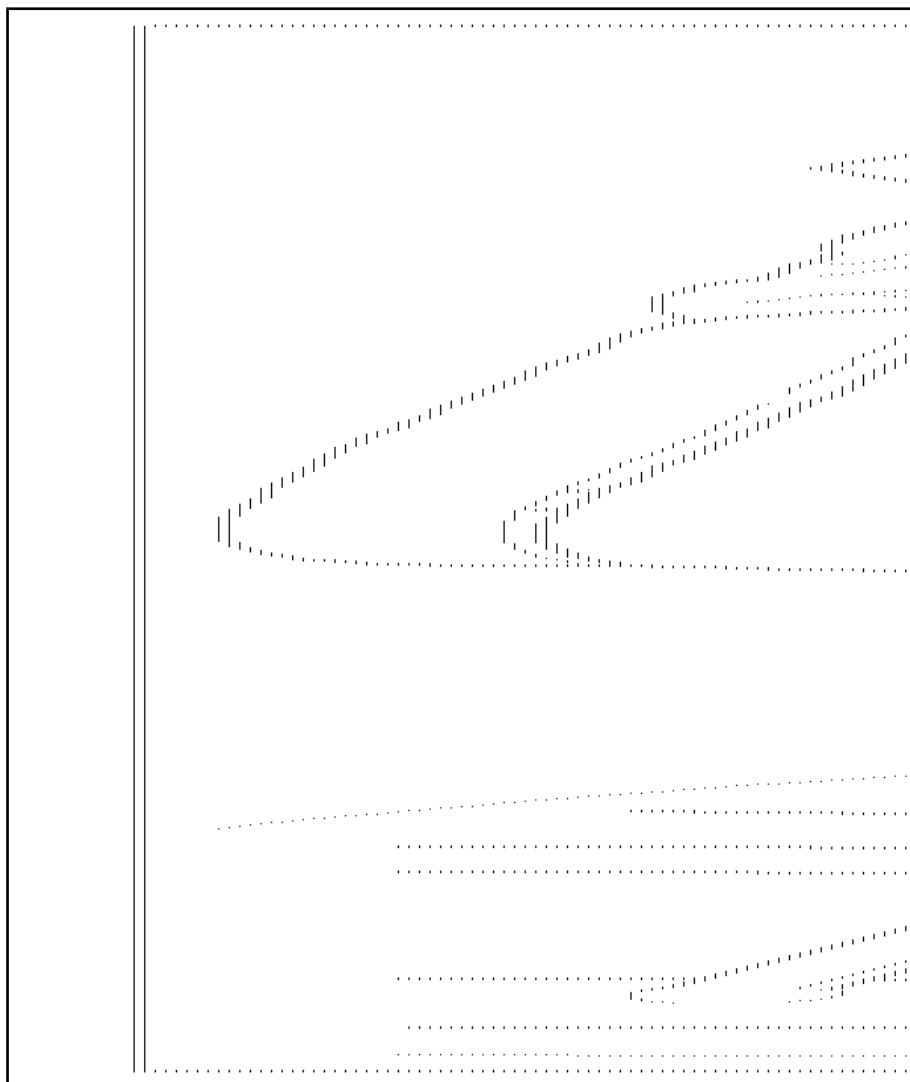
*Removing right head restraint guide -1- without destroying it is not possible. They must be renewed prior to installation.*

- Unscrew bolts -4-.
- Guide belt through opening in cap -5- and remove it from belt guide.
- Detach profile section -6- from mounting -8-.
- Detach profile section -13- from mounting -11-.
- Remove staples in areas -7-, -9-, -10- and -12-.



**Note**

*Clips are destroyed during removal. They must be renewed prior to installation.*



- Detach profile section -3- from backrest frame beneath padding on both left and right next to backrest attachment.



- Roll cover off backrest padding until the lower tensioning wires are accessible.
- Detach tensioning wire -2- of cover at all lower attachments from wire frame of padding.
- Detach tensioning wires -1- and -2- of cover at all upper attachments from wire frame of padding.
- Remove cover and padding from backrest frame.

#### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

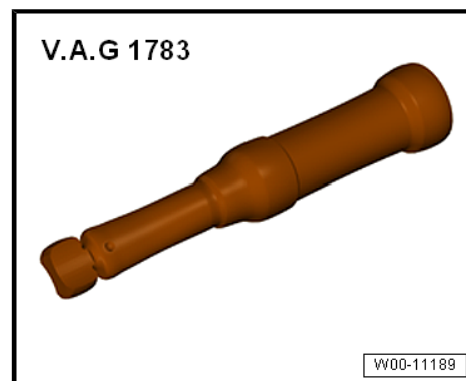
#### Specified torques

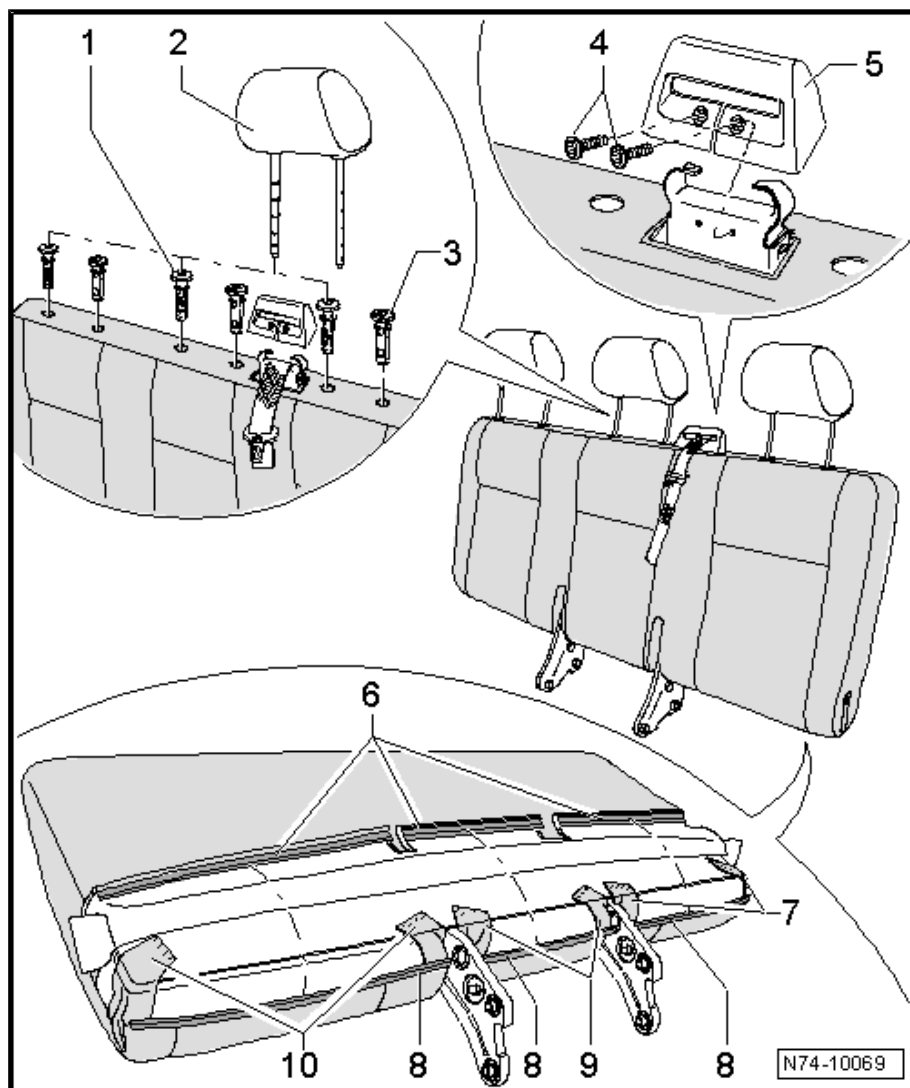
Component	Specified torque
Bolts for cap	3.5 Nm

### 2.2.10 Separating cover and padding, Transporter, backrest cover, 3-seater bench seat

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench - V.A.G 1783-





## Removing



### Note

- ◆ *The belt buckle trims need not be dismantled.*
- ◆ *Clips are destroyed during removal. They must be renewed prior to installation.*
- Remove seats from 2nd row ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove bench seat ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove belt buckles ⇒ [page 135](#) .
- Remove seat padding ⇒ [page 477](#) .
- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 369](#) .
- Press button of left head restraint guide -3-, and pull respective head restraint -2- out of backrest.
- Press down padding in the rear area of the head restraint guides.
- Press rear catches.
- Pull head restraint guides -1- and -3- out of backrest.

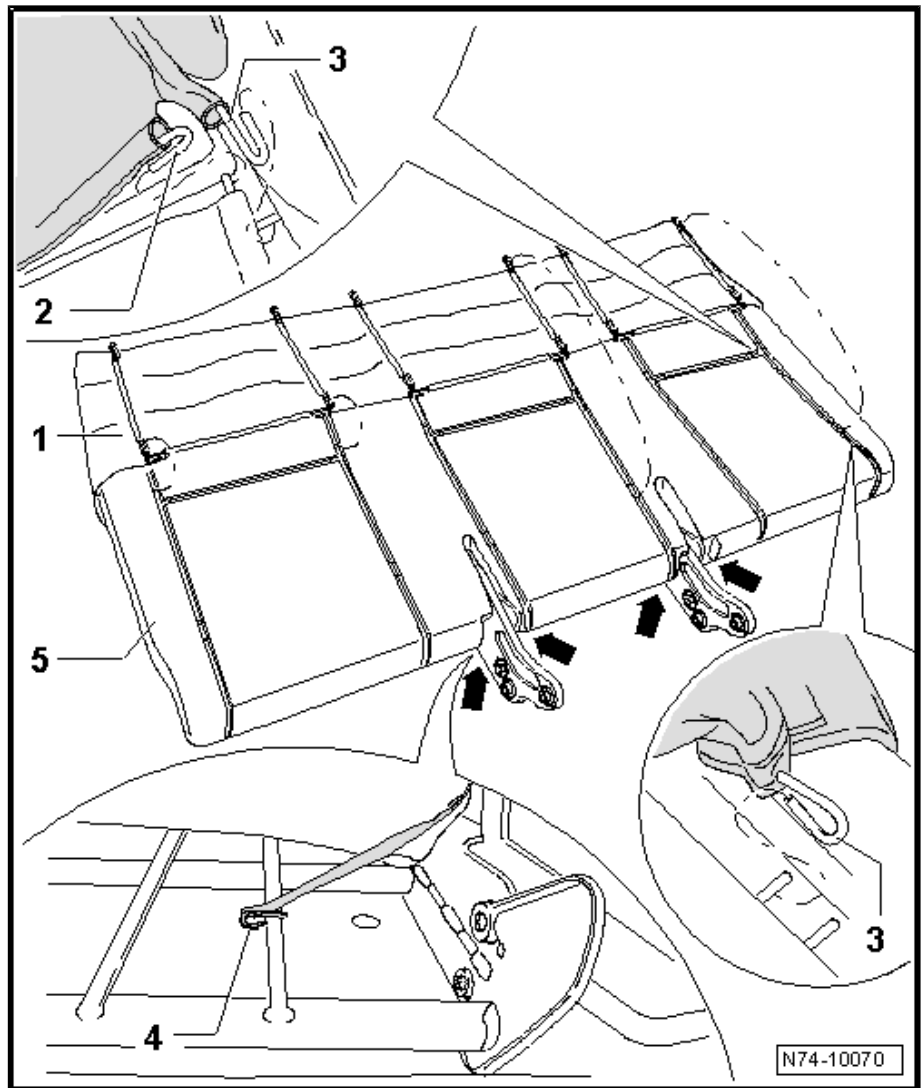




**Note**

*Removing right head restraint guide -1- without destroying it is not possible. It must be renewed prior to installation.*

- Unscrew bolts -4-.
- Detach belt guide cover -5- from backrest.
- Detach profile sections -6- from mountings -8-.
- Remove staples in areas -7-, -9- and -10-.



- Detach profile section -4- from backrest frame -arrows- beneath padding both on left and right next to both backrest attachments.
- Roll cover -1- off padding -5- until lower tensioning wires are accessible.
- Detach tensioning wire -3- of cover at all lower attachments from wire frame of padding.
- Detach tensioning wires -2- and -3- of cover at all upper attachments from wire frame of padding.



- Remove cover -1- and padding -5- from backrest frame.

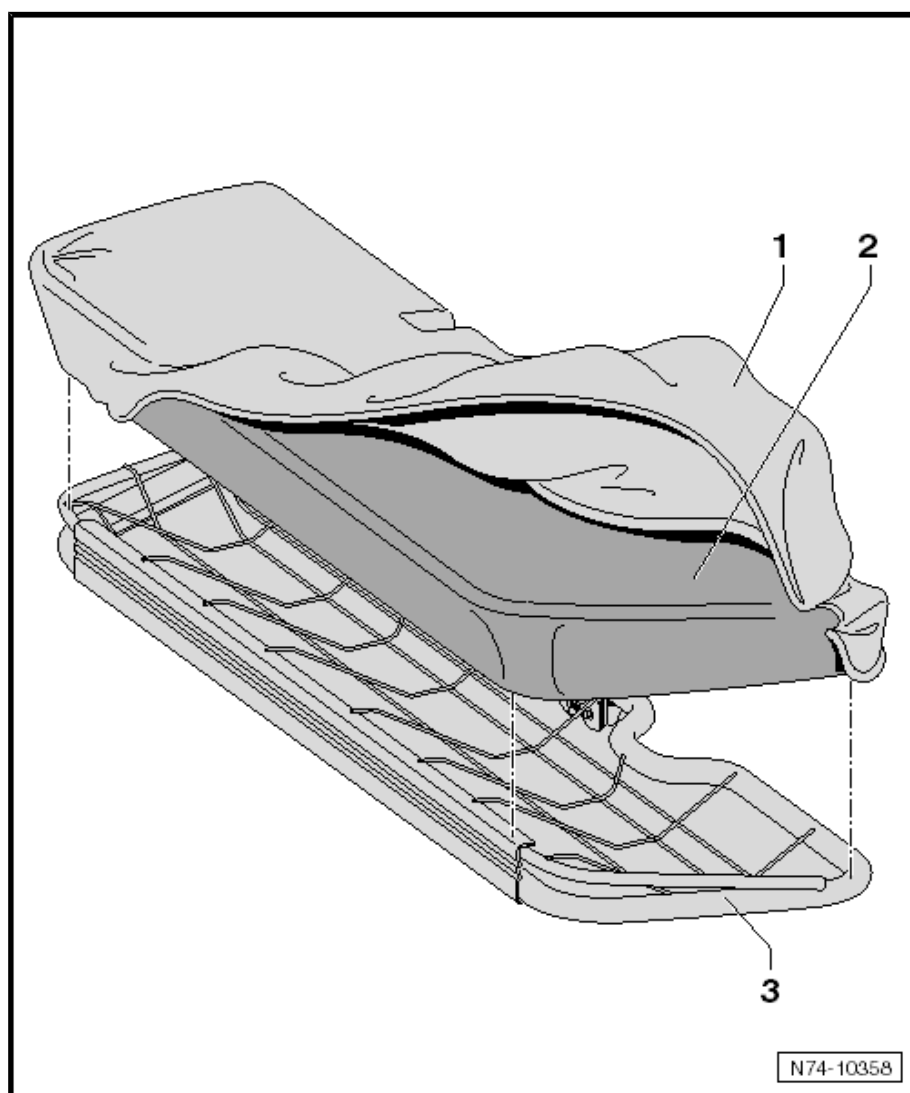
### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:

### Specified torques

Component	Specified torque
Bolts for belt guide cover	3.5 Nm

## 2.2.11 Separating cover and padding, double cab, seat padding of 3-seater bench seat, 2nd row



### Removing

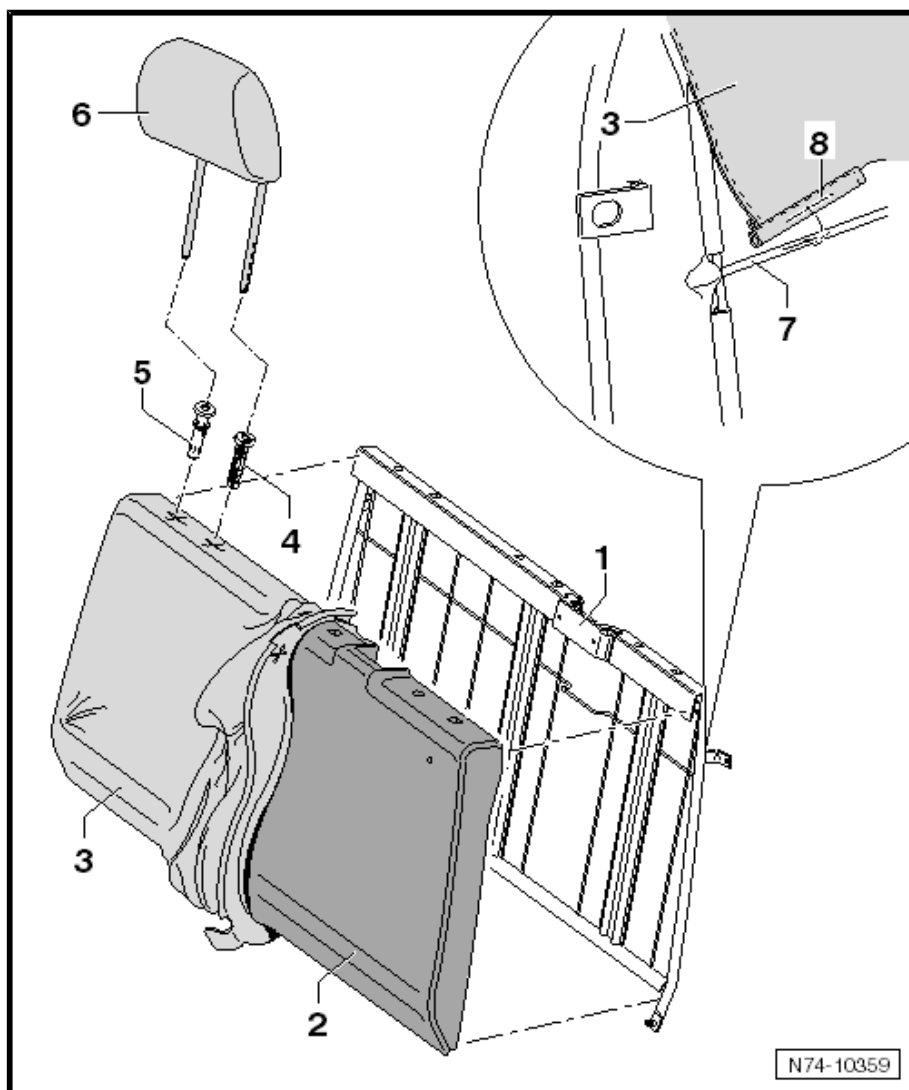
- Remove seat padding ⇒ [page 460](#) .
- Remove seat cushion from vehicle.
- Detach profile sections from mountings on underside of seat padding.
- Remove cover -1- and padding -2- from rear seat frame -3-.



## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order.

### 2.2.12 Separating cover and padding, double cab, backrest cover of 3-seater bench seat, 2nd row



## Removing

- Remove backrest ⇒ [page 369](#) .
- Press button of respective left head restraint guide -4-.
- Pull out respective head restraint -6-.
- Press down padding in the rear area of the head restraint guides.
- Press catches.
- Pull head restraint guides -4- and -5- out of backrest.
- Detach profile sections -8- from mountings -7-.
- Remove cover -3- and padding -2- from backrest frame -1-.



### Installing

- Installation is carried out in reverse order.



### 3 Rear seat covers and padding, Business

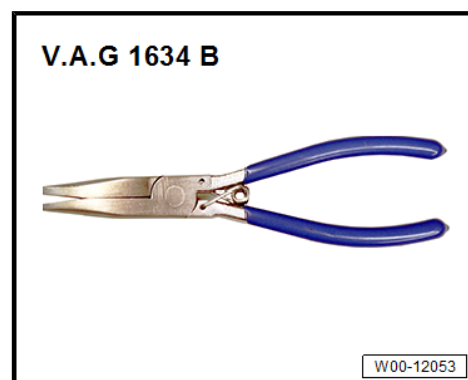
⇒ ["3.1 Removing and installing seat cover and padding", page 513](#)

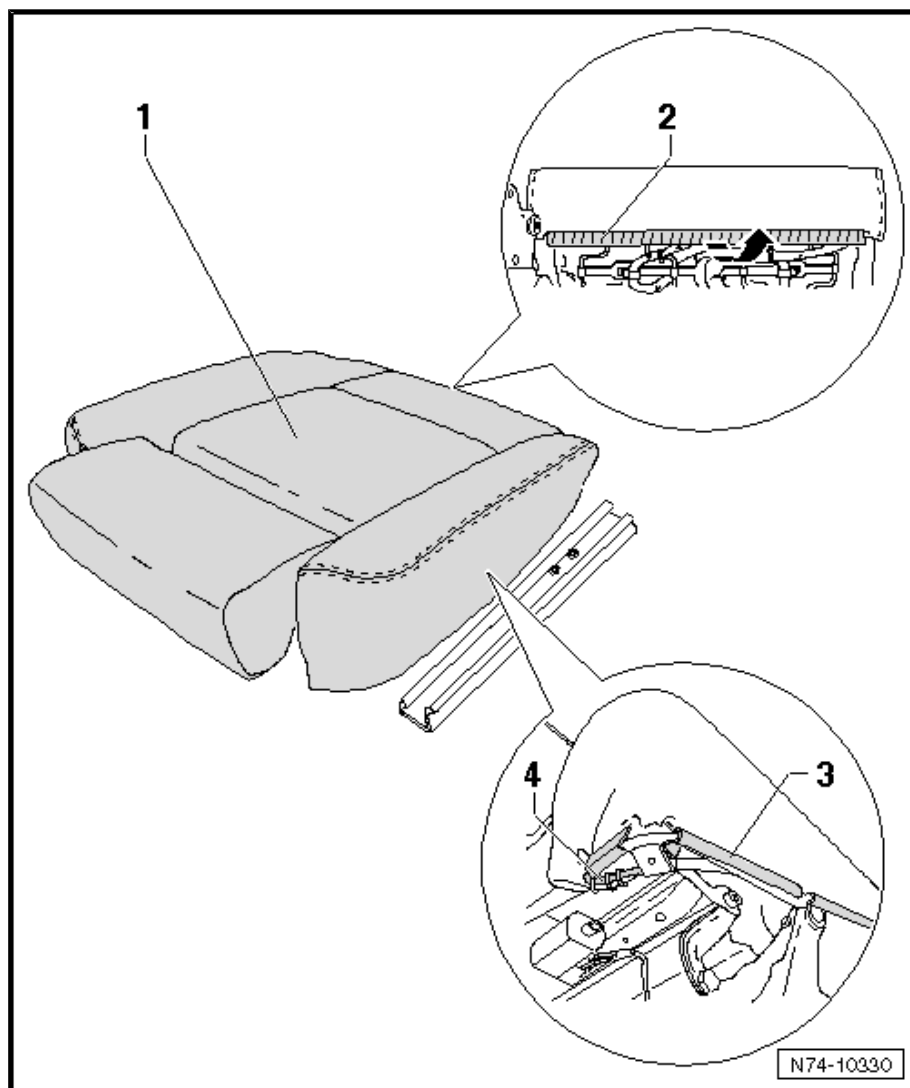
⇒ ["3.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding", page 518](#)

#### 3.1 Removing and installing seat cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

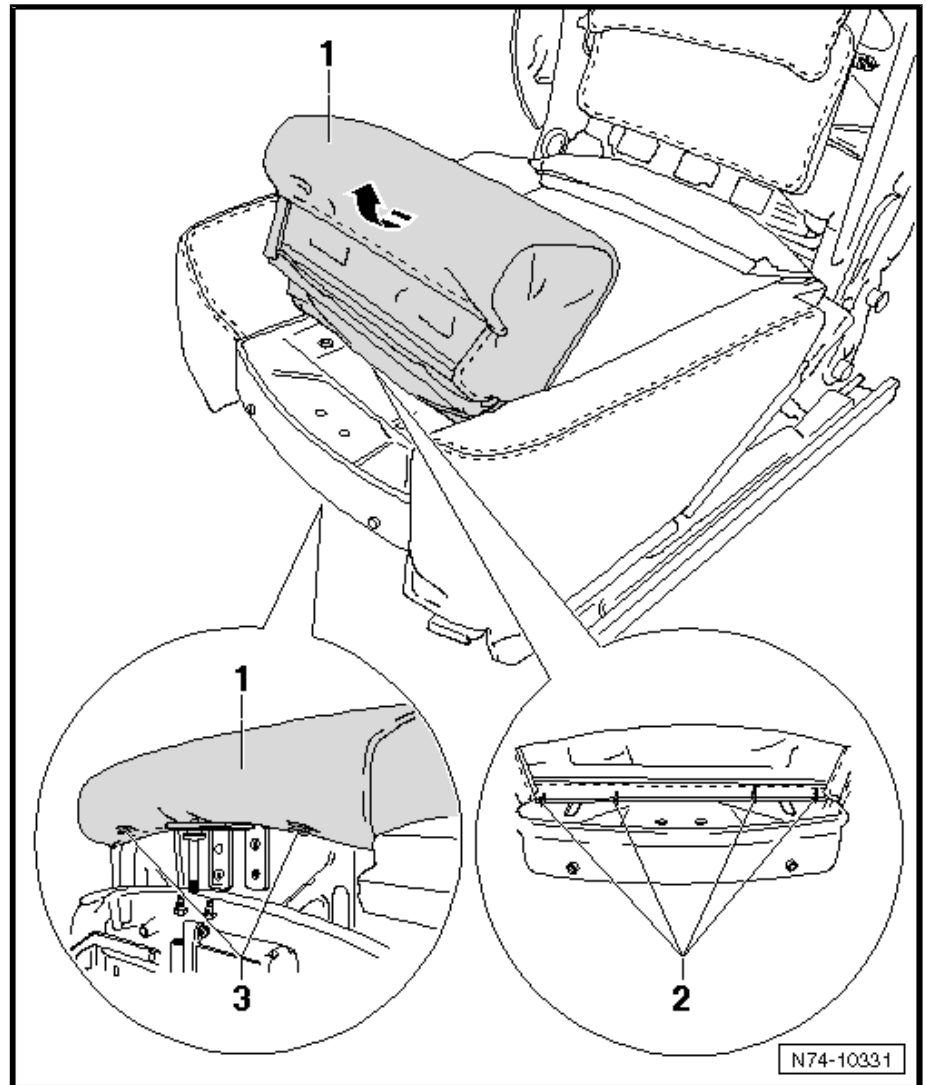
- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B-



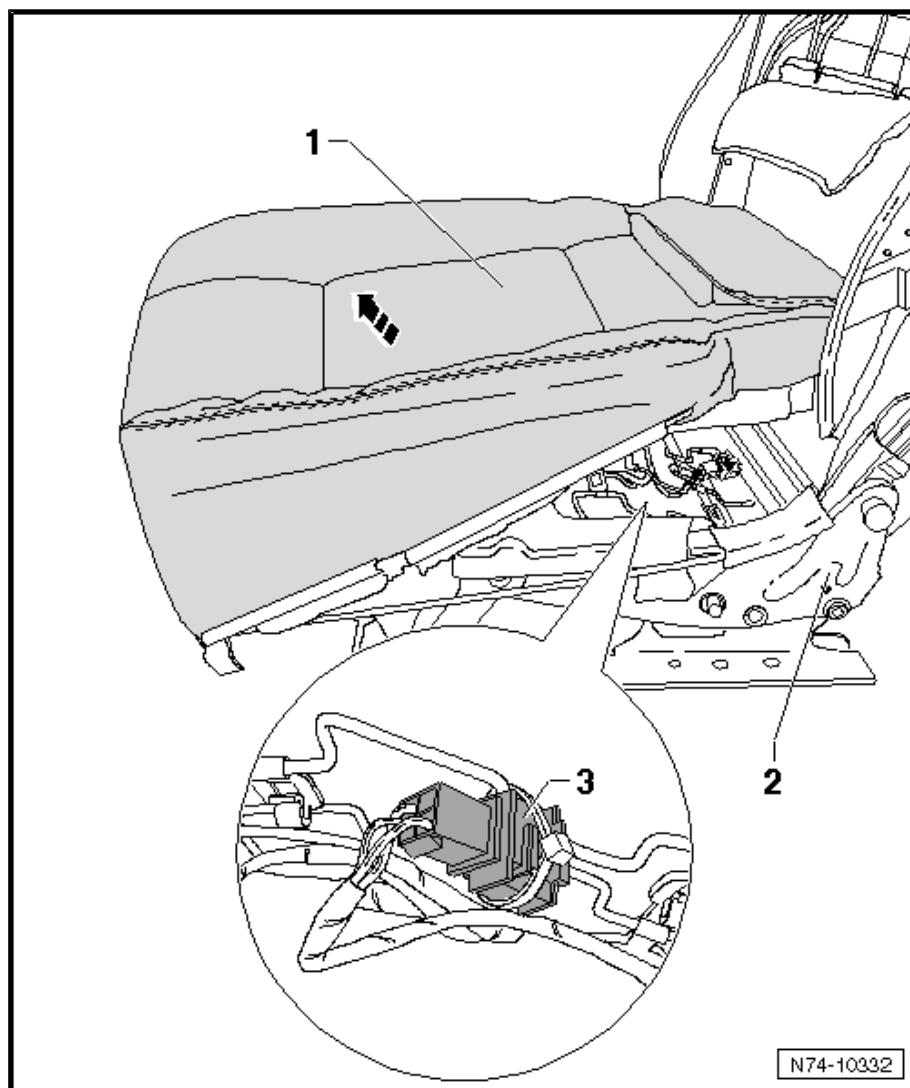


### Removing

- Remove seat ⇒ [page 401](#) .
- Remove control element bracket ⇒ [page 424](#) .
- Detach clamping profile -2- from mounting on seat frame.
- Fold seat cover -1- upwards in -direction of arrow - (guide it through backrest).
- Detach clamping profiles -3- on all sides of the seat frame.
- Remove all upholstery clips -4-.

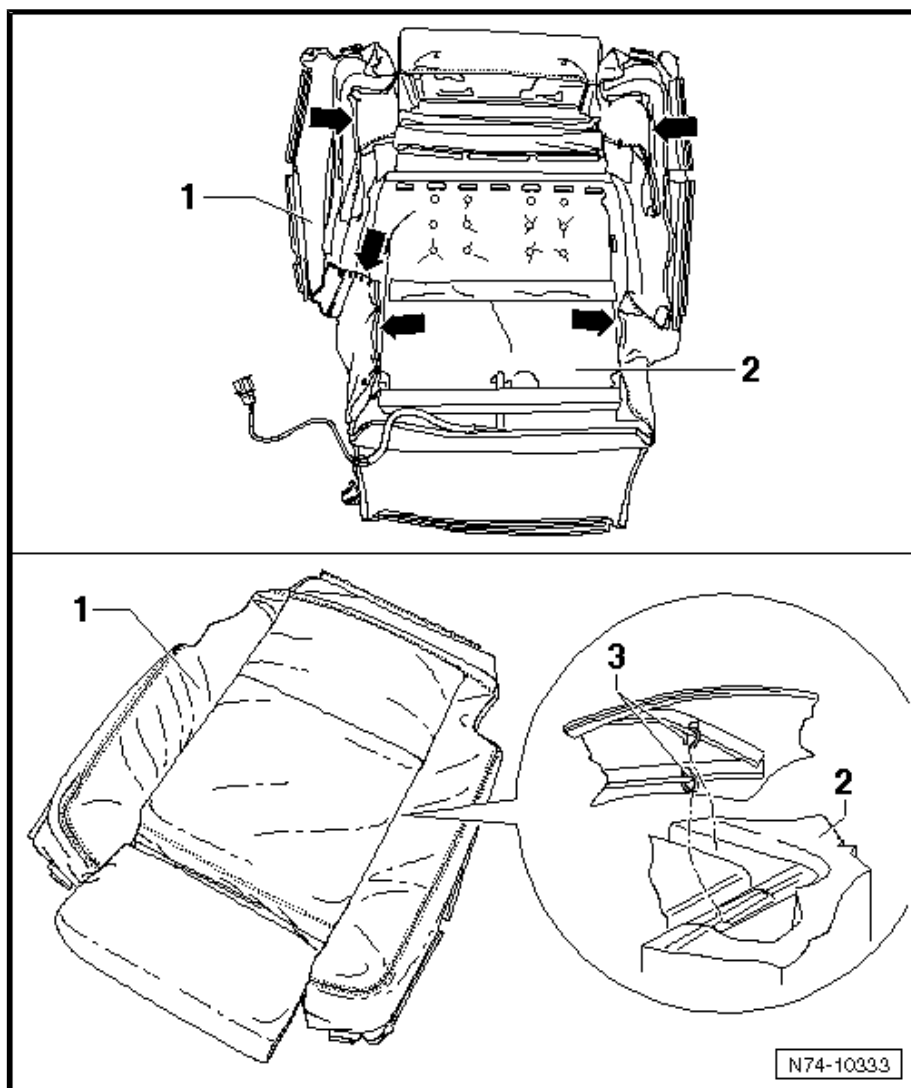


- Remove clips -3- from knee padding -1-.
- Fold knee padding -1- upwards in -direction of arrow- and remove upholstery clips -2-.



- Slightly release cover and padding -1- in -direction of arrow- from seat frame -2-.
- Unplug connector -3- for seat heating element.
- Remove cover and padding -1- in -direction of arrow- from seat frame -2-.





- Remove all upholstery clips -arrows- on bottom.
- Release seat cover -1- all round from padding -2- and fold it upwards.
- Remove all upholstery clips -3- from mountings in padding from top.
- Remove seat cover -1- from padding -2-.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- ◆ *Always renew upholstery clips with clips - N.015.261.1- .*
- ◆ *Attach upholstery clips using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B- .*
- ◆ *To aid installation, heat up cover to approx. 30°C.*
- Place padding on seat frame.

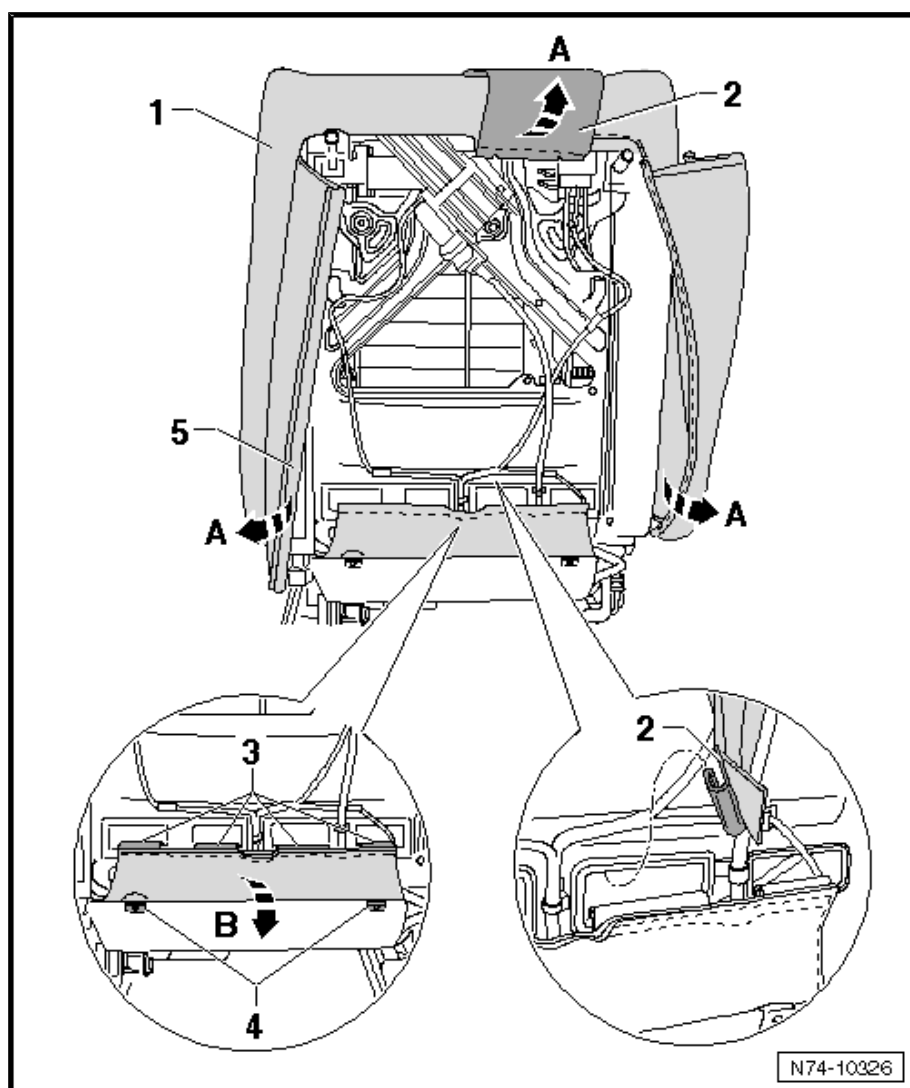
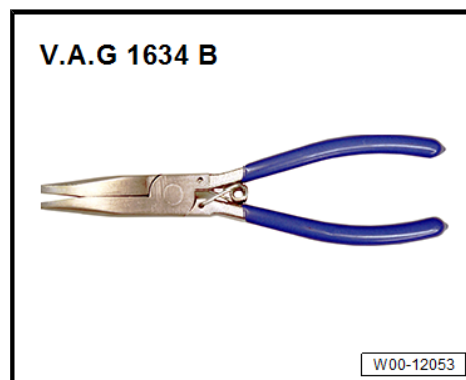


- Attach cover all around padding with new upholstery clips at the positions indicated, using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B- .
- Attach clamping profiles to seat frame.

### 3.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

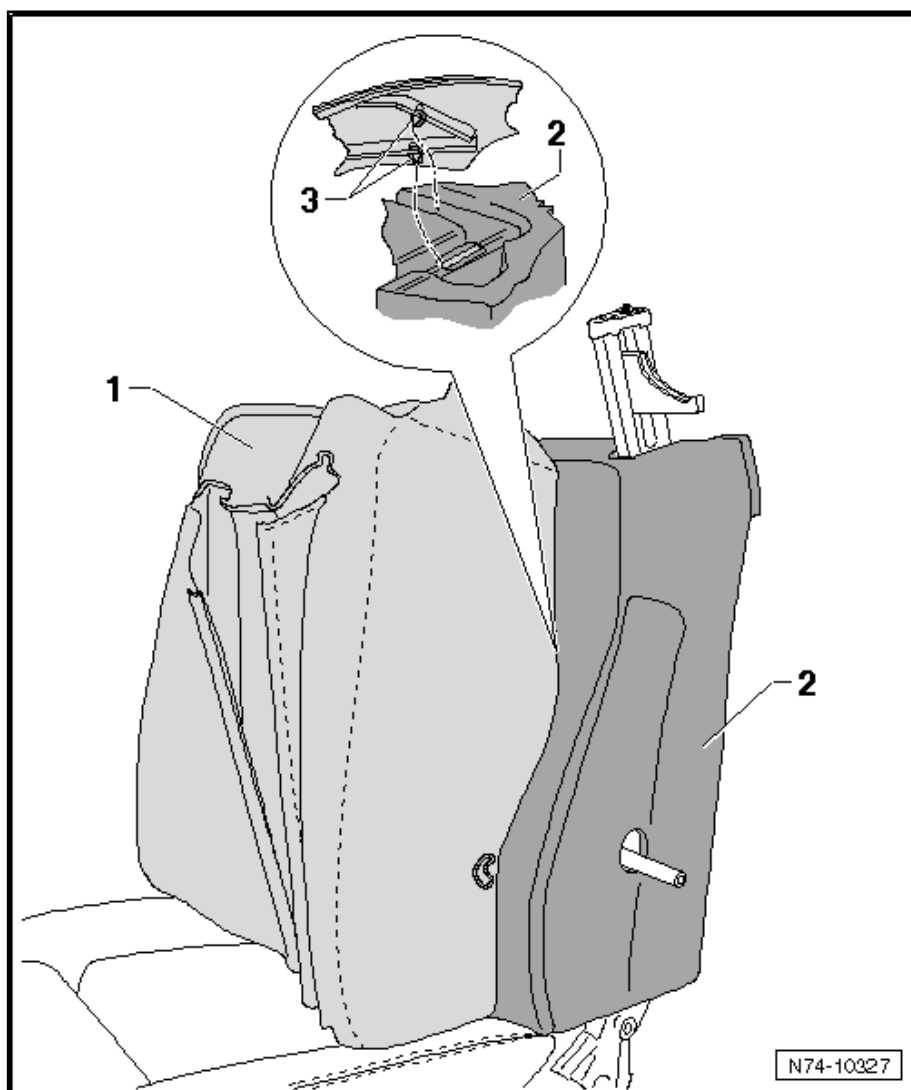
- ♦ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B-



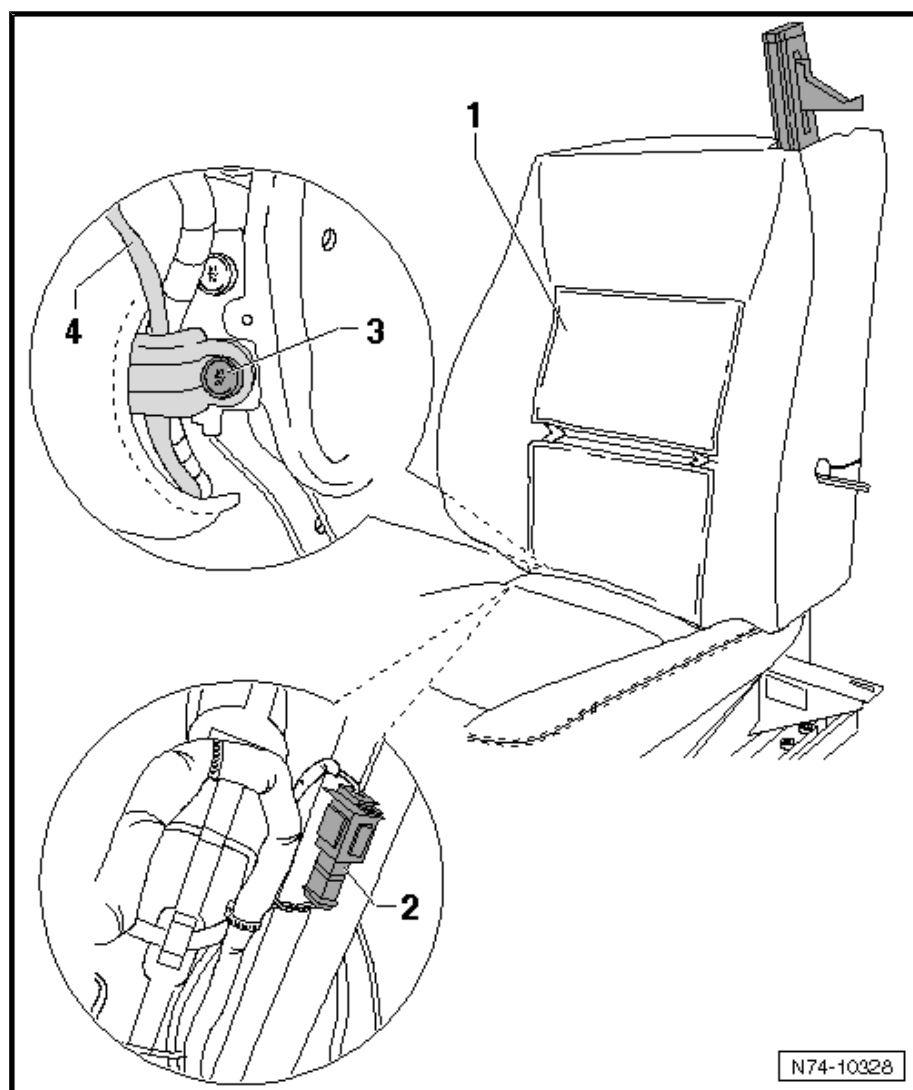


## Removing

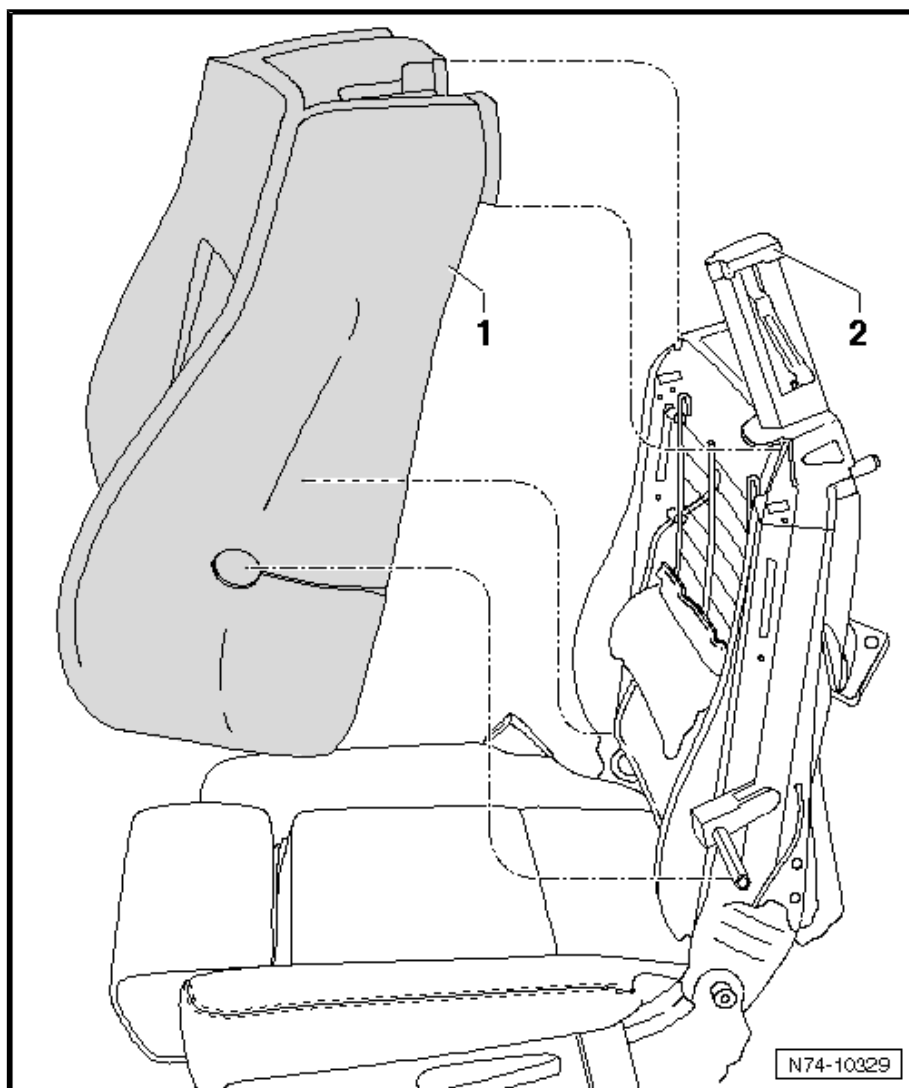
- Remove seat ⇒ [page 401](#) .
- Remove backrest trim ⇒ [page 411](#) .
- Remove head restraint ⇒ [page 406](#) .
- Remove trim for head restraint adjuster ⇒ [page 408](#) .
- Open clamping profile -5-, detach clamping profile -2-, and fold backrest cover -1- off padding in -direction of arrow A-.
- Detach clamping profiles -3-.
- Remove backrest cover in -direction of arrow B- from mountings -4-.



- Fold backrest cover -1- further off padding -2-.
- Remove all upholstery clips -3- from padding -2-.
- Remove backrest cover -1- from padding -2-.



- Unplug electrical connector -2- for seat heating element -1-.
- Unscrew bolt -3-, open clamp, and remove wiring harness for seat heater element -4-.



- Release padding -1- all round from backrest frame -2- and remove it.

### Installing

Install in reverse order of removal, observing the following:



#### Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check all fasteners for damage and renew if necessary.*
- ◆ *Always renew upholstery clips with clips - N.015.261.1- .*
- ◆ *Attach upholstery clips using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B- .*
- ◆ *To aid installation, heat up cover to approx. 30°C.*
- Place padding on backrest frame.
- Attach cover all around padding with new upholstery clips at the positions indicated, using upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634B- .
- Attach clamping profiles to backrest frame.